

Revelation Book Four

Jesus Christ

THE KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS
ON A WHITE HORSE

B. R. Hicks

Revelation Book Four

Jesus Christ

**THE KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS
ON A WHITE HORSE**

by B. R. Hicks

Table of Contents

[Introduction](#)

[Chapter One: The King of Kings and Lord of Lords as the Heavenly Bridegroom Who Reveals His Bride and Her Wedding Dress](#)

- [I. The Marriage of the Bridegroom and the Bride Is a Time of Joy and of Giving Honour](#)
- [II. The Bride's Obedience](#)
- [III. The Bride's Dress of Righteousness](#)
- [IV. The Revelation of the Bride's Dress](#)

[Chapter Two: The Marriage Supper of the Lamb](#)

- [I. The Bridegroom and the Bride's Heavenly Works Before the Marriage Supper Will Begin](#)
- [II. God's "Called" Ones](#)
- [III. Old Testament Overcomers "Called" to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb](#)
- [IV. New Testament Overcomers "Called" to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb](#)
- [V. The New Drink at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb](#)
- [VI. Identity of the Messenger Who Will Announce the Marriage Supper of the Lamb](#)

[Chapter Three: The Description of the Bridegroom at His Second Coming to Earth](#)

- [I. The LORD Jesus Christ's Defensive Armour of His Names](#)
- [II. The LORD Jesus Christ's Aggressive Weapons](#)
- [III. The LORD Jesus Christ's Apparel](#)
- [IV. The LORD Jesus Christ's Authority](#)

[Chapter Four: The Bride at the Second Coming of the LORD Jesus Christ to the Earth](#)

- [I. Christ's Bride Will Be Divided into Separate, Unified Armies](#)
- [II. Christ's Bride Will Be Humbly Obedient to Go Forth \(*Yaw-tsaw*\) with Her Bridegroom-General](#)
- [III. Christ's Bridal Armies Will Come to Earth Riding Upon Their White Horses](#)
- [IV. Christ's Bride will Be Clothed in Fine Linen, White and Clean](#)

[Chapter Five: The Battle of Armageddon](#)

- [I. The Angel Standing in the Sun](#)
- [II. The Angel's Invitation to All the Fowls in Heaven to Come to the Battle](#)
- [III. The Supper of the Great God](#)
- [IV. The Battle of Armageddon](#)

[Chapter Six: The Divine Right and the Spirit of Truth Through Which the LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge All His Creatures, Including the Beast \(the Antichrist\), the False Prophet, and Those Remaining in the Antichrist's Army](#)

- [I. The Right of the LORD Jesus Christ to Judge](#)
- [II. The Means by Which the LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge](#)
- [III. The Father and the Son Ultimately Will Subdue All Their Enemies and Judge Them with Righteousness and Truth](#)
- [IV. The Final Judgment of the Antichrist and His Armies and the False Prophet](#)

[Chapter Seven: The Premillennial Judgment of Fallen Lucifer](#)

- [I. Lucifer's Original Sin — Pride](#)
- [II. God's Judgment on Lucifer for His Pride](#)

Chapter Eight The First Resurrection

- I. The Two Kinds of Resurrection Power or Glory
- II. The First Resurrection

Chapter Nine: The Final Loosing and Judgment of Lucifer and His Luciferic Army

- I. Lucifer Will Be Loosed from the Bottomless Pit for a Season
- II. Lucifer, as Satan and the Devil, Will Minister Deceit When He is Loosed from the Pit (*Teh-home*)
- III. Lucifer's Armies Will be Judged
- IV. Lucifer Will be Judged a Final Time

Chapter Ten: The Great White Throne Judgment

- I. The Divine Throne
- II. God on the Throne
- III. The Judgment, from God's Throne, of the Resurrected "All Dead"
- IV. The Sentencing, from God's Throne, of Lost, Resurrected Souls, Consigning Them to the Lake of Fire

Chapter Eleven: The Renewing of the Heaven, the Earth, the New Jerusalem, and All Things, and the Establishment of the LORD Jesus Christ's Everlasting Kingdom

- I. How Heaven, Earth, the New Jerusalem, and All Things Will Be Made New (*Khaw-dash*)
- II. King David Will Take the Earthly Throne in Jerusalem While the LORD Jesus Christ Returns to His Heavenly Throne to Begin His Work of Renewing All
- III. The Everlasting Kingdom, in Which All Will Be Made New, Will Be Given to the LORD Jesus Christ
- IV. The Son Will Put His Everlasting Kingdom Under His Father's Feet
- V. The Truth and Faithfulness of God's Word Will Be Established When All Creation Is Subdued Under the Father's Control
- VI. Having Been Given the Prophetic Truth, Mankind Is Presented with a Choice for Present Time so that He Can Prepare for the Future the Apostle John Has Just Foretold

Chapter Twelve: The Beginning of the Apostle John's Vision of the Holy City, the New Jerusalem: The Place from Which John Saw the City — Its Greatness and Holiness and Its Glory and Light

- I. The Place from Which John Saw the Holy City
- II. The Greatness and Holiness of the New City
- III. The *Kabode* Glory of the New City
- IV. The Ore Light of the New City

Chapter Thirteen: The Continuation of John's Vision of the New City: Its Great, High Wall

- I. The New City's Great, High Wall Is for Protection
- II. The New City's Wall Is Eternal

Chapter Fourteen: The Twelve Gates of the New City and the Names of the Twelve Tribes of Israel that Are Written on Them

- I. The Number of Gates in the New City Is Twelve — Three Are on Each of Its Four Sides
- II. Twelve Angels Guard the Twelve Gates of the New City — One at Each Gate
- III. Each Gate Has the Name of One of the Twelve Tribes of Israel Written on It
- IV. Each Gate of the New City Is Made of Pearl, Which Is Produced by Christ's Reigning Humility Power

Chapter Fifteen: The Twelve Foundations of the Wall of the New City, the Twelve Names of the Apostles of the Lamb Inscribed in the Foundations, and the Twelve Precious Stones that Embellish the Foundations

- I. The Foundation of Christ as a Judge Bears the Name of the Apostle Peter and Is Embellished with the Jasper Stone
- II. The Foundation of Christ's Wisdom Bears the Name of the Apostle Andrew and Is Embellished with the Sapphire Stone
- III. The Foundation of Truth's Provision of Repentance Bears the Name of the Apostle James, Son of Zebedee, and Is Embellished with the Chalcedony Stone

- [IV. The Foundation of Blood Bears the Name of the Apostle John and Is Embellished with the Emerald Stone](#)
- [V. The Foundation of the Power of God's Word Bears the Name of the Apostle Philip and Is Embellished with the Sardonyx Stone](#)
- [VI. The Foundation of Good Works Bears the Name of the Apostle Bartholomew and Is Embellished with the Sardius Stone](#)
- [VII. The Foundation of Counsel Bears the Name of the Apostle Thomas and Is Embellished with the Chrysolyte Stone](#)
- [VIII. The Foundation of Reparation Bears the Name of the Apostle Matthew and Is Embellished with the Beryl Stone](#)
- [IX. The Foundation of Correction Bears the Name of the Apostle James, Son of Alphaeus, and Is Embellished with the Topaz Stone](#)
- [X. The Foundation of Sureness Bears the Name of the Apostle Jude \(Lebbaeus Thaddaeus\) and Is Embellished with the Chrysoprasus Stone](#)
- [XI. The Foundation of Salt and Sweet Waters of Truth Bears the Name of the Apostle Simon Zelotes and Is Embellished with the Jacinth Stone](#)
- [XII. The Foundation of Instruction Bears the Name of the Apostle Paul and Is Embellished with the Amethyst Stone](#)

[Chapter Sixteen: The Measurement of the New City and Its Wall and the Jasper Substance from Which the Wall Is Made](#)

- [I. The Measurement of the New City and Its Wall](#)
- [II. The Jasper Material from Which the Wall of the New City is Made](#)

[Chapter Seventeen: The Gold of the City and the Gold of the Street and the River of the Street](#)

- [I. The Gold of Christ's Wisdom](#)
- [II. The New City Is Made of Gold, Clear \(*Paw-zaz*\) as Glass](#)
- [III. The New City Will Be the Eternal Dwelling Place of Christ and His Bride](#)
- [IV. The New City's Street of Gold](#)
- [V. The Street's River of Life](#)

[Chapter Eighteen: The Tree of Life in the Midst of the Street and on Either Side of the River](#)

- [I. The Eternal \(*Keh-dem*\) Life of Christ — The Source of All Existence](#)
- [II. The Resurrection \(*Naw-tsakh*\) Life of Christ — His Victorious Life that Swallows Up All Death](#)
- [III. The Everlasting \(*O-lawm*\) Life of Christ — The Everlasting Cycles of the LORD's Holy Name](#)
- [IV. The Tree of Life Produces Twelve Governmental Fruits, Which Are the Twelve Fruits of the Spirit](#)
- [V. The Twelve Fruits of the Spirit Come Out of the Three Portions of God's Will](#)

[Chapter Nineteen: God, the Lamb, and the Bride Will Rule and Reign Eternally in Perfect Unity and Happiness in the New City](#)

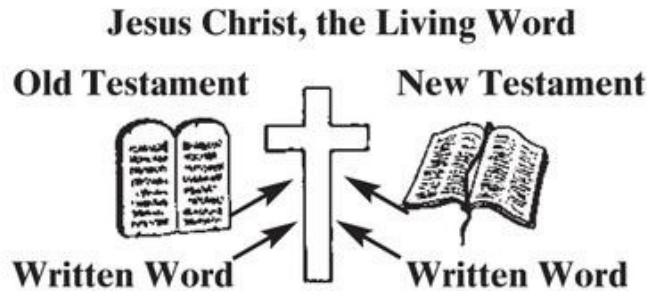
- [I. The Freedom from Evil in the New City](#)
- [II. The Eternal Happiness of God and the Lamb and His Bride in the New City](#)

[Chapter Twenty: The Ratification of the Book of Revelation and Its Conclusion](#)

- [I. The Four Ways God Ratifies the Truth of the Book of Revelation](#)
- [II. Christ's Conclusion of the Book of Revelation](#)

Introduction

God's *Written Word* has been given to reveal His *Living Word*, the LORD Jesus Christ.



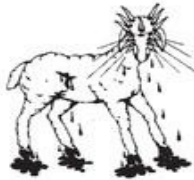
Because of this fact, the revelation of God's *Written Word* consistently follows the four points of the Cross or the Stature of the Living Word, the LORD Jesus Christ, as it unveils Him to those who sincerely seek to know Him.

Hence, the unfolding of the Truth found in the Book of Revelation follows God's pattern of the four points of the Cross. The entire Book of Revelation was written to present the four great pictures of Jesus Christ: first, as the Resurrected King; second, as the Slain Lamb; third, as the Son of Man on a White Cloud; and fourth, as the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS on a White Horse.

This is the fourth and last of the series of books in which the study of the prophetic Book of Revelation is covered; therefore, Jesus Christ appears now as the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS on a White Horse.

The following diagram represents the three books previously written, plus this final book. Together they show the major blueprint of the Stature of Truth found in the Book of Revelation, the last Book of the New Testament, which God gave to the Apostle John on the Isle of Patmos.

**JESUS CHRIST
THE KING OF KINGS
AND
LORD OF LORDS
ON A WHITE HORSE**



**JESUS CHRIST
THE SLAIN LAMB**



**JESUS CHRIST
THE RESURRECTED KING**

The Holy Spirit established the prophetic ministry of the Book of Revelation from the beginning of the Book.

John to the seven churches which are in Asia: Grace be unto you, and peace, from him which is, *and which was, and which is to come*; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne; (Revelation 1:4).

All revelation comes from the Father's Holy, Purposive Will, which He has revealed to His Beloved, Only Begotten Son, the LORD Jesus Christ.

In the Spirit's first picture of God's Son, Jesus Christ appears as the King and Prophet of His Church Who reveals His method and manner of governing His Church. He reveals His Laws for punishing His disobedient, offending children and His Laws for rewarding His obedient, pleasing children. Jesus Christ, as a Prophet, also shows us His Father's Master Plan for the future, according to God's Purposive Will.

In the Spirit's second picture of God's Son, Jesus Christ appears as the Slain Lamb, revealing how He will open the seals of the Book of God's mysterious Master Plan for the world and for His people.

In the Spirit's third picture of God's Son, Jesus Christ appears as the Son of Man sitting upon a White Cloud, ministering judgment upon the world by thrusting in His Sharp Sickle and cutting down the wicked fruits of sinners who are ripe for ruin by God's Judgments.

In the fourth great picture of the LORD Jesus Christ, the Spirit reveals Him as KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS, as He measures the degree of man's wicked works by treading their fruits out in God's great Judgmental Winepress in Heaven. Hence, the LORD Jesus Christ will mete out the exact proportion of judgment the world deserves, when He appears on the scene as the KING OF KINGS.

All prophecy in the Old Testament and in the New Testament came from Christ.

Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you: **Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.** Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into (1 Peter 1:10-12).

The Old Testament Prophets, who were inspired by Christ's Spirit and moved by the Holy Ghost, revealed God's Will concerning the Salvation that was to come through Christ Jesus. Christ was the main subject of their studies. Likewise, He should be the main subject of our studies, and He *will* be if we allow Christ's Prophetic Spirit to point us back to the Crucified Christ and the Resurrected Christ Who acquaints us with His great Grace through both His Salvation and His full Spiritual Stature.

The Old Testament Prophets, through Christ's Spirit of Prophecy, revealed a great portion of God's Master Plan for His Son and all creation. The Spirit of Christ in the New Testament revealed the Son's possession of the Father's Almighty Power, the Father's Infinite Knowledge, and the Father's Eternal, Unbegotten Glory.

The Spirit of Prophecy always illuminates the darkened understanding of man, creating a new moral power in him, which makes him a more fit instrument in God's Hands. With Christ's Divine Inspiration reigning inside man, his heart and mind are in submission to God's Divine Authority.

Jesus Christ, the great Kingly Prophet, is sent by His Father to reveal His Master Plan and to enforce His Holy Will in all creation. Hence, Jesus Christ stands as an Infinite, Divine Power to save lost mankind, to rebuke His people of the errors of their way, and to guide them upward in the Light of His Spiritual Stature.

The Spirit of Christ in the New Testament tells how Christ, as God's true Leader, will establish His Father's Holy Will in religion, in politics, and in social movements. Jesus Christ will judge the whole world and will save it from stagnation and degeneracy. He will lead it forward in God's Master Plan and Purposive Will! He, alone, is the answer to all the ills of the Earth and for mankind who inhabits the Earth.

This book, then, presents the fourth and last great picture of the LORD Jesus Christ as painted in the Book of Revelation by the Spirit of Christ. He appears as the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS. The Stature of Truth on page ten reveals the blueprint for our present study.

**The Fourth Revelation of
THE KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS —
AS A FAITHFUL CREATOR**

- The Creator of the New Jerusalem, the Holy City (Rev. 21:2,9-21 — Chapters Twelve Through Eighteen)
- The Creator Dwelling in the Midst of Creation (Rev. 21:3-8 — Chapter Nineteen)
- The Creator's Testimony of the Truth (Rev. 22:6-21 — Chapter Twenty)

**The Second Revelation of
THE KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS —
AS A JUDGE**

- The Judgment of the Beast and False Prophet (Rev. 19:20 — in Chapter Six)
- The Judgment of Antichrist's Army (Rev. 19:21 — in Chapter Six)
- The Premillennial Judgment of Fallen Lucifer (Rev. 20:1-3 — in Chapter Seven)
- The Judgment of Postmillennial Antichrist's Armies (Rev. 20:9 — in Chapter Eight)
- The Loosing and Postmillennial Judgment of Fallen Lucifer (Rev. 20:7,8, 10 — in Chapter Eight)
- The Great White Throne Judgment (Rev. 20:11-15 — in Chapter Nine)

**The Third Revelation of
THE KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS —
AS A RESTORER**

- The First Resurrection (Rev. 20:4-6 — Chapter Ten)
- The Restorer of the New Heavens and the New Earth (Rev. 21:1 — Chapter Eleven)

**The First Revelation of
The KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS —
AS A BRIDEGROOM**

- Bridegroom's Wife, the Bride (Rev. 19:7,8 — Chapter One)
 - Bridegroom's Marriage Supper (Rev. 19:9,10 — Chapter Two)
 - Bridegroom's Second Coming With His Bride (Rev. 19:11-16 — in Chapters Three and Four)
 - Bridegroom's Warfare, the Battle of Armageddon (Revelation 19:17-19 — Chapter Five)
-

My prayer is that the readers of this book will grow in the Grace and Knowledge of our LORD and Saviour, Jesus Christ, and, thus, mature spiritually so that they can find the ecstasy in having a more intimate spiritual relationship with the LORD's Holy Words of Truth.

— The Author



**JESUS CHRIST,
THE KING OF KINGS
AND LORD OF LORDS**

Chapter One

The KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS as the Heavenly Bridegroom Who Reveals His Bride and Her Wedding Dress

Within each major picture of Jesus Christ in the Book of Revelation, different aspects of His Being and Ministry are revealed.

The KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS, the LORD Jesus Christ, first appears in the final chapters of Revelation as the Heavenly Bridegroom. We see Him at the great Wedding Feast in Heaven, rejoicing with His Bride who has made herself ready by putting on her Fine, Clean, and White Linen Wedding Garments.

After their Marriage, the Bridegroom-General and His Bride, as separate, yet unified Armies, return to Earth to fight the great Battle of Armageddon, subduing the Antichrist and his armies.

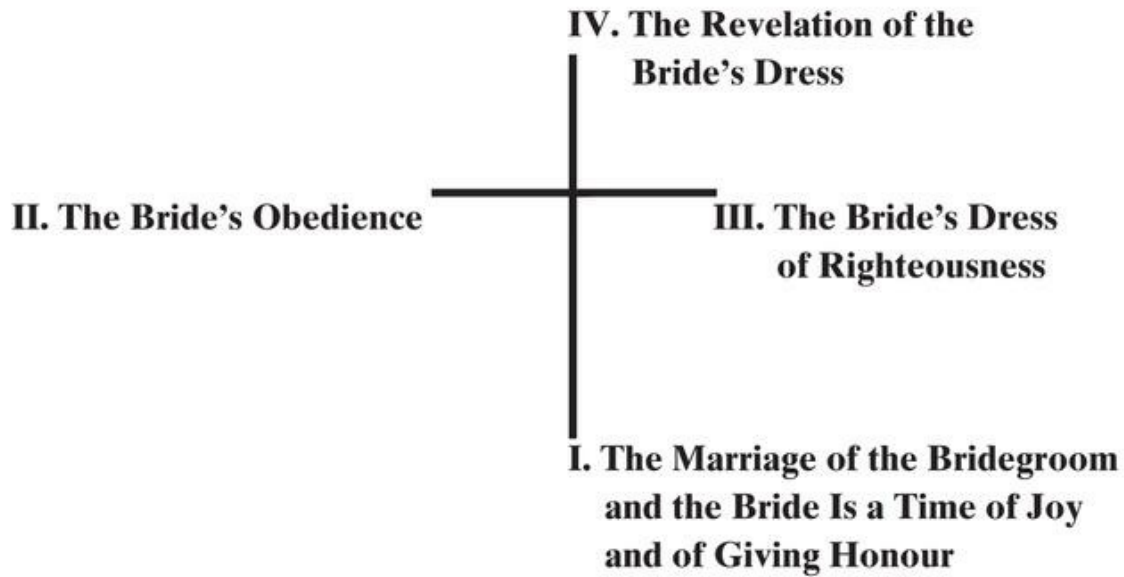
Having overcome their enemies, the Bridegroom and His Bride set up their Kingdom on Earth to rule in peace for one thousand years.

Since the beginning of mankind on this present Earth, Jesus Christ has been preparing a Bride who will rule and reign with Him out of the New City in Eternity-Future. Their Marriage Supper begins the great revelation of the LORD Jesus Christ when the Apostle John saw Him as the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.

Let us **be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.** And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints (Revelation 19:7,8).

Jesus Christ let us know by these Written Words that He saved His Bride through His humility, sacrificial Lamb-nature as He governed and guided her in her spiritual education until she was spiritually mature in His Spiritual Stature. Then, by doing righteous deeds during her moral development, she was able to put on the Clothing of Christ's Bride.

There are four particular points in the two small verses just quoted that form a Stature of Truth or a Cross of Truth about the Bridegroom and His Bride.

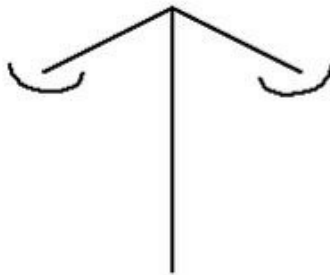


I. The Marriage of the Bridegroom and the Bride Is a Time of Joy and of Giving Honour

The Marriage of the Bridegroom and the Bride will be a happy time. It will be the culmination of the Father's Master Plan for His Son.

In verses seven and eight of Revelation, chapter nineteen, which we have just quoted, the Prophetic Spirit of Christ bids us to be and to give.

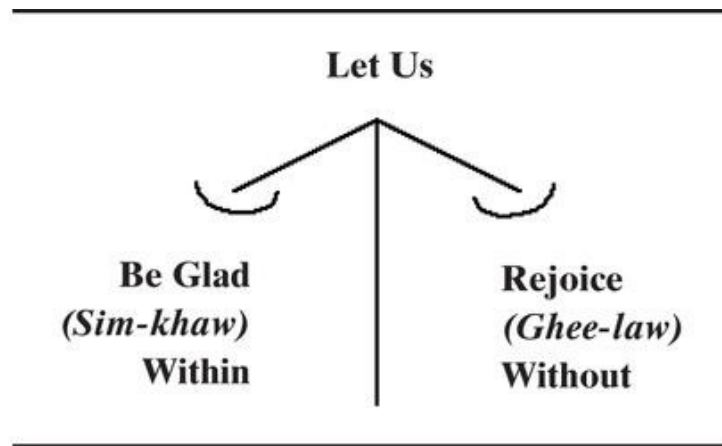
The Prophetic Spirit of Christ Bids Us



The LORD desires for us *to be* or to exist, to live in gladness and rejoicing over the *theoretical* Knowledge of the Truth of the Bridegroom and the Bride. But how much more is our *living* gladness and rejoicing once we have the *experiential* Knowledge of the Truth of the Bridegroom and the Bride!

A. Let Us Be Glad and Rejoice

This gladness and rejoicing, in which we are commanded to live, is a special gladness “within” and “without.”



The Hebrew root word for *glad* is *sim-khaw*, a feminine word, meaning inward joy, glee of the heart, merry-hearted or joyful-hearted. We can have the inner, glad feelings of great pleasure and delight only *after* we have received the humble Lamb's Salvation and only as we allow the humble Lamb to crucify our carnal flesh and only as we feed on the humble Lamb's Truth. Thus, He becomes the inner Governor and Guide of our thoughts, feelings, and actions.

When we allow the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS to regenerate, convert, conform, and transform our proud heart into the Image of His humble Heart, He will fill it with the *sim-khaw* gladness of His Bride.

The hope of the righteous is inner gladness.

The hope of the righteous shall be gladness [*sim-khaw*]: but the expectation of the wicked shall perish (Proverbs 10:28).

The hope of the righteous is the attainment of the inner gladness of the Bride.

David testified that God had given him this inner gladness.

Thou hast put gladness [*sim-khaw*] **in my heart**, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased (Psalm 4:7).

David contrasted the inner joy of the Bride, which he had in his heart, with the inner joy a carnal heart experiences over an abundant harvest, and he concluded that his Bridal gladness or joy was infinitely superior to the joy a person experiences over natural things.

David also testified that this *sim-khaw* gladness of the Bride is found in the Presence of the LORD.

Thou wilt shew me the path of life: **in thy presence is fulness of joy** [*sim-khaw*]; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore (Psalm 16:11).

The Presence of the LORD is the place of the satisfying gladness of the Bride. Worldly pleasures never satisfy completely the soul and spirit of man as does the inner Bridal gladness derived from the LORD Jesus Christ, the Heavenly Bridegroom. In His Hand, Christ possesses joyful delights that will endure eternally in the New City, and He dispenses His delights to those who will tarry, with a clean, surrendered heart, in His Presence.

God is the Source of all inner, Bridal gladness.

Then will I go unto the altar of God, **unto God my exceeding** [*sim-khaw*] **joy**: yea, upon the harp will I praise thee, O God my God (Psalm 43:4).

When we come unto God and unto His Lamb upon the Altar, He will establish joyful communion in our heart with Himself, which is the ultimate goal for the human heart.

The LORD is the Source of all that gladdens my own heart and life!

The LORD has reserved this inner, Bridal gladness for all who are willing to walk uprightly in the Image of the LORD Jesus Christ.

Light is sown for the righteous, and **gladness** [*sim-khaw*] **for the upright in heart** (Psalm 97:11).

Sim-khaw gladness is a joyful acclamation to the Supreme KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS for the

redemption of His Bride from sin, the flesh, the world, and the Devil who have held His Bride captive.

The KING OF KINGS, the LORD OF LORDS, the humble Lamb also wants us to rejoice “without” with Bridal joy.

The Hebrew root word for *rejoice* is *gheel*, a masculine word, meaning to spin around in violent emotions, to be glad and joyful, in other words, a revolution of outward joy.

The Psalmist prophetically described the *gheel* rejoicing that will be manifested at the Marriage of the Bridegroom and the Bride.

With gladness and rejoicing [gheel] shall they be brought: they shall enter into the king's palace (Psalm 45:15).

In natural Israel, a bride is conducted to her bridegroom with great rejoicing, accompanied by music and dancing. Likewise, at the Marriage of the Lamb, the Bride will be brought unto the Bridegroom with great emotional revolutions of joy and rejoicing.

God's natural Bride, Israel, was commanded to rejoice with *gheel* joy and gladness because of the LORD's Judgments.

Let mount Zion rejoice, let the daughters of Judah be glad [gheel], because of thy judgments (Psalm 48:11).

Likewise, at the great Marriage of the Lamb, there will be great revolutions of joy for the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS, the Mighty Deliverer Who is about to judge the world. The Bride and her bridesmaids, the wise virgins, will recognize and celebrate, prophetically, with great revolutions of emotional *gheel* joy, His acts of deliverance that already have taken place and those that are about to take place.

The KING OF KINGS will defend the right of the humble, and He will bring down the arrogance of the proud.

The Espoused Bride in the Song of Solomon experienced this great *gheel* rejoicing.

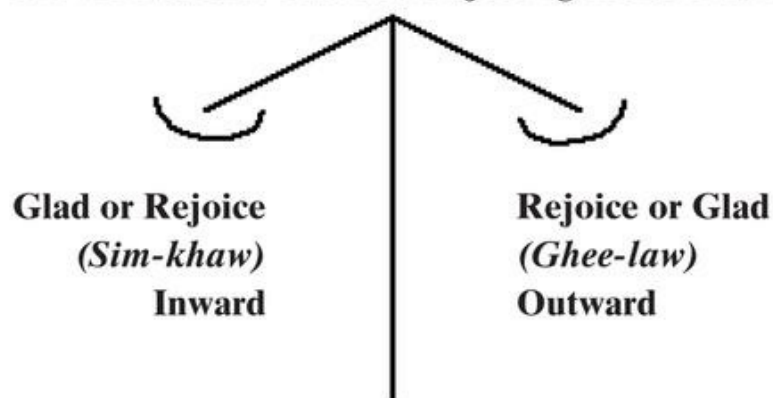
Draw me, we will run after thee: the king hath brought me into his chambers: we will be glad [gheel] and rejoice in thee, we will remember thy love more than wine: the upright love thee (Song of Solomon 1:4).

In verse two of the first chapter of the Song of Solomon, the Espoused Bride prayed to be drawn closer to her Bridegroom by the kisses of His Words of Truth upon her mouth. Then, in verse four, she prayed for her heart to be drawn nearer to Him and His Words of Truth. She knew the persuasive, moral fragrance of His Holy Name and the sweetness of His Holy Word would draw her into a more spiritual, intimate relationship with her Bridegroom.

The Espoused Bride knew that the drawing Power of the LORD's Name and His Holy Word would overpower the world, the flesh, and the Devil so that she could be brought into a closer proximity with her Bridegroom. With the help of the LORD's Spirit, she was eager with desire, ready affection, and speedy pursuit to run after the LORD.

She knew prophetically that, when she found a oneness of relationship with her Bridegroom, she would be glad “within” and rejoice “without.”

The Inward and Outward Rejoicing of the Bride



In this passage in the Song of Solomon, the Hebrew Word for *glad* (*sim-khaw*) is translated *rejoice*, as it sometimes is, and the Hebrew word for *rejoice* (*ghee-law*) is translated as *glad*.

The difference between the order of the “outer” and “inner” rejoicing of the Espoused Bride in the Song of Solomon and the “inner” and “outer” rejoicing of the Spouse-Bride in Revelation is this: the Espoused Bride in the Song of Solomon begins on the outward rejoicing or glad (*ghee-law*) side of the scales, then moves to the inner, deeper gladness or rejoicing (*sim-khaw*) side of the scales. However, the Spouse-Bride at the Marriage of the LORD will begin her *sim-khaw* gladness of joy deep “within” her heart, first, and then, she will proceed to her great emotional revolutions of *ghee-law* rejoicing “without.”

This teaches us that we must learn *now*, in this life, the *sim-khaw* “inward” gladness and the *ghee-law* “outward” rejoicing of the Bridegroom in order to be qualified to be Christ’s Bride at the Marriage Supper of the LORD because the Bride is commanded to be glad and to rejoice.

The Bride not only is commanded *to be glad* and *to rejoice*, but she also is *to give Honour* to the LORD God of Hosts, the Bridegroom.

B. Let Us Give Honour (Glory) to Him

Israel, God’s natural Bride in the Old Testament, gave Glory to God; and since all true Glory has its origin in God, and since Israel could not have given her Bridegroom Glory which she had not *already* received, let us search out the places in which she received the LORD’s Glory with which to honour Him.

1. The Seven Ways God’s Natural Bride, Israel, Found the LORD’s *Kabode* Glory to Give Back to Him

God’s natural Bride, Israel, is a picture, shadow, and type of Christ’s Spiritual Bride. Therefore, we should look at Israel’s instructive example so that we may gain the theoretical Truth of the LORD’s Glory.

The Hebrew word for *honour*, here in Revelation 19:7, is *kabode*, which designates the spiritual weight, the Eternal impression, and the moral imprint of the LORD’s Holy Name. Throughout His Governance and Guidance of His creation, we find the LORD’s Glorious Name and Glorious Presence leave a shining, brilliant trail.

God’s Glorious Name and Presence were revealed especially unto His Espoused Bride, Israel, in a bleak, barren desert.

a. The LORD’s *Kabode* Glory Found in a Bleak, Barren Desert

While Israel was in the wilderness, God made, with His Glorious Name and His Glorious Presence, a lasting imprint and impression upon His Espoused Bride. By changing the hopeless, desolate wilderness in which Israel found herself into a paradisiacal garden and a fruitful pasture, He showed her His protective Love and providing Power.

And in the morning, then *ye shall see the glory of the LORD*; for that he heareth your murmurings against the LORD: and what are we, that ye murmur against us? And Moses said, This shall be, when the LORD shall give you in the evening flesh to eat, and in the morning bread to the full; for that the LORD heareth your murmurings which ye murmur against him: and what are we? your murmurings are not against us, but against the LORD. And Moses spake unto Aaron, Say unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, Come near before the LORD: for he hath heard your murmurings. And it came to pass, as Aaron spake unto the whole congregation of the children of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, *the glory of the LORD appeared in the cloud* (Exodus 16:7-10).

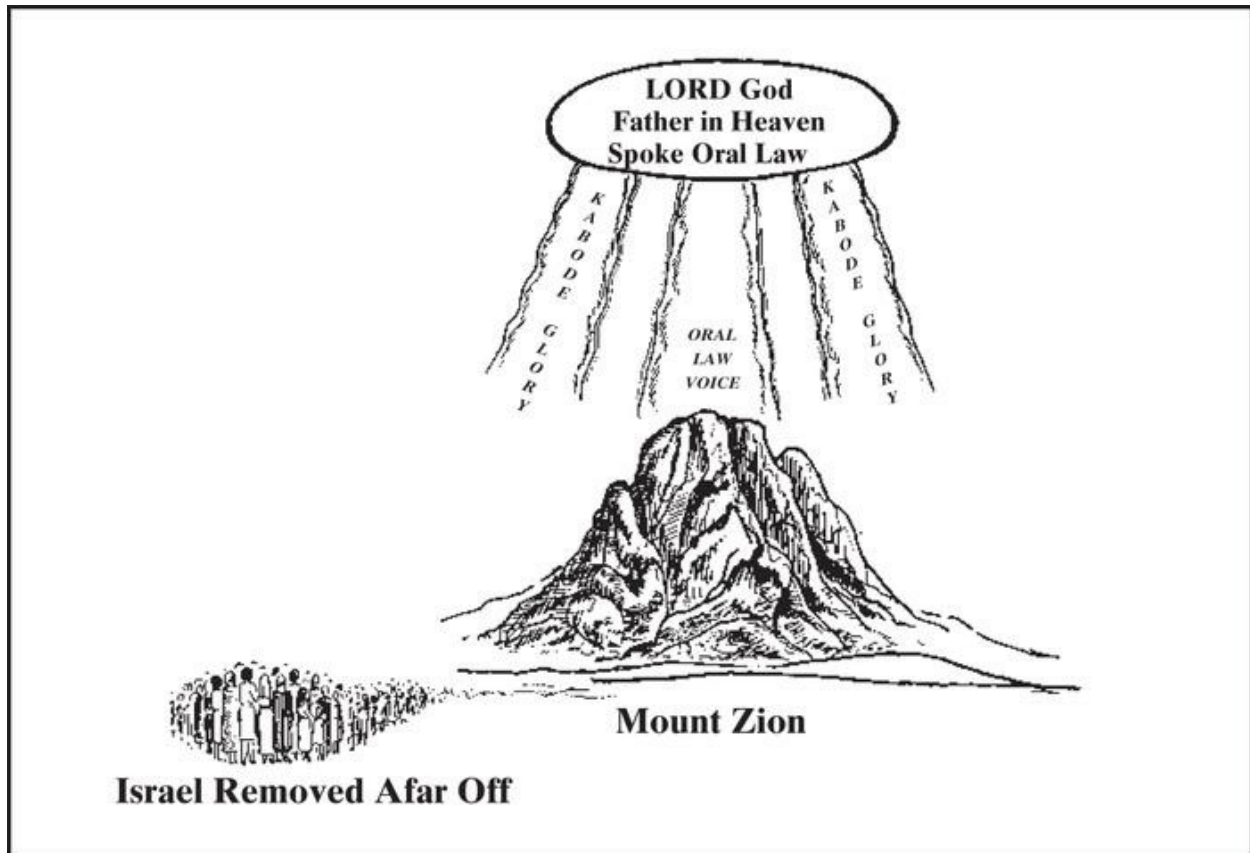
Through the *Kabode* Glory of His Name and His Presence, the LORD proved to His Espoused Bride the greatness of His transforming Power. First, God’s Glory shone upon the barren, unrestrained growth of the wilderness so that Israel might receive a lasting imprint and impression of the hopelessness and the desolation of the place. Then, Israel saw God’s glorious transforming Power change the face of the wilderness by covering it with quails in the evening and with Manna-Bread in the morning.

Another reason Israel’s experience with the transforming Power of the LORD’s Glorious Name and Presence was recorded in God’s Word is so that His people, in all the ages which were to come, might receive an Eternal, mental

impression and moral imprint of His Glory that provides Meat and Bread for His hungry people in the midst of bleak, desolate, hopeless conditions. This, then, is the first way God's Espoused Bride received Glory from the LORD — when He changed the barrenness of the wilderness into fruitfulness.

b. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found on Mount Sinai

The second time Israel received the LORD's *Kabode* Glory was the occasion on which she received both the Oral Law from the Father in Heaven and the Written Law from the Son, God the Word, the Mediator, on Mount Sinai.



And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, *and the voice of the trumpet* exceeding loud; so that all the people that was in the camp trembled (Exodus 19:16).

And all the people saw the thunderings, and the lightnings, *and the noise of the trumpet*, and the mountain smoking; and when the people saw it, they removed, and stood afar off.... And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was (Exodus 20:18,21).

Out of heaven he made thee to hear his voice, that he might instruct thee: and upon earth he shewed thee his great fire; and thou heardest his words out of the midst of the fire (Deuteronomy 4:36).

When the Heavenly *Father's Kabode* Glory appeared with His Voice, which spoke the Moral Truth of His Holy Headship out of Heaven, the people were consumed with fright and moved *afar off* from the Mount because there was no Mediator between them and God's Glory. But when the *Son*, the LORD, came down on Mount Sinai with the *Kabode* Glory and spoke the Moral Law and wrote it in stone, Israel *came near* and *stood under* the mount.

And the glory of the LORD abode upon mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days: and the seventh day he called unto Moses out of the midst of the cloud. *And the sight of the glory of the LORD was like devouring fire* on the top of the mount in the eyes of the children of Israel (Exodus

24:16,17).

Specially the day that thou stoodest before the LORD thy God in Horeb, when the LORD said unto me, Gather me the people together, and I will make them hear my words, that they may learn to fear me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and that they may teach their children. And ye came near and stood under the mountain; *and the mountain burned with fire* unto the midst of heaven, with darkness, clouds, and thick darkness. And the LORD spake unto you out of the midst of the fire: ye heard the voice of the words, but saw no similitude; only ye heard a voice. And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone (Deuteronomy 4:10-13).



God's *Kabode* Glory accompanied the Moral Truth, which came from the Father's Holy Headship in Heaven, and it accompanied the Moral Law, which came from the Son's Holy Headship on Earth. Israel came near and stood *under* the mount, signifying her willingness to come under the Holy Headship of the Son, the Mediator, Who, in turn, was under His Father's Holy Headship.

Thus, Israel, God's Espoused Bride, received a new visitation of the LORD's *Kabode* Glory, which accompanied the bringing of His Moral Law.

God desired that His *Kabode* Glory make a lasting imprint and impression of His Moral Law upon the heart and mind of His Espoused Bride; then, Israel would be able to offer the Glory of God's Holy Headship back to Him with praise and thanksgiving for allowing her to know and to feel the Truth of His Moral High Calling for her.

c. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found on the Garments of the High Priest

There was a third way in which Israel received God's *Kabode* Glory. God gave Israel His *Kabode* Glory through the Garments of His High Priest, which were Garments of Glory, so that every time an Israelite came to the LORD's

Tabernacle he would receive a fresh, lasting imprint from the LORD's Glory of *Separation* that was upon the Garments of the High Priest.

High Priest Covered with *Kabode* Glory



And take thou unto thee Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office, even Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's sons. And thou shalt make *holy garments* for Aaron thy brother *for glory and for beauty* (Exodus 28:1,2).

The High Priest carried the *Kabode* Glory upon his Garments of the Sanctuary so that they would have the spiritual Weight and Power to make a new, daily impression and a fresh, daily imprint, continually, on all Israelites, reminding them that they, as a nation, had been *separated unto the LORD* from among all other nations.

d. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found with the Continual Burnt Offering

There was also a fourth way Israel received the *Kabode* Glory. God gave Israel His *Kabode* Glory with the continual burnt offering, which the Priests offered at the door of the Tabernacle.

This shall be a continual burnt-offering throughout your generations at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the LORD: where I will meet you, to speak there unto thee. And there I will meet with the children of Israel, and the tabernacle shall be sanctified by my glory (Exodus 29:42,43).

And Moses and Aaron went into the tabernacle of the congregation, and came out, and blessed the people: *and the glory of the LORD appeared unto all the people* (Leviticus 9:23).

God's *Kabode* Glory accompanied Israel's continual burnt offerings, morning and evening, in order to make a continual imprint and impression upon every Israelite who came to worship so that they, too, by faith, were encouraged to give themselves continually and exclusively to God as a living sacrifice for His Kingdom. Thus, God not only kept His Sanctuary sanctified but also the personal tabernacle of each Israelite. They continually were separated and consecrated to God as His Espoused Bride in the wilderness and, later, as His Spouse-Bride in Canaan's Land.

e. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found in His Ineffable, Awesome Name

God showed Moses His *Kabode* Glory, and as His Glory passed by, the Nature of His Holy Tetragrammaton Name was revealed.

And he [Moses] said, I beseech thee, *shew me thy glory*.... And it shall come to pass, *while my glory passeth by*, that I will put thee in a clift of

the rock, and will cover thee with my hand while I pass by: (Exodus 33:18,22).

And *the LORD descended in the cloud*, and stood with him there, *and proclaimed the name of the LORD* (Exodus 34:5).

After Israel had sinned by making the idolatrous golden calf, and after Moses had broken the first set of Commandments written in stone, Moses begged for the privilege of beholding the LORD's Glory, which would acquaint him with the Divine, Eternal qualities of the LORD's Ineffable, Awesome Name.

The LORD's Divine Glory left such an outward imprint of its brilliant splendour upon Moses' face that Moses had to cover his face in order to communicate with the people. However, it is unspeakably sad that Moses received only an *outward* imprint of the LORD's Glory and that he only *heard* the revelation of His Holy Ineffable Name, instead of receiving an inward, Eternal imprint of the LORD's Glory and Name upon his heart.

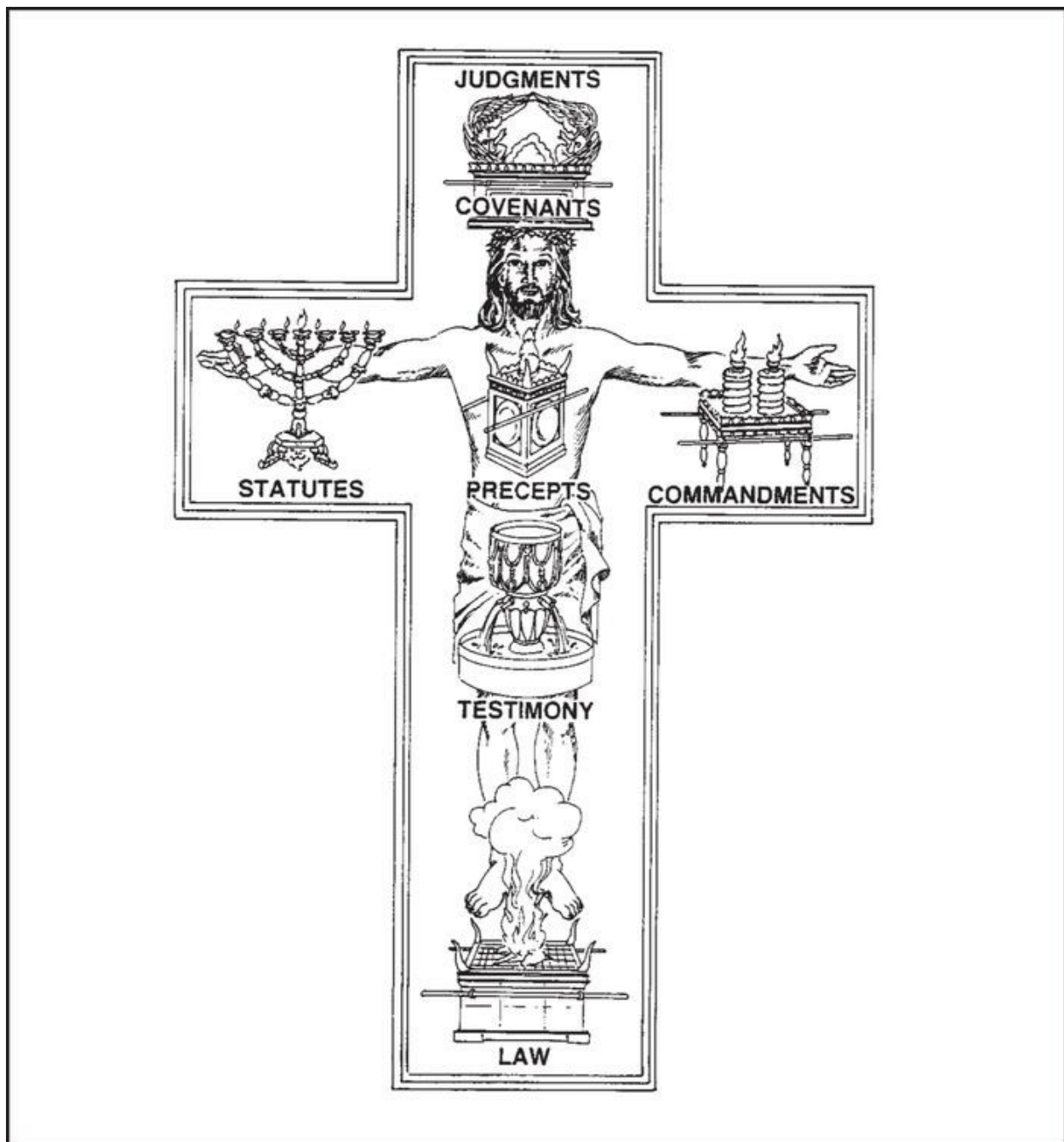
Hence, because Moses asked only to *see* the LORD's Glory, later, in angry disobedience, he smote the Rock instead of speaking to it. As a result of his disobedience, Moses missed the Prize and was forbidden to enter into Canaan's Land. How pitifully sad to see a mighty servant of God faithfully lead a group of complaining, disobedient people for over forty years, and, then, to have to see him miss the Prize in the end because he did not allow God to make an Eternal imprint upon his heart of His Glorious, Awesome Name.

f. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Filled the Mosaic Tabernacle

Sixth, God filled Israel's Mosaic Tabernacle with the brilliance, splendour, and Power of His *Kabode* Glory.

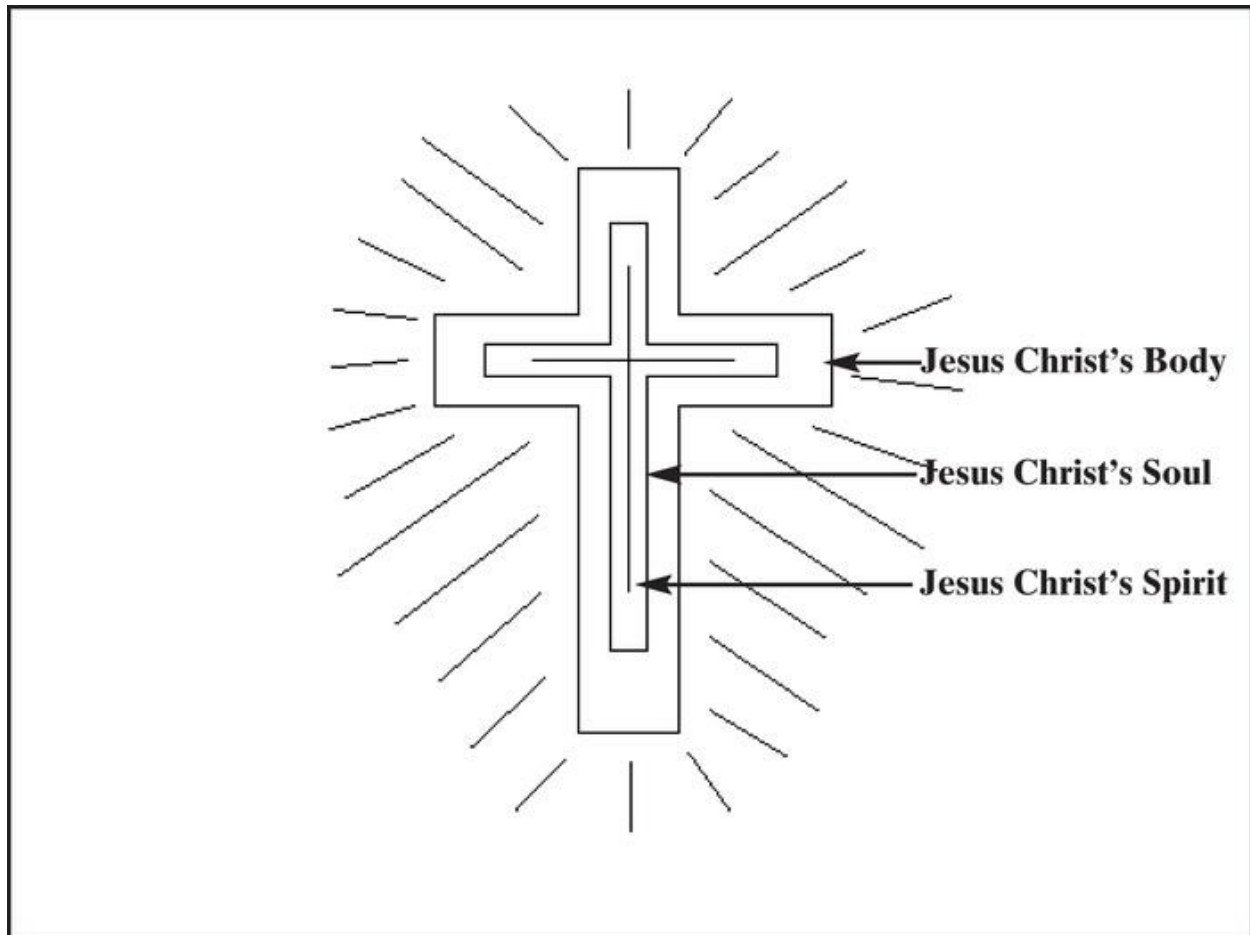
Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, *and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle*. And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation, because the cloud abode thereon, and *the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle* (Exodus 40:34,35).

The Mosaic Tabernacle could not move forward until it was raised up and filled with the LORD's *Kabode* Glory. The LORD's indwelling Glory was a Seal of His Approval upon the work that had been completed. The Tabernacle was constructed and erected so that it revealed the shape of a Cross, which pictures the Stature of the LORD Jesus Christ.



The Stature of Jesus Christ could not move forward until the Father had brought back Jesus' Spirit and had lifted His Soul out of Hell and Death and had filled His Body with His indwelling *Kabode* Glory.

Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as *Christ* was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life (Romans 6:4).



The LORD's *Kabode* Glory gave life and movement, as it were, to the Mosaic Tabernacle so that it could journey forward according to God's Purposive Will. Likewise, when the Father raised up Jesus Christ from the dead, He filled Him with His Eternal, Unbegotten Glory, causing Him to journey forward to God's own Right Hand in the Heavenly Canaan's Land.

g. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found in His Merciful Judgment and His Just Judgment

Seventh, God's *Kabode* Glory or Honour revealed His Merciful Judgment upon the obedient in Israel, and it revealed His Judgment upon the disobedient in Israel. At one point in her journey, Israel thought to harm her leaders, but God sent His Glory, which brought in His Merciful, Just Judgment.

But all the congregation bade stone them with stones. And the glory of the LORD appeared in the tabernacle of the congregation before all the children of Israel.... But as truly as I live, all the earth shall be filled with the glory of the LORD. Because all those men which have seen my glory, and my miracles, which I did in Egypt and in the wilderness, and have tempted me now these ten times, and have not hearkened to my voice; Surely they shall not see the land which I swear unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that provoked me see it: But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it (Numbers 14:10,21-24).

After God had brought the Israelites to the door of Canaan's Land, most of the adults rebelled and refused to go in and possess the land. Then, when they were ready to stone their leaders, the LORD's *Kabode* Glory appeared unto all Israel. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory left a merciful imprint of His Holy Name on Moses, causing him to pray and to intercede for God's Just Judgment to be removed from the nation. God heard and mercifully spared the nation from destruction.

Many of the Israelites were forbidden, by God's Just Judgment coming out of His *Kabode* Glory, to see or to

enter Canaan's Land because they had tempted, provoked, and disobeyed the LORD by ignoring His Voice ten times in the wilderness.

However, God's Just Judgment from His *Kabode* Glory rewarded His faithful, obedient servant, Caleb, with the Promise, Power, and Privilege of going to Canaan's Land and possessing it for himself and his seed.

God's Just Judgment came out of His *Kabode* Glory to punish Korah, Dathan, Abiram, and On when they rebelled against Moses and Aaron.

And Korah gathered all the congregation against them unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation: *and the glory of the LORD appeared unto all the congregation* (Numbers 16:19).

When the Earth opened up and swallowed Korah, who was the chief leader of the rebellious insurrection in Israel, and all who stood with him, it was God's Just Judgment coming out of His *Kabode* Glory.

God also sent His Just Judgment out of His *Kabode* Glory upon the 250 princes among the rebellers who, contrary to His Command, blatantly had dared to offer Incense before the LORD. God's Judgment brought Fire out from His Glory which consumed these arrogant sinners.

When the congregation unjustly accused Moses and Aaron in the matter of Korah and his followers, God sent His Just Judgment out of His *Kabode* Glory to judge the people.

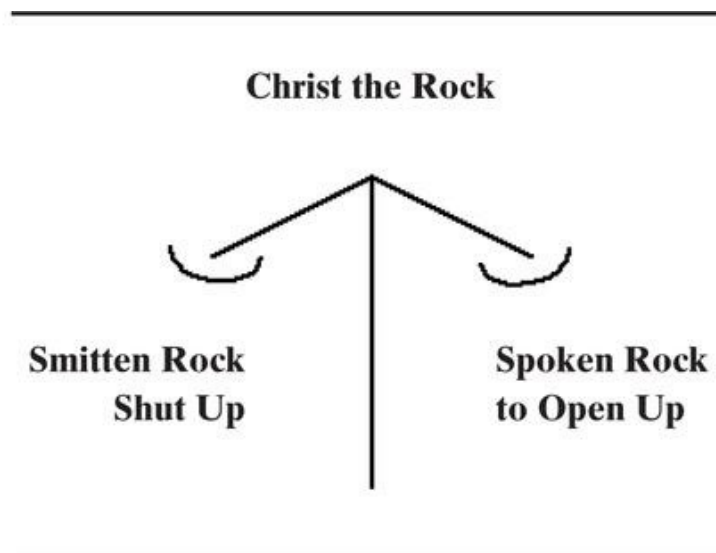
And it came to pass, when the congregation was gathered against Moses and against Aaron, that they looked toward the tabernacle of the congregation: and, behold, the cloud covered it, *and the glory of the LORD appeared* (Numbers 16:42).

God sent His Just Judgment out of His Glory in the form of a plague that was stayed only when Aaron, God's true Priest, offered Incense and made intercession to God.

Then, God's Just Judgment came out of His *Kabode* Glory to judge Moses and Aaron for their arrogant disobedience.

And Moses and Aaron went from the presence of the assembly unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and they fell upon their faces: *and the glory of the LORD appeared unto them* (Numbers 20:6).

Both God's Merciful Judgment and His Just Judgment proceeded out of His *Kabode* Glory. When Israel murmured against her leaders because the *Smitten Rock* did not give forth any more Water, God, in His Merciful Judgment, told Moses to *speak* to the Rock, and it would give forth fresh, new Waters to prepare them for their entrance into Canaan's Land.

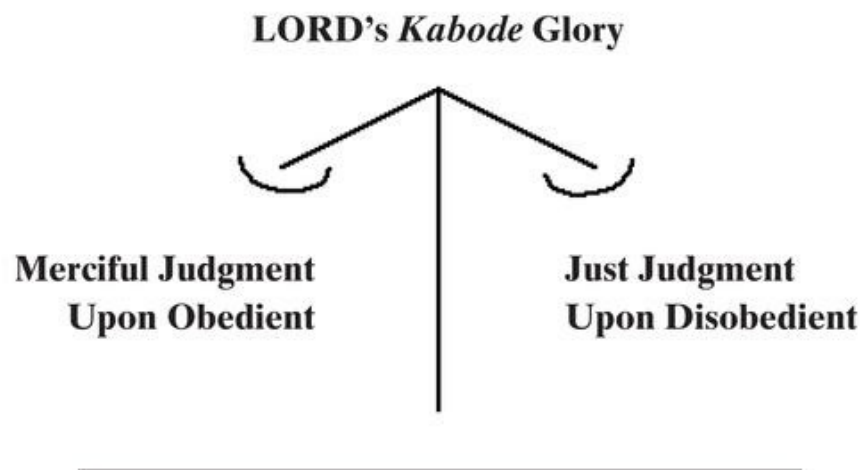


However, in his angry rebellion, Moses smote the *Smitten Rock* twice and ignored the *Spoken Rock*. Because of their disobedience, God sent His Just Judgment out of His *Kabode* Glory upon Moses and Aaron. God pronounced the death sentence upon Aaron and forbade Moses to enter into Canaan's Land because of their rebellion against His

Word.

Thus, we have seen the seven ways Israel, the Espoused Bride, received the LORD's *Kabode* Glory.

- 1) **The *Kabode* Glory** transformed the barren wilderness into a banquet table laden with quail meat and Manna-Bread.
- 2) **The *Kabode* Glory** brought *Torah*-Truth from the Father's and the Son's Headship.
- 3) **The *Kabode* Glory** covered the Garments of the Priests, giving them Power and Authority to drive back the powers of darkness and to sanctify God's Espoused Bride continually.
- 4) **The *Kabode* Glory** accompanied the continual burnt offering, separating and consecrating Israel exclusively unto the LORD as His Espoused Bride and, later, as His Spouse-Bride.
- 5) **The *Kabode* Glory** revealed the LORD's Ineffable, Awesome Name.
- 6) **The *Kabode* Glory** filled Moses' Tabernacle after it had been constructed and erected in the form of a Cross.
- 7) **The *Kabode* Glory** revealed God's Merciful Judgment upon the obedient and His Just Judgment upon the disobedient.



2. How Christ's Spiritual Bride Receives and Gives Glory to the LORD Jesus Christ, Her Bridegroom

Israel, God's Bridal nation, had seven classes of spiritual experiences with God's *Kabode* Glory which are instructive examples to Christ's Spiritual Bride of how to receive God's Glory.

When the Command is given to the Lamb's Bride to give *Honour* or *Kabode* Glory to the LORD Jesus Christ at the Marriage of the Lamb, it is evident that the Bride previously has received this Glory, or she would not be able to give it back to the LORD Jesus Christ.

Israel's experiences with God's Glory show us how to lay hold of His Glory for ourself. For example, as we are going through the spiritual desert of this world, every time we cry to the LORD for spiritual Meat and Bread, He will send His *Kabode* Glory to us and reveal the "Meat-Truth" of His Word in the evening and His "Manna-Truth" in the morning. Later, at the Marriage of the Lamb, when we stand as His Wife and when we are commanded to give back to the Lamb all the Honour or Glory that has brought all the Meat and Bread of His Truth to our Spiritual Stature, we consciously will remember and will see all the Word that His *Kabode* Glory has brought to our heart during our earthly journey. Then, with great gladness, rejoicing, and thanksgiving, we will return each portion of His *Kabode* Glory to Him. We consciously will remember and clearly will see how each time we needed help to progress in our spiritual journey that it was the *Kabode* Glory which brought us the Headship of the Father and the

Son's Moral Master Plan and Purposive Will. Likewise, we clearly will remember and will see each time the LORD's *Kabode* Glory covered our priestly Garment as we interceded, travailed, and ministered before the LORD, driving back the powers of darkness and sanctifying those who came in contact with us.

In the same manner, when the LORD, through His Omnipresence, presents us with every time His *Kabode* Glory has caused us to feed on Jesus Christ, God's continual Burnt Offering, so that we continually could give ourself up exclusively to the LORD Jesus Christ as His Espoused Bride, our spirit will overflow with gladness, and our soul will leap with rejoicing, while our tongue will magnify His Name as we give all the Glory back to the LORD with praise and thanksgiving. Moreover, because God's *Kabode* Glory will have revealed to us the Nature of the LORD's Glorious, Ineffable Name, our old human nature will have been exposed. Therefore, we will have offered it up to Jesus Christ for the regeneration, conversion, conforming, and transforming of it into the Nature of His Holy Name. Hence, when we are told to give all the *Kabode* Glory back to Jesus Christ at the Marriage of the LORD, we suddenly will become conscious of every time the LORD's *Kabode* Glory has revealed our old nature and of every time it has left an Eternal imprint of the LORD's Glorious Name upon our heart and will. Just imagine the thunderous roar of praise and thanksgiving that will issue forth from all those members of Christ's Bride as she collectively gives all the Glory back to the Lamb, the Bridegroom.

Likewise, God's *Kabode* Glory fills every Spiritual Stature that has grown unto the Measure of the Stature of the Fullness of Christ, just as it did in the Mosaic Tabernacle which was built and erected in the form of the Cross. What redounding praise will issue forth from Christ's Bride as she consciously remembers all the Living Stones of Truth that have been laid in her Spiritual Stature and gives all the *Kabode* Glory that envelopes that Truth back to the Lamb, the Bridegroom.

As we have grown in the LORD, we also have received the *Kabode* Glory that brings judgment upon our rebellious flesh that has tried to prevent us from entering spiritual Canaan's Land.

God's *Kabode* Glory also reveals our rebellious, murmuring nature that complains against God and His chosen leaders, transforming the minds of our heart and will* into surrendered, submissive ones. What gladness and rejoicing will fill our spirit and soul when all Christ's Mighty Works, which He has wrought upon our heart and will, pass before our face at the Marriage of the Lamb! Seeing what Christ has done by His Mighty Works will cause us to give all the Glory of them and for them back to the Lamb.

Thus, Israel, as a Bridal nation to God, is a picture, shadow, and type of Christ's Bride. Israel's experiences with God's *Kabode* Glory teach us what it means for Christ's Bride to give Honour or *Kabode* Glory back to the LORD Jesus Christ at the Marriage of the Lamb.

The LORD commanded Israel, His natural Bridal Nation who had received of His *Kabode* Glory, to give the Glory back to His Holy Name. For instance, when David brought the Ark to Jerusalem, he commanded the people to give unto the LORD's Name the Glory that was due it.

Give unto the LORD, ye kindreds of the people, *give unto the LORD glory* and strength. *Give unto the LORD the glory due unto his name:* bring an offering, and come before him: worship the LORD in the beauty of holiness (1 Chronicles 16:28,29).

The manifold Mercies of the LORD's great Holy Name had driven back the punishment which Israel deserved, and the great Grace of His Holy Name had brought them the blessings of the Ark of His Headship, which they did not deserve. Therefore, they were commanded to give the Glory of His Mercy and Grace back to His Holy Name.

Again, we see this Principle enacted later in Israel's history after Nehemiah and a remnant of the people had returned from Babylon. Nehemiah the Governor, Ezra the Priest and scribe, and the Levites joined together and proclaimed a national day of repentance. A fast was observed; the heathen were separated from the LORD's Bride; the *Torah* was read, and Israel made a confession of her sins. Nehemiah recounted God's Mercies and Grace to Israel, and he recounted Israel's disloyalties to the LORD. Then, the Levites stood up and commanded the people to bless the LORD's Glorious Name.

Then the Levites, Jeshua, and Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabniah, Sherebiah, Hodijah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah, said, *Stand up and bless the LORD your God* for ever and ever: and *blessed be thy glorious name*, which is exalted above all blessing and praise (Nehemiah 9:5).

It was the *Kabode* Glory of the Mercy and Grace contained in the LORD's Holy Name that had sent Israel into captivity in Babylon, and it was the Glory, Mercy, and Grace of His Holy Name that had brought the remnant safely home again.

No finite creature is able, in his own weakness, to give the LORD the Glory that is due His Holy Name. But the

creature can purge himself by Christ's Blood, Fire, and Water so that God's Spirit, through him, can return to the LORD all the Glory that is due His Holy Name.

The Psalmist encouraged Israel, God's Bridal Nation, to celebrate, in song, the *Kabode* Glory of the LORD's Name.

Sing forth the honour of his name: make his praise glorious (Psalm 66:2).

It is the *Kabode* Glory that makes fitting praise to the LORD's Holy Name.

When Israel was in exile, the LORD's Name was disgraced and derided by the nations. But when Jesus Christ, the Messiah, returns again, Israel will proclaim the true Glory of the LORD's Name to the whole world. Israel, as God's Bridal Nation during Christ's Millennial Reign, will teach the whole world how to give Glory to the LORD's Name for His Eternal Existence and for His Omnipotent Sovereignty.

It is the *Kabode* Glory that makes our deliverance from sin and the purging of our sins possible. The Psalmist pleaded for the Mercy and Grace of the LORD's Glorious Name to deliver and purge him.

Help us, O God of our salvation, for the glory of thy name: and deliver us, and purge away our sins, for thy name's sake (Psalm 79:9).

Because we are unworthy to appeal to God for help on our own merit, we can plead in prayer for help from the Mercy and Grace that are in the Glory of His Holy Name.

Once more the LORD commanded Israel, God's Bride, to give the LORD the Glory that is due His Name.

Give unto the LORD, O ye kindreds of the people, give unto the LORD glory and strength. Give unto the LORD the glory due unto his name: bring an offering, and come into his courts (Psalm 96:7,8).

The LORD's Bride will not give the LORD's Glory to a finite creature, nor will she keep it for herself. She will be well-practiced in giving Glory to the LORD in this present, evil world; therefore, when she hears the Command to give Glory to the LORD at the Marriage of the Lamb, she will obey willingly.

The Psalmist prophesied how the Bride will be brought to the Marriage of the Lamb, full of *Kabode* Glory "within," which will clothe her Spiritual Stature.

The king's daughter is all glorious within: her clothing is of wrought gold. She shall be brought unto the king in raiment of needlework: the virgins her companions that follow her shall be brought unto thee (Psalm 45:13,14).

The Bride's White Linen, her Bridal attire, will be resplendent with the *Kabode* Glory of the LORD's Name. Thus, she will have been a possessor of the LORD's *Kabode* Glory "within," which she will give back to the LORD at the Marriage of the Lamb.

We have seen just how and why the Bride is to be glad and rejoice and is to give Honour or *Kabode* Glory to the LORD, the Lamb.

The next thing we learn from the Spirit, as it wrote through the Apostle John, was that the Bride had made herself ready for her Wedding Day.

II. The Bride's Obedience

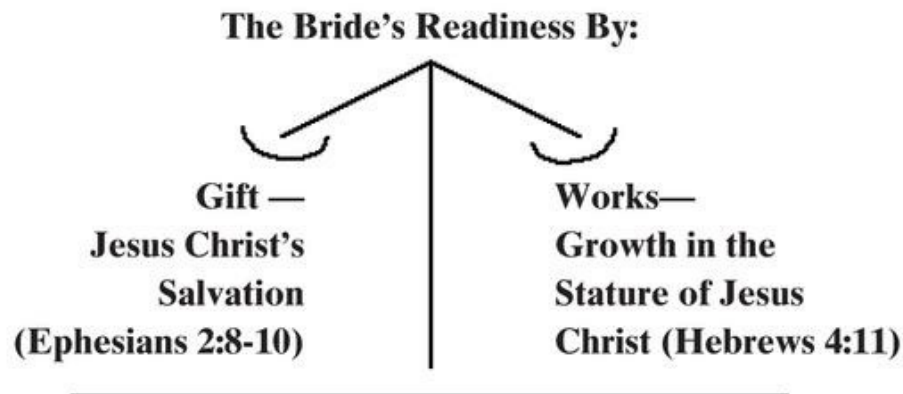
The Bridegroom, the LORD Jesus Christ, came to Earth as a *Lamb*, manifesting all the characteristics of a humble Lamb because He was full of Surrender, Submissiveness, and Obedience to His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will. Christ, as a Lamb, loved us. The Espoused Bride will have seen the wounds and the Blood of God's Sacrificial Lamb, and she will have fallen in love with Him. Therefore, she will have followed the Lamb "whithersoever He goeth" — in surrender, in submission, or even in obedience unto Death.

... and his wife hath made herself ready (Revelation 19:7).

The Bride will have fallen in love with the Lamb's Humility. Hence, she will have given herself up completely to live exclusively for Him and for His Master Plan and Purposive Will. The Espoused Bride will have followed the Surrender, Submissiveness, and the Obedience of the Lamb in the days of her flesh. Hence, she will have become well-acquainted with God's Humble Lamb in the days of her betrothal. For this reason, Christ will come as a Lamb

to His Marriage so that His Espoused Bride easily will recognize Him.

The Lamb's Wife will have made herself ready. The Hebrew word for *wife* is *khath-oon-naw*, meaning to enter into a marriage contract, a wedding, from the word *khaw-than*, meaning to give a daughter in marriage, hence to contract affinity by marriage, to join in marriage. In other words, the Spirit is saying there is a Heavenly Wedding that will take place because the Espoused Wife will have foreseen her Wedding Day and will have made herself ready to enter into the marriage contract on that great day. This spiritual example of what the Lamb's Wife will have accomplished with the LORD Jesus Christ does not refer to her being able, in any way, to provide the foundational experiences of Christ's free Gift of Salvation for herself because this is *His* sole Work. However, the Bride's readiness will have been the result of her works in unison with Christ's Grace, which will have accomplished her spiritual growth to maturity, both in her spiritual education and in her moral development.



Salvation is a free Gift unto mankind through the Grace of the LORD Jesus Christ. But after Christ saves us, apart from our own works, He then ordains us to work in prayer and in His Word so that we can eat and grow up unto the Measure of His Stature and become His Spiritual Wife, rendering unto Him good works according to His Master Plan and Purposive Will.

For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them (Ephesians 2:8-10).

Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief (Hebrews 4:11).

We are ordained by Christ *unto good works*. Hence, we cannot rest if we have not worked. The truly Espoused Bride of Christ will make herself ready by willingly putting off her flesh and by willingly putting on the Stature of Christ. She willingly will separate herself from the corruptions of the harlot church. She willingly will struggle against the deceit and errors of the carnal mind. She willingly will fight against the infidelity of her own fleshly human nature until Christ, by His Humility Spirit, regenerates her nature, converts it, conforms it, and transforms it into His Likeness and His Image. As a result, the Bride is enabled to go forth and perform deeds of righteousness, out of which God creates a Bridal Dress of White Linen.

III. The Bride's Dress of Righteousness

Let us examine the Bride's Clothing of Righteousness so that we, too, can lay hold of this class of Righteousness for the clothing of our Spiritual Stature; then we can be counted worthy of attaining the Prize, which is to be in Christ's Bride.

The Hebrew word for *righteousness*, here, is a feminine plural form of the Hebrew word *tsed-aw-kaw*, meaning *rightness*.

Abram is a primary example of one who did works of Righteousness by believing God; therefore, he received the Bridal Garment of Righteousness.

After these things the word of the LORD came unto Abram in a vision, saying, Fear not, Abram: I am thy shield, and thy exceeding great reward.

And Abram said, Lord GOD, what wilt thou give me, seeing I go childless, and the steward of my house is this Eliezer of Damascus? And Abram said, Behold, to me thou hast given no seed: and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir. And, behold, the word of the LORD came unto him, saying, This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir. And he brought him forth abroad, and said, Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them: and he said unto him, So shall thy seed be. *And he believed in the LORD; and he counted it to him for righteousness* (Genesis 15:1-6).

The Hebrew word for *believe* in verse six is *aw-man*, meaning to build up or support; to foster as a parent or nurse; to render firm or faithful; to trust or believe; to be permanent or quiet.

To believe God is *not* the submitting of one's theoretical thoughts to the insight of another's theoretical thoughts. But believing God is placing our full confidence, both in God's Theoretical Truth and in the Practical Truth of His firm Governance and Guidance of our life. Hence, *aw-man* belief or confidence, both in theory and in practice, comes from the God of *Aw-man-Truth* Himself. God's Loyalty and Faithfulness in fulfilling His Promises of blessings and His Threatenings of punishment generate supreme *aw-man* confidence in our heart toward Him as the God of *Aw-man-Truth*.

Therefore, *aw-man* belief in God is to have firm confidence in the LORD as our Parent, Tutor, and Educator, Who sculpts, forms, and shapes our life according to His Master Plan. Hence, God definitely gives the firm shape of His Headship in our heart; therefore, He definitely gives firm direction to our life and our education. God is the firm Director of all our being and our works in Him.

Aw-man belief causes us to commit ourselves entirely to the LORD, allowing Him to mould us according to His Purposive Will. *Aw-man* belief causes us to give ourselves up to the LORD's Truth, to make it our very own, and to surrender ourselves to be guided by that Truth. Thus, *aw-man belief* in the LORD is *Truth in theory and in practical deeds* of loyalty and faithfulness.

Aw-man belief or confidence does not refer to the *contents* of our audible message, but to the *person who hears* the message of Truth *and adopts* the *Aw-man-Truth* as his very own.

Therefore, *Aw-man-Truth* is Truth both in *theory* and in *practice* or loyalty and faithfulness in deed. The person who gives himself up entirely to God's Governance and Guidance in Truth will know and experience Truth both in theory and in practice.

God's Bride, who has given herself up entirely to His Governance and Guidance in theory and practice of His *Aw-man-Truth*, will bless herself in the God of Truth in the future.

That he who blesseth himself in the earth shall bless himself in the God of truth; and he that sweareth in the earth shall swear by the God of truth; because the former troubles are forgotten, and because they are hid from mine eyes (Isaiah 65:16).

God, by fulfilling His Promise of blessing and His Threats of punishment, establishes Himself as the God of Truth. Therefore, He will gain the *aw-man* confidence of *all* His creation.

God's Bride will bless herself in the God of *Aw-man-Truth*. The Bride will be so happy with her lot in the New City that the troubles, trials, and tribulations she went through to get there will vanish completely from her memory because they will be hidden from God's eyes.

Because Abram submitted himself completely and unconditionally to God, he knew and experienced *Aw-man-Truth* from God, both in theory and in practice.

God raised Abram above all natural Cause and Effect or all opposing calculations and conditions of his old age and the old age of his wife. Abram and Sarai, according to all natural calculations and conditions, were doomed to childlessness; they had no heir to inherit the Promised Land.

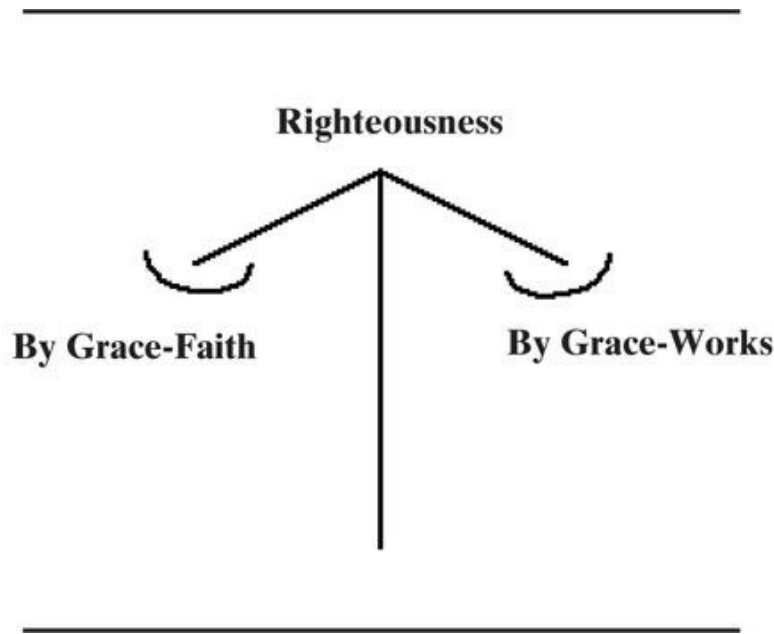
However, God lifted Abram above his hopeless natural conditions and showed him a "Light" Seed, as countless as the stars, that would proceed from him and through him, according to God's Purposive Will.

Because Abram believed God's Promise with *aw-man* confidence, God gave Abram a spiritual Garment of Righteousness.

The Hebrew feminine word for the *righteousness* that God gave Abram is *tsed-aw-kaw*, the same word used for the Bride's Righteousness or White Linen Dress in the Book of Revelation.

Hence, if we can understand the kind of Bridal Dress of Righteousness Abram received, we can understand the White Linen Dress of Righteousness in the Book of Revelation. This class of Righteousness cannot refer to the Righteousness of Abram's Salvation, which he received by Grace and Faith when he was in Ur of the Chaldees.

There are two classes of Righteousness from God and the LORD Jesus Christ: one comes by Grace-Faith, and one comes by Grace-Works.



A. The Righteousness that Comes by Grace-Faith

Stephen and Paul proclaimed how Abraham, by Grace-Faith, had obeyed God when He had appeared to him in Mesopotamia.

And he said, Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken; *The God of glory appeared unto our father Abraham*, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran, *And said unto him, Get thee out of thy country*, and from thy kindred, and come into the land which I shall shew thee. *Then came he out of the land* of the Chaldaeans, and dwelt in Charran: and from thence, when his father was dead, he removed him into this land, wherein ye now dwell (Acts 7:2-4).

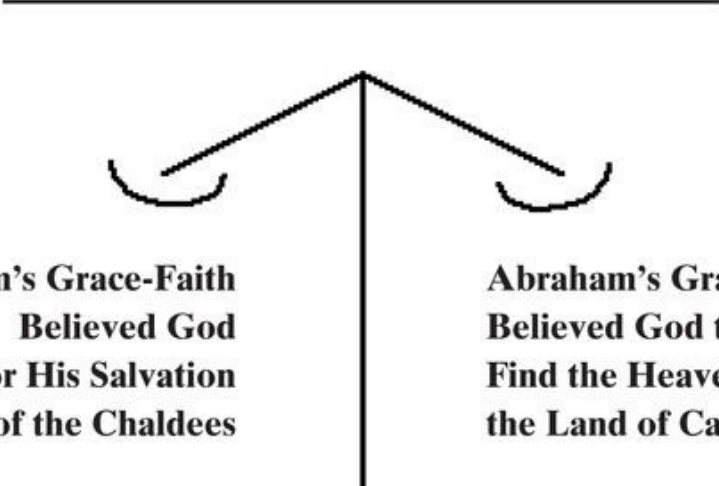
God appeared in His *Kabode* Glory to Abraham in Ur of the Chaldees to give him Salvation by Grace-Faith so that he could forsake his world and follow his Leader, the LORD God, to Canaan's Land. However, there were many years between Abraham's reception of the Salvation Garment of Righteousness by Grace-Faith in the land of Ur of the Chaldees and his reception of the Garment of Bridal Righteousness by Grace-Works in the land of Canaan.

B. The Righteousness that Comes by Grace-Works

The Apostle Paul described Abraham's two classes of Faith.

By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, *obeyed*; and he went out, not knowing whither he went. *By faith he sojourned in the land of promise*, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise: *For he looked for a city* which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God (Hebrews 11:8-10).

By Faith, Abraham was *called* to serve God in Ur of the Chaldees, and by Faith he *sojourned* in the land of Canaan, doing Grace-Works.



**Abraham's Grace-Faith
Believed God
for His Salvation
in Ur of the Chaldees**

**Abraham's Grace-Works
Believed God to Help Him
Find the Heavenly City in
the Land of Canaan**

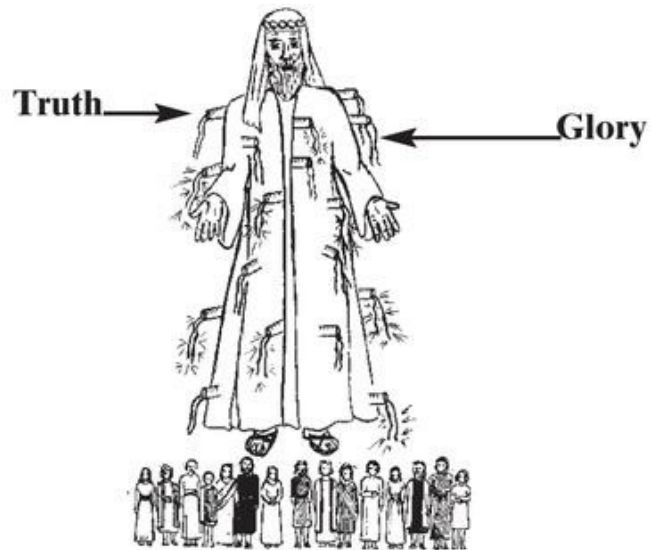
Abraham, by Grace-Faith, received his Salvation in Ur of the Chaldees, and by Grace-Works, he performed the deeds, the good works of Grace-Works in the land of Canaan and received his Bridal Garment of White-Linen Righteousness, which is called *Tsed-aw-kaw* Righteousness.

The feminine Hebrew word *tsed-aw-kaw* is derived from the masculine Hebrew word *tsaw-dak*, which means to give to the persons and the circumstances about us the debt owed to them. *Tsaw-dak* is related both in phonetics and in meaning to the word *saw-dek*, meaning to satisfy, to give what is due.

The Hebrew word *saw-dek* relates to a piece of ground or field that is cultivated for the purpose of obtaining food. The field becomes like a “maternal breast.” Thus, man drinks sap and juices from the ground for nourishment of his body, just as a baby drinks milk from his mother’s body for his nourishment and growth.

Likewise, God gave Abraham a Bridal Garment of Righteousness that was like a cultivated field and like a “maternal breast” from which his descendants could draw the Life-giving sap of Light, Life, and Love for their spiritual souls.

Abraham's Garment of Righteousness



Spouts of Life, Light, and Love to His Descendants

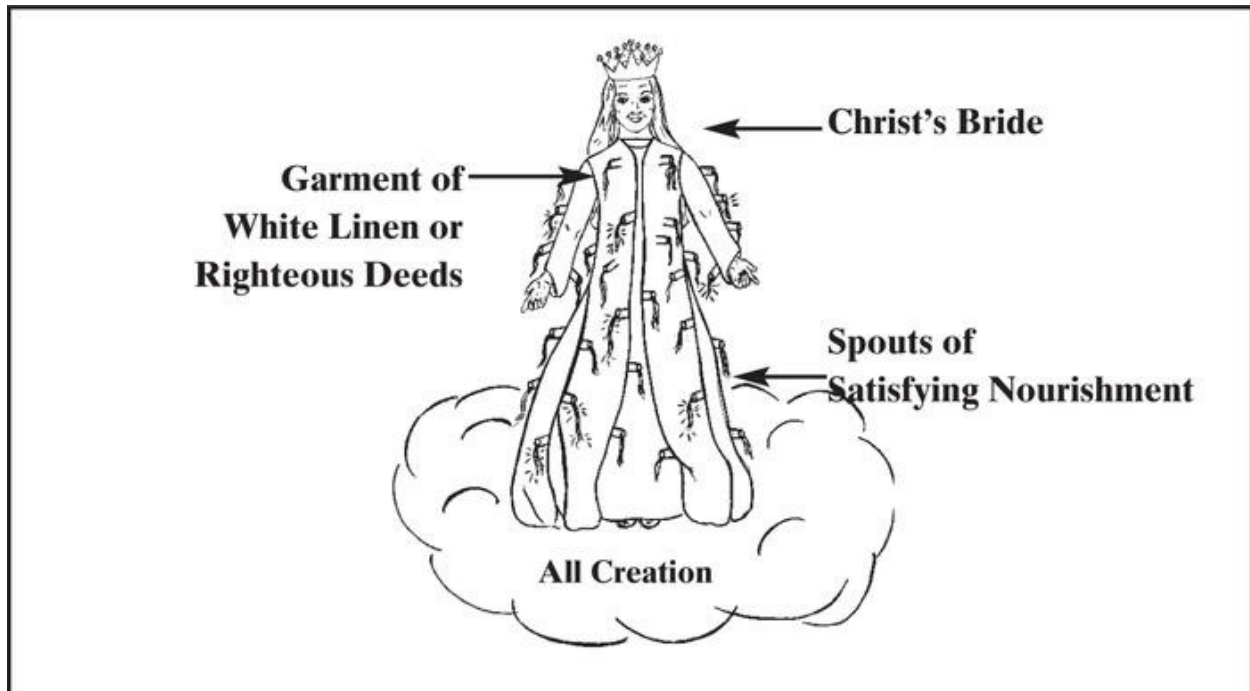
The person who is wearing a *Tsed-aw-kaw* Bridal Garment of Righteousness looks at persons and circumstances not from his own selfish interest, but from the point of selflessly giving to them what is their rightful due.

Remember, no tiny speck of Light, Life, and Love nor any tiny thread of Power and Strength is given to us for our selfish consumption. All our goods are given to us by God so that we can satisfy the Heart of God and the spirits and souls of mankind, thus rendering to them their just dues.

When we squander our Light, Life, and Love and waste our God-given forces outside the fence of God's Purposive Will, we are scoundrels before God and thieves before our fellow men.

Subsequent to his Salvation by Grace-Faith, Abraham's Grace-Works of confidence in the LORD God purchased him a Garment of Righteousness, from which he ultimately was to soothe, satisfy, and comfort the whole world. He worked to wait patiently for God's *Time* without distrusting God's *Truth*.

Christ's Bride also will be granted to be arrayed in a Garment of *Tsed-aw-kaw* Righteousness that will soothe, satisfy, and comfort all God's creation with Christ's Bridal Life, Light, and Love from the spouts of her Grace-Works or works of confidence in God's *Aw-man-Truth*.



All creation will draw nourishment from Christ's Bridal Garment of Righteousness, both in the Millennial Reign and in the New City.

After having made herself ready, the Bride will be revealed in her Clean and White Linen Dress.

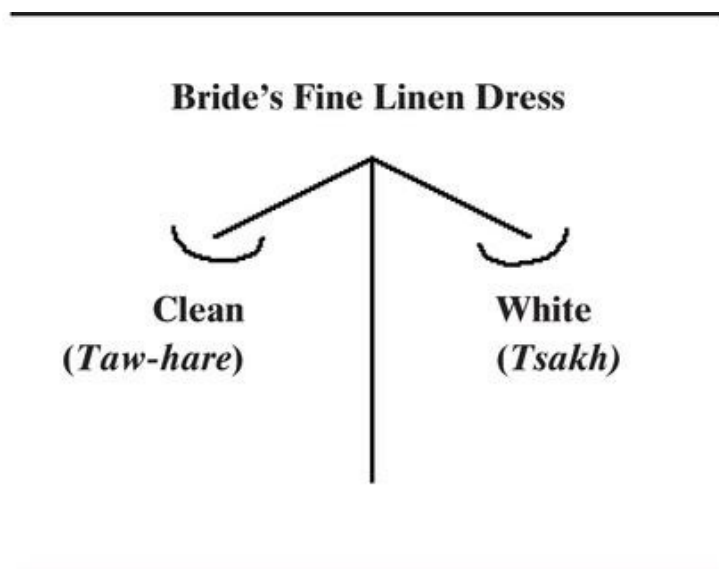
IV. The Revelation of the Bride's Dress

The Bride's Dress of Righteous Deeds is made of Fine Linen, Clean and White.

Linen is made of flax or hemp. First, a great amount of work goes into growing the flax or hemp. Second, more work is needed for the flax to go through the different, necessary operations which turn it into linen yarn. Third, a great deal more industry is employed to weave the linen yarn into linen cloth.

The Lamb's Wife, the Bride, "hath made herself ready" through the humility growth of her humility "flax" deeds of righteousness and her humility "yarn" deeds of righteousness, which, in turn, the Bridegroom has taken and woven into a suitable Wedding Dress for her marriage at the Marriage Feast of the Lamb.

The Bride's Fine Linen Dress will be both *Clean* and *White*.



A. Clean (*Taw-hare*) Linen

The Hebrew word *taw-hare* signifies to be bright and pure; to be physically sound, clear, and unadulterated; to be uncontaminated; morally innocent, and holy.

The only way to comprehend the true meaning of the Bride's Clean (*Taw-hare*) Linen is to look at the Spirit's usage of the word in the Scriptures. For example, the first usage of the Hebrew word *taw-hare* is found in the description of the seven clean animals, male and female, that Noah was to take into the ark (Genesis 7:2). *Taw-hare* animals were for sacrifice and food; therefore, they had to be transparent in God's Sight; that is, they had to allow rays of Light to pass through them, and to be of homogeneous particles.

Taw-hare means to be receptive to God's Light, to allow God's Rays of Light-Truth to pass through, while offering no resistance to them.

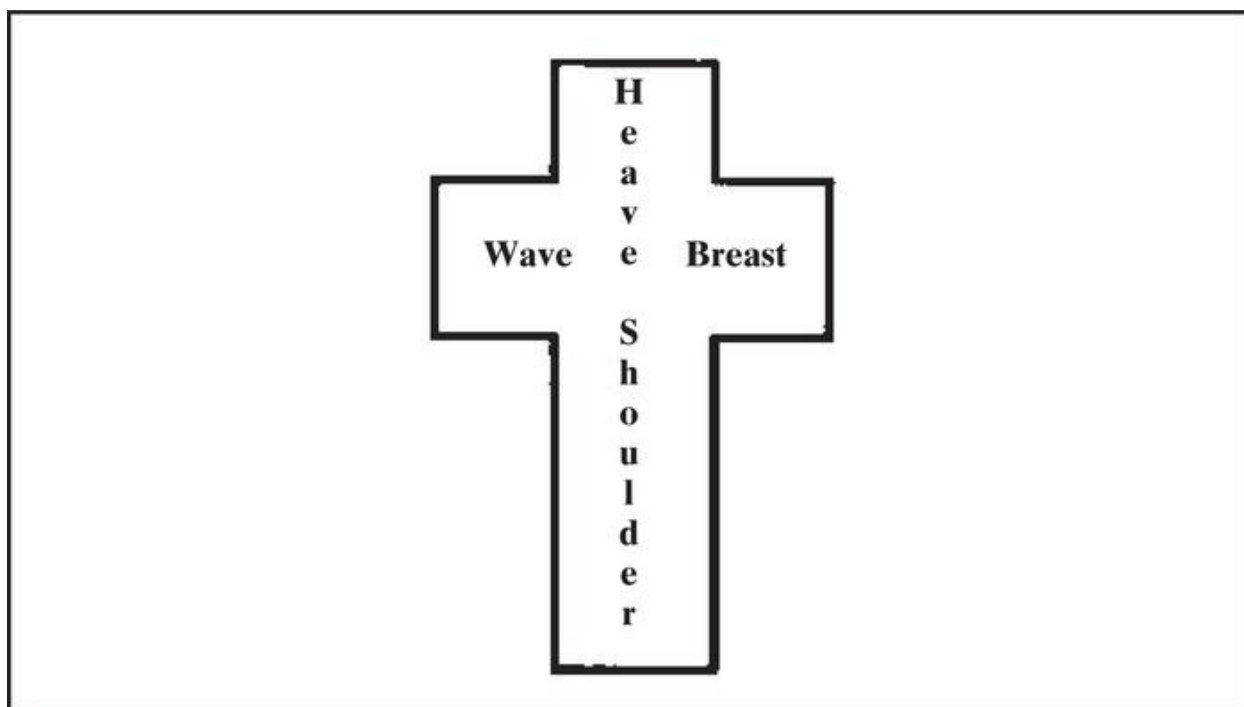
Through this meaning of *taw-hare*, we know that the Bride's righteous works will consist of the homogeneous particles of the Father's Gracious Light, plus her pure, humility surrender to God's radiating Rays of Light-Truth in all her minds and feelings.

All the gold used in the construction of the Mosaic Tabernacle was to be pure (*taw-hare*) gold, which represented the pure Wisdom of Truth found in the Stature of Jesus Christ Who was receptive in His Spirit, Soul, and Body to **ALL** His Father's Divine, radiating Rays of Light and Truth (Exodus 25:11). This fact shows that, while on Earth, the Bride's works will have consisted of the clean, golden Wisdom of the LORD Jesus Christ.

Again, we see the word *clean* used in conjunction with the sin offering. All the bullock (except its fat which was burned upon the whole burnt offering Altar) was carried forth to a clean (*taw-hare*) place without the camp (Leviticus 4:12). This was a picture of Jesus Christ, God's Eternal Sin Offering, being carried forth from Jerusalem, the spiritually proud, corrupt place, to a clean, humble place called Calvary, where He became our Saviour by dying for our sins.

This teaches us that the Bride's *Clean Linen* Works of Righteousness had their origin, governance, and guidance in and from the Crucified Christ at Calvary's Cross.

In another instance of the use of the word *clean*, we see the Priests were to share the wave-breast and the heave-shoulder with their sons and daughters in a *clean (taw-hare)* place, namely their homes (Leviticus 10:14). The wave-breast and heave-shoulder revealed a picture of the Stature or Flesh of the LORD Jesus Christ.



The wave-breast was waved in a horizontal position, and the heave-shoulder was heaved in a vertical position, which made the form of the Cross.

What we learn from this portion of God's Word is that the Bride's Clean Linen Works will have been done through strength obtained by feeding on the *full* Stature-Word of the LORD Jesus Christ, both in the horizontal position and in the vertical position.

Still another portion of Scripture refers to the word clean; this time the word is used in connection with the disease of leprosy. When the leper was cleansed from his leprosy of self-righteousness, he was pronounced "clean" (Leviticus 13:13). This teaches us that the Bride's Fine, Clean Linen Works of Righteousness are not achieved by her own leprous self-righteousness, but by the Grace-Faith of the LORD Jesus Christ.

B. Fine, White (*Tsakh*) Linen

The Bride's Dress also will consist of Fine *White* Linen of Righteous Works. The Hebrew word for *white* is *tsakh*, meaning dazzling, sunny, bright, evident, clear, dry, plain, and serene.

Let us look at the usage of the word *tsakh* in the Scriptures in order to obtain a vivid picture of the Bride's Fine *White* Linen Works.

The Bride in the Song of Solomon described her Bridegroom as being *white* and ruddy (Song of Solomon 5:10). The Bride described the beauty of her Husband's white-ruddy complexion as towering above ten thousand.

The Crucified Christ was *White (Tsakh)* in His spotless Purity of Heart and Life, in His Thoughts and Righteous Deeds. He was *ruddy* with Blood during His efficacious Sufferings at Death.

This teaches us that, just as Christ Jesus slowly performed His Fine White Linen Works of Righteousness in His Thoughts and Deeds — all the way to His Death on the Cross, His Bride also will have given herself to *White (Tsakh)* Works of Righteous Trust in God's Holy Headship in her thoughts and deeds — all the way to the crucifixion of her fleshly nature.

God gave the Prophet Isaiah the assurance of His *White* Righteous Works by promising to appear, in season, to the *comfort* of His people and to the *confusion* of His enemies.

For so the LORD said unto me, *I will take my rest*, and I will consider in my dwelling place *like a clear heat* upon herbs, and *like a cloud of dew* in the heat of harvest (Isaiah 18:4).

God quietly looked on Jerusalem, His chosen City, while Assyria plotted to destroy Israel. But as the union of

heat and dew mysteriously cause the crops to ripen slowly and steadily, God's Clear, White Works of Righteous Judgments against Assyria silently and slowly matured until they came to fruition and brought Israel's enemies to ruin.

This instance in Israel's history gives us a picture of how the Bride will have grown and spun her Linen Yarn of Righteous Works during the days of her flesh. She will have looked on, quietly and serenely, with "White Linen Trust" in God's Holy Nature, during her earthly persecution and rejections for Christ's sake, while she has waited for God's clear Heat and cloud of Dew to ripen His Judgments against her enemies.

The Prophet Isaiah proclaimed God's Power to change the rash ones and the stammerers — a picture of God's Power to change the flesh of the Bride into His Righteousness.

The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly (Isaiah 32:4).

The rash ones, referred to in this verse, are the hasty ones who act upon their unconverted, undisciplined impulses and feelings. The stammerers are the evil-minded ones who are afraid to speak plainly (*tsakh*), lest their secret, evil designs be discovered.

This reveals to us the depths of the Bride's regeneration, conversion, conformation, and transformation, which she will have experienced during the days of her flesh. She will have understood that the LORD Jesus Christ is her Head; therefore, her heart will have been disciplined and governed by His Grace-Faith. Her tongue will have learned to speak plainly (*tsakh*) of the LORD's hidden Truth. Thus, in the days of her flesh, she will have grown spiritually, and she will have spun *White Linen Yarn* for her Heavenly Wedding Dress.

All these Scriptures tell us how the Bride's Dress will have been made out of her *Clean (Taw-hare)* and her *Fine, White (Tsakh)* Righteous Works of Grace-Faith in the LORD Jesus Christ during the days of her fleshly existence on Earth.

Through the revelation given to the Apostle John, we are able to understand many Spiritual Principles that will help us to be ready for the Coming of the Bridegroom.

Verses seven and eight of Revelation, chapter nineteen, exhort us to be glad and rejoice, and we have seen that our gladness and rejoicing are to be "within" and "without." We are to be filled inwardly with gladness over all the LORD has done and will do for us through His Spirit and Truth. And we are to rejoice outwardly, expressing our great joy and delight for our deliverance from the world, our flesh, and the Devil who would destroy us.

God also revealed through John that we are to give Honour to the LORD. This Honour is God's *Kabode* Glory, which we receive from God's Headship as we journey through our life on Earth. We receive Glory in the following ways:

- (1) As we cry for the Spiritual Meat and Bread of Truth which we need for our spiritual growth.
- (2) As we seek to follow the LORD's Headship which leads us on in His Master Plan and Purposive Will for our life.
- (3) As we intercede and travail in the Spirit as Priests, seeking the LORD's Overcoming Power.
- (4) As we give ourself in exclusive surrender to the LORD.
- (5) As we pray for the LORD to expose our carnal nature so that we can offer it to Him to be regenerated, converted, conformed, and transformed into His Nature.
- (6) As we praise the LORD for Truth that has built a Living Stature of Truth within us in the form of the Cross.
- (7) As we receive, with thanksgiving, the LORD's Judgment of our rebellious flesh which would keep us from being like Jesus.

Thus far, we also have learned from our study that, as Christ's Bride, we are to obey the LORD out of our love for His Humility Sacrifice, and we are to make ourself ready for His Coming. Our readiness depends upon Christ's Gift of Salvation and our works of praying and studying so that our deeds will be deeds of righteous belief and confidence, done through the God of *Aw-man-Truth*.

Our righteousness comes by Grace-Faith or by our faith in Jesus Christ to give us Salvation, and by Grace-Works or by our "selfless" giving to others what is their rightful due.

From our righteous deeds, God makes us a Wedding Dress of Fine, Clean and White Linen. *Clean* means we have

received the Light of God's Truth and that our works have consisted of the Clean, Golden Humility Wisdom of the LORD Jesus Christ and that they have been performed through the Strength of His Word, not through our following our carnal wisdom and strength and our own self-righteousness.

The White Linen that God uses to make our Wedding Dress is the righteous trust we, as His Bride, have placed in God's Holy Headship to lead and guide us into His Ways of Crucifixion so that our carnal nature will have been changed into His glorious Likeness and Image.

* B. R. Hicks, "[*The Sixteen Minds in Man's Will, Spirit, Soul, and Body*](#)," (printed notes available from Christ Gospel Press, P. O. Box 786, Jeffersonville, Indiana 47131-0786).

Chapter Two

The Marriage Supper of the Lamb

At the Wedding Feast, the Bride will be dressed in Fine Linen, which is her Clean and White Deeds of Righteousness. She will not be dressed in a gaudy and gay dress of unrighteous works, like the Mother of Harlots.

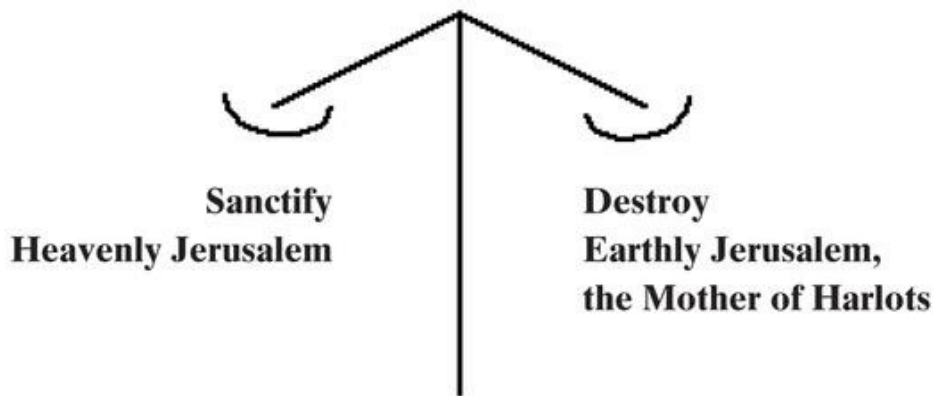
Arrayed in her Dress of Fine White Linen, the Bride, then, will go to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, which will be a joyous occasion.

And he saith unto me, Write, *Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb.* And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God. And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy (Revelation 19:9,10).

I. The Bridegroom and the Bride's Heavenly Works Before the Marriage Supper Will Begin

Before the LORD Jesus Christ, the Lamb, publicly will celebrate His Marriage with His Bride in the Heavenly Jerusalem, He and His Servant-Bride will sanctify the Heavenly Jerusalem and destroy the earthly Jerusalem, the Mother of Harlots, who will have taught the whole world to reject Jesus Christ as the Messiah.

Bridegroom and Bride's Heavenly Works



Everyone and everything which has set itself in opposition to Christ's Eternal Sacrifice will be cast down and hurled down.

Before Christ publicly spreads His Marriage Supper in Heaven for His Bride and all His guests, He and His Bride will cleanse the Heavenly City of all unclean presences.

A. The Heavenly Jerusalem Will Be Sanctified

Jesus gave a Parable, which is recorded in the Book of Matthew, in which He described the sanctification of the

Heavenly Jerusalem before the Marriage Supper will be served.

So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all as many as they found, *both bad and good*: and the wedding was furnished with guests. And when the king came in to see the guests, *he saw there a man which had not on a wedding garment*: And he saith unto him, Friend, how camest thou in hither not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless. Then said the king to the servants, *Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth*. For many are called, but few are chosen (Matthew 22:10-14).

In the Parable, Jesus Christ was speaking of Himself as the King, and when He came in to inspect His guests to be sure they each had on a Wedding Garment (his or her glorified body), He found a person among the people who did not have on his glorified Wedding Dress or body. The King, the Bridegroom, called His Servants or His Bride to bind the hands and feet of this one who proudly had dared to intrude into the Marriage Celebration of the Lamb, defiling it with his disobedient presence.

What a shocking surprise this must have been to this one who was priding himself because of the place he thought he securely had possessed at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb. But this unprepared guest was a “spot” in Christ’s Feast. He was a dis-honour to Christ’s Resurrection Power. He was an affront to Christ’s Bride and her Fine, Clean, and White Linen of her Righteous Deeds. Furthermore, he was a disgrace to himself.

The presumptuous intrusion of this thief and robber earned him the judgment of the King, the Bridegroom. He was arraigned by Christ. He was convicted and condemned by his own conscience; and he was thrown out by the Bride, the Servants of Christ.

He was ordered to be cast away from the communion of Christ’s Marriage Supper and to be cast into the doleful dungeon of outer darkness where there will be “weeping” and “gnashing of teeth.” This kind of weeping is an expression of the greatest sorrow, and gnashing of teeth is an expression of the greatest degree of rage and indignation possible. Consequently, the King, the Bridegroom, and His Bride will sanctify the Heavenly Jerusalem before the Marriage Supper of the Lamb is served.

The LORD Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom, also will destroy the earthly Jerusalem, the Mother of Harlots, before the Marriage Supper is served in the sanctified Heavenly Jerusalem.

B. The Earthly Jerusalem Will Be Destroyed

The old, earthly Jerusalem is called Mystery, Babylon, Sodom, and Egypt.

And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.... And *the woman* which thou sawest is *that great city*, which reigneth over the kings of the earth (Revelation 17:5,18).

And cried when they saw the smoke of her burning, saying, *What city is like unto this great city!* And they cast dust on their heads, and cried, weeping and wailing, saying, Alas, alas that great city, wherein were made rich all that had ships in the sea by reason of her costliness! for in one hour is she made desolate. Rejoice over her, thou heaven, and ye holy apostles and prophets; for God hath avenged you on her. And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying, *Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down*, and shall be found no more at all (Revelation 18:18-21).

And their dead bodies shall lie in the street of *the great city*, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, *where also our Lord was crucified* (Revelation 11:8).

Old Jerusalem or Mystery Babylon will ride upon the powerful back of the Antichrist, who will be her supposed Messiah, and she will reign over the kings of the Earth. Because of her crucifying of Jesus Christ, her true Messiah, her murderings of Christ’s servants, and her spiritual idolatry in accepting the Antichrist as her Messiah, she will be judged with ice and fire from above.

The LORD Jesus Christ, the Lamb-Bridegroom, and His Bride cannot enjoy the Marriage Supper of the Lamb as long as the harlot, Old Jerusalem, is sending up the smoke of her filth and iniquity into God’s Nostrils. Therefore, she will be destroyed so that the Marriage Supper of the Lamb can proceed.

II. God’s “Called” Ones

Besides the Bride, many friends, guests, relatives, and virgins, who have received the *Call* to the Marriage Supper, will be at the Wedding. This is pictured in the Song of Solomon.

There are *threescore queens*, and *fourscore concubines*, and *virgins without number*. My dove, my undefiled is but one; she is the only one of her mother, she is the choice one of her that bare her. The daughters saw her, and blessed her; yea, the queens and the concubines, and they praised her. Who is she that looketh forth as the morning, fair as the moon, clear as the sun, and terrible as an army with banners? (Song of Solomon 6:8-10).

Although many are called to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, the humble Dove-Bride is the only One who has won the Heart of the Bridegroom in Holy Spiritual Matrimony. She is the only One who “looketh forth as the morning.” The Hebrew word for *morning* is *shaw-khar*, meaning the first rays of dawn.

“*Shaw-khar*” dawn means the “doorkeeper” of the natural day, to draw back the curtains of night, unveiling the Sun in all its glory and splendour.

Lucifer was set in Heaven to be the “Son of the *Shaw-khar* Dawn or Morning” who would draw back the curtains, revealing the LORD Christ, the Sun of Righteousness, in all His Glory and Splendour. However, Lucifer became jealous of the Sun of Righteousness and defected from God. From then on, he used his “doorkeeping” power of the *shaw-khar* dawn or morning to unveil his proud self instead of unveiling the Sun of Righteousness.

Christ’s Bride “looketh forth as the morning.” That is, she bends and stoops in order to observe how she can unveil the Bridegroom, the Sun of Righteousness, in all His Glory and Splendour, just as she unveiled Him to the daughters of Jerusalem in chapter five of the Song of Solomon.

No one can attend the Marriage Supper of the Lamb without receiving the Call to attend. The Hebrew word for *call* is *kaw-raw*, meaning to call out to or to address by name; to cry, call out, shout after anyone; to cry for help; to call upon; invoke; to proclaim, publish; to proclaim the name of; hence to praise, celebrate; to call for, either summon or invite; hence, to call together.

A. Israel “Called”

Let us look at some of the times the Hebrew word for *call* (*kaw-raw*) appears in the Scriptures so that we can understand better the personal Call that each of the friends, relatives, queens, and concubines have received in order to be counted worthy to attend the Marriage Supper of the Lamb.

The Prophet Isaiah had a clear understanding of the Hebrew word *kaw-raw*.

But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, *I have called [kaw-raw] thee by thy name*; thou art mine. When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee: when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon thee. For I am the LORD thy God, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour: I gave Egypt for thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for thee. Since thou wast precious in my sight, thou hast been honourable, and I have loved thee: therefore will I give men for thee, and people for thy life (Isaiah 43:1-4).

In the previous chapter of the Book of Isaiah, chapter forty-two, God recorded how He subjected Israel to humiliation and exile because of her idolatrous sins. However, in the forty-third chapter, God assured Israel that He personally had *called* her by name; therefore, she would be able to pass unscorched and unscathed through fire and water.

Those whose names personally are called by Jesus Christ always will be liberated and brought to their Divinely Appointed Destination, if they hear and surrender to His Call.

B. Gentiles “Called”

God also personally called Cyrus, a Gentile King, to power and greatness for the purpose of helping His penitent exiles return to their homeland, Israel.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, *my called*; I am he; I am the first, I also am the last (Isaiah 48:12).

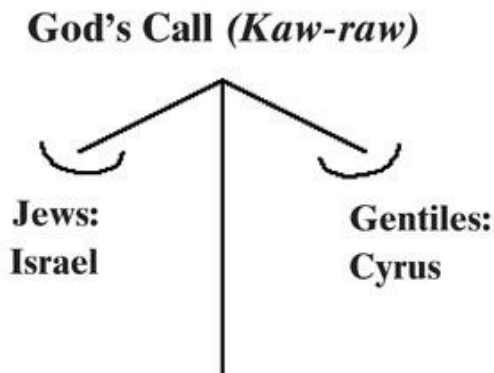
Israel had received a special Call unto the LORD to be His chosen people and to fulfill His Purposive Will for them.

And I will give thee the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that thou mayest know that *I, the LORD, which call thee by thy name, am the God of Israel*. For Jacob my servant's sake, and Israel mine elect, *I have even called thee by thy name*: I have surnamed thee, though thou hast not known me (Isaiah 45:3,4).

God personally called Cyrus “My anointed” and “My shepherd” and Divinely elevated him to power and greatness for the work He had called him to do.

Although Cyrus was a stranger to God's Sovereignty and to the Divine Mission with which he had been entrusted, God still *personally* called him, not according to Cyrus' merits, but according to God's Mercy did He call him.

Thus, we see that both Jews and Gentiles have received a personal Call to fulfill their Divine Destinies.



Likewise, the Marriage Supper of the Lamb will be filled with the Bride, friends, guests, relatives, virgins, queens, and concubines, all of whom have heard the *Kaw-raw* Call of God's Spirit and Word to attend the Marriage Supper of the Lamb.

III. Old Testament Overcomers “Called” to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

The Marriage Supper of the Lamb will be filled with *overcomers* from both the Old Testament dispensation and the New Testament dispensation. The necessary Wedding Garment, in order to attend the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, is a resurrected body. Not all the Old Testament believers were resurrected when Christ arose from the dead and led captivity captive. He took only the overcomers with Him.

And the graves were opened; *and many bodies of the saints which slept arose*, And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many (Matthew 27:52,53).

Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men. (Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth? He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.) (Ephesians 4:8-10).

Thou hast ascended on high, thou hast led captivity captive: thou hast received gifts for men: yea, for the rebellious also, that the LORD God might dwell among them (Psalm 68:18).

The risen LORD Jesus Christ did not bring all Old Testament believers with Him after His Resurrection, only the *overcoming* believers. The Scripture clearly states that *many* came up — not that *all* came up.

Before Jesus Christ died and rose again and placed His Resurrected Blood upon the Mercy Seat in Heaven, the Old Testament believers were held captive in bondage and imprisonment by Death in the lower Paradise (Luke

16:19-31). *Many* of these believers, those who were overcomers, came up from their graves after Christ's Resurrection. The others will be resurrected at the Great White Throne Judgment.

And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire (Revelation 20:11-15).

Although I will deal with the Great White Throne Judgment later in this book, I now call your attention to the fact that Death or Paradise will give up its dead at that time — the time of the Great White Throne Judgment, which lets us know that others, who did not come up as overcomers when Jesus Christ arose from the grave, will come up at the Great White Throne Judgment.

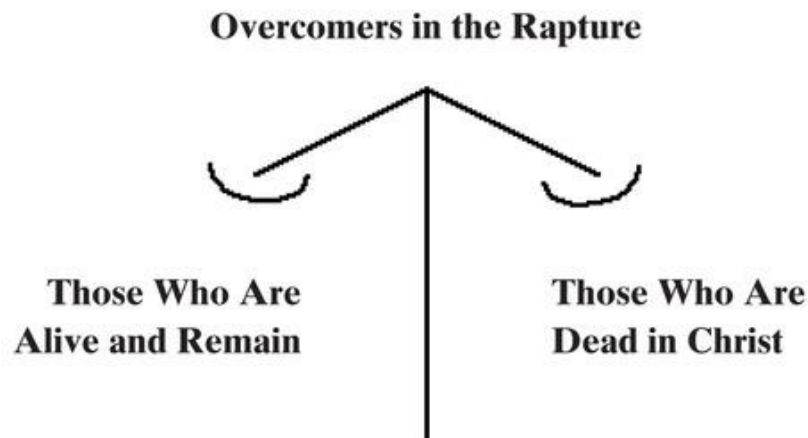
The Book of Life also is present and will be opened at the Great White Throne Judgment, proving there will be believers present whose names are in this Book. Thus, it is evident that they were not resurrected in any of the three phases of the first resurrection.

IV. New Testament Overcomers “Called” to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

In the New Testament, at the Rapture, when Jesus Christ comes in the air (not to the Earth), He will resurrect other believers who have lived and died as overcomers since His Resurrection from the grave.

For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and *the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air:* and so shall we ever be with the Lord. Wherefore comfort one another with these words (1 Thessalonians 4:14-18).

Let us look at the condition of those who are alive and remain and those who are dead in Christ at His Coming in the air. The “catching away” of these two groups of people reveals the Truth that those who are “dead in Christ” *were overcomers* when they died since they will be resurrected at this time to go with Jesus and those who are “alive and remain.”



First, let us study what it means to be “alive and remain” at the Coming of the LORD.

A. Those Who Are Alive and Remain

The Hebrew word, here, for *remain* is *yaw-thar*, meaning to abound, cause to abound, to excel, abundance, profit, more, and further.

For example, when Reuben, Jacob’s firstborn son, did not *remain* in a good moral condition before God and his father, he lost the privilege to *remain* or excel among his brethren; he lost his birthright.

Reuben, thou art my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power: Unstable as water, *thou shalt not excel [yaw-thar]*; because thou wentest up to thy father’s bed; then defiledst thou it: he went up to my couch (Genesis 49:3,4).

Reuben was forbidden to remain (*yaw-thar*) or excel. He lost his birthright because he failed to be an overcomer and remain in a Holy, moral state. His birthright as firstborn entitled him to be:

- King of the family
- Priest of the family
- Prophet of the family

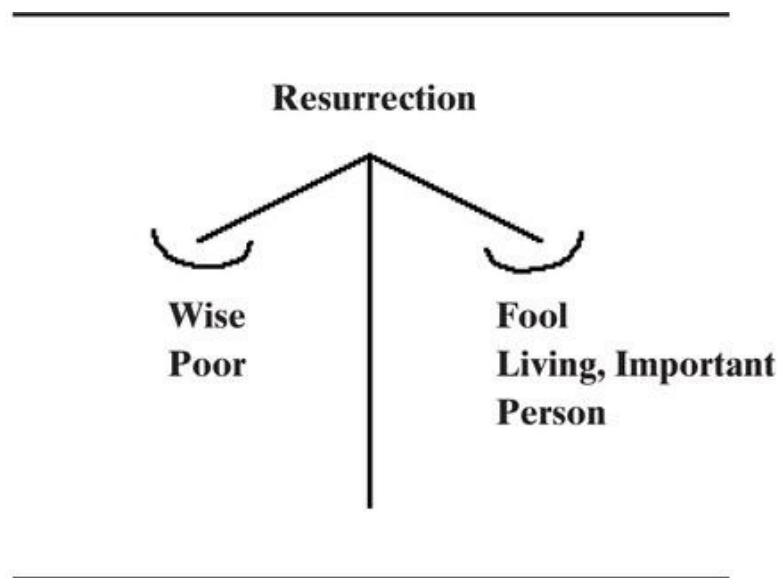
However, after Reuben lost his birthright as firstborn, the position of King of the family was given to Judah; the ministry of Priest of the family was given to Levi; and the ministry of the Prophet of the family was given to Joseph. This does not mean that Reuben was annihilated from the twelve tribes; however, because he was not an overcomer, he suffered the loss of very special privileges.

By the same Principle, those who are alive, but who have failed to *remain* in a Holy, moral state will lose the privilege of being resurrected or translated and meeting Jesus when He comes in the air.

The wise man in Ecclesiastes asked what advantage or what more (*yaw-thar*) the wise man has who remains in the path of Wisdom, any more than the fool has who remains in the path of foolishness.

All the labour of man is for his mouth, and yet the appetite is not filled. For what hath the wise more [*yaw-thar*] than the fool? what hath the poor, that knoweth to walk before the living? (Ecclesiastes 6:7,8).

The answer is this: Although the wise and the fool or the poor and the living have the same common human end, which is death, they will be diametrically different in the resurrection.



It is better to be poverty-stricken in this world and lay hold of God’s Wisdom in theory and in experience and

remain in the thirty-two paths of Wisdom than to be a fool without God's Wisdom. The fool may be a living, important personage in his community in this life but be unsatisfied in his ambitions and desires. On the other hand, the wise man will excel by eating God's Truth, which will satisfy him in his spirit and soul. Therefore, the wise man will *remain* as an overcomer until the LORD appears in the air. The LORD is not coming for the fool, so the fool's importance is fleeting.

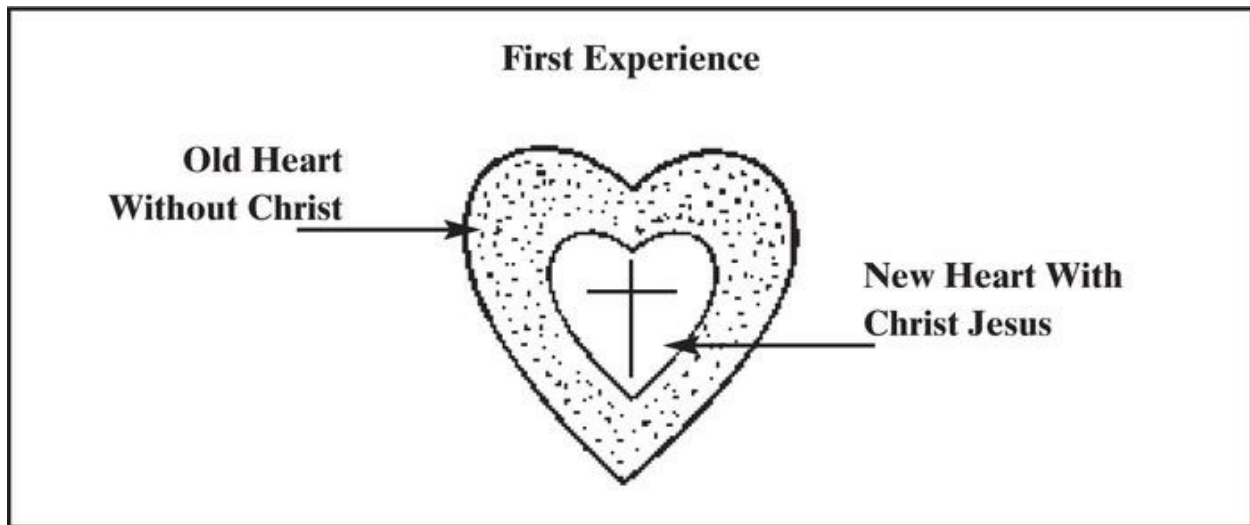
The "important" fool will lead a cheerless life, being afflicted with insatiable, spiritual hunger in his spirit and soul, which his foolish minds will refuse to satisfy by seeking God's Wisdom. Hence, he will not *excel* (*yaw-thar*) at the coming of the LORD.

Christ is coming in the air, at the Rapture, for those who are *alive* and *remain*. Those who are overcomers, excelling in God's Word and Spirit, will be caught up to meet Him.

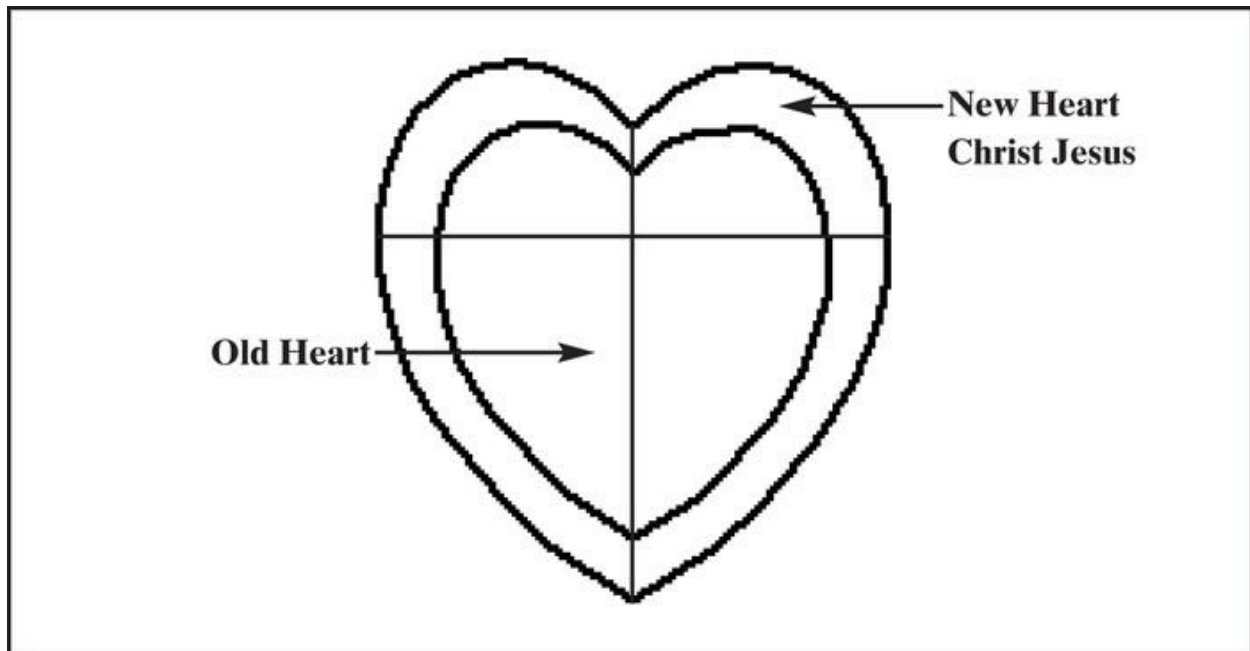
The overcoming believers who died *in Christ* also will be resurrected at the Rapture.

B. Those Who Are Dead *in Christ*

Let us consider what it means to be *in Christ*. Before we can experience being in Christ Jesus, we first must take Him into our heart.



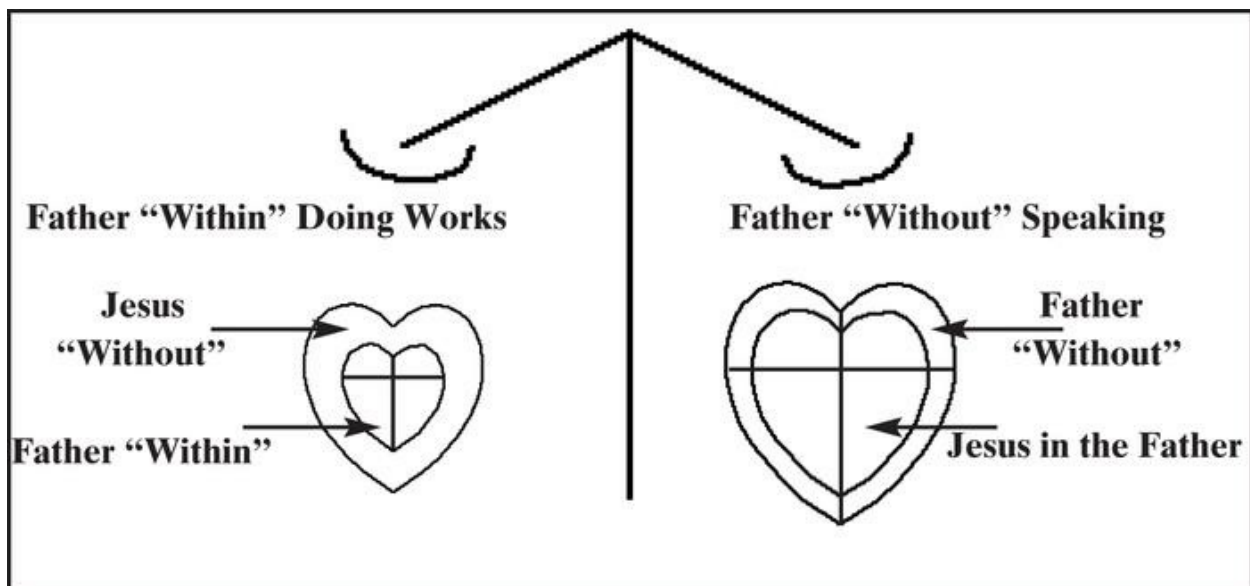
We must allow Jesus Christ to feed our New Heart and to crucify the fleshly nature in our old heart so that the New Heart or New Man can grow larger than our old heart. Then, we will experience being *in Christ*.



To be *in* Christ Jesus means that He has grown within us and taken Authority and Power over our old heart. It means the minds in our will, spirit, soul, and body, sixteen in all, are under the rule and reign of Christ. Jesus Christ had this same kind of subjection in His Relationship with His Father.

Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works. Believe me that *I am in the Father, and the Father in me*: or else believe me for the very works' sake (John 14:10,11).

Jesus was controlled by His Father both from "within" and "without."



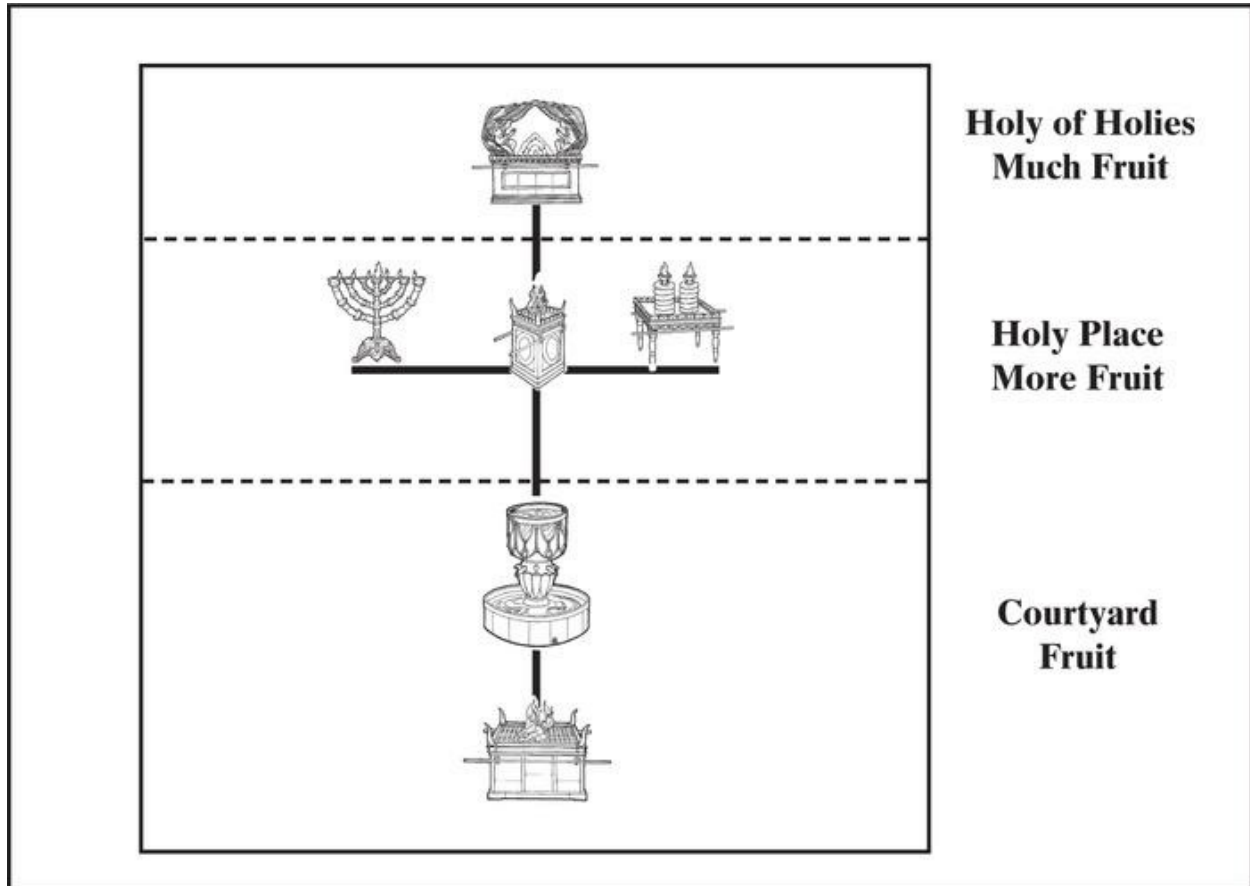
Jesus was controlled so perfectly by His Father that His very Words that came forth "without" were the Words of the Father. The Father's invisible, Divine, Infinite Power from "within" Jesus enabled Him to do miraculous Works.

Likewise, if we allow Christ Jesus to abide in us, and if we abide *in Christ*, we will bring forth *much fruit* or good works.

Every branch in me that beareth not fruit he taketh away: and every branch that beareth *fruit*, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth *more fruit*....

Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth *much fruit*: for without me ye can do nothing.... If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you. Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples (John 15:2,4,5,7,8).

Jesus spoke in this chapter of fruit, more fruit, and much fruit. Each designation fits with Christ's Stature in the Mosaic Tabernacle.



Jesus showed us how we can glorify the Father by abiding, by remaining *in Christ* and bringing forth *much fruit*.

This allows us to see how the dead *in Christ*, the overcomers, are to be raised at the Rapture when Jesus appears in the air.

This also allows us to see how special the Call is to those who will be attending the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, whether they be the Bride, the friends, guests, virgins, concubines, or queens.

V. The New Drink at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

Jesus promised His Disciples He would not drink the special fruit of the vine any more until He drinks it new with them in His Father's Kingdom or at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb in the New City, the Heavenly Jerusalem.

And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; *this is my body*. And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it; For *this is my blood* of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. But I say unto you, *I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom* (Matthew 26:26-29).

Jesus clearly stated that, at the Last Supper, His Body and Blood rested upon the bread and cup so completely that

He could say, “This is my body. This is my blood.”

It is plain to see that Jesus was not talking about His Human Blood and Body, since His Human Blood was still flowing in His Veins and His Human Body was still intact. Jesus was speaking of Christ’s Divine Body and Blood, which abode “within” and which had been slain from the foundation of the world.

And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of *the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world* (Revelation 13:8).

From the beginning, the Father placed all His Creative Substance in His only Begotten Son, the Christ. Then, the Son willingly gave Himself to be offered upon His Father’s Altar, allowing His Blood-substance to be poured forth, out of which God commanded all things to be made.

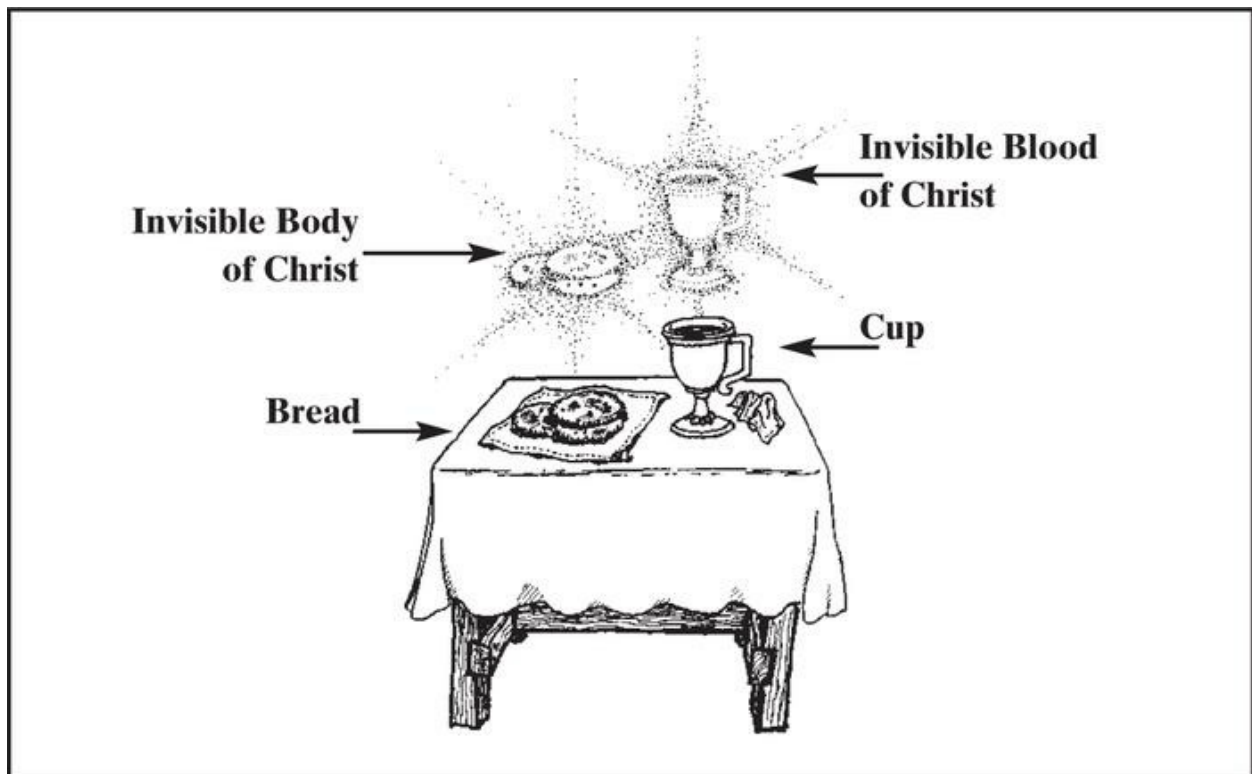
Let them praise the name of the LORD: for *he commanded, and they were created*: (Psalm 148:5).

God formed man out of the dust of the ground that already had been created.

And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground [ad-aw-maw], and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul (Genesis 2:7).

The Hebrew word for *ground* is *ad-aw-maw* which comes from the word *aw-dam*, meaning to show blood in the face; *aw-dam* is from the word *dawm* or blood. Thus, the very ground out of which God made man came from Christ’s Creative Blood that was shed from the foundation of the world. This is why Jesus Christ had to come to Earth and shed His Redemptive Blood upon the Cross — so that He could redeem His Creative Blood in man.

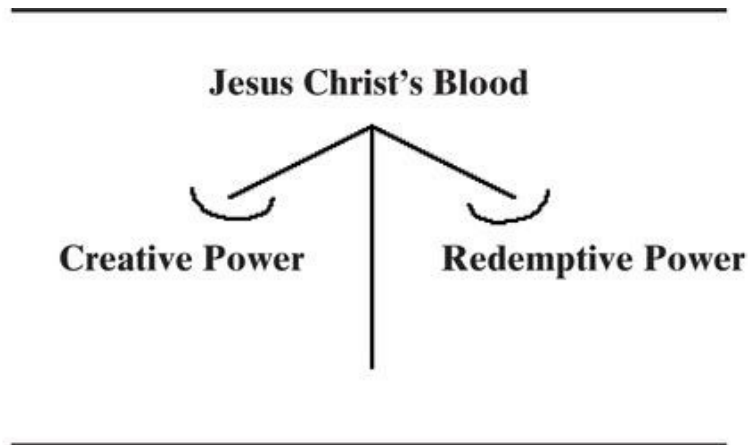
However, before Jesus Christ shed His Redemptive Blood upon the Cross, He gave His Disciples a foretaste of the Creative Blood of the Christ that would be joined to His Redemptive Blood on the Cross.



Because Christ was the Divine Word-side of the Son of God, His Body and Blood could reach out to the Communion Table and cover the bread and wine. Therefore, Jesus Christ was justified in saying, “This is my body. This is my blood.”

When Jesus Christ rose again, His Redemptive Blood also was resurrected and was, therefore, joined to Christ’s

Creative Blood in its Omnipresent state. Thus, fallen man needs both the Creative Blood and the Redemptive Blood of Jesus Christ.



By Christ, we were God's Workmanship in the beginning, and our New Man also is His Workmanship.

For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them (Ephesians 2:10).

God created our new man for good works of faith and obedience, just as He purposed for man in the beginning.

And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness (Ephesians 4:24).

Because our old man or old heart is totally depraved, Christ's Creative Blood forms a New Man, a New Nature, a New Principle of Grace in our heart when we become a believer. God, through the Creative Blood of Jesus Christ, causes our New Man or New Heart to come into existence, and He causes it to grow in the Image and Likeness of Christ's Spiritual Stature as we feed on His Living Word of Truth.

Jesus Christ's Redemptive Blood has delivered us from sin and its penalties by becoming a Sacrifice for sinners. Jesus' Redemptive Blood has set us free from the penalty of Death and Hell. It has rescued us from Lucifer's sovereign control.

In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace; (Ephesians 1:7).

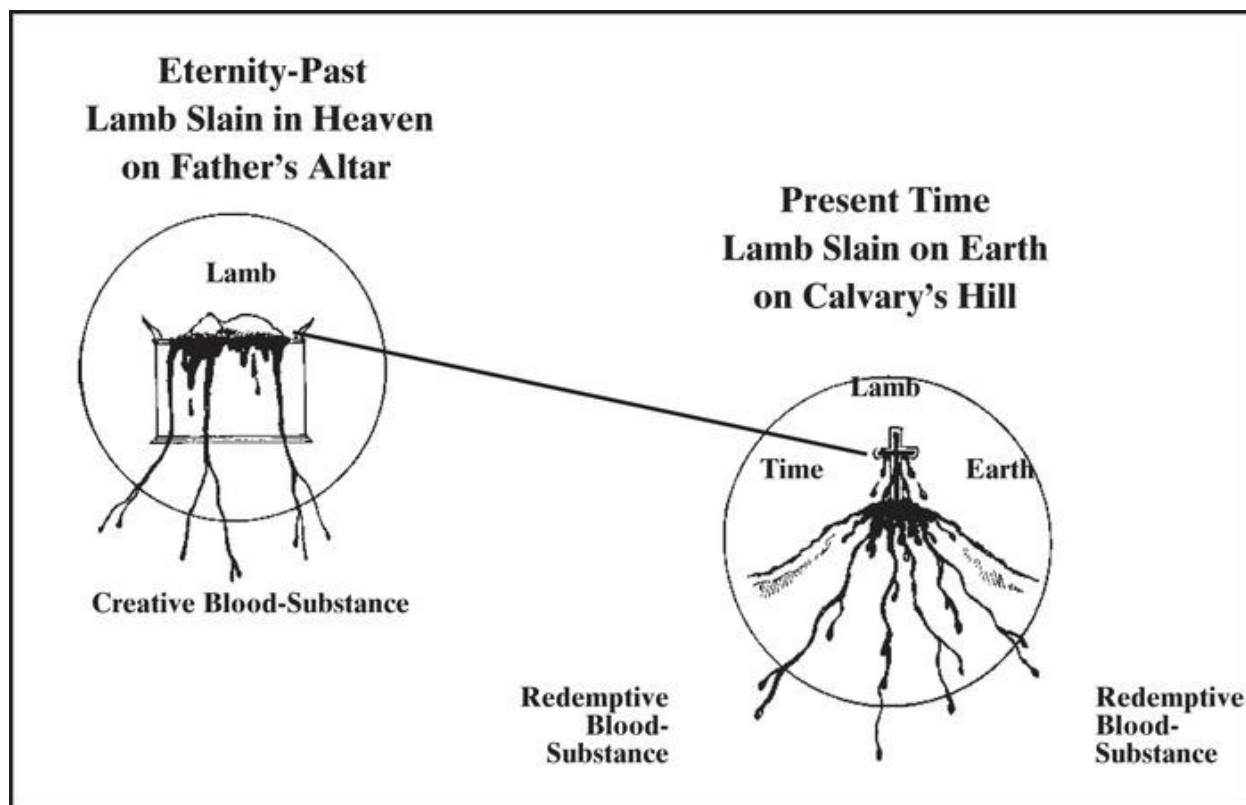
In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins: (Colossians 1:14).

And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; (Revelation 5:9).

The guilt and stain of sin upon Christ's Creative Blood-substance in our being can be removed and cleansed only by Jesus Christ's Redemptive Blood. All our spiritual blessings flow down to us in that Crimson Stream!

This great Eternal Benefit was dearly bought, paid for, and is freely given to us by faith in the Grace of Jesus Christ. The Father was satisfied entirely when He saw the Crimson Stream of Jesus' Redemptive Blood flowing in unison with Christ's Crimson Stream of Creative Blood, knowing He had provided the Eternal Substance to meet all man's needs.

The Lamb's Intrinsic Excellence, resulting from His Superior Moral Goodness through the dual sacrifice of His Holy Blood from the foundation of the world and in the world, makes Him worthy to receive all Glory, Honour, and Praise.



The LORD Jesus Christ, the Father's Lamb, existed in Eternity-Past, and He came down to Earth in time. While on Earth, He gave His Disciples a prophetic foretaste of His Creative Blood that would be served at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb. However, when Jesus served His Creative Blood at the Last Supper, His Disciples were still contained in the darkness and ignorance of their vile, human bodies. But at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, all who are present and who are allowed to partake of the LORD's Body and Creative, Redemptive Blood of the Lamb will be in new, resurrected, glorious bodies. Therefore, instead of drinking and eating in the darkness and ignorance of their old human bodies, they will be eating and drinking in the Light and Wisdom of their new, resurrected bodies.

This is why Jesus said, "I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until *that day* [at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb] when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom" (Matthew 26:29). Jesus is the Vine (John 15:1), and His Creative and Redemptive Blood is the Fruit of the Vine.

The Lamb's Blood will be new; that is, the original appearance, quality, and vigour will not have been affected by time or use.

What a glorious privilege for a person to receive an invitation to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, even to be a guest. But how much more glorious for a person to receive an invitation to be in Christ's Bride. But we must make preparation in order to be allowed entrance into this Eternal Event. The Bride will be the one who will eat and drink of the greatest *newness* of Christ's Creative and Redemptive Blood by reason of her Resurrected Light and Wisdom.

"These are the true sayings of God" (Revelation 19:9). God's Word is Divinely True. It is free from error; it is True, Enduring, and Infallible. Therefore, these words give us faith, hope, and courage, and they are a great blessing to us for these reasons.

This is a sure revelation from God. Therefore, it is a stable guide to help us prepare to be in Christ's Bride, where we can eat and drink of Christ's Creative, Redemptive Blood with the greatest of spiritual delight.

If we believe God's sure revelation to us, we will listen attentively, and we will judge what we hear from others by the LORD's Infallible Standard of Truth found in the Scriptures. We will guard and keep the LORD's True Words of Assurance in our heart, which will grow into Trees of Confidence and Understanding and which will give us rest and peace that passeth all understanding.

If we will submit reverently to God's Words of Truth, obey their Precepts and Statutes, trust their Teaching, and regard their Prophecies, they will help us to grow up into the Bride of Christ. Thus, they will help us lay hold of the

Prize, which is being in the Bride of Christ. When His Wedding Day comes, then, we can march into the Marriage Supper of the Lamb with humble, secure confidence of receiving a royal welcome from our Heavenly Bridegroom.

VI. Identity of the Messenger Who Will Announce the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

The Apostle John's soul was so carried away with emotional gladness, and his spirit was so enraptured with experiential joy at this Heavenly Vision of the Marriage Supper that he fell down at the feet of the messenger to worship him. John's thoughts momentarily were overcome with such spiritual ecstasy that he became disoriented and was ready to give worship, his extreme devotion and intense love, to the creature instead of to the Creator. However, the faithful messenger restrained John until he could regain his composure. God's faithful servant instructed John that the LORD God is the only proper object of worship.

The faithful messenger revealed to John who he was:

- A fellowservant
- Thy brethren
- One who has the testimony of Jesus

The faithful messenger was a fellowservant, a fellow-partner or slave, sent to perform God's Purposive Will. He was one of John's brethren, a blood relative in both the natural and the spiritual realms. He also had the testimony of Jesus. He was sent to establish further proof of God's Master Plan through Jesus Christ.

The entire Bible is the testimony of Jesus. Jesus Christ is the *Theme* in all the Bible. He is the Theme of Bible History, the Theme of all Moral Principles, the Theme of all Seed, the Theme of all Prose and Poetry, and He is the Theme of all Prophecy, both dark and bright.

Although Prophecy has been spoken throughout many days and recorded through many writing pens, presenting many diverse subjects, the testimony of it is from one Divine Mind, Will, and Spirit; and it is for one Purpose, which is to reveal Jesus, God's only Begotten Son. The marvelous unity through all the fragments and portions, great and small, of the Bible is an Infinite wonder! Jesus Christ is the All and in all of Prophecy.

The messenger talking with John, here in chapter nineteen, is the "voice... out of the throne," in verse five. This is one of the voices recorded in chapter four. "*And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunderings and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God*" (Revelation 4:5). These voices are the voices of the portion of the Old Testament resurrected saints who have made the Bride and who shall follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth.

And I looked, and lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having his Father's name written in their foreheads. *And I heard a voice from heaven as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great thunder: and I heard the voice of harpers harping with their harps: And they sung as it were a new song before the throne, and before the four beasts, and the elders: and no man could learn that song but the hundred and forty and four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth. These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb* (Revelation 14:1-4).

Since the Lamb abides in the midst of the Father's Throne, the Bride who has followed the Footsteps of the Lamb on Earth will be rewarded with the privilege of continuing in His Footsteps in Heaven.

And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth (Revelation 5:6).

This faithful messenger, who spoke to John in chapter nineteen, was sent from the midst of the Father's Throne with the testimony of Jesus concerning the Marriage Supper of the Lamb.

What a glorious privilege to be called to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb!

Before the Marriage Supper of the Lamb and His Bride takes place in the Heavenly Jerusalem, the Bridegroom and Bride will sanctify the Heavenly Jerusalem and destroy the earthly Jerusalem.

The Old Jerusalem, a harlot, is worthy only of death. The Heavenly Jerusalem must be cleansed of unprepared

guests who have intruded into the Marriage Feast without proper Wedding Garments.

Only those who are called, personally, will be entitled to attend the Wedding Supper of the Lamb. Many are “called,” but only those who are matured in the Spiritual Stature of the LORD Jesus Christ will be united with Him in an Eternal Oneness of Relationship. God “called” the Jews, and He has “called” the Gentiles, but only overcomers from both groups will be in the Bride of Christ.

Some overcomers already have been resurrected (those who came up with Jesus when the Father resurrected Him); others will be resurrected to meet Jesus in the air at the Rapture of those who are *alive and remain* and those who are dead *in Christ*.

At the Wedding Supper, the Bride will drink a New Drink — the Creative, Redemptive Blood of the Lamb. It will be *new* to her because she will be drinking it in the Light and Wisdom of her new, resurrected body.

The Messenger who was talking to John in chapter nineteen was a fellowservant of John’s; he was one of the voices out of the Throne. The voices out of the Throne in chapter four of Revelation are voices of the Resurrected Bridal Saints from the Old Testament dispensation who followed the Lamb wherever He went.

Chapter Three

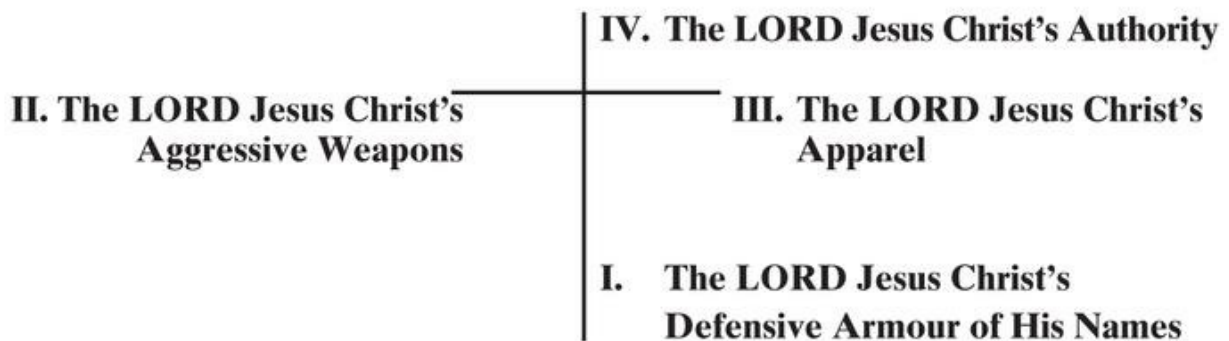
The Description of the Bridegroom at His Second Coming to Earth

After Christ's Marriage to His Spiritual Bride has been solemnized in Heaven, He, the Glorious Head and Husband of the Bride, will be called out with His Bride to undertake a new expedition, which is to fight the final battle against the Antichrist and his armies at Armageddon.

Let us look at the unveiled Stature of God's exalted, miraculous Son, Whom John now saw revealed as the Bridegroom-General of His Bridal Armies (His glorious Bride), who will accompany Him on His mission to rid the Earth of the Antichrist and his armies.

John saw the Heaven opened and the Bridegroom and Bride seated upon their powerful White Horses of Faith, ready to charge forth to the Battle of Armageddon. He saw the Bridegroom's Defensive Armour of His Names; His Aggressive Weapons of Warfare; His Glorious Apparel; and His Divine, Infinite Authority.

The LORD Jesus Christ as the Bridegroom-General with His Bride or Bridal Armies



I. The LORD Jesus Christ's Defensive Armour of His Names

Christ's Armour is comprised of the different Names His Father has bestowed upon Him. Each name signifies the different levels of His Holy Nature.

Defensive armour, in the natural realm, is a covering designed to protect the body from being injured or wounded by any weapon of warfare a foe may use. This also is true in the spiritual realm. Defensive armour is anything God has designed and fitted as a defense against spiritual enemies. God's Armour of Light, for example, defends God's children against Satan's works of darkness, making it possible for God's children to walk in the Light so that they can see the true Way to go (Romans 13:12). God's Armour of Righteousness is a defense against Satan's wicked works of unrighteousness. It is for God's children to use so that they can be just and righteous in performing good deeds (II Corinthians 6:7). The *Whole* Armour of God defends the Christian soldier against the Devil's fiery darts of deceitful doubts, fears, and falsehoods.

At the Battle of Armageddon, when the LORD Jesus Christ returns to Earth with His Bridal Armies, the Defensive Armour of *all* the Names of Jesus Christ will oppose all the wicked nature of fallen Lucifer, the Antichrist, the False Prophet, and all their wicked armies.

Let us look at the Power of Christ's Defensive Armour by studying the meanings of His Names. The LORD's first Name is called Faithful.

A. His Name Is “Faithful”

The Hebrew root word for *faithful* is *aw-man*, meaning to build up, to support, to foster or train as a parent, to be firm, faithful, permanent, quiet, and to be morally true. God brought forth His only Begotten Son; then, He was faithful in the spiritual task of educating His Son in His Nature of Faithfulness. God trained His Son up in all the diverse, Divine Ways of Faithfulness. The Son’s Love, Respect, and Confidence in His Father made it easy for the Father to train Him up in faithfulness, to such a degree, that the Son was counted worthy to wear the Name of Faithfulness.

Christ came to Earth in humility and proved that He was clothed with the Defensive Armour of the “Name of Faithful,” which always opposes Satan and the Devil’s temptation to be unfaithful. The Father’s Name or Nature is Faithful; therefore, His Son is Faithful.

Thus saith the LORD, the Redeemer of Israel, and his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of *the LORD that is faithful*, and the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee (Isaiah 49:7).

The LORD, the Father, is the Redeemer of Israel, and His Son is Israel’s Holy One. The Son suffered unparalleled humiliation in the days of His Flesh. He was despised and rejected by sinful man whom He came to save. Jesus came to save and to put His Honour and Glory on man. But His persecutors were so wretchedly ungrateful that they poured the most unimaginable contempt upon Him when they cried out, “Crucify Him! Crucify Him!” Christ was trampled upon, abused, and scourged in His Sufferings and Humiliations.

Jesus Christ came down to the lowest depths of degradation for sinful mankind. On the other side of the scales, He was raised to the loftiest heights of Power, Authority, and Honour at the Father’s Right Hand.

Because His Father is Faithful and because Jesus Christ also is Faithful, His Father has fulfilled His Promise by exalting Him. Kings of the Earth have worshipped the Christ, and kings shall worship Him (Revelation 21:24).

The LORD Jesus Christ, God’s unveiled, miraculous Son, the Bridegroom, will return to Earth with His exalted Name of Faithfulness to war against all the unfaithfulness of His creation.

The LORD’s second piece of Defensive Armour is His Name called “True.”

B. His Name Is “True”

The Hebrew root word for *true* is *eh-meth*, meaning stability, certainty, truth, trustworthiness, right, sure, and verity. In the days of His Flesh, Jesus declared “I am the Truth” (John 14:6). *Truth* or *Eh-meth* is a feminine word, which lets us know that Jesus is God’s Living *Torah* Who came in Flesh. In Jesus’ journey to the goal of God’s Moral High Calling for Him, He displayed no victorious, vengeful pride; instead, He evinced a merciful, compassionate Nature of One Who is cognizant of man’s sufferings and frailties.

And the LORD passed by before him, and proclaimed, The LORD, The LORD God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and *abundant in goodness and truth [eh-meth]*, (Exodus 34:6).

The Truth from the LORD’s Nature of Truth (*Eh-meth*) fences in His great Love for His people with Truth, *Eh-meth*. God’s *Eh-meth*-Truth tempers His overflowing Love. His Truth denies His people every carnal wish that endangers their ability to reach the Goal of God’s Moral High Calling in Christ Jesus. Therefore, the LORD’s denials, through His Truth, help to further us in the Way to God’s Moral High Calling for us. The LORD, the Truth, knows how to grant us, perfectly, everything we need to help us reach our Spiritual Goal in Christ Jesus, and He knows how to deny us, perfectly, everything that would have a deleterious effect upon our spiritual life and our spiritual goals.

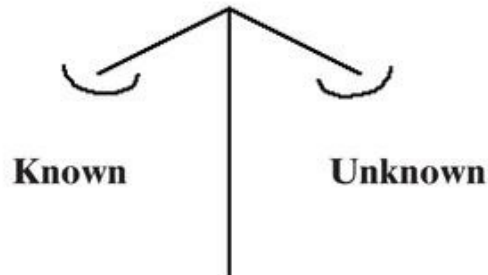
Hence, when the LORD Jesus Christ returns with the Defensive Armour of His Name, “Truth,” He will oppose all who have used their own proud wishes and selfish desires to help them gain their own immoral goals. The LORD Jesus Christ, the Truth, will grant or deny man’s wishes according to God’s Purposive, Holy Will.

Next in His Spiritual Armoury is Christ’s Secret Name.

C. His Secret Name

Christ has a Name or Nature that is concealed from the knowledge of His creatures. Christ's Nature of Love transcends all our perception and knowledge. The Nature of His incomprehensible Majesty goes beyond our finite understanding. The Nature of His abundant Goodness, Mercy, and Grace is something not totally revealed to our finite minds. The Nature of His mysterious Humiliation, Sufferings, and Death on the Cross is beyond our feeble, finite discernment. The Nature of His Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Glory that raised Him from the dead is an unexplained and inexplicable matter. Oh, the depths of the LORD Jesus Christ's Unknown Name or Nature!

**LORD Jesus Christ's
Paradoxical Names or Natures**



We know and have understanding of the Love and Power of Jesus Christ's Name to save us from Death and Hell and to deliver us from sin. We have some clear perception and understanding of Christ's Salvation, both theoretically and empirically, but, on the other side of the scales, we see a Name or Nature that is unknown and unrecognizable to anyone except His Heavenly Father and Himself.

Christ's fourth Name is the "Word of God."

D. His Name Is the "Word of God"

The Hebrew word for *Word*, the Name of the LORD Jesus Christ, is *daw-bawr*, meaning an expression of thought that is not necessarily understood. Christ is called the Word, *Daw-bawr*, because He is the only Begotten Son Who is in the Bosom of the Father, and the Father has declared Him. The *Word* is the Eternal, Infinite Wisdom that the Father conceived and brought to birth in the beginning of His Way (Proverbs 8:22).

Christ is the *Word* that God has spoken to us and has commanded us to hear (Hebrews 1:2).

The Word was coexistent with God the Father, and the Word was God (John 1:1,2). The Word was full of all the Father's Wise Designs of His Master Plan and the Counsels of His Holy Will.

When Christ comes again, He will be clothed with the Defensive Armour of His Holy Name, *the Word*, that will oppose all Lucifer's Satanic opposition, Devilish plans, Serpentine counsels, and his Dragonish warfare. Christ will defend His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will when He comes again.

The LORD Jesus Christ's fifth Defensive Name is "KING OF KINGS."

E. His Name Is "KING OF KINGS"

The LORD Jesus Christ's Name, "KING OF KINGS," covers Him with His Father's Defensive, Sovereign Power. The LORD Jesus Christ will display His Absolute Rulership over all the Earth and all His creation. Christ is the Supreme Monarch to Whom God has granted all Power in Heaven and in Earth.

This Earth has been ruled over and has been tyrannized by wicked kings who have been given Power by fallen Lucifer. They have usurped Christ's Power and Position over His creation. They have caused humanity to lay under their grievous yokes, groaning in pain to be delivered. But when the KING OF KINGS returns to Earth, He will oppose all these fearful tyrants with His Kingly Name that is written on His Vesture and on His Thigh.

Christ's sixth Name, denoting His Defensive Armour, is "LORD OF LORDS."

F. His Name Is “LORD OF LORDS”

The Name of *Lord*, used in the Hebrew text, is *aw-done*, meaning Sovereign, Controller, Master, and Owner. When the Lord returns to this Earth, His Name of Lord, written on His Vesture and on His Thigh, will be a Defensive Armour against all lords and masters in the Earth who have established their lordship in opposition to Christ’s royal Lordship.

Christ’s Lordship is superior to all other lordships. He is supreme in Power and Rank, and He holds His royal Position by grant from His Father. The Lord’s Name is His Defensive Armour against all who have usurped His position of governing, managing, and restraining His creation.

The KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS also has the rightful Supremacy over everyone of us because He is our Owner and Master. He has displayed His Conquering Power as the Son of Man; therefore, He is able to teach us how to conquer ourself, our carnal flesh, by submitting to Him as the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS. It is our carnal self that resists the Sovereign Supremacy of the Lord’s Mastership over our willful self. It is much better to yield ourself to the Lord’s Royal Right to rule over us than to fight against the One Who already has conquered all enemies. How dare we fight against the Supreme, Sovereign Conqueror!

Christ, as KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS, has conquered sin, the world, fallen Lucifer, self, Death, and Hell. Christ’s Defensive Armour, which consists of His Names of *Faithful*, *True*, *Secret Name*, *Word of God*, *KING OF KINGS*, and *LORD OF LORDS*, has conquered, can conquer now, and will conquer all forces that oppose His Father’s Master Plan and Purposive Will.

The LORD Jesus Christ also has Aggressive Weapons with which to war against His enemies and our enemies.

II. The LORD Jesus Christ’s Aggressive Weapons

When Jesus returns to fight the Battle of Armageddon, He will come armed with the Aggressive Weapons of His Faith, His Righteousness, and the Sharp Sword of His Word. These powerful weapons are all He will need to win the victory over His enemies.

A. The LORD’s White Horse of Faith

The first Aggressive Weapon that the LORD Jesus Christ will use against His enemies at His Second Coming is His White Horse of Faith. Christ’s Spiritual Horse of Faith is Infinitely strong, and He despises the evil opposition of finite creatures who are inferior in strength. The Glory-Breath of Christ’s Horse of Faith will make Him fierce and furious in the battle as He charges the enemy with undaunted, victorious Courage. He will use His Strength in confident contempt against His enemies. Christ’s White Horse of Faith will not retreat but will rush forward into the battle.

Faith is the victory! “This is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith” (I John 5:4).

Faith is the Spiritual Weapon, the White Horse, the spiritual transportation to victory, by which we overcome the world in our life now. It will be the Weapon and the Vehicle Christ will ride to overcoming victory when He returns. It is Christ’s Faith that sanctifies and purifies the heart from sensual lusts of the flesh, thereby obtaining dominion over our soul. It is Christ’s Faith that overcomes the frowns and flatteries of this world. It is Christ’s Faith that will carry Him to victory in His final battle against this hostile world at Armageddon.

B. The LORD’s Righteousness

The Righteousness of the LORD Jesus Christ is the second Aggressive Weapon He will use against His enemies. In Righteousness, Christ doth judge and make war. The Hebrew root word for *righteousness* is *tseh-dek*, meaning moral, legal, right, equity, prosperity, altogether just and right cause.

Christ is a qualified Judge as a result of the Power vested in Him by His Father. He has all theoretical Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge, and He has all experiential Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge. He has all expertness of Knowledge of the weight of sin because He bore the weight of sin on Calvary’s Cross. He knows the awful penalty of sin because He paid that penalty in Death and Hell; therefore, He is qualified to judge righteously the controversy that sinful man has against God. He is able to judge righteously the merit or the lack of merit of all

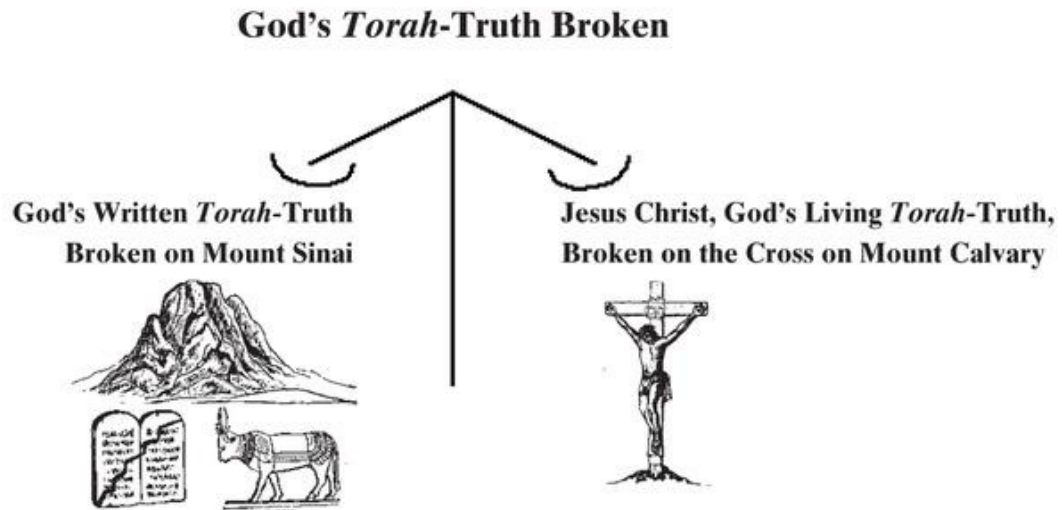
things.

Christ *doth* judge both now and in the future. The verb *doth* is a present, indicative verb. First, Christ righteously judges; then, He makes war according to His judgmental findings and decisions.

God's *Torah*-Truth warned finite judges against the misuse of power, the abuse of power, and the forgetting of one's duty which obliges one to judge righteously concerning the happiness and honour of others. The judges in Israel were not to use their power for force or caprice. God forbade the misuse of the Institution of Law. *Tseh-dek* Righteousness upholds *Right* and applies it and its consequent Laws. God's *Torah*-Truth forbade the recognizing of faces in the Court of Law; therefore, the judge was not to be influenced in forming his judgment.

Jesus Christ *doth* judge us righteously now. He applies *Right* and the consequent Laws of Right. No finite face will influence Him to render a partial judgment and, thus, cause Him to misuse His Righteous Power as a Just Judge.

Christ is a qualified Judge because He is the Living *Torah*-Truth; He knows the pain of suffering and being broken by man's sins. When Christ wrote the first *Torah*-Truth in stone on Mount Sinai, Israel's idolatrous sin of worshipping a golden calf caused the Word in stone to be broken at the foot of the mount. When Christ, the Living *Torah*-Truth came in Flesh, bringing the Living Words of Life, Israel's idolatrous rejection caused Him, the Rock of Truth, to be broken on Calvary's Cross.



Jesus Christ, the Righteous Judge, suffered from having His Written *Torah*-Truth in stone broken at the foot of Mount Sinai, and He personally suffered from being broken as the *Torah*-Truth on the Cross at Mount Calvary when He took the place of sinners. Sin broke the Written *Torah*-Truth at Mount Sinai, and sin broke the Living *Torah*-Truth on Mount Calvary. Therefore, the LORD Jesus Christ has the Experiential Knowledge to use His Judicial Powers of punishment rightfully and to judge righteous judgment.

The first Weapon the LORD will use against sinners and their sinful deeds is His Righteous Judgment of their offense against God's Master Plan and Purposive Will. After Christ judges the sinful world, He will make righteous war against it.

The LORD makes war with those whom He weighs in His balance and finds wanting. The LORD Jesus Christ will engage in active hostility and conflict with those who oppose His Father's Moral *Torah*-Truth.

The LORD will enter into an armed conflict against those who oppose His rightful Power and Position. He makes war in Righteousness against those who are at enmity with His Kingdom.

The LORD makes war with us, now, when we engage in rebellious opposition against His Rule and Reign in our life. The LORD, in Righteousness, will make war with the Antichrist and the rebellious nations of the Earth when He returns to establish His Throne and His Kingdom on Earth. An attack upon the LORD Jesus Christ as King is a revolt against God Who has willed Christ's Kingship. Jesus Christ has every right to defend His Kingship that has been given to Him by His Father.

C. The LORD's Sharp Sword

Christ's Word of Truth that proceeds out of His Mouth is sharper than any two-edged sword because it can enter the inner hearts of His enemies, where no other sword can penetrate. In that great day of battle, His Sharp Sword will divide asunder His enemies' souls and spirits. It will subdue their prevailing enmity against Christ and will overcome their proud, perverse spirits. His Sharp Sword will cut into the ignorant rebellion of their wills. Christ's powerful, prevailing Sword will batter down Satan's kingdom of error and deceit. It will cut down the Devil's stronghold and cut asunder the Serpent's deceitful wisdom. His Sword will prevail against the Dragon's efforts to distort and to destroy God's Truth. Christ's Sharp Sword will help to set up His Kingdom upon the ruins of fallen Lucifer's kingdom of error and deceit.

To win, Christ will need no other weapons than His White Horse of His Faith, His Righteousness, and His Sharp Sword or Word of Truth.

All Christ's vicious enemies will be overcome by the Faith of His Word (White Horse), by the Righteousness of His Word, and by the Power of His Word (Sword).

Now that we have seen Christ's Weapons of Warfare, let us note His Apparel, for there is much to learn from the description of what He will be wearing.

III. The LORD Jesus Christ's Apparel

As John's vision continued, he saw Christ clothed with a Vesture dipped in Blood. The Hebrew word for *vesture* is *leb-oosh*, meaning apparel, clothed with, clothing, garment, raiment and vestment. Christ, the Mighty Warrior, will stain His Apparel as He treads the Winepress of Almighty God's Fierceness and Wrath.

The Son of Man reaped the fruit of the Earth, and the Angel cut down the clusters of grapes of the vine of the Earth in which was found the Blood of God's servants, God's Prophets, the LORD Jesus Christ, and God's people. Christ will carry the witness of God's martyrs upon His Vesture as He treads God's Wrathful Winepress.

The wicked sowed, in the Earth, the innocent Blood of Jesus Christ and those who were killed for Christ's sake; therefore, when Christ returns with His Blood and the blood of His martyrs, mingled with Almighty God's Fierceness and Wrath, the wicked will reap by giving their blood in exact proportion to the amount they sowed in the Earth by slaughtering Jesus Christ and His people.

Who is this that cometh from Edom, with *dyed garments* from Bozrah? this that is glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save. Wherefore *art thou red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat?* I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and *their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment.* For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come (Isaiah 63:1-4).

These Scriptures from the Old Testament are confirmed by John's vision in the Book of Revelation in the New Testament. Christ will execute God's Divine Vengeance upon Old Jerusalem. Christ is His Father's Divine Hero as He victoriously emerges from the conflict with God's enemies at His Second Coming. The LORD Jesus Christ stands a solitary, Majestic Figure in His Bloodstained Vesture. Christ, God's Divine Warrior, will return to Earth to punish the bloodthirsty oppressors on Earth and to save His people who remain on Earth. The LORD Jesus Christ is God's Divine Champion Who has and Who will triumph over all God's enemies.

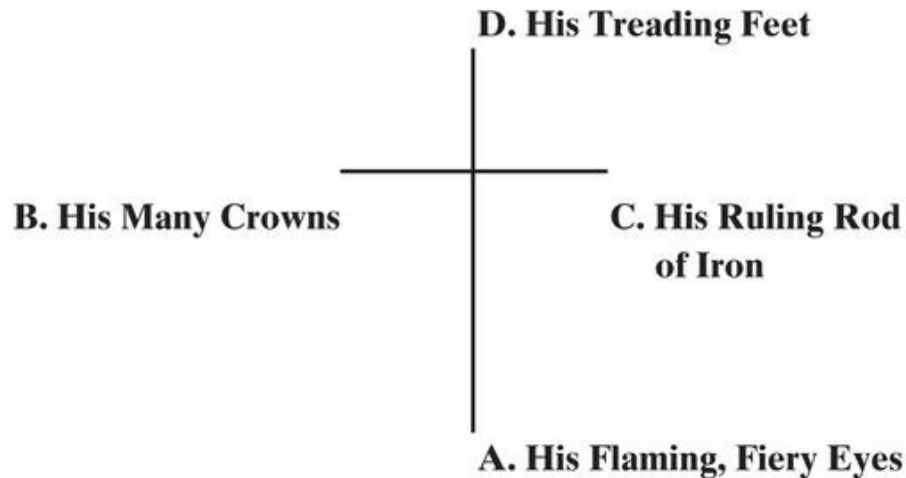
Christ will tread out every drop of blood on Earth in exact proportion to every drop He wears upon His Clothing from treading Almighty God's Wrathful Winepress. God has appointed a day for reaping of individuals, families, cities, nations, and the whole Earth. No one will escape God's Fierce Wrath, if he has shed the blood of God's people.

In this fourth and last great picture of the LORD Jesus Christ, God's Miraculous Son, the Bridegroom-General, we are seeing Him as He will be seen when He returns to Earth the second time. He will come armed with Defensive Armour and Aggressive Weapons of Warfare; His Apparel will be Bloodstained, and He will have great Authority. His Authority is the last point on the Stature of Truth we are studying about Jesus Christ as the Bridegroom-General Who returns with His Bride or Bridal Armies to fight the great Battle of Armageddon.

IV. The LORD Jesus Christ's Authority

The Eyes, the Crowns, the Rod, and the treading Feet of the LORD Jesus Christ are the marks of His Authority and His Right to give Commands, to enforce obedience, to take action, and to make final decisions.

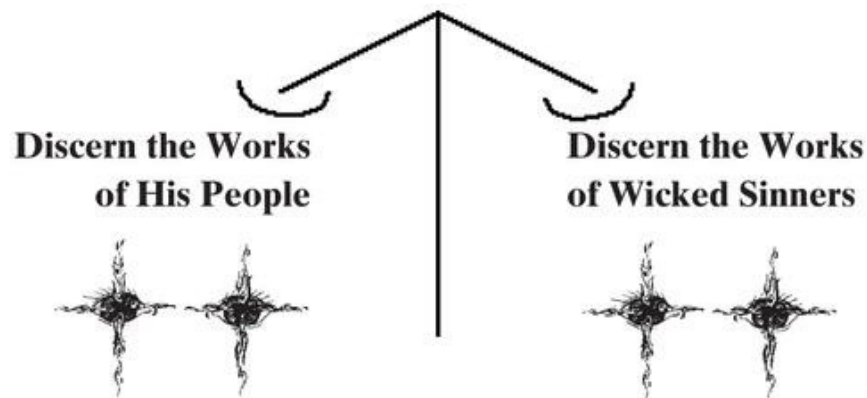
The LORD Jesus Christ's Authority



A. His Flaming, Fiery Eyes

When John saw Christ, as the King in the midst of the seven churches, He appeared with flaming, fiery Eyes to discern the faults and shortcomings of His people and to give authoritative Commands that demanded obedience. Christ's Eyes of Fire *discern* the good and the evil of His people, and they discern the wickedness of sinners.

LORD Jesus Christ's Flaming, Fiery Eyes



Christ's flaming, fiery Eyes were turned on the Church of Thyatira to expose both her good and her evil. The burning, blazing brilliance of His fiery Eyes revealed the nature of their works, whether they were good or evil.

The glowing heat of His fiery Eyes tries the works of the children of men. The piercing and penetrating flames of

Christ's knowing Eyes give insight into and revelation of man's every work.

Three times, Christ drove wicked sinners out of His Father's Temple with the Authority of the burning, blazing, brilliance of His fiery Eyes (John 2:14-16; Matthew 21:12,13; Mark 11:15,16).

The Authority of Christ's fiery Eyes revealed the evil works of those wicked servants who turned His Father's House into a commercial show house and a den of thieves. With the Authority of His burning, blazing Eyes, Jesus Christ cleansed His Father's Temple in the beginning of His Ministry. The guilty offenders fled from before the Authority of those flaming, penetrating Eyes.

Christ cleansed the Temple again at His triumphant entry into Jerusalem. Then, He went out to spend the night in Bethany, and when He had returned to the Temple the next day, these wicked servants again had filled the Temple with their wicked works. Consequently, Christ once more cast them out of the Temple with His authoritative, flaming Eyes.

Likewise, when Christ's people stand before Him at His Judgment Seat, He will judge them by trying their works with His flaming, fiery Eyes. The burning, blazing brilliance of His fiery Eyes will reveal whether the works of His people are wood, hay, and stubble of the flesh or whether they are the gold, silver, and precious stones of God's Purposive Will (I Corinthians 3:12-14).

Christ's Eyes, which are full of the Father's Unbegotten, Resurrection Glory, will give Him His Authority to *subdue* His enemies when He returns to Earth.

B. His Many Crowns

The Hebrew root word for *crowns* is *aw-tar* meaning to encircle for attack or protection, a garland of festivity and a mark of ruling authority. Christ's Crowns are a sign of His Victory and His Honour, and they are emblems of His Sovereignty.

1. Crowns of Sovereign Dominion

Christ's many Crowns reveal the Position, Power, and Dominion that have been given to Him by His Father. Jesus Christ, as God's only Begotten Son, possesses Crowns of Unlimited Dominion because of His Divine Right and Inheritance from His Father.

One of the many Crowns Christ wears is the Crown of Creation. He was encompassed with Power, Glory, and Honour from His Father so that He could implement all the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will in fulfilling His Commands to bring about the creation.

Let them praise the name of the LORD: for *he commanded, and they were created* (Psalm 148:5).

The Father commanded and the Son created. "All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made" (John 1:3).

It is Christ's Strength and Wisdom that pile up the mountains, depress the valleys, balance the clouds, and measure out each raindrop.

Christ also wears a Crown of Sustaining, Supporting Power for all creation. He upholds all things by the Word of His Power (Hebrews 1:3). If Christ would withdraw His Crowning Support from the creation, it would tremble, tumble, and fall. All things would be destroyed in the blackness of annihilation in spite of anything man could do.

Other Crowns Christ wears are the Crowns of Mercy and Grace. In His Sovereignty, He dispenses His Mercy that pushes back what man deserves, and He dispenses His Grace that gives man what he does not deserve. He gives His Gifts of Mercy and Grace to those who willingly bow to the Sceptre of His Love.

Since Christ possesses so many Crowns of Dominion, man is so very blindly foolish to rebel against Him. Man shall not prevail in His hostile striving against this crowned KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS. Therefore, if we have erred in thoughts, feelings, and deeds, let us go to Him Who is crowned with Mercy and Grace and ask for the forgiveness and blessings He so freely gives.

Remember, Christ in His Mercy and Grace weighs our trials and counts our storms of life. He will not put upon us anything that is not for our highest good. He will quench the destructive fires that burn across our pathway of life, and He will swallow up the sweeping floods that would try to drown us. Jesus Christ is the Sovereign King with many Crowns, and the overflowing floods obey His Voice. There is no place we can walk without His Omniscient

and Omnipotent Reigning Presence being there.

2. Crowns of Subjugation

Jesus Christ, the Son of Man, has a Crown of Victory because He overcame the evil world round about Him.

These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world (John 16:33).

We must expect tribulation and trouble in this present, evil world, so let us be of good cheer because Christ wears His victorious, overcoming Crown; therefore, He is able to help us overcome.

We must triumph over the world's frowns, and we must conquer the world's flattering smiles. We must not be moved to despondency and discouragement by the world's frowning disapproval of our LORD's Way of Humility and Crucifixion. We must not be enchanted and overcome with the world's flattering smiles of approval. The Son of Man overcame; therefore, He wears the triumphant Trophy of His Victory. And He has the Divine Authority to command the world to move back from our mind and heart.

Jesus Christ also overcame sin in all shapes, forms, and fashions. He, unlike Adam the First, cast down all forms of evil. Jesus Christ, the Son of Man, chose not to allow sin to touch Him. He now wears the Conqueror's Crown because of His Supremacy and Superiority in His battle against sin. Jesus defeated the opponent called sin and overcame all Satan's sinful obstacles that were thrust against Him.

Jesus Christ, the Son of Man, also wears the Crown of Victory over Death. He died on the Cross, went to Death and Hell, and through the Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Glory, He annihilated the Power of Death, the Destructive Destroyer. Christ's victorious Omnipresence always is with us as believers. Therefore, by faith and through Christ's Triumphant Crown, we can triumph over all thoughts, feelings, and deeds of death.

3. Crowns of Gracious Gratitude

All of Christ's saints who have laid hold of Christ's gracious Gratitude as they have gone through sufferings, trials, and tribulations, while striding forward in their spiritual education and moral development and in their service for Him, will have a Golden Crown *to cast* at His precious, nail-scarred Feet. Not one martyr will wear his own crown since it was by Christ's supporting Love, Grace, and Blood that he overcame. Since Christ gives us our crowns by His Love, Mercy, and Grace, He deserves to wear the many Crowns of His people.

The more our tears run down in overflowing gratitude for sins forgiven and the more we allow the Holy Ghost to offer up intercessory Love and Gratitude to Christ for His Mercy and Grace in allowing us the privilege to be chastened and to suffer for Him, the bigger our Crown will be. Therefore, let us weep tears of repentance for the ingratitude and ungratefulness we have in the midst of our sufferings and trials because such feelings arise out of our fleshly nature that must be crucified.

The Authority of Christ's Crowns, His Sovereign Dominion, His Subjugation, and His Gracious Gratitude will give us the Commands, the Obedience, and the Power to act right and make the right decisions, if we, by faith, look to His Authority.

Christ's Authority is also indicated by His Ruling Rod.

C. His Ruling Rod of Iron

The Hebrew word for *rod* is *shay-bet*, meaning a stick for punishing and correcting, fighting, ruling and walking, a sceptre, staff, or a tribe.

The Psalmist prophesied that Christ would rule with His *Shay-bet*-Rod.

Thou shalt break them with a rod [shay-bet] of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel (Psalm 2:9).

The pernicious plotters against Christ will be broken by His Iron Rod, and He will dash them to pieces like a potter breaking worthless, useless vessels. Christ will bring utter destruction to His enemies, which will be like the shattering of an earthen vessel.

Isaiah, the Prophet, also spoke of Christ's Rule with His *Shay-bet*-Rod.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and *he shall smite the earth with the rod [shay-bet] of his mouth*, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked (Isaiah 11:4).

The LORD Jesus Christ righteously will judge the poor, the lowly helpless ones in His Kingdom, those who are in distress because someone has deprived them of their rights. He justly will judge the meek, those who have been oppressed. He will judge with courage and fortitude. Christ will smite the Earth with the corrective Rod of His Word out of His Mouth. When men oppress, Christ's Words will fall on their minds, hearts, and wills like a Rod of Iron.

To judge the fatherless and the oppressed, that the man of the earth may no more oppress (Psalm 10:18).

Christ will right the fatherless and the oppressed so that men who are in the Earth will never again be terribly mistreated. Christ will rule man, who originated from the dust of the Earth, with a Rod of Iron so that man may no longer inspire terror in the hearts of the poor, weak, and oppressed.

The LORD will rule with His Rod of Iron until, as sheep, men will follow Him as their Shepherd.

Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; *thy rod [shay-bet] and thy staff they comfort me* (Psalm 23:4).

Christ's *Shay-bet*-Rod will drive off beasts of prey when they try to attack His sheep. Through His *Shay-bet*-Rod, the LORD's Divine Authority will rule over nations until they submit to Him.

The LORD's Rod-Word will be hard, firm, and unbending in enforcing obedience to His Moral *Torah*-Truth.

Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: *the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre* (Psalm 45:6).

Christ's Throne is Divinely Ordained; therefore, it will last Eternally. The Authority and Kingship of Christ, the Bridegroom, are founded on God's Divine Will. The LORD Jesus Christ, as the Father's miraculous Son, is ordained to crush evil and to promote good.

Christ's Punishing Rod of Iron is for the backs of those who have no understanding.

In the lips of him that hath understanding wisdom is found: *but a rod [shay-bet] is for the back of him that is void of understanding* (Proverbs 10:13).

From the lips of those who have discerned right and wrong, Truth and error, one can find words of Wisdom. Those who lack Understanding to guide their conduct properly in right and wrong, in Truth and error, must be driven forcibly by Christ's Ruling Rod of Iron.

Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child; but *the rod [shay-bet] of correction shall drive it far from him* (Proverbs 22:15).

The carnal heart is always delinquent in striving after its spiritual education, and it is always departing from the Moral Laws of Right in its moral development.

A whip for the horse, a bridle for the ass, and *a rod [shay-bet] for the fool's back* (Proverbs 26:3).

Man forcefully uses a whip to keep his horse going in the right direction — the way, as its owner and master, he chooses for it to go. Likewise, man uses a bridle to guide and to govern an ass in order to make him go the desired direction. Comparably, Jesus Christ has to employ His Rod-Word of Iron on the backs of His children in order to guide them forcefully in the right direction when they refuse to be guided by His Voice of Counsel and Truth.

Christ's Rod of Iron is for training the children He has created.

The rod [shay-bet] and reproof give wisdom: but a child left to himself bringeth his mother to shame (Proverbs 29:15).

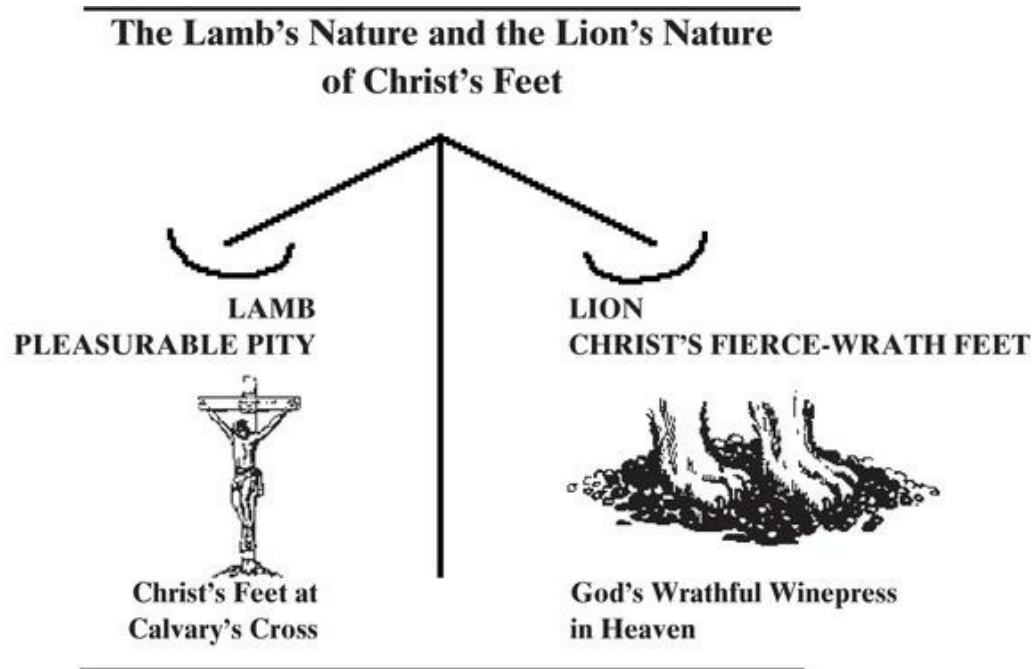
A child left to himself will remain wild and unrestrained, but Christ's Rod-Word reproveth and gives Wisdom to the heart and mind.

There is one more aspect to Christ's Authority — His Treading Feet.

D. His Treading Feet

In chapter five of Revelation, Christ, the Bleeding Lamb with His nail-scarred Hands, was the only One in Heaven and in Earth Who was worthy to take the sealed Book from God's Hands and loosen the seals thereof. Likewise, Christ's nail-scarred Feet are the only Feet that are counted worthy to tread out the effects of sin or the fruits of sin because He is the only One Who paid the price for sin itself.

Christ suffered on both sides of the scales — as the Living *Torah*, Who was broken, and as the sinners' Substitute, Who was condemned to Death and Hell. Therefore, His precious, nail-scarred Feet are the only Feet worthy to tread God's Wrathful Winepress.



Christ's Feet submitted to the indignation of being nailed to the Cross because of His Righteous Pity and Tenderness toward fallen mankind whom He desired to redeem from sin. Therefore, they are the only Feet worthy to tread out God's Fierce Wrath in the Winepress in Heaven. He will rejoice in that day over the Triumphant Justice of God's Vindication of the righteous blood of His saints that has been spilled down through the ages, especially the Blood shed by Israel when she slew her Messiah and the great Prophets and Disciples of Christ. On one side, we see the Pity, the Tenderness, and Mercy of Christ's Surrendered Feet on Calvary's Cross when He died for mankind; on the other side, we see His Wrath, Indignation, Judgment, and the Justice of His insulted Majesty as He avenges the wrongs His Majesty has suffered because of man's sins.

The blessed Saviour went through privations, humiliations, and sorrowful sufferings to display the pleasure He took in doing the Father's Will in extending His Pity to lost mankind. Therefore, He alone is worthy to tread out the Winepress of God's great Wrath that will bring down His Judgment and Justice on unrepentant sinners and the nation of Israel for her deeds of wrath and rejection of the One Who chose her to be the leader of all nations. When Israel condemned Jesus Christ to death on the Cross, she insulted the Majesty and Honour of God's miraculous Son Who had been born as her King. But one day, when Christ treads out the Winepress of God's Wrath, God's Majesty will avenge the insults it has suffered, just as the Apostle John saw in his prophetic vision.

The blessed Avenger will use His "All Power and Authority" when He treads out the fruits of man's sinful rebellions and proud oppositions to His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

Christ, as God's gentle, submissive Lamb, was hung on the Cross, where He used His nail-scarred Feet to tread down sin, Death, and Hell. But, His same nail-scarred Feet were resurrected by the Father's Unbegotten Glory; and, as God's Lion out of the Tribe of Judah, He also will fight to crush, to tread, to trample, and to subdue the works of His Father's enemies by exposing their guilt in every drop of Righteous Blood, which they have shed. Christ, intensely and eagerly, will tread the evil fruits of man's doings in God's Wrathful Winepress. He will tread the

Winepress with His Divine, violent, unlimited Authority. Those who have spurned the Love, Mercy, and Grace displayed by the nail-scarred Feet of the Crucified Saviour at the Cross will feel the effects of the Fierceness and Wrath of the nail-scarred Feet of the Resurrected Avenger, the Lion out of the tribe of Judah.

The Divine Authority of the LORD Jesus Christ, the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS will prevail.

So Christ's Divine, Sovereign Authority consists of His Eyes of Fire, His Crowns, His Ruling Rod of Iron, and His Crucified Lamb's Feet and Resurrected Lion's Feet that will tread God's Wrathful Winepress.

Christ, the Bridegroom-General, also will bring with Him His Armies or His Bride who will be dressed in Fine Linen, White and Clean, and they will be riding upon White Horses of Faith. The Bride will be a witness against Old Jerusalem and all the world as to the wicked works they have perpetrated against Christ and His *Torah*-Truth. The Bride will rule and reign with Christ for a thousand years after the Battle of Armageddon is over.

This chapter has described the Bridegroom at His Second Coming to Earth. He will come armed with the Armour of His Names: "Faithful," "True," His Secret Name, the "Word of God," the "KING OF KINGS," and the "LORD OF LORDS."

The aggressive weapons which the LORD will use in His warfare against His enemies will include His White Horse of Faith, His Moral, Legal Righteousness, and the Sharp Sword out of His Mouth.

Christ will be clothed with a Vesture dipped in Blood because He will have stained it as He has trodden the Winepress of Almighty God's Fierceness and Wrath. His Authority to give Commands, to enforce obedience, to take action, and to make final decisions will be manifested through His flaming, fiery Eyes, through the Many Crowns which He will wear upon His Head, through the Rod of Iron which He will use to correct and rule over the nations, and through His precious, nail-scarred Feet which He will use to tread God's Wrathful Winepress.

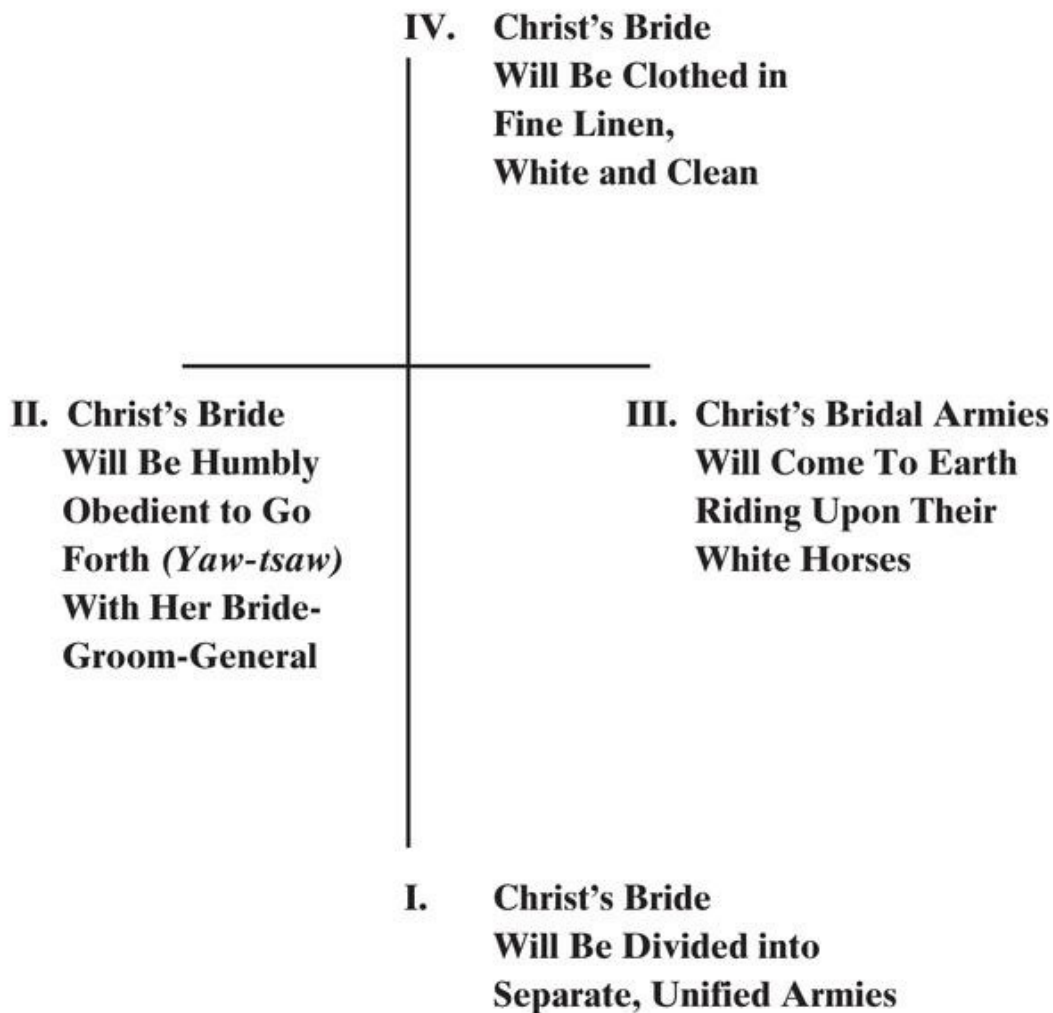
Chapter Four

The Bride at the Second Coming of the LORD Jesus Christ to the Earth

The Bride made herself ready while she was on Earth so that she would be properly arrayed for her Wedding. After the great Heavenly Wedding Feast of the Lamb and His Bride, she will return with her Bridegroom, arranged in Armies to help Him wage war against the Antichrist.

And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean (Revelation 19:14).

This one small verse gives an infinite amount of information about Christ's Bridal Armies that He will bring with Him at His Second Coming to Earth. Christ's Bride will be divided into Armies, and she will be humbly obedient to her Bridegroom-General. She will come with Him riding upon White Horses, and she will be clothed in Fine Linen, White and Clean.



Our first point of study is about Christ's Bridal Armies.

I. Christ's Bride Will Be Divided into Separate, Unified Armies

The Hebrew root word for *armies* is *tsaw-baw*, meaning to mass an army or servants, assemble, fight, perform, muster, wait upon, and war. *Tsaw-baw* refers to a multitude that submits itself to the Will of a Divine Leader Who has the Right and Power to Command, both the spiritual and bodily forces of the willing ones who have joined the host.

The LORD God, through His Divine Intelligence, Mind, and Will, made the multitude of His creation into a "host."

Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, *and all the host of them* (Genesis 2:1).

Everything that was created in Heaven and Earth was formed into one great host, whose central point is the LORD Jesus Christ, the Creator, the Master, the Leader, the Governor and Guide. Being the Master, the LORD directed each thing to its post, commanding it, and charging it with responsibility to do His Will. The LORD required everything to do its part in its place, giving it the Divine Power to accomplish its assigned task.

The Master Plan of the whole host rests upon the Leader, the Governor and Guide. Everyone completely fulfills his task only when he faithfully carries out the part of the Creator's Master Plan that has been entrusted to him.

All of those who will be a part of the LORD's Host or Bridal Armies always will recognize that they do not stand alone or by their own authority. The Bridal Army will belong to the Bridegroom, the LORD. He has the Father's Master Plan, and He has the Father's Omnipotent Power. Therefore, He has the Insight and the Power to command. The Bridal Armies will be obedient, faithful, punctual, and keen to work, carrying out His Commands. All the members of the Bridal Armies will be cognizant of their tiny part in the whole.

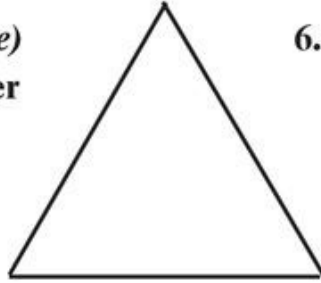
A. The Seal of Truth that Describes the Soldiers in the Bridal Armies

The Hebrew word *tsaw-baw* is connected to the Hebrew word *tseb-ee*. If we look at the usage of this word in the Scriptures, we will gain a valuable picture of Christ's Bridal Armies. There are six distinctive meanings of the word *tseb-ee*, giving us the Seal of Truth about the Soldiers in the LORD's Bridal Armies.

The Soldiers in the LORD's Bridal Armies

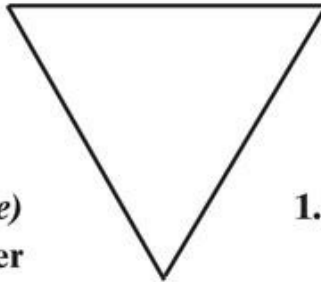
**5. The Goodly (*Tseb-ee*)
Heritage of a True Soldier**

**6. The Pleasant (*Tseb-ee*)
Land of a True Soldier**



**4. The Glory (*Tseb-ee*)
of a True Soldier**

**3. The Deliverance (*Tseb-ee*)
of a True Soldier**



**2. The Swiftiness (*Tseb-ee*)
of a True Soldier**

**1. The Beauty (*Tseb-ee*)
of a True Soldier**

1. The Beauty (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier

Christ's *Tsaw-baw* Armies will be filled with the beauty of valiant soldiers who, like the great soldier Jonathan, have been faithful unto death in the battle against God's enemies in the days of their flesh.

The beauty of Israel is slain upon thy high places: how are the mighty fallen!... How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! O Jonathan, thou wast slain in thine high places. I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan: very pleasant hast thou been unto me: thy love to me was wonderful, passing the love of women. How are the mighty fallen, and the weapons of war perished! (II Samuel 1:19,25-27).

Jonathan was the beauty of Israel. He humbly submitted to the LORD's Divine Leadership by rejecting his father, Saul, and choosing David for the Throne of Israel instead of himself. There never had been a man to love his rival, to love the one who was taking the crown from his head, like Jonathan loved David. Jonathan's love for David extended beyond the highest degree of jealous, conjugal affection and constancy. Jonathan also was faithful to war against God's enemies, even unto death.

Likewise, Christ's Bridal Armies will have been beautiful in their lives upon Earth, waging war against the world, the flesh, and the Devil, even unto death. Therefore, they will have qualified to be a part of the LORD's Armies at His Second Coming.

2. The Swiftness (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier

The word *tseb-ee* is translated as roe, which is a swift animal. The reference to the roe and its swiftness also is found in Scriptures relating to David's life.

And of the Gadites there separated themselves unto David into the hold to the wilderness men of might, and men of war fit for the battle, that could handle shield and buckler, whose faces were like the faces of lions, and were as *swift as the roes upon the mountains*; (1 Chronicles 12:8).

The roe is a beautiful antelope or gazelle, which is a slender, graceful, and swift-footed animal. These Gadites who followed David in his days of humiliation were able-bodied men, men of war, men fit for the battle, and men of incredible swiftness, like the roes of the field. They did not run from the enemy, but they bounded in pursuit of the LORD's enemies. They were so swift upon the mountains that no enemy could escape them. Their courageous faces were like those of lions; no man could outfight them. Thus, they were offensive and defensive soldiers.

Likewise, Christ's Bridal *Tsaw-baw* Armies will be swift as the roes of the field. They will pursue the LORD's enemies in the most secret, hidden places. The Bride's swiftness at the LORD's Second Coming is due to her swiftness in fighting the world, the flesh, and the Devil in her earthly days while she was following the Footsteps of the Crucified Christ and learning about surrender, humility, and obedience.

The Espoused Bride in the Song of Solomon witnessed about the Bridegroom's being as swift as a roe.

My beloved is like a roe or a young hart: behold, he standeth behind our wall, he looketh forth at the windows, shewing himself through the lattice (Song of Solomon 2:9).

The Espoused Bridegroom was *swift* to appear to His Espoused Bride to show her the little foxes that had to be fought against in order for her to separate herself more completely unto Him on the mountains of Bether.

Because the Bride was swift to hear the Words of the Crucified Christ, she will be swift to hear the Commands of the Resurrected Christ at the Battle of Armageddon.

3. The Deliverance (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier

Third, we see that *tseb-ee* refers to the power a roe has in fighting to deliver itself.

Deliver thyself as a roe from the hand of the hunter, and as a bird from the hand of the fowler (Proverbs 6:5).

The wise man used the roe (*the tseb-ee*) as an example of the power a mighty army exhibits that has been taken captive, as it struggles and strives to deliver itself.

When the natural roe has been taken captive by the hunter, it will contend violently and fight with the hunter, trying to free itself. It will make every effort to loose itself from the hunter's trap and struggle through the thicket to freedom. The roe knows that delays are dangerous and that feeble efforts will not loose him from the trap; so he quickly labours with all his striving might to deliver himself from the hunter's trap.

Christ's Bridal Armies will have Delivering Power because of God's Power of Deliverance they experienced in the days of their flesh while living upon the Earth.

Likewise, when the Espoused Bride realizes she has been taken captive in the trap of Lucifer, the hunter of human souls, she uses all the Might of Christ's Blood, Fire, and Water to loose herself.

Lucifer has many traps of the world and the flesh in which he subtly takes the soul captive. But when the Espoused Bride finds herself in traps of deception, pride, prejudice, wrong images, rebellion against God's Headship, ingratitude, anger, or resentment, she violently contends and fights to lay hold of the Delivering Power of both the Crucified Christ and the Resurrected Christ, which will set her free.

It is their experiences of Christ's Delivering Power that forms the Bridal Seal of Christ's Army upon the heart and arm of sincere souls, qualifying them to become a part of Christ's Bridal Armies.

4. The Glory (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier

The fourth part of Christ's Bridal Seal upon His Armies is that of His Glory.

In that day shall the LORD of hosts be for a crown of glory [tseb-ee], and for a diadem of beauty, unto the residue of his people, (Isaiah 28:5).

This verse refers to the glorious future when, in the Messianic Age, the LORD of Hosts and His Bridal Armies (those who are crowned with His *Tseb-ee* Glory) take up their Sovereign Reign over Israel and the whole world. The *Tseb-ee* Glory upon the Bridegroom and His Bridal Armies will be their Strength in war and a source of Justice in their rule of peace.

The LORD Jesus Christ will distinguish His Bride in that day by giving her a powerful Crown of Glory because she has distinguished herself in the days of her flesh by a steadfast and singular adherence to His Glorious Headship. The Bride, in her earthly journey, will sow the seeds of submission and obedience to the LORD's Glorious Headship; therefore, she will reap a Crown of Glory to wear while fighting in His Bridal Armies when He returns to Earth to war against His enemies and to establish His Millennial Reign.

The LORD Himself will be a Crown of Glory and a Diadem of Beauty to His Bridal Army. Those who have worn the crown of pride will be trampled down by the Glory-Crown of the LORD's Headship upon His Bride who has been divided into Bridal Armies. The Bride will be worthy to wear the LORD's Crown of Glory because, in the days of her flesh, she will have surrendered her crown of pride to the Feet of the Crucified Christ, allowing Him to trample it under His Feet. Consequently, the Resurrected Christ will crown her with His Conquering, Military Glory.

To know the LORD Jesus Christ as our Crown of Glory and as our Royal Diadem will be the greatest blessing and honour we will receive as His Bride. What an Eternal Reward for those who have given their heads and their crowns of pride to the Crucified Christ so that they could be humbled and cleansed of proud thoughts and proud reignings during their earthly lives! What a small price for such an Eternal Gain!

5. The Goodly (*Tseb-ee*) Heritage of a True Soldier

The Hebrew word *tseb-ee* also is translated as *goodly*, which forms the fifth side of the Seal of Truth for Christ's Bridal Armies.

But I said, How shall I put thee among the children, and give thee a pleasant land, a goodly [tseb-ee] heritage of the hosts of nations? and I said, Thou shalt call me, My father; and shalt not turn away from me (Jeremiah 3:19).

The Promise in this verse is referred to in the feminine, letting us know that the hosts (*tsaw-baw*) are Christ's Bridal Armies which are made up of *all* nations. Those who have followed the Crucified Lamb whithersoever His Humility Footsteps have gone in this Earth will find a *tseb-ee* goodly inheritance in the Bridal Armies of the exalted, Resurrected Lamb, the Bridegroom.

A true soldier, who has given up his inheritance of the world and the flesh from Adam the First, will find a goodly heritage among the Bridegroom's Bridal Armies and gain the privilege to continue the Holy Warfare against fallen Lucifer and all his followers.

6. The Pleasant (*Tseb-ee*) Land of a True Soldier

The sixth side of the Seal of the Bridegroom's Armies is explained by another translation of the Hebrew word *tseb-ee*, which is *pleasant*.

Natural Canaan's Land was called the "pleasant" land. It was a land that produced an agreeable effect upon the minds and senses of the inhabitants because of the Presence of God's Written *Torah*, His *Kabode* Glory, and His *Shekinah* Glory.

How much greater will be the pleasantness of the Heavenly Canaan's Land, which holds the Presence of God and the Lamb, God's *Kabode* Glory, God's Throne, the Water of Life, and the Tree of Life! What Eternal, Satisfying Delight!

The pleasant side of the Bridal Seal of the Bridegroom's Armies assures the Bride that after they have ministered for a thousand years in the pleasant land in natural Canaan, they will take their flight to their Eternal home in the

pleasant, Heavenly Canaan's Land, the New City, to live in endless joy and delight.

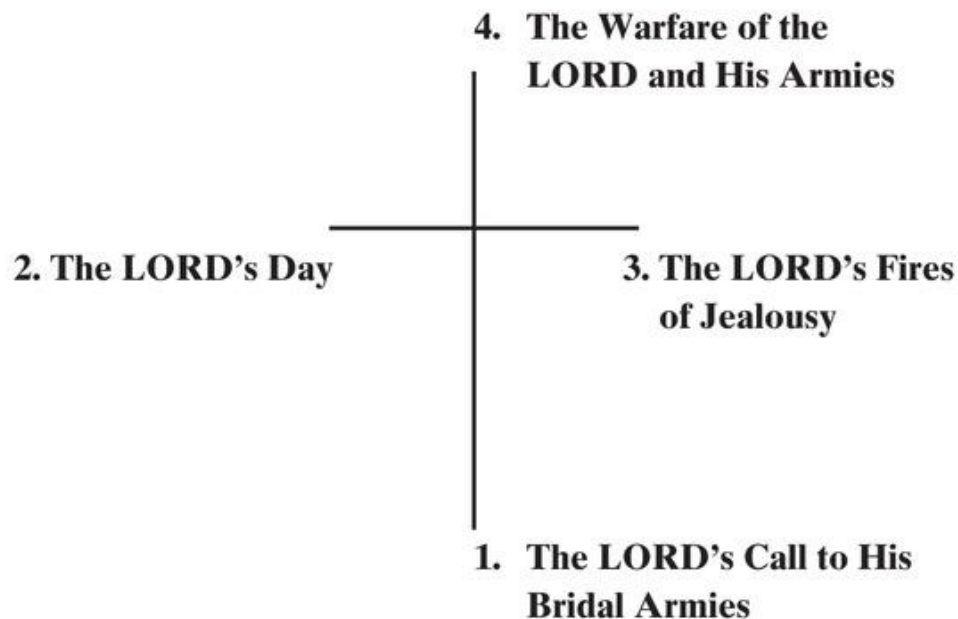
This completes this Seal of Truth about the Soldiers in the LORD's Bridal Armies, which we have learned from studying the different ways the word *tseb-ee* has been translated, but there is much more to learn about the Armies that will return to Earth with Jesus Christ at His Second Coming.

B. The LORD's Coming to Earth with His Bridal Armies

In the book that bears his name, the Prophet Joel gave a very graphic description of the Bridegroom and His Bridal Armies.

Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: for the day of the LORD cometh, for it is nigh at hand; A day of darkness and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick darkness, as the morning spread upon the mountains: a great people and a strong; there hath not been ever the like, neither shall be any more after it, even to the years of many generations. A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land is as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them. The appearance of them is as the appearance of horses; and as horsemen, so shall they run. Like the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap, like the noise of a flame of fire that devoureth the stubble, as a strong people set in battle array. Before their face the people shall be much pained: all faces shall gather blackness. They shall run like mighty men; they shall climb the wall like men of war; and they shall march every one on his ways, and they shall not break their ranks: Neither shall one thrust another; they shall walk every one in his path: and when they fall upon the sword, they shall not be wounded. They shall run to and fro in the city; they shall run upon the wall, they shall climb up upon the houses; they shall enter in at the windows like a thief. The earth shall quake before them, the heavens shall tremble: the sun and the moon shall be dark, and the stars shall withdraw their shining: *And the LORD shall utter his voice before his army*; for his camp is very great: for he is strong that executeth his word: for the day of the LORD is great and very terrible; and who can abide it? (Joel 2:1-11).

In these verses we see four great points on a Stature of Truth about the LORD's Bridal Armies:



The LORD will call His Bridal Armies together in Heaven as He prepares to return to Earth.

1. The LORD's Call to His Bridal Armies

The LORD will give the Command to “Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain.” This portion of Scripture cannot be referring to the earthly Mount Zion and Jerusalem, which has been so defiled by the rejection of Jesus Christ and the acceptance of Antichrist. Jesus clarified this Trumpet Call to His Bridal Armies in the Book of Matthew.

Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. And *he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other* (Matthew 24:29-31).

After the Great Tribulation and after the Marriage Supper of the Lamb have taken place on Earth and in Heaven, the LORD will have a trumpet alarm sounded for war, which will cause all His Bridal Armies to gather behind Him in the form of a Cross. This will be the LORD's *sign* that first will be seen in Heaven, before the Bridegroom and His Bridal Armies begin their swift march as they come to Earth.

The LORD's Bride will have passed through the tribulation of the Church with its schisms, delusions, and persecutions; and she will have passed through the tribulations, calamities, and wars of the nations. Then, she will be caught away as part of the overcomers who make up the Wedding Party at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb. During this glorious time in Heaven, the Antichrist will ascend out of the Bottomless Pit or Sea, and fallen Lucifer will enthrone him in Jerusalem as the Christ. At the end of the great three-and-one-half-year Tribulation Period, the LORD and His Bridal Armies will return to Earth to fight against the Antichrist, the False Prophet, and his armies, bringing God's Wrath and Judgment upon them.

This special, great time of judgment is called the “LORD's Day,” which is the second point on the Stature of Truth about the LORD's Coming to Earth with His Bridal Armies.

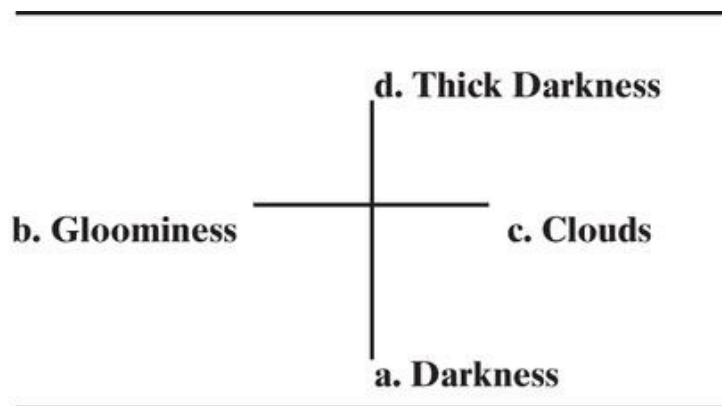
2. The LORD's Day

The LORD's Day will be a special day in the history of mankind. There never has been a day like it in the past, and there never shall be a day like it thereafter.

Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: *for the day of the LORD cometh*, for it is nigh at hand; A day of darkness [*kho-shek*] and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick darkness, as the morning spread upon the mountains: a great people and a strong; *there hath not been ever the like, neither shall be any more after it, even to the years of many generations....* And the LORD shall utter his voice before his army: for his camp is very great: for he is strong that executeth his word: *for the day of the LORD is great and very terrible; and who can abide it?... (Joel 2:1,2,11).*

For, behold, in those days, and in that time, when I shall bring again the captivity of Judah and Jerusalem, I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat, and will plead with them there for my people and for my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land. And they have cast lots for my people; and have given a boy for an harlot, and sold a girl for wine, that they might drink. Yea, and what have ye to do with me, O Tyre, and Zidon, and all the coasts of Palestine? will ye render me a recompence? and if ye recompence me, swiftly and speedily will I return your recompence upon your own head; Because ye have taken my silver and my gold, and have carried into your temples my goodly pleasant things: The children also of Judah and the children of Jerusalem have ye sold unto the Grecians, that ye might remove them far from their border. Behold, I will raise them out of the place whither ye have sold them, and will return your recompence upon your own head: And I will sell your sons and your daughters into the hand of the children of Judah, and they shall sell them to the Sabeans, to a people far off: for the LORD hath spoken it. Proclaim ye this among the Gentiles; Prepare war, wake up the mighty men, let all the men of war draw near; let them come up: Beat your plowshares into swords, and your pruninghooks into spears: let the weak say, I am strong. Assemble yourselves, and come, all ye heathen, and gather yourselves together round about: thither cause thy mighty ones to come down, O LORD. Let the heathen be wakened, and come up to the valley of Jehoshaphat: for there will I sit to judge all the heathen round about. Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe: come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great. Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision: *for the day of the LORD is near in the valley of decision* (Joel 3:1-14).

The Day of the LORD (the Day the Bridegroom and His Bridal Armies return to Earth) will be a day of visible, universal change. It will be a day of darkness, gloominess, clouds, and thick darkness.



a. Darkness

The first change will be a universal *darkness*, which in Hebrew is called *kho-shek*, meaning misery, destruction, sorrow, obscurity.

The sun shall be turned into darkness [*kho-shek*], and the moon into blood, *before the great and the terrible day of the LORD come*. And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the LORD shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the LORD hath said, and in the remnant whom the LORD shall call (Joel 2:31,32).

When the lights of Heaven cease to rule over the day and night by shining and giving their light, as God commanded in the beginning, they will be preparing the way for the unveiling of the Sun of Righteousness. When God shuts off the comfort and consolation of all created light, the world will experience a black “cloak” of darkness that will bring sorrow and long, deep mental anguish and disappointment over the loss of the created light. The world’s painful misery over the misfortune and disaster of the loss of created light will be unbearable. Sinners’ wretchedness, distress, and misery over the loss of created light will be intensified by their great hate of Christ Jesus, the Sun of Righteousness.

b. Gloominess

The LORD’s Day also will be a day of *gloominess*. In Hebrew, the word for *gloominess* is *af-ay-law*, meaning duskiness, obscurity, the setting of the sun.

This will be the same class of darkness or gloominess that God sent upon the Egyptians when Moses and the Israelites were there.

And Moses stretched forth his hand toward heaven; and *there was a thick [af-ay-law] darkness* in all the land of Egypt three days: (Exodus 10:22).

This is the kind of darkness in which everything becomes doubtful or unreal.

Moses also spoke of this class of gloomy darkness when he described God’s chastening Judgment upon those who defected from Him.

And thou shalt grope at noonday, as the blind gropeth in darkness [*af-ay-law*], and thou shalt not prosper in thy ways: and thou shalt be only oppressed and spoiled evermore, and no man shall save thee (Deuteronomy 28:29).

This gloominess promotes haziness, confusion, and cloudiness of perception, thoughts, and ideas.

The Presence of the Bridegroom and His Bridal Armies, who will be crowned with the blaze of God’s *Kabode* Glory, will make the tragic gloom of the LORD’s Day the thicker and the more doleful!

c. Clouds

The Prophet Zephaniah spoke of the Day of the LORD as being full of *clouds* or *aw-nawn*, which means thunderclouds.

That day is a day of wrath, a day of trouble and distress, a day of wasteness and desolation, a day of darkness and gloominess, a day of clouds [aw-nawn] and thick darkness, (Zephaniah 1:15).

This class of darkness was seen on Mount Sinai when the LORD came down in an *aw-nawn* thundercloud to bring the Written *Torah*. The loud, rustling, deep noise of the thunderclouds upon God's Law caused Israel, the people of God, to tremble and quake with fright at the awesome, Holy Presence of His Written *Torah*. When God uttered His Oral Law with the sound of thunder, His people considered it both threatening and menacing.

How much greater will be God's *aw-nawn* thundercloud in the Day of the LORD, when His Living *Torah* stands in Person, uttering His Voice before His great Bridal Armies.

The LORD Jesus Christ's Voice will be a thunderous threat and a menace to the wicked sinners and rejecters when He stands upon the Mount of Olives at His Second Coming.

d. Thick Darkness

The Day of the LORD also will be accompanied by *thick darkness* or *ar-aw-fel*, meaning to drip, drop, and gross gloom.

This class of darkness also accompanied God's giving of the Written Law or *Torah*.

And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness [ar-aw-fel] where God was (Exodus 20:21).

Moses drew near to the thick darkness or the dense darkness where God was. The thick darkness covered the LORD God, His Glory, and His *Torah*-Law.

The LORD uses thick darkness to enshroud Himself so He is invisible to the human eye. Likewise, on the Day of the LORD, God will enshroud the Bridegroom and the Bride with thick darkness, keeping them from human view until the exact, appointed time of His unveiling of His mighty, formidable Army.

The Day of the LORD also will come as a thief who secretly and stealthily creeps in unawares to steal from his victim.

For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape (1 Thessalonians 5:2,3).

A thief usually comes in the darkness of night, when he is least expected. Likewise, the LORD will come at the hour of the greatest spiritual darkness, surprising the whole world with His sudden appearance. Although the world will be saying "Peace and safety," at His Coming, Christ will bring sudden, unavoidable destruction upon the wicked. They will not be able to hide from the LORD's Judgment and Punishment in that day.

The LORD's Judgment will be executed by His Jealous Fires.

3. The LORD's Fires of Jealousy

The LORD God is a jealous God, and His Name is "Jealous." Therefore, He has forbidden man to bow down to any form of images and idols because He created man for Himself and for His Good Pleasure (Revelation 4:11).

Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me; (Exodus 20:5).

Because God is God, He demands His Exclusive Rights to every soul, both in the present and in the future. He is jealous of every soul He has created.

The LORD's Name is Jealous or "Exclusive." Hence, all other gods, owners, and masters are excluded from being true gods, owners, or masters.

For thou shalt worship no other god: for the LORD, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God: (Exodus 34:14).

God's Jealous, Fiery Nature or Name makes him watchful and solicitous, and He guards His Divine Rights from all rivals and their influence. He demands exclusive loyalty from His creation.

The LORD's Jealousy is a burning Fire. Therefore, when His creation is disloyal to Him, He manifests His wrathful, burning Jealousy through Fire.

The fullness of the LORD's Jealousy will burn in the Day of the LORD.

Neither their silver nor their gold shall be able to deliver them *in the day of the LORD's wrath*; but *the whole land shall be devoured by the fire of his jealousy*: for he shall make even a speedy riddance of all them that dwell in the land (Zephaniah 1:18).

In the Day of the LORD, man will not be able to quench the LORD's Jealous Fire, nor will he be able to purchase peace with God with his silver and gold. In the Day of the LORD, He will no longer tolerate man's divided allegiance!

Therefore wait ye upon me, saith the LORD, until the day that I rise up to the prey: for my determination is to gather the nations, that I may assemble the kingdoms, to pour upon them mine indignation, even all my fierce anger: *for all the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy* (Zephaniah 3:8).

The Prophet encouraged God's loyal adherents, who had been and are confused and puzzled by the rampant evil in this world, to be patient until the Day of the LORD when His devouring Jealous Fire will consume sinners.

The Apostle Peter revealed that the LORD's Jealous Fire will melt the elements of creation, causing all the works of man to be burned up. They will find no shelter from the LORD's judgmental storms, nor protective shade and shadow from the heat of the LORD's Burning Jealousy, which will consume the wicked.

But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and *the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up*. Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness, (II Peter 3:10,11).

How dreadful will be that great Day of Judgment, in which the elements of nature will melt with fervent heat and *all* the works of sinful man will be burned up.

For, behold, *the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven*; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and *the day that cometh shall burn them up*, saith the LORD of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be as ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the LORD of hosts (Malachi 4:1-3).

In the Day of the LORD, the Earth will burn as a great furnace. The LORD will increase the size of the Sun seven times, causing it to be joined to His Jealous Fire which will burn with undiminished flames. The *wicked* will be *consumed* by the heat of the LORD's Jealousy and by the heat of the Sun. But the *righteous* will be *healed* by the warm, shining appearance of the LORD, the Sun of Righteousness.

The LORD's Day, the day of the appearance of the LORD Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom, and His Bridal Armies, will be an infamous day for sinners, but it will be a glorious day for the righteous.

The LORD's Bridal Armies will be accompanied by the LORD's Jealous Fire, which will go before and behind the Armies.

A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land is as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them (Joel 2:3).

The LORD's devouring Fires of Jealousy will consume all that is *before* the LORD's Bridal Armies; and *behind* them, the flames of the LORD's Fires of Jealousy will continue burning. Before the LORD's Bridal Armies invade the fields, the fields will look like the Garden of Eden — beautiful, pleasant to the eye, and full of good fruits. But after the LORD's consuming Fires of Jealousy pass through with His Bridal Armies, the fields will look like a desolate wilderness.

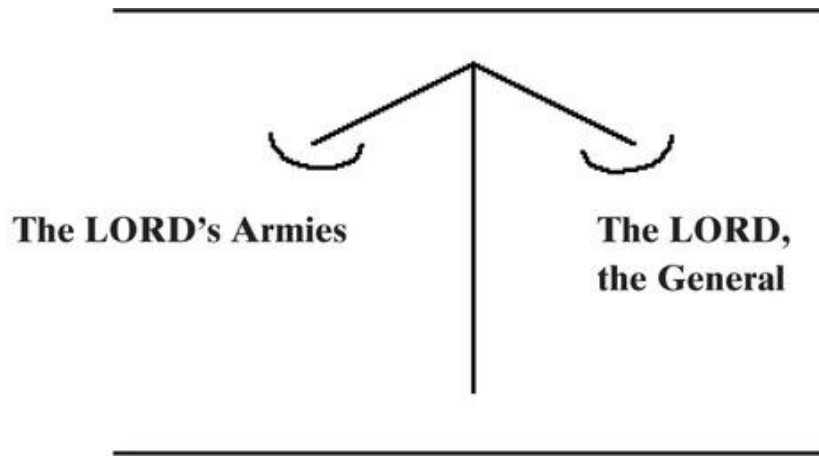
Neither the wicked, the elements, the works of man, nor anything else will be able to withstand the LORD's Fires in that great and notable day.

The warfare that the LORD and His Armies will wage will be dreadful and devastating.

4. The Warfare of the LORD and His Armies

The sight of the LORD's Armies, all set in battle array, riding upon their White Horses of Faith, clothed with the LORD's Flames of Jealousy, and drawing the Chariots of the LORD's Living Name, will make them appear as the great and strong Armies they truly will be.

There are two principal participants in this Warfare — the Armies themselves and the LORD, Who is their General.



a. The LORD's Armies

The people will be pained before these great Bridal Armies. Peoples' faces will gather blackness or shame at the Presence of the Holy, Glorious LORD.

The great soldiers in the LORD's Armies will do the following things:

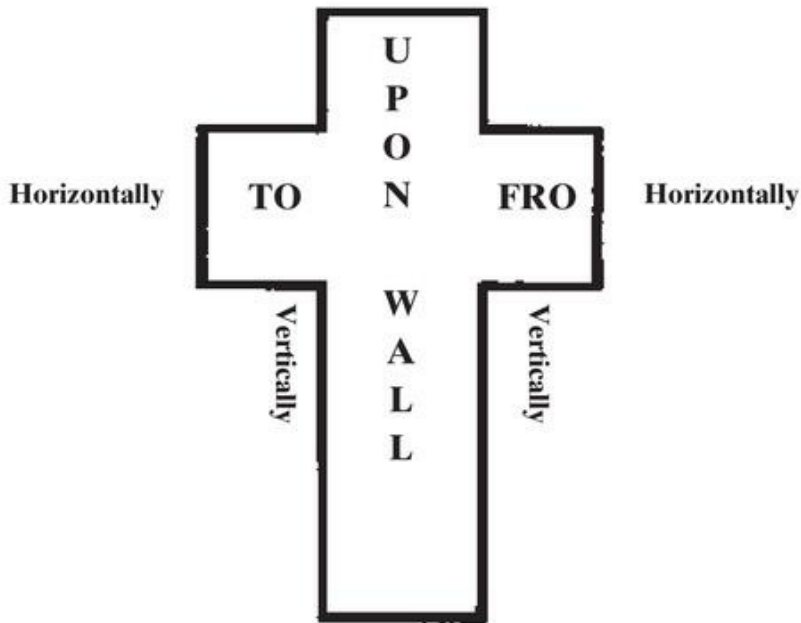
(1) Run

The Armies will move swiftly and rapidly in order to implement the LORD's Purposive Will in His Judgments. They will *run* like mighty men with Christ's Divine Resurrection Power and His Infinite Strength.

The soldiers in the LORD's Armies will run to and fro in the city; that is, in the humble, horizontal position, looking for those who are proud, in order to bring them low into the horizontal position.

They also will run upon the wall, in the exalted, vertical position, looking for those who are proud, in order to visit the LORD's Judgments upon them. These swift soldiers will run up and down and to and fro, in the form of the Cross, as they punish the proud rejecters of Christ's Cross.

**LORD's Armies Run
in the Form of the Cross**



(2) Climb

The LORD's warring Armies will *climb* on the wall like men of war, as they ascend gradually and labouriously, searching out any that are hidden in the holes in the wall. These mighty soldiers also will climb upon the houses, searching and looking until they ferret out all the LORD's enemies.

(3) March

The Armies will *march*, everyone in his appointed ways. They will advance steadily and progress regularly in the LORD's Purposive Will, maintaining their military formation until all the LORD's enemies are subdued.

(4) Walk

These strong Soldiers also will *walk*, everyone in his own appointed path, as they follow in the Footsteps of their General.

(5) Enter

The soldiers in the LORD's Armies will *enter* in at the windows, like thieves, stealing in unawares to take the LORD's enemies.

Although these are warring soldiers, on one side of the scales, they are perfectly peaceable on the other side of the

scales. They will not break their ranks. They will remain in the orderly arrangement in which their General has placed them. They will not thrust, suddenly push, or forcefully shove one another. They are an invincible Army because they are in their glorified bodies. Consequently, when they fall upon the enemies' swords, they can be neither wounded nor killed.

The entire creation will move in reverential fear before these Armies.

- The Earth will quake.
- The Heavens will tremble.
- The Sun and Moon will become dark.
- The Stars will refuse to shine.

What a spectacular sight these glorified Armies will be upon the mountains, with their LORD, the General.

b. The LORD, the General

The LORD, the General, will utter His Divine, Omnipotent Voice before His Armies, expressing His Commands. He will be Infinitely Strong to execute His Word, performing His Promises of Judgment. The Day of the LORD will be great and terrible!

We have studied a few Truths about how the LORD's Bride will be divided into separate, unified Armies at His Second Coming.

Now we are ready to study about the Bride's humility obedience.

II. Christ's Bride Will Be Humbly Obedient to Go Forth (Yaw-tsaw) with Her Bridegroom-General

The Bridal Armies humbly and obediently will follow the Bridegroom wherever He goes and will do whatever He commands them to do.

And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean (Revelation 19:14).

The Bride learned, during her fleshly days on Earth, how to humble herself by becoming conscious of her fleshly defects and shortcomings and, then, acknowledging them to her LORD and Saviour so that the Crucified Christ could nail them to His Cross. She had learned to surrender her proud self-assertiveness to Christ's Blood, Fire, and Water and take on the Lowliness of Christ, obediently following Him in her appointed low places of conditions and rank. She had learned to follow Him in unimportant and unpretentious positions. In the midst of pleasures and pains of her earthly life, she had learned to take on Christ's Humbleness of Mind and Patience of Disposition. Her bitterness and resentments were traded for Jesus' Submissiveness. She also had learned to trade her proud conceit for Christ's Lowliness of Mind and Heart and to follow, obediently, the Crucified Lamb whithersoever He went. Thus, because she had learned all these things in the days of her fleshly existence on Earth, she became qualified to join the Resurrected Christ's Bridal Armies, and as a trained soldier, she obediently will follow Him into the Battle of Armageddon.

If we examine the Hebrew root word for *follow*, which is *yaw-tsaw*, our understanding will become enlightened about what it means for the Armies to follow the Bridegroom, the KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS. There is a sevenfold meaning to the Hebrew word *yaw-tsaw*.

A. Yaw-tsaw Means to Go Out, to Go Forth

Noah followed the dove out of the Ark to a clean, sanctified Earth in order to build a new kingdom of people. He went forth (*yaw-tsaw*) in obedience to God's Command.

And God spake unto Noah, saying, Go [yaw-tsaw] forth of the ark, thou, and thy wife, and thy sons, and thy sons' wives with thee.... Every beast, every creeping thing, and every fowl, and whatsoever creepeth upon the earth, after their kinds, went forth out of the ark (Genesis 8:15,16,19).

Just as Noah “went forth” out of the ark, so the Bride will follow the Bridegroom out of Heaven and “go forth” to an Earth that will be cleansed by the LORD’s Fiery Jealousy so that He and His Bride can establish a new Kingdom of people to serve God in the Millennial Reign.

B. Yaw-tsaw Means to Go Forth, to Issue Forth

Yaw-tsaw means to go forth, to issue forth, as Jacob went forth at birth to lay hold of his inheritance from God.

And after that came [yaw-tsaw] his brother out, and his hand took hold on Esau’s heel; and his name was called Jacob: and Isaac was threescore years old when she bare them (Genesis 25:26).

When Jacob was in the womb with Esau, his twin brother, Esau stole the birthright from Jacob by pressing his way to birth, first, (Romans 9:10-13). However, Jacob “followed forth” with his hand on Esau’s heel as a witness that, in time, he would take down the usurper Esau.

Likewise, the Bride will follow the Bridegroom forth from the “womb” of her experience as the Lamb’s Wife in order to help take down the Antichrist, the great usurper.

C. Yaw-tsaw Means to Follow Forth in Order to Escape Danger by Setting Free

The LORD went forth (*yaw-tsaw*) in the darkness of night to set Israel free by putting the plague of death upon the firstborn of her oppressors.

And Moses said, Thus saith the LORD, About midnight will I go [yaw-tsaw] out into the midst of Egypt: (Exodus 11:4).

Likewise, the Bride willingly will follow her LORD, the Bridegroom, “going forth” (*yaw-tsaw*) in the darkness of night to set free those in natural Israel who have been sealed. By putting the plague of death upon the Antichrist and his wicked ones, the Bride will ensure the freedom of those who have been sealed.

D. Yaw-tsaw Means to Rise Up with Fiery Light to Consume

When the 250 princes who had the brazen audacity to intrude into the Priesthood were consumed for their sin, it was a Fire that followed forth from the LORD that devoured them. Thus, *yaw-tsaw* means to rise up with fiery Light to consume, such as in this instance with the 250 princes.

And there came [yaw-tsaw] out a fire from the LORD, and consumed the two hundred and fifty men that offered incense (Numbers 16:35).

Likewise, the Bride will “rise up” to follow the Bridegroom as He goes forth with His Jealous Fire to devour the Antichrist and his wicked followers who boldly have dared to intrude into God’s House and set up the idolatrous worship of the Antichrist.

E. Yaw-tsaw Means to Spring Up or to Shoot Forth

Yaw-tsaw means to spring up or to shoot forth, as did the miraculous River of the LORD’s Name that “sprang forth” out of the Smitten Rock in the wilderness.

Behold, I will stand before thee there upon the rock in Horeb; and thou shalt smite the rock, and there shall come [yaw-tsaw] water out of it, that the people may drink. And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel (Exodus 17:6).

Likewise, when the Bride follows the Bridegroom to the Millennial Temple, the Waters of the LORD’s Name will “spring up” and follow the LORD’s Purposive Will out of the Temple.

Afterward he brought me again unto the door of the house; and, behold, waters issued [yaw-tsaw] out from under the threshold of the house eastward: for the forefront of the house stood toward the east, and the waters came down from under from the right side of the house, at the south

side of the altar.... Afterward he measured a thousand; and it was a river that I could not pass over: for the waters were risen, waters to swim in, a river that could not be passed over.... Then said he unto me, These waters issue out toward the east country, and go down into the desert, and go into the sea: which being brought forth into the sea, the waters shall be healed. And it shall come to pass, that every thing that liveth, which moveth, whithersoever the rivers shall come, shall live: and there shall be a very great multitude of fish, because these waters shall come thither: for they shall be healed; and every thing shall live whither the river cometh. And it shall come to pass, that the fishers shall stand upon it from En-gedi even unto En-eghlaim; they shall be a place to spread forth nets; their fish shall be according to their kinds, as the fish of the great sea, exceeding many.... And by the river upon the bank thereof, on this side and on that side, shall grow all trees for meat, whose leaf shall not fade, neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed: it shall bring forth new fruit according to his months, because their waters they issued out of the sanctuary: and the fruit thereof shall be for meat, and the leaf thereof for medicine (Ezekiel 47:1,5,8,9,10,12).

In Ezekiel's vision of the Millennial Temple, the Waters of the LORD's Name first oozed out in small drops; then it became a mighty River, bringing life, healing, and fructifying power everywhere it flowed.

F. *Yaw-tsaw* Means for a Decree to Go Forth, Follow Forth, to be Published

When the wicked Haman endeavoured, by his deceitful decree, to kill all the Jews in King Ahasuerus' kingdom, King Ahasuerus caused a decree to "follow forth" out of his mouth, which would refute and annihilate the wicked Haman's decree that called for the death of the Jews. This showed another way in which *yaw-tsaw* works to accomplish the LORD's Will.

So the posts that rode upon mules and camels went [yaw-tsaw] out, being hastened and pressed on by the king's commandment. And the decree was given at Shushan the palace (Esther 8:14).

Likewise, when the Bride follows her Bridegroom-King to Earth, they will fight against all who, like wicked Haman, are trying to destroy God's sealed people.

And this shall be the plague wherewith the LORD will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth (Zechariah 14:12).

God's people have been martyrs upon this Earth, but those who try to commit such atrocious crimes against God's sealed people shall be consumed.

G. *Yaw-tsaw* Means to Go Out, to Follow Out to the End, as the End of a Period of Time

In Israel, when a man waxed poor to the point that he was forced to sell himself as a slave, which meant that he and his family became slaves, the *Torah* decreed that the time of slavery would end in the fiftieth year, the year of Jubilee. The *Torah* provided for man's personal freedom so that the time of slavery had to follow to an end, a conclusion.

The LORD is the Owner and the Master, and He raises His slaves above all other slavery, making it impossible for them ultimately to be bound by any other master. God's *Torah* kept Israel continually conscious of the impossibility of the transfer of their personal freedom to any other master. Therefore, God instituted the year of Jubilee, every fiftieth year, for the purpose of restoring the lost freedom of His people.

And if he be not redeemed in these years, then he shall go [yaw-tsaw] out in the year of jubile, both he, and his children with him (Leviticus 25:54).

Likewise, the Bride will follow the Bridegroom to the *end of time*, and they will set loose God's creation that is in bondage and corruption to fallen Lucifer, and they will restore the creation to its rightful Owner and Master, bringing it to a personal "Jubilee freedom" in the Millennial Reign of the LORD Jesus Christ.

These seven meanings of *yaw-tsaw* or *follow* show us how great it really is for the Bride to follow the Bridegroom, humbly and obediently.

We have seen the Bridal Armies as a whole, and we have seen the Bridal Armies' humble obedience to their Bridegroom-General. Now we will see the Armies' mode of transportation as they come forth from Heaven riding

on their White Horses.

III. Christ's Bridal Armies Will Come to Earth Riding Upon Their White Horses

When the Bridal Armies have gathered in response to the Bridegroom-General's Call, they will take their individual places and follow Him out of Heaven on their White Horses.

And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses [soos], clothed in fine linen, white and clean (Revelation 19:14).

The White Horses of the Bridegroom and Bride are the White Horses of Faith. The Hebrew word for these *horses* is *soos*, meaning to skip for joy, a horse as leaping; also a swallow from its rapid flight.

These Horses are white. The Hebrew root word for this particular kind of *white* is *law-ban*, meaning to make white and clean or to become white. White, in this instance, speaks of the Moon Glory or the Humility Glory of the Crucified Christ. Since these Horses are Horses of Faith and since they are the white colour of Humility, we can deduct, rightly, that all *faith* from God's Word is built upon the foundation of *Christ's Humility Glory*. The white, sparkling shine of faith that comes from the Horses of Faith reveals the joyful purity and strength of their faith.

In the Book of Job, God's Spirit, through Elihu, who was a type of Jesus Christ the Mediator, gave a beautiful picture of the nature of the Horse of Faith.

Hast thou given the horse [soos] strength? hast thou clothed his neck with thunder? Canst thou make him afraid as a grasshopper? the glory of his nostrils is terrible. He paweth in the valley, and rejoiceth in his strength: he goeth on to meet the armed men. He mocketh at fear, and is not affrighted; neither turneth he back from the sword. The quiver rattleth against him, the glittering spear and the shield. He swalloweth the ground with fierceness and rage: neither believeth he that it is the sound of the trumpet. He saith among the trumpets, Ha, ha; and he smelleth the battle afar off, the thunder of the captains, and the shouting (Job 39:19-25).

These precious verses give us a perfect picture of the nature of the Horse of Faith. For an overview of the study about the Horse of Faith, let us look first at all the points in this Stature of Truth, then, we will cover each point briefly.

The Horse of Faith

	D. The Horse of Faith Discerns, from Afar Off, the Works of the Enemy 1. He Swallows the Ground Between Him and the Battle 2. For Joy, He Hardly Believes the Sound of the Trumpet 3. He Prophetically Expresses Triumph by Saying, “Ha, Ha” 4. He Smells the Battle Afar Off
B. The Horse of Faith Shows His Joy in Doing God’s Purposive Will 1. His Hoofs Paw in the Valley 2. His Joy Is in His Strength 3. He Goes Forth to Meet the Armed Men 4. He Mocks at Fear	C. With Courage, the Horse of Faith Meets the Defensive and Aggressive Warfare of God’s Enemies 1. He Is Not Affrighted 2. He Does Not Turn Back from the Sword 3. He Does Not Turn Back at the Rattle of the Arrows in the Enemies’ Quivers 4. He Does Not Turn Back from the Enemies’ Spear and Shield
	A. The Horse of Faith Is Prepared for Battle in Four Ways 1. He Has Overcoming Strength 2. His Neck Is Clothed With Thunder 3. He Has Fearless Courage 4. He Has the Glory of His Nostrils

First, let us examine the preparation of the Horse of Faith, which includes its Strength, its Neck, its Courage, and its Nostrils.

A. The Horse of Faith Is Prepared for Battle in Four Ways

In God's Word, the Spirit always refers to the natural horse as an animal of war. Likewise, in the spiritual realm, it is the Horse of Faith that overcomes in the big warfare of doubts, disbelief, and unbelief "within" the human heart and mind and in the world "without."

For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: *and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.* Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God? (1 John 5:4,5).

If we, "within" our heart, believe on Jesus Christ as the Holy, Just, and Righteous Redeemer, Owner, and Master, our Horse of Faith will grow to where we can overcome the world "without" because we will have all the attributes of the Horse of Faith to help us in our battles.

There are four ways the Horse of Faith is prepared for fighting: with overcoming Strength; with a Neck clothed with Thunder; with fearless Courage; and with Nostrils filled with Glory.

1. He Has Overcoming Strength

The Horse of Faith, God's Animal of War, has Strength to overcome any enemy that would rise against him.

Hast thou given the horse *strength* [*gheb-oo-raw*]?... (Job 39:19).

The Hebrew word, here, for *strength* is the feminine word *gheb-oo-raw*, meaning force, valour, victory, mastery, might, and power.

The horse receives its strength from its Creator, not from the creature, either naturally or spiritually.

The Horse of Faith receives its Strength from the feminine Word of God's Holy *Torah*. *Gheb-oo-raw* Strength is the Power of God's Wisdom-Word to take victory over all His enemies. *Gheb-oo-raw* Strength is God's Creative, Forming Power that overthrows all opposing forces and educates mankind to God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

In the future confrontation between the LORD Jesus Christ and the Antichrist, the *Gheb-oo-raw* Strength of the White Horses of the Bridegroom and the Bride will overthrow all the opposing forces of fallen Lucifer, the Antichrist and his armies, and all the wicked in the Earth. Then, by God's *Gheb-oo-raw* Strength, they will educate all mankind to God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

2. His Neck Is Clothed with Thunder

Thunder is a symbol of the LORD's Divine Unity.

...hast thou clothed his neck with *thunder* [*rag-mah*]? (Job 39:19)

The Hebrew word for *thunder* is the feminine word *rag-mah*, meaning to stir, rumble, move violently, thunder.

When the Bridegroom and His Bride appear at His Second Coming to Earth, the Necks of their Horses of Faith will be clothed with the majestic noise of God's Prophetic Promises of Unity for all creation.

Faith not only wars against God's opposing enemies, but it moves to bring peace and unity. After the LORD has ministered the lightning arrows of His Fiery Jealousy to separate all wicked ones from His Kingdom, the roaring Thunder of Universal Unity will be heard reverberating throughout the LORD's creation.

3. He Has Fearless Courage

Elihu scoffed at the possibility that anything could intimidate God's great and mighty Horse of Faith.

Canst thou make him afraid as a grasshopper?... (Job 39:20).

Can a mere creature make God's Divine Horse of Faith afraid as a grasshopper? Of course not! Faith never wavers when it is anchored in the Almighty God.

The Horses of Faith of the Bridegroom and the Bride will be fearlessly brave and courageous as they leap out of Heaven with perfect confidence and trust in the Heavenly Father's Almighty Power to overcome all opposing foes. They will not go forth in fear, with irrational, aimless actions; they will go forth in Faith, guided by the rational plots of God's Master Plan and the definite aim of His Purposive Will.

4. He Has the Glory of His Nostrils

God fills the Nostrils of the Horse of Faith with His *Hode* Glory, meaning grandeur, beauty, comeliness, excellency, honour, and majesty.

...the *glory [hode]* of his nostrils is terrible (Job 39:20).

With God's *Hode* Glory streaming forth from their Nostrils, the Bride's White Horses of Faith will present imposing forms and appearances.

The Hebrew word *hode* has the connotation of the outward appearance of God's Existence and Power. Therefore, the *Hode* Glory bears witness that God has *lasting existence* to continue to live on past the time when He will tread down all His enemies and that He has effective Power to accomplish the overthrow of all His enemies!

God's *Hode* Glory is above the Heavens and the Earth. In other words, it is above *all* His creation.

O LORD our Lord, how excellent is thy name in all the earth! *who hast set thy glory [hode] above the heavens* (Psalm 8:1).

Let them praise the name of the LORD: for his name alone is excellent; *his glory [hode] is above the earth and heaven* (Psalm 148:13).

God came from Teman, and the Holy One from mount Paran. Selah. *His glory [hode] covered the heavens, and the earth was full of his praise* (Habakkuk 3:3).

God has set His lasting, effective, Eternal Glory above all His creation. The LORD God will vest the White Horses of Faith of the Bridegroom and the Bride with the awesome splendour of His *Hode* Glory in order to direct the minds of both His friends and foes to the Majesty and Power of the Creator at Christ's Second Coming.

The Nostrils (which speak of the sense of smell) of the Horse of Faith breathe out nothing but the *Hode* Glory of the Truth of the LORD's lasting Existence and His effective Power.

The Horse of Faith not only is prepared for battle, but he has joy in doing God's Will.

B. The Horse of Faith Shows His Joy in Doing God's Purposive Will

The Horse of Faith exhibits his joy over going into battle by pawing, by rejoicing over past victories, by being anxious to meet his armed enemies, and by mocking at any fear. He is well-prepared for and fearlessly joyful about the battles he engages in to carry out God's Purposive Will.

First, we see that the Horse of Faith expresses joy by pawing in the valley.

1. His Hoofs Paw in the Valley

The Horse of Faith is a spirited animal who manifests his anticipation of engaging in conflict by pawing the air.

He paweth in the valley... (Job 39:21).

A natural horse's hoofs consist of a horny covering on his feet for the purpose of trampling, walking, and dancing. Thus, the horse's hoofs are nothing but humility "horns" on his feet.

The Psalmist compared praise to "horns," and he compared thanksgiving to "hoofs" of animals.

I will *praise* the name of God with a song, and will magnify him with *thanksgiving*. This also *shall please the LORD better than* an ox or bullock that hath *horns and hoofs*. The humble shall see this, and be glad: and your heart shall live that seek God (Psalm 69:30-32).

The Psalmist lifted up his "horns" of praise to sing a song unto the LORD, and he "pawed" with his "hoofs" of

thanksgiving for all the times the LORD's Salvation had kept him through afflictions and pain.

The Horses of Faith of the Bridegroom and the Bride will be shod with strong Hoofs of joyful thanksgiving unto the LORD for the past times His great Salvation redeemed them from their enemies.

The time the Father lifted His Son out of Death and Hell by His Unbegotten *Kabode* Glory, and the time the Son, in turn, saved His Bride by lifting her up from the penalty of Death and Hell were great times of triumph for the Horse of Faith.

The Hoofs of the Bridegroom and the Bride's Horses of Faith will "paw" with joyful thanksgiving and appreciation that the time has come for them to go forth to bring Salvation to all God's creation. They will paw with their Hoofs aloft, lashing at the Heavenly air in great anticipation of the final command to charge forth.

Next, we see that the Horse of Faith's Strength is used by him to further express his joy in doing God's Purposive Will.

2. His Joy Is in His Strength

What Joy the Horse of Faith has in his Strength that gives him Power to subdue God's enemies.

...and rejoiceth in his strength [ko-akh]: (Job 39:21).

The Hebrew word *strength*, in this verse, is *ko-akh*, meaning force, vigour, might, fruits, wealth, and power. This is the strength and power of fruitfulness.

After Cain had killed his brother Abel, God told him the ground would no longer yield its strength and power of fruitfulness unto him.

When thou tillest the ground, it shall not henceforth yield unto thee her strength; a fugitive and a vagabond shalt thou be in the earth (Genesis 4:12).

Cain sinned by misuse of his strength, so he reaped the withholding of the *ko-akh* fruitful strength of the Earth. Hence Cain had no spot on Earth where he could join his strength to the strength of the ground.

God showed His *Ko-akh* Strength or Power to Israel, His natural Bride, by helping her dispossess the old inhabitants of Canaan's Land.

He hath shewed his people the power [ko-akh] of his works, that he may give them the heritage of the heathen (Psalm 111:6).

This was a great, overwhelming demonstration of the LORD's Power and Might.

Likewise, the Bride's Horse of Faith will rejoice in his Strength with which he conquered the old, unChrist-like inhabitants of idols, hate, bitterness, and strife that previously had lived in the old heart of the Bride during the days of her fleshly journey. Because of his past experience, the Bride's Horse of Faith will know by empirical Knowledge that he will be able to conquer the old unChrist-like inhabitants living on the old Earth at Christ's Second Coming.

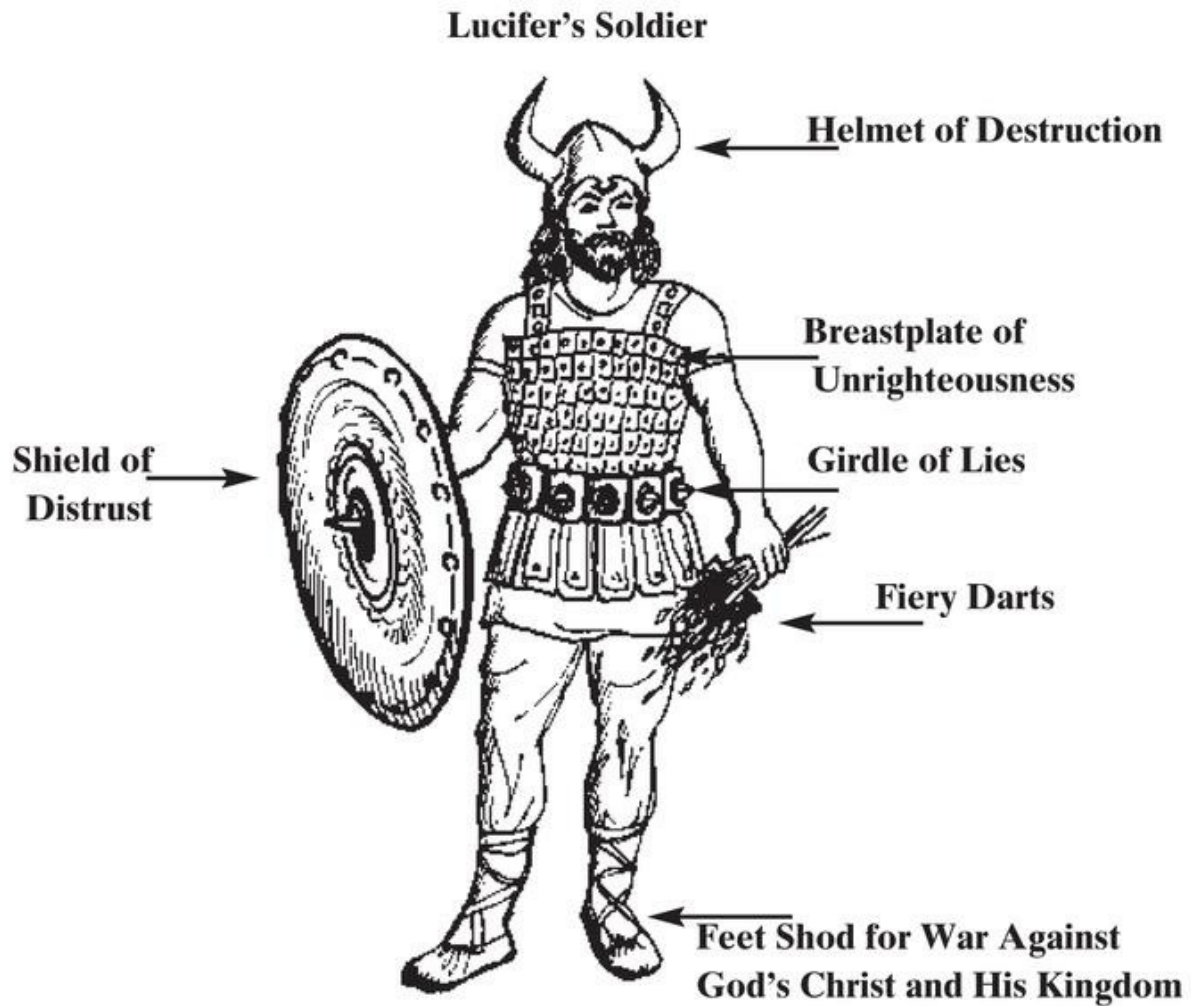
Hence, with joyful Strength and steadfast confidence, the Horse of Faith will go forth to meet the armed men.

3. He Goes Forth to Meet the Armed Men

The Horse of Faith has experience in meeting Lucifer's soldiers. He goes forth gladly to engage them in battle.

...he goeth on to meet the armed men (Job 39:21).

Fallen Lucifer also provides his soldiers with offensive and defensive armour.



However, the Horses of Faith are undaunted by the wicked, evil armour and weapons of fallen Lucifer and his armies.

Therefore, when the great Battle of Armageddon takes place, they will go forth with God's great Power of Truth and Spirit to come against the Antichrist and his armies.

4. He Mocks at Fear

Because he joyfully is in God's Purposive Will, the Horse of Faith mocks at fear. He scornfully makes fun of Lucifer's armies and holds them in contemptible derision because he knows that God's Truth and Power can and will conquer all Lucifer's lies and deceitful power.

He mocketh at fear,... (Job 39:22).

The Horse of Faith's Courage will enable him to meet the Antichrist's armies fearlessly and with undaunted confidence in God's Mighty Power.

C. With Courage, the Horse of Faith Meets the Defensive and Aggressive Warfare of God's Enemies

The old warrior, the Horse of Faith, is not terrified at the thought of going to battle against God's enemies. He has fought them "within" the Bride's heart in the past.

1. He Is Not Affrighted

Perfect Faith casts out all fear, so the Horse of Faith is not afraid of anything — foe or weapon.

...and is not affrighted;... (Job 39:22).

The Horse of Faith will not be frightened by Lucifer's darkness. He has no feelings of disquiet, nor any lack of courage and Christ-confidence. He will have no overwhelming feelings of apprehensiveness about Who the Victor will be as he charges forth with a brave, bold, Christ-controlled mind.

The Horse of Faith will not change his mind about his choice to fight in the LORD's Cavalry.

2. He Does Not Turn Back from the Sword

Threats of weapons do not deter the Horse of Faith from his mission. His sensing of the battle only stirs his desire to fight.

...neither turneth he back from the sword (Job 39:22).

The Horses of Faith in the Bridal Armies will not turn their faces away from the LORD-General in front of them. They will not reverse their loyalty and allegiance when they meet Lucifer's defensive and aggressive sword-warfare.

3. He Does Not Turn Back at the Rattle of the Arrows in the Enemies' Quivers

The Horse of Faith does not turn back when God's enemies rattle their quivers or sheaths that are full of their poisonous arrows of doubts and distrust against the LORD.

The quiver rattleth against him,... (Job 39:23).

The Horse of Faith will not turn back at the powerful rattle of arrows in the enemies' quivers. The threatening sound of the arrows in the quivers of the Antichrist and his armies will not turn the Horse of Faith around, nor will the enemies' spears and shields deter him.

4. He Does Not Turn Back from the Enemies' Spear and Shield

Prepared and eager for battle, the Horse of Faith lets nothing hinder him from his forward charge — not even the sight of spear and shield.

...the glittering spear and the shield (Job 39:23).

Fallen Lucifer has stolen some of the LORD's Light, which he uses to clothe his prophetic promises so that they appear bright, shining, and sparkling, making his prophetic threats appear awesomely dangerous and distressfully menacing.

When Goliath faced little David on the battlefield, he used Lucifer's glittering light to speak prophetic threats to little David, saying he was going to take off his head and feed his flesh to the fowls of the air. While he was threatening David, he was defending himself against God's Powerful Truth with his great shield of doubt and disbelief.

Nevertheless, David's Horse of Faith did not turn back from the enemy's glittering speech and shield. David's Horse of Faith rode on to a mighty victory in the LORD's Name, taking Goliath down to the ground and to death.

Likewise, the Bridegroom and the Bride will ride forth to a glorious victory over Lucifer, the Antichrist, and their armies at the LORD's Second Coming.

The Horse of Faith has one more attribute which reveals his nature — from afar off, he is able to discern the enemy's works.

D. The Horse of Faith Discerns, from Afar Off, the Works of the Enemy

The Horses of Faith, upon which the Bridegroom and the Bride will be seated in the Heavenlies, will discern from afar off the Battle of Armageddon. They will recognize the LORD's enemies and distinguish between the innocent and the guilty.

He saith among the trumpets, Ha, ha; and he smelleth the battle afar off, the thunder of the captains, and the shouting (Job 39:25).

They will perceive the place of the battle, and they also will perceive the distance between them and the battle. They speedily will swallow up the distance, listening with anticipation for the sound of the trumpet. Eagerly responsive to the smell and sound of the battle, they will express their feelings of triumph by laughing.

1. He Swallows the Ground Between Him and the Battle

Ever eager to do battle to accomplish the LORD's Purposive Will, the Horse of Faith fiercely eats up the ground between him and his enemies, raging to engage in a fight of sure victory.

He swalloweth the ground with fierceness and rage:... (Job 39:24).

The Bride's Horses of Faith will spring forward to the battle with uncontrolled eagerness and violent zeal to war against the lies and unrighteousness of Lucifer so that the LORD's Truth and Righteousness can be established in the Earth. Their Horses of Faith will swallow up the distance to the battle, as they charge forth with uncontrolled anger and raving fury against the powers of darkness. They will have intense enthusiasm and unchecked desire to see the Light of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will established in the Earth. When the trumpet call to battle sounds, the Horse of Faith will respond with joy.

2. For Joy, He Hardly Believes the Sound of the Trumpet

The Horse of Faith waits patiently to see Righteousness and Truth replace the enemy's works of darkness in the Earth. Then, he hardly can believe, for joy, when it is time for a showdown between Truth and error.

...neither believeth he that it is the sound of the trumpet (Job 39:24).

Hearing the trumpet call in Heaven to gather into the formidable sign of the Cross will make the Bridegroom and Bride's Horses of Faith so joyful and happy to fulfill the LORD's Purposive Will that they hardly will be able to believe the famous moment has arrived to charge forth to battle — for the final encounter in which Truth will at last triumph forever over error.

3. He Prophetically Expresses Triumph by Saying, "Ha, Ha"

Being a Horse of *Faith*, it is not difficult for him to be explicitly sure of his ultimate triumph. His spirit is light and untroubled as he faces the enemy.

He saith among the trumpets, Ha, ha;.... (Job 39:25).

The Horses of Faith will have no other thoughts or words in their hearts and minds, while the war trumpets of Heaven are sounding the call to arms, the call to gather in their ranks and their call to charge, but the wondrous works of victory that at last will be achieved over the powers of darkness.

4. He Smells the Battle Afar Off

Trained in battle and a veteran of many wars, a horse senses or smells the battle afar off and is anxious to join the fray. Just so does the Horse of Faith react when he senses a battle is nearing.

...and he smelleth the battle afar off, the thunder of the captains, and the shouting (Job 39:25).

The White Horses of Faith in Heaven will hear the earthly captains of the Antichrist's armies as they thunder out their commands, while gathering together their troops at the Battle of Armageddon.

However, it will not matter how menacing the great thunderous roar of their wicked unity sounds; they will not win the Battle of Armageddon, nor will they win the war against the Horses of Faith of the LORD and His Bridal Armies.

It will not matter how much they shout in their loud, prophetic outbursts, proclaiming victory as Goliath did and as the false prophets did when they were on Mount Carmel with Elijah, for they will be the ultimate losers in the battle between the powers of darkness and the Powers of Light.

Thus, we have seen a small picture of the great triumphant White Horses of Faith upon which the LORD and His Bride will ride forth to the Battle of Armageddon.

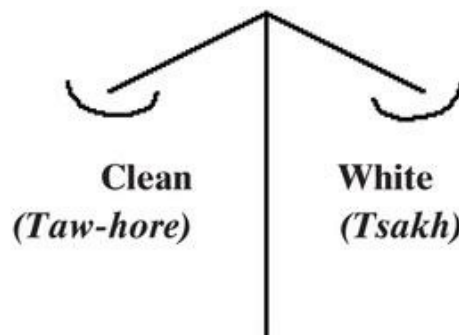
Our last point of study about the Bride described her clothing of Fine Linen, White and Clean, which is the Humility and the Purity that clothes her spirit, soul, and body.

IV. Christ's Bride Will Be Clothed in Fine Linen, White and Clean

Since we already have studied the Bride's Fine Linen, Clean and White, at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb, we will make only a comparative analysis of the order the Spirit uses when describing her clothing here, at the Second Coming, and the order in which it was described earlier.

At the Marriage Feast, the Bridegroom will unveil the Bride's Fine Linen in the order of *Clean* and *White*.

The Bride's Fine, Clean, White Linen at the Marriage Supper



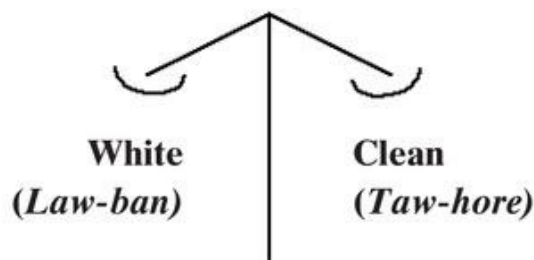
First, the Bridegroom will unveil, at the *Marriage Supper*, the *Clean*, bright, pure (*taw-hore*) *inward nature of the Linen* that the Bride is wearing, spiritually and physically, in her spirit, soul, and body.

Second, the Bridegroom will unveil, at the *Marriage Supper*, the *White* or brightest part of her Fine Linen that *shines outwardly like the brightness of the noonday Sun*.

This *White* Linen is her Clothing of Christ's Exalted Resurrection Power, which she will wear Eternally in the New City, after all pride in the whole creation has been subdued!

However, at the *Second Coming*, the Bridegroom will reverse the Order of the description of the Linen and reveal, to the Universes, the opposite kind of Glory that the Bride possesses — the *White (Law-ban) Humility Glory* of His Bride's Fine Linen, which represents the Humility Glory of the Crucified Christ.

The Bride's Fine, White, Clean Linen at the Second Coming



Law-ban means to be white like the whiteness of the Moon Glory. The glory of the Moon in the natural realm represents the Humility Glory of the Crucified Christ, Who was willing to come down to the darkened world of man's pride and die on the Cross in order to overcome all man's pride.

Christ will have worked His Humility Glory within the Bride during her earthly journey. Once again, it will be Christ's Humility Glory that will defeat the darkness of Lucifer's pride and the pride of his followers.

Christ's Humility Moon-Glory is the only Power that will defeat pride, both now and in the future. It is our great privilege, while we are in this life, to choose to be joined to Christ's Humility that will rid us of our sinful pride.

Second, the Bridegroom, at His Second Coming, will reveal the Eternal, changeless, clean (*taw-hare*) purity that clothes His Bride in her spirit, soul, and body.

How awesome is God's Master Plan and Purposive Will! And how blessed we are to have been allowed even the least measure of understanding about His marvelous Master Plan and Purposive Will that extend far beyond this life, on into the Infinity of Eternity-Future.

This chapter has described the Bride at the Second Coming of the LORD Jesus Christ to Earth; She will be divided into separate, Unified Armies that will return with Him. She will be humbly obedient because she will have learned humble obedience while on Earth. She will ride upon White Horses of Faith, coming forth out of Heaven with Christ, her Bridegroom.

We also have seen the nature of her great warring Horses — that they are pure Faith, fearless and full of joy and longing to execute God's Purposive Will on Earth, just as soon as God gives the Command.

Chapter Five

The Battle of Armageddon

After the Wedding of the Bridegroom and the Bride, where she is revealed dressed in Fine Linen, Clean and White, the Marriage Supper of the Lamb will take place in Heaven.

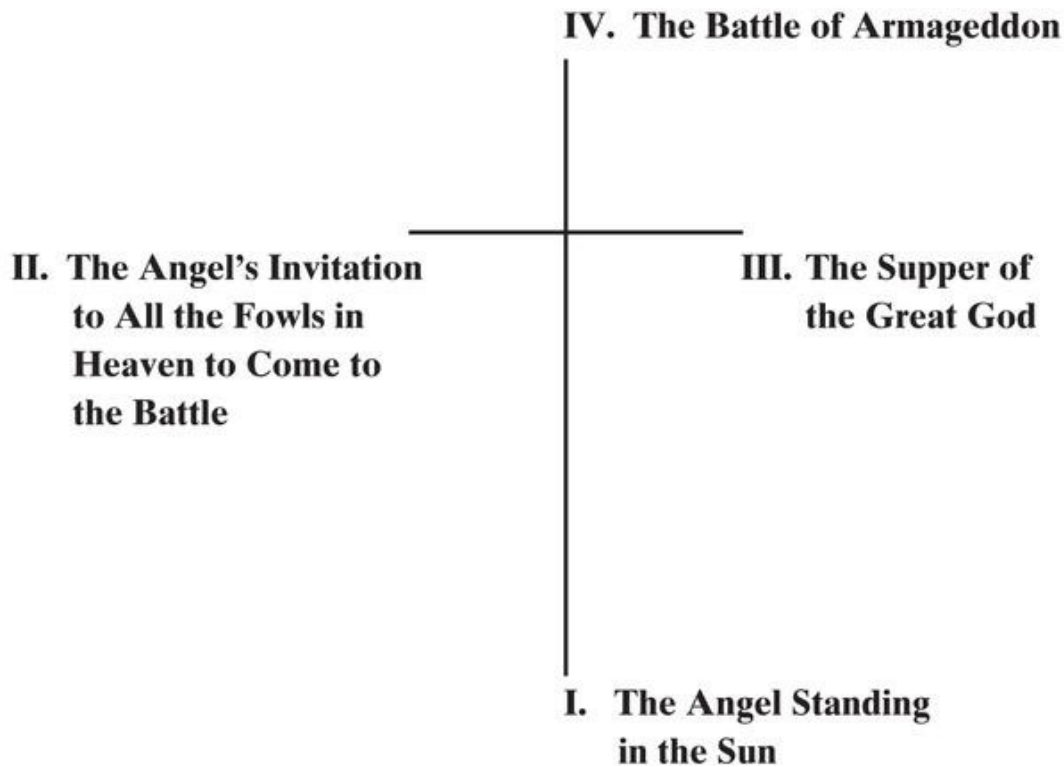
Then, Heaven will open, and the Bridegroom-General, The KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS, will come charging forth with His Bridal Armies on their White Horses of Faith, to engage in a final battle with the Antichrist and his armies.

This will be the great Battle of Armageddon, which the world has talked about for ages. Knowing in advance, through His Omniscience, that the carnage will be vastly tremendous, God will send an Angelic Messenger with an invitation to ALL the fowls in the midst of Heaven to come to clean up the Earth. This is an invitation to the Supper of the Great God — a supper of the corrupt flesh of God's slain enemies.

With all preparations made, the Battle of Armageddon will take place.

And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God; That ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great. And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army. And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone (Revelation 19:17-20).

These verses form a Stature of Truth that becomes the blueprint for this chapter.



The Angel will stand in the Sun just before it withdraws its shining at the LORD's Second Coming, and he will give an invitation to all the fowls in Heaven to hurry to the battle, before it becomes too dark to fly.

I. The Angel Standing in the Sun

God's Angelic Messenger will take a firm, enduring stand in the light of the Sun so that each of the Sun's radiating rays will be clothed with constraining, influential, and guiding light to lead all the fowls to the battleground, where they will all partake of the spoil when the battle is over.

The Hebrew word for *stand*, here, is *aw-mad*, meaning to stand fast, persist, abide, endure, and establish.

The Angel will stand firmly in the Sun until every fowl of Heaven has heard his invitation and follows the Sun's guiding light to the battlefield.

II. The Angel's Invitation to All the Fowls in Heaven to Come to the Battle

The Angel will send out his invitation by crying with a loud voice to all the fowls. The Hebrew word for *cry* is *kole*, meaning to call, a bleating, crackling cry. It also is used for the Voice of JAH, which lets us know that the Omnipresent Voice of JAH will accompany the bleating cry of the Angel and the radiating rays of the Sun, to the end of Heaven.

The Angel's cry will be *loud, gaw-dole*, meaning to be great in age, the eldest, high, mighty, and insolent, or disrespectful. The Angel with mighty, established authority will give an oral invitation to *all* birds in Heaven.

These particularly invited birds in Heaven are both carnivorous and non-carnivorous. The fowls mentioned are non-carnivorous birds, and the eagles mentioned are carnivorous birds. The Hebrew word for *fowl*, here, is *tsip-pore*, meaning a bird as hopping, chirping, sparrow, or chirper. The word is generic and applies to all varieties of small,

passerine birds.

The reason God must give such a special invitation to the fowls is that flesh-eating is completely contrary to their nature. It takes the Power of God's Commanding Word, spoken through His Angelic Messenger, to alter their nature so that they can come and partake of God's Great Supper of corrupt flesh.

The eagles, who *are* carnivorous birds, also will join in to partake of God's Great Supper. Although the eagles will need a particular invitation in order to be made aware of the time and place of God's Great Supper, they will not need a *special* invitation to eat since, by their nature, they already are flesh-eating birds.

For wheresoever the carcase is, *there will the eagles be gathered together* (Matthew 24:28).

And they answered and said unto him, Where, Lord? And he said unto them, *Wheresoever the body is, thither will the eagles be gathered together* (Luke 17:37).

The eagles will hasten to the spoil at God's Great Supper because it is their nature to eat fallen flesh.

The Angel's oral invitation to eat of *flesh* will appear disrespectful to the small, grain-eating birds. Nevertheless, because the Omnipresent Voice of JAH accompanies the Angel's voice, they will hasten to the battle to eat the flesh of the spoil, which they are not accustomed to eating.

The supper of which the birds will partake will be known as the Supper of the Great God.

III. The Supper of the Great God

The fowls are to *come*, to *gather together*, and to *be ready* to eat of the Supper of the Great God.

The contrast between the Marriage Supper of the Lamb and the Supper of the Great God is incredible. The "food" on each table and the guests are diametrically different.

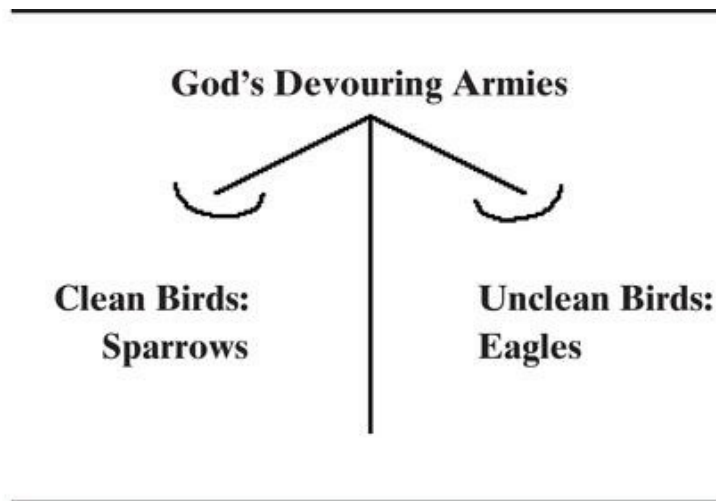
A. The Food and Those Invited to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

The food on the table at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb consists of the constructive, Holy Flesh and Blood of the LORD Jesus Christ, God's Life-giving Redeemer. The invited persons present at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb are overcoming believers, consisting of the Bride, the virgins, the relatives, queens, concubines, and guests.

B. The Food and Those Invited to the Supper of the Great God

The food on the field-table at the Supper of the Great God consists of the destructive flesh and blood of God's enemies, the Antichrist and his armies. The invited creatures present at the Supper of the Great God are the obedient fowls and eagles who *come* and gather in preparation for eating.

The Hebrew word for *come*, here, is *bo*, meaning to come and enter into a covenant. These clean birds enter into a covenant with God to join the eagles, the unclean birds, as they become God's devouring armies, cleansing the Earth of Lucifer's corrupt armies.



The sparrows will come and gather together into a covenant with God, Who has changed their nature, so that they can join the eagles and be God's devouring armies. Voraciously and hungrily, they will eat up the corrupt flesh of God's enemies, and they will greedily drink up their blood at the Supper of the Great God.

The wicked creatures slain in the battle sinned by rejecting the Sacrificial Supper of Christ Jesus; consequently, they will reap what they sowed by becoming a sacrificial supper for the birds.

This sacrificial supper will be prepared by the Great God, the Great *Elohim*. The Great God or Great *Elohim* is the Divine One Who, by His Almighty Power and Purposive Will, rules and directs His whole creation. He is the Infinite, Divine Creator of all creation. Therefore, He has the Sovereign Right to rule over both obedient and disobedient creatures.

The Rulership of the Great God will be manifested at His Sacrificial Supper, through both the obedient birds and wicked, disobedient man. God's creation, whether it is obedient or disobedient, will not prevent Him from ruling over it.

Thus, the obedient fowls and eagles of the Great God will swallow up the disobedient flesh of the Antichrist's armies.

The obedient fowls and eagles will devour the flesh of:

- **Kings** — The proud flesh of kings, who have been sovereign rulers of nations under the reign of the Antichrist, will be devoured by the fowls and eagles that are bidden to the Supper of the Great God. They will show no respect or partiality to the royal flesh of kings.
- **Captains** — The fowls and eagles obediently will devour the flesh of captains, who have been chief leaders and officers, commanding troops and divisions in the Antichrist's armies.
- **Mighty Men** — The flesh of mighty men, who have exercised their great power and strength to support the Antichrist in his rule and reign for three-and-one-half years, will be devoured by the fowls and eagles.
- **Horses** — The obedient fowls and eagles will devour the flesh of the war horses that have given themselves as rebellious instruments in the Antichrist's armies to fight against their Creator, the LORD Jesus Christ.
- **Free Men** — The flesh of free men, who were not enslaved, but who independently and freely have chosen to follow the Antichrist and to engage in a mutual warfare against the Heavenly Bridegroom and His Bridal Armies, will be devoured by the fowls and eagles which come to the Supper of the Great God.
- **Bond Men** — The obedient fowls and eagles will devour the flesh of those who have been shackled in fetters and chains, having been forced to enlist in the armies of the Antichrist.
- **Small Men** — The flesh of those who have been small and of less importance and value than greater men will be devoured by God's faithful, obedient fowls and eagles.
- **Great Men** — The flesh of great men, who have been much above the average person, will be devoured by the faithful fowls and eagles. The fowls and eagles will be unimpressed by the superior eminence and the illustrious

greatness of these big, important men who have been followers of the Antichrist. Consequently, their flesh will be devoured by the Great God's obedient birds.

Now the LORD God has everything ready for the Battle of Armageddon.

IV. The Battle of Armageddon

The word *Armageddon* consists of two Hebrew words: *har*, meaning a mountain or range of hills, and *meg-id-done*, meaning a rendezvous. It is from a root word, *gadad*, meaning to cut off or slaughter. Armageddon is the place God has chosen for a meeting or assembling of the Troops of Righteousness and the troops of wickedness.

The Bridegroom and His Bridal Army will ride forth from Heaven upon their White Horses of Faith to come against the wicked armies of the Antichrist and the kings of the Earth.

This great battle, that is the final battle between Christ and His enemies, was prophesied in the Old Testament by the Prophet Joel.

I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat, and will plead with them there for my people and for my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land.... Proclaim ye this among the Gentiles; Prepare war, wake up the mighty men, let all the men of war draw near; let them come up: Beat your plowshares into swords, and your pruninghooks into spears: let the weak say, I am strong. Assemble yourselves, and come, all ye heathen, and gather yourselves together round about: thither cause thy mighty ones to come down, O LORD. Let the heathen be wakened, and come up to the valley of Jehoshaphat: for there will I sit to judge all the heathen round about. Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe: come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great. Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision: for the day of the LORD is near in the valley of decision. The sun and the moon shall be darkened, and the stars shall withdraw their shining. The LORD also shall roar out of Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake: but the LORD will be the hope of his people, and the strength of the children of Israel (Joel 3:2,9-16).

In this passage of Scripture, Armageddon is identified by the name of the "Valley of Jehoshaphat," meaning "the LORD will judge." It also is called the "Valley of Decision" (verse 14), meaning "the LORD will sit and judge the wicked heathen."

Armageddon will be God's Great Day of retribution upon a wicked world.

The Prophet gave an ironic challenge to the heathen. He told them that, if they were going to fight against the LORD and His Mighty Bridal Armies, they should muster their mighty men. In biting sarcasm, he told them they should beat their plowshares into swords and their pruninghooks into spears since their present weapons would not be sufficient in fighting against the Almighty God.

If they were going to fight against the LORD and His Bridal Armies, they would need every man. Therefore, the Prophet said, "let the weak say I am strong," even those who normally would be disqualified for military service. The Antichrist will let no one plead unfitness for military service.

The Prophet invited all the heathen to gather themselves together round about Armageddon or the Valley of Jehoshaphat. Then, he pled for the LORD to cause His Mighty Ones or His Bridal Armies to come down from Heaven and defy all the opposing powers of darkness. The LORD's Heavenly Bridal Host will fight and overcome the powers of darkness once and for all.

In another reference in the Old Testament, the Psalmist spoke of the Battle of Armageddon.

Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing? The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the LORD, and against his anointed, saying, Let us break their bands asunder, and cast away their cords from us. He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh: the Lord shall have them in derision. Then shall he speak unto them in his wrath, and vex them in his sore displeasure (Psalm 2:1-5).

The Antichrist and his wicked followers deceitfully will imagine that they can defeat the LORD and His Christ at the Battle of Armageddon by breaking the bands of God's Master Plan and the cords of His Purposive Will. But the Enthroned One in Heaven will laugh. He will intervene and frustrate their plots by sending His All-powerful Son, the Bridegroom, and His Bridal Armies who will destroy these wicked rebels.

In the Valley of Jehoshaphat, the LORD will mete out His determined Judgment of extermination upon these proud offenders, and none shall escape God's Judgments at this great battle. God will distribute His Justice and Judgment in this valley.

This is God's "threshing valley," where He will crush and break all His enemies of "old time." Innumerable

multitudes will be destroyed at this great Battle of Armageddon on the Mount of Megiddo.

A. Previous Battles Israel, God's Natural Bride, Fought and Won Under the LORD's Headship at Megiddo

The mount and plain of Megiddo always has been a battlefield between the LORD's people and their various enemies. In some cases, in the Old Testament, the battles were victories for the Israelites; in other cases, the battles were lost.

1. Deborah and Barak Led the Army Against Jabin at Megiddo and Won the Battle

Megiddo or Armageddon was where Israel, God's natural bride, obtained a glorious victory over the forces of Jabin, King of Canaan.

Israel's army was directed by Deborah, the Prophetess, and her Captain, Barak. The LORD miraculously intervened in Israel's behalf, magnifying the deliverance from the calamitous conditions created by Jabin.

The LORD appeared to His natural bridal army in order to help her subdue and conquer Jabin and his army. The glorious display of God's Power and Divine Majesty in the Heavens caused the Earth to tremble, the skies to drop water, and the snow on the mountains to melt. These surprising effects of God's Power caused the hearts of the people to melt with fear and amazement.

The LORD went out before Israel, His earthly bridal army, just as the LORD Jesus Christ will be in front of His Heavenly Bridal Armies at Armageddon, discomfiting their enemies until not a man will be left.

And Sisera gathered together all his chariots, even nine hundred chariots of iron, and all the people that were with him, from Harosheth of the Gentiles unto the river of Kishon. And Deborah said unto Barak, Up; for this is the day in which the LORD hath delivered Sisera into thine hand: is not the LORD gone out before thee? So Barak went down from Mount Tabor, and ten thousand men after him. And the LORD discomfited Sisera, and all his chariots, and all his host, with the edge of the sword before Barak; so that Sisera lighted down off his chariot, and fled away on his feet (Judges 4:13-15).

The kings came and fought, then fought the kings of Canaan in Taanach by the waters of Megiddo; they took no gain of money (Judges 5:19).

The malignant, oppressive hatred of the enemy, Jabin, caused him to muster a multitude of people, horses, and iron chariots that paralyzed Israel with fears until Deborah and her army were led forth by the LORD; however, the LORD caused all nature to join Israel in the battle, giving His bride the victory, just as He will do again at Armageddon.

This is how nature fought in the battle:

- The stars fought by an extra display of light.
- The Heavens fought with thunder, lightnings, and rains.
- The snow melted on the mountains and ran down, frightening the enemy's horses until their hoofs were broken by their prancing, and their iron chariots were overturned.
- The River Kishon overflowed its banks, sweeping them all away. God's Glorious Power always has been efficient and effective in all places, and especially in the place of Megiddo or Armageddon.

2. Jehoshaphat Met the Enemy at Megiddo, and the LORD Gave the Victory

Jehoshaphat's Valley of Berachah is the same place as Megiddo or Armageddon. It was here the enemy forces, allied against Israel, were defeated by Jehoshaphat.

A few years after Jehoshaphat began to reign, Judah was invaded by a confederacy of Edomites, Moabites, and others. They threatened to overthrow the kingdom of Judah with their collective forces. Therefore, Jehoshaphat proclaimed a fast, and the people from all parts of his kingdom came up to Jerusalem to join him in fasting and prayer before the LORD for help in their calamity. The LORD answered their prayers, assuring them that He would go before them and give victory.

On the following day, the army of Judah went forth to meet the enemy, with the LORD as their Leader and Captain. They were preceded by a company of singers who praised the LORD's Name and the beauty of His Holiness. The LORD caused the enemy to become panic-stricken and to fall into such confusion that, instead of fighting Judah, they turned their swords against each other until they were utterly routed and overthrown. Thus, Jehoshaphat and his army had no occasion to engage in the conflict, as God had said in the beginning, when He had told them the battle was not theirs, but His.

And he said, Hearken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou king Jehoshaphat, Thus saith the LORD unto you, Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude; *for the battle is not your's but God's*. To morrow go ye down against them: Behold, they come up by the cliff of Ziz; and ye shall find them at the end of the brook, before the wilderness of Jeruel. *Ye shall not need to fight in this battle*: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of the LORD with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them: for the LORD will be with you (II Chronicles 20:15-17).

We *should* allow fear of the enemy to drive us *to* God, but we *should not* allow fear to drive us *from* the LORD. The LORD commanded Israel to go meet the enemy because He was going to be in front since the battle was His.

If the battle is the LORD's, then the victory is the LORD's. On this occasion in Megiddo, Judah was not the glorious instrument for the battle, but he was the joyful, praising spectator who saw the total defeat of the enemy. This scene was a prophetic picture of the final Battle of Armageddon, with the All-conquering LORD out in front of His Bridal Armies.

This is an instructive example to us that, when we have our spiritual "Armageddons," we must allow the LORD Jesus Christ to be the Head, the Captain, to lead us forth to meet the enemy. The battle always will be won according to the LORD's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

3. Gideon Fought the Midianites at Megiddo and Won the Battle

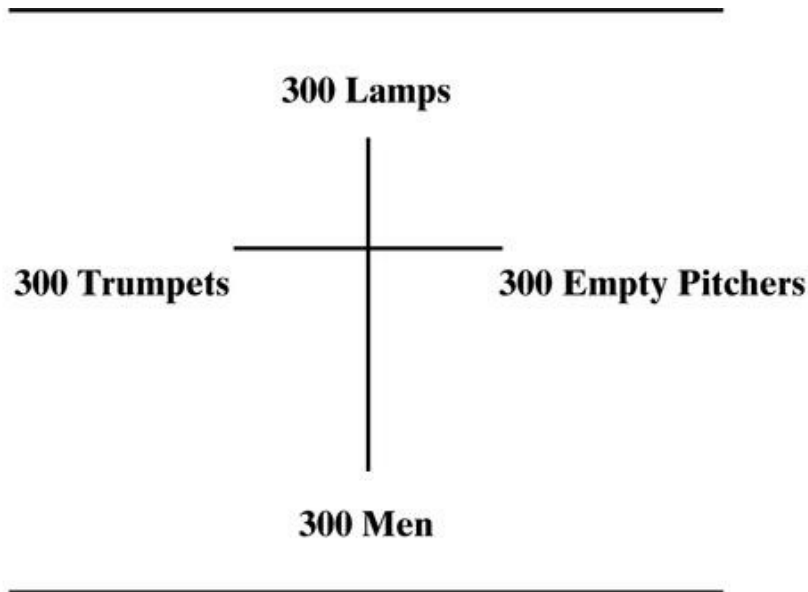
The city of Megiddo occupied a very marked position on the south side of Esdraelon, the great battlefield of Israel. It not only was famous for Deborah and her victory over the Canaanites, but it also gained more renown after Gideon's victory over the Midianites.

The Angel of the LORD appeared unto Gideon under the oak in Ophrah, assuring him of God's call upon him and His special favour to him. God commanded Gideon to offer to the LORD the bullock his father had set aside for Baal, and he was to destroy Baal's altar.

God empowered Gideon to abolish idolatry and to take victory over the invading Midianites at the battlefield of Megiddo. The LORD assured Gideon of his victory by answering him with the marvelous phenomena of the dew and the fleece.

And the LORD said unto Gideon, By the three hundred men that lapped will I save you, and deliver the Midianites into thine hand: and let all the other people go every man unto his place. So the people took victuals in their hand, and their trumpets: and he sent all the rest of Israel every man unto his tent, and retained those three hundred men: and the host of Midian was beneath him in the valley. And it came to pass the same night, that the LORD said unto him, Arise, get thee down unto the host; for I have delivered it into thine hand (Judges 7:7-9).

God, desiring to prove this victory would be the direct results of His Divine Leadership and Infinite Power, reduced Gideon's army from 32,000 to 300. With this small army under God's Leadership and by His Master Plan and Purposive Will, which consisted of using 300 trumpets, 300 empty pitchers, and 300 lamps, the LORD brought overwhelming terror to the enemy.



These four classes of 300 equal twelve hundred, and twelve is a governmental number of perfect government. Gideon's three hundred men represented their exclusive surrender and complete obedience to follow the LORD as their Head and Leader. The 300 trumpets represented the voices of their testimonies. The 300 empty pitchers represented the empty, clean hearts of Gideon's army that were ready to receive the LORD's Commands. The 300 lamps that filled the empty pitchers represented the Infinite, Divine Light of Truth that was to fill the empty, clean hearts of Gideon's army.

Thus, each living soldier was furnished with a trumpet voice and an empty pitcher with a lamp in it. So, when these three companies blew the trumpets that were in their right hands, and when they broke the pitchers that were in their left hands, loosing the anointed rays of Light, and then cried "The sword of the LORD, and of Gideon," all the host of enemies became so terrified that they cried and fled (Judges 7:20,21).

How simple it was to win at the battlefield of slaughter or Megiddo with the LORD as the Leader and Head.

B. Previous Battles Israel Fought and Lost at Megiddo Because They Were Not Under the LORD's Headship

If we dare go to our "Armageddon" to fight without the LORD's Headship, we will lose our life. Again, Israel, in the Old Testament, is an instructive example to us of how we will lose if we go against God's Headship and fight when we are not to be involved.

1. King Josiah Fought at Megiddo and Lost His Life

Although King Josiah was the greatest of the kings of Judah, so that there was none like unto him, before him or after him (II Kings 23:25), he made the terrible mistake of going to fight in Megiddo without the LORD going in front of him; therefore, he lost his life.

After all this, when Josiah had prepared the temple, Necho king of Egypt came up to fight against Charchemish by Euphrates: and Josiah went out against him. But he sent ambassadors to him, saying, What have I to do with thee, thou king of Judah? I come not against thee this day, but against the house wherewith I have war: for God commanded me to make haste: forbear thee from meddling with God, who is with me, that he destroy thee not. Nevertheless Josiah would not turn his face from him, but disguised himself, that he might fight with him, and hearkened not unto the words of Necho from the mouth of God, and came to fight in the valley of Megiddo. And the archers shot at king Josiah; and the king said to his servants, Have me away; for I am sore wounded. His servants therefore took him out of that chariot, and put him in the second chariot that he had; and they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died, and was buried in one of the sepulchres of his fathers. And all Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah (II Chronicles 35:20-24).

Although Josiah had been a great follower of the LORD, he mistrusted Necho's message from God. Therefore, he went to Megiddo without the LORD going before him and was wounded mortally in the battle. They brought him to Jerusalem and buried him. Josiah died as a fool, out of season, because he dared go to Armageddon, the place of slaughter, without the LORD as his Leader and Guide.

2. King Saul Fought at Megiddo and Lost His Life

Saul is another classic example of someone who went to Megiddo, the place of slaughter, without the LORD as His Head and Leader. Therefore, he lost his life.

Thus, Armageddon witnessed Saul's death and Israel's defeat before the Philistines. Saul went to this battlefield under the headship of his own self-will, rebellion, and witchcraft. Therefore, he lost his life.

Out of his wrathful jealousy, Saul had driven away David, the only Divinely Anointed man who could have saved him from the Philistines at Megiddo. Saul had killed all the Priests through whom he could have consulted the LORD. He began with rebellion and ended in witchcraft and death on the battlefield. Because Saul had ignored the LORD as his Head in his daily life, the LORD was not his Head on the battlefield.

C. God's Spiritual Bride Will Fight at Armageddon and Win Under the LORD's Headship

How diametrically different the LORD's Bridal Army will be at the Battle of Armageddon. Because she will have followed the LORD's Headship in her earthly journey, she will be under His Headship and Leadership at the Battle of Armageddon — the terrible and final conflict between the LORD's Holy Armies and the profane, wicked, worldly powers of darkness.

This Battle of Armageddon is in the near future, in which the ungodly, degenerated world, led by the Antichrist under the headship of fallen Lucifer, will rise up with full, concentrated force to try to gain the ascendancy over the LORD, the Bridegroom, and His Bridal Armies. But just as the LORD has prevailed in previous battles at Armageddon with His Almighty Presence, He will prevail in the final battle!

Chapter Six

The Divine Right and the Spirit of Truth Through Which the LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge All His Creatures, Including the Beast (the Antichrist), the False Prophet, and Those Remaining in the Antichrist's Armies

God the Father has committed all Judgment of all creation unto His Son.

For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:... And hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man (John 5:22,27).

The LORD Jesus Christ will judge in order to mete out rewards and punishments as justice may require (Matthew 25:31-49). He will act as Judge, determining the case of each creature. Then, He will come to a conclusion by considering the facts of each creature's thoughts and deeds. In His Omniscient Knowledge, the LORD will know, discern, and distinguish all facts concerning every creature.

God has different Days of Judgment:

One Day is the Judgment Seat of Christ in Heaven at which some believers are judged.

But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ (Romans 14:10)

For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad (II Corinthians 5:10).

The fallen angels also will be judged.

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day (Jude 1:6).

Another Day is the Judgment of the World by the instrumentality of the LORD Jesus Christ.

Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead (Acts 17:31).

At the end of the Battle of Armageddon, the LORD will judge all those who have taken part in the wicked warfare against Him and His Armies.

And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone. And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which sword proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh (Revelation 19:20,21).

The LORD Jesus Christ has every Divine, Legal Right to assume the Judgment Seat and to pass out Judgment upon all matters since His Father has given all Judgment into His Hands.

I. The Right of the LORD Jesus Christ to Judge

Jesus Christ has been given Sovereign Dominion and Jurisdiction, both to judge and to execute Judgment. He will decide, judicially, what is good and what is evil in the Day He Judges the world, when He returns to Earth the

Second Time. Then, He will examine and decide upon the merits, qualities, and excellence of His creation. He will administer justice, and He will award sentences according to His Righteousness and according to the creature's guilt.

Jesus Christ, the Righteous Judge, will ascertain the Truth by carefully separating thoughts and deeds, one from another. He will judge wisely and skillfully.

The Prophet Joel recorded that Jesus Christ will plead with or will judge the people at the last and greatest conflict He will ever have with the powers of darkness.

I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat, and will plead [shaw-fat] with them there for my people and for my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land (Joel 3:2).

The Hebrew word for *plead* is *shaw-fat*, meaning to judge or to enter into judgment. In that Day, the LORD will enter into the great Day of Judgment in the Valley of Jehoshaphat or Armageddon. He will mete out Righteous Judgment, and He will execute His Righteous Judgment upon the Gentile nations that have abused and misused His people Israel.

In addition to the Prophet Joel, the Prophet Isaiah also described Christ's Judgment of the world at Armageddon.

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins (Isaiah 11:3-5).

Christ will derive His Righteous Judgment from His Righteousness and His Faith. He will not judge from His outer senses, but from the depths of His Inner Omniscience, and He will execute His Judgments by His Omnipotent Power.

II. The Means by Which the LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge

Not only did the Prophet Isaiah tell that the LORD will judge the world at His return, but he also revealed the qualities within the LORD that will enable Him to be the Righteous Judge of all creation.

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots: And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD: And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins (Isaiah 11:1-5).

The LORD Jesus Christ, the Righteous Judge, will have the Divine Qualities of the Sevenfold Spirit of Truth, which will distinguish Him as the All-powerful Judge and Ideal Ruler of mankind. The Sevenfold Spirit of Truth will empower Christ with all intellectual, administrative, and spiritual attributes as a Judge and Ideal Ruler and Governor.

These are the seven attributes contained within the Spirit of Truth which the LORD Jesus Christ has without measure: the Spirit of the LORD; all Wisdom; all Understanding; all Counsel; all Might; all Knowledge; and all Fear. Thus, the Spirit of Truth upon Jesus Christ will enable Him to judge and to execute His Judgments perfectly.

A. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of the LORD, the Self-Existent One

It is the Spirit of the LORD, the Self-existent One, Who causes all other existence and Who maintains all other existence. The LORD gives, dispenses, and continues all existence. He always is ready to give new and fresh existence in its fullness. The LORD is the Ever-Living and the Ever-Ruling God, from Whom the whole pattern and plan for all existence has originated. He grants every coming moment and every second of existence for the educational requirements of mankind, in accordance with His Master Plan and His Purposive Will. Therefore, He is perfectly capable of judging all His creation.

The LORD is the Father of mankind, and He is ever ready to grant fresh Life and new Light out of the abundance of His Mighty Mercy, His Limitless Love, and His Infinite Compassion. But, He also is ever ready to mete out Just Judgment and to execute His Righteous Judgment upon His disobedient creation in order to bring them to submissiveness in their wills, inwardly, and to bowed knees, outwardly, as they come before Him and acknowledge Him as their true Creator.

The LORD is the Creator and Governor of the world. He gives law and order to the world, setting boundary lines that creation must keep. However, when His creatures proudly and obstinately break His boundary lines, He judges and punishes them. Because the LORD rules and judges in compassionate Love, He allows man to continue his existence in spite of his faults, failures, and errors.

The LORD's Merciful Light and Love in Christ Jesus ever leads man out of his paths of deviation and error back to the Way of Truth and Life. The LORD's compassionate Love is ever willing to lead man out of his aberrations, back to the Truth and to faithful obedience to the Truth, and to grant fresh life and a new future to the repentant heart.

The Spirit of the LORD, as the Light of Truth, is the One Who orders His Moral Light in the midst of a darkened world. Therefore, the Presence of the Light of the LORD's Name in our will creates within our will a preference for the submissiveness of the Moral Light of His Purposive Will, instead of creating subordination to the immoral darkness of the world. Thus, the repentant heart willingly submits the whole of its existence unto the LORD's service.

B. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Wisdom

The Hebrew word for *wisdom* is *khok-maw*, meaning to be wise in mind, to show self wise, to deal wisely, make wiser, proficiency in learning the Truth that now is, to become wise, to make wise and to teach. When He comes again to the Earth, the LORD will judge wisely with the Truth that "now is," concerning the deeds of the unjust and the just.

The Spirit of Wisdom, which the LORD will bring from above to judge the world, is diametrically different in nature from the wisdom which man uses to judge from below. The Wisdom that is from above consists of several beautiful attributes. It is pure, without iniquitous aims that would degrade it or cause it to deviate from the Truth in Righteous Judgment. Wisdom is free from defilement that would corrupt Righteous Judgment, and it does not permit known sinful detraction from the Truth in making Righteous Judgments. Wisdom's peace rests upon its purity. It is the ministry of Wisdom that will make peace in the Earth through Righteous, Just Judgment.

Christ's Spirit of Wisdom is gentle and kind in all His Righteous Judgments. It is full of Mercy and good fruits, and it is ready to forgive offenders and to relieve those in want. It is without partiality, evil suspicion, evil judging, and evil surmising. Christ's Spirit of Wisdom also is without hypocrisy or without disguises and deceptions. When He returns to Earth, Christ's Spirit of Wisdom will deliver Truthful Judgments.

C. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Understanding

The LORD's Spirit of Understanding will give Him the insight or inner view of the LORD's Master Plan and Purposive Will for each created soul. Therefore, He will be aware of the tiniest degree that each soul has gained of its portion of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will or how much of its portion each soul *has failed* to gain of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

The Spirit of Understanding will enable Christ to make deep inspection and introspection into the ways and works of man, whether they are good or evil. The Spirit of Understanding from the LORD will empower Him to see God's Wise Design in judging every soul. The LORD's Omniscient Understanding will guide Him to mete out correct, perfect Judgment for every soul.

D. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Counsel

The Hebrew word for *counsel* is *ay-tsaw*, meaning advice, plan, prudence, advisement, counselor, purpose, to deliberate, to resolve, consult, determine, devise, and to guide.

The LORD works all things after the Counsel, Advice, Purpose, Plan or Design of His Own Will, as the Apostle

Paul explained to the New Testament believers.

In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated *according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel [ay-tsaw] of his own will*: (Ephesians 1:11).

The inheritance we have obtained in Christ Jesus is through the Spirit of Counsel from the Father's Own Will. Jesus Christ, the Living Candlestick, is a Tree of Life that is crowned with the Light of the LORD's Counsel that is Immutable and Unchangeable .

Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the *immutability of his counsel [ay-tsaw]*, confirmed it by an oath: (Hebrews 6:17).

God's pledge to the heirs of promise was confirmed by the Light of His Immutable Counsel and His Divine Oath. Not only did God's Counsel work for the heirs of promise in the Old Testament, but the Apostle Paul was faithful to declare that God's Unchangeable Counsel in Christ Jesus works for the believers in the New Testament dispensation.

The Light of the LORD's Counsel endures for ever.

The counsel [ay-tsaw] of the LORD standeth for ever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations (Psalm 33:11).

When Israel was journeying from Egypt to Canaan's Land, she did not wait for the LORD to reveal His Master Plan to her. Therefore, the hearts of the people were filled with doubts, distrust, and murmurings. They did not grant the LORD the privilege of revealing His Plan, His Purpose, and His Provision that He already had prepared for them. Only three days after the LORD had proven His Sovereign Power and Authority over the waters of the Red Sea, they murmured for water. Then, six weeks later, without waiting to see what the LORD miraculously had prepared, they murmured because they lacked food. Had they waited for the Light of the LORD's Counsel, they would have had the thrill of learning the LORD's Master Plan in advance and of enjoying His Purposive Will because they would have received His gracious Gifts of Water out of the Rock and Manna from Heaven in due time. But their lack of trust and belief in the LORD's Nature caused them to complain.

Later, those in Israel who had despised and had scorned, with great contempt, the Light of the LORD's Counsel were forbidden to enter Canaan's Land.

Because they rebelled against the words of God, *and contemned the counsel [ay-tsaw] of the most High*: Therefore he brought down their heart with labour; they fell down, and there was none to help (Psalm 107:11,12).

God's Holy Word supports the Eternal Spirit of His Counsel. The LORD sends sufferings as a penalty to those who transgress the Counsel of His Will. The LORD humbles the heart with pain and travail in order to bring it under subjection and submission to the Spirit of Counsel in His Will.

The Antichrist and his followers, who have chosen to follow the darkness of Lucifer's counsel, still will have to face the Light of the LORD's Counsel at His Second Coming.

E. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Might

There is Might or Strength that proceeds out of the Name of the LORD. The Hebrew word for *might* is *gheb-oo-raw*, meaning force, valour, victory, mastery, mighty act, power, strength, prowess, and oppression.

The All-Might of God's Power should be sufficient reason to cause the rebellious to refrain from exalting themselves by defying God, by blasphemously denying His Master Plan, and by being obstinately aggressive against His Purposive Will. God's Mighty Arm of Power and Dominion extends over all people and all things.

God is Almighty, and He demonstrates His Might in the affairs of men by His Mighty Arm and Powerful Hand.

Thou hast a mighty [gheb-oo-raw] arm: strong is thy hand, and high is thy right hand (Psalm 89:13).

When God's Right Arm and Hand are lifted in behalf of those He desires to raise up, He is Irresistible in Might and Power against all defiers and deniers. When God's Mighty Arm and Hand intervene adversely, there is no one who can hinder Him from doing what He has set out to do. The Egyptians could not withstand His Mighty Arm

when God chose to lift Israel out of her slavery and bondage. When the LORD lifted up His Mighty Right Arm at the Red Sea, the sea's hindering waves had to bow in solid silence before His Mighty Arm and Glorious Name.

When the LORD lifted up His Mighty Right Arm at the Resurrection of Jesus Christ, raising Jesus out of Death and Hell, Lucifer's hindering waves of opposition could not restrain the powerful Working of the LORD's Mighty Arm and Hand.

The LORD God is the Living King Who rules the Universes by the Might of His Name.

Forasmuch as there is none like unto thee, O LORD; thou art great, and thy name is great in might [gheb-oo-law] (Jeremiah 10:6).

Because there is no other Name of Might and Power, the LORD's Name is *Great!* The names of all idols are dead and powerless, but the LORD's Name, alone, is Almighty and All-powerful. The LORD's Name is Infinite and Immense. The Father's Almighty Power overcomes all His adversaries, oppositions, and enemies. All Scripture is oriented toward the goal of declaring the Might of the LORD's Name.

The Might of the LORD's Mighty Name will prevail in the last, great conflict when the LORD and His Bridal Armies confront the Antichrist and his wicked followers.

F. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Knowledge

The Hebrew word for *knowledge* is *dah-ath*, meaning to know, to be aware, or to be cunning, to observe, to recognize, to instruct, to designate, or to be skillful.

Paul proclaimed that through God's Gifts of the Written Word and the Living Word we will receive Christ's Light of Knowledge in our heart and soul.

For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge [dah-ath] of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ (II Corinthians 4:6).

The Light of Knowledge shining forth from the Face of Christ Jesus reveals God's Glory to us, which is both a pleasant and a profitable experience to the eye of the heart.

The Glorious Light of Knowledge from Christ Jesus displays the excellency of the Resurrection Power of the Father, Who lifted up the LORD Jesus Christ from Death, Hell, and the Grave. The believer's heart is illuminated and his mind is enlightened by the Light of Knowledge from the Glorious, Resurrected Face of Jesus Christ so that he clearly can perceive and apprehend all Truth from His Father.

The Glorious "love-lock" that binds the heart and soul in an intimate Oneness of Relationship with the Heavenly Father is the Light of Knowledge from the Face of Jesus Christ.

The Light of Knowledge from the Face of Jesus Christ is the excellency of the Spirit's Light that convinces the conscience in the soul of the evil presence of secret, idolatrous thoughts; it reveals the hidden, tormenting feelings that lurk in the heart and mind. The Infinite, Divine Power of the Glorious Light of Knowledge of Truth swallows up all the hidden darkness and death in the spirit and soul that man has inherited from Adam the First.

When Christ judges and executes His Judgments at His Second Coming, they will be accompanied by His Great Spirit of Knowledge, which will convince every soul of the Justice and Righteousness of His Judgments.

G. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Fear

The LORD also will judge with His Spirit of Fear. The Spirit of Fear of the LORD enables the soul to use the freedom of its will and intelligence to submit to the Intelligence and Love of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will. The Hebrew word for *fear* is *yir-aw*, meaning reverence, dreadful, exceedingly fearful, terror, and awe.

The beginning of Wisdom and Understanding is the Fear of the LORD.

The fear [yir-aw] of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do his commandments: his praise endureth for ever (Psalm 111:10).

The Spirit of Fear is the sense of being awe-inspired by the thought of an Almighty God. The wonder generated by the Spirit of Fear arouses man's respect and reverence for God, lifting man to a higher realm of existence. This sensible feeling is the starting point of a life which is lived far above the sensual, animal existence of carnal, fleshly

appetites.

All Scripture is oriented toward one goal, which is the Fear of the LORD. The Fear of the LORD preserves God's Purposive Will in its entirety, whereas disrespect and lack of fear of God distort God's Divine Will in the human mind, as it did in Adam-female.

The Fear of the LORD enlightens the soul concerning the LORD's method of control over the world and helps a person to see clearly the temporalness of this present world. Hence, the soul is able to concentrate fervently on the Divine Spiritual Values of Eternal Truth, knowing, in reality, that nothing exists or is important but the LORD, the Eternal God.

Although the Antichrist and his followers will be the epitome of rebellion, the Spirit of Fear that will accompany Christ's Judgments and His execution of them will fill His enemies with such reverential dread and awe that they will be forced to bow in silent submission before Him.

The LORD Jesus Christ always has judged and always will judge with the Spirit of the LORD, of Wisdom, of Understanding, of Counsel, of Might, of Knowledge, and of Fear of the LORD. He will judge in Righteousness. He will act in a just and upright manner, doing that which is right. As a Virtuous or a Righteous Man, He will decide what is right and justifiable.

As the rightful Owner and Master of all creation, He will decide the just, lawful, and right judgment for all. Then, in Faithfulness, He will execute His Judgments. In steadfast adherence to His Father's Purposive Will, He will carry out His legally imposed sentences. Christ's Divine Union with His duty and obligations will empower Him to carry out all His Righteous Judgments.

III. The Father and the Son Ultimately Will Subdue All Their Enemies and Judge Them with Righteousness and Truth

David the Psalmist, speaking by the inspiration of the Spirit of God, bore witness of the LORD's Righteous Judgments.

But the LORD shall endure for ever: he hath prepared his throne for judgment. And he shall judge the world in righteousness, he shall minister judgment to the people in uprightness (Psalm 9:7,8).

The LORD has not left His creation ungoverned and unjudged. The LORD has prepared His Throne, and He sits enthroned Eternally to judge with great care and concern. His decisions are not unjust, impetuous outbursts of irrational emotions; they are the just rulings of Divine Scope and Infinite Dimension.

The nations will have the greatest occasion to sing and rejoice when the LORD sits on His Throne, judging and ruling in Righteousness.

Let the people praise thee, O God; let all the people praise thee. O let the nations be glad and sing for joy: for thou shalt judge the people righteously, and govern the nations upon earth. Selah (Psalm 67:3,4).

All nations are the possession of the LORD Jesus Christ. Therefore, since He is their Master, He has the legal and moral right to judge them and to rule over them.

The Father and Son have a covenant to rule and reign until they bring each other's enemies under their Feet. The Father will subdue the enemies of His Son.

The LORD said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool (Psalm 110:1).

The Son is sitting at His Father's Right Hand, while the Father is standing, at times, to subdue Christ's enemies. The Son, in turn, will rule and reign until He subdues all the Father's enemies.

Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet (I Corinthians 15:24,25).

Through the Righteous Judgments of the Father and the Son, their Kingdom will be cleansed of all their enemies. The LORD, the Heavenly Judge, also *stands* to administer judgment.

Keep therefore the words of this covenant, and do them, that ye may prosper in all that ye do. Ye stand this day all of you before the LORD your

God; your captains of your tribes, your elders, and your officers, with all the men of Israel, Your little ones, your wives, and thy stranger that is in thy camp, from the hewer of thy wood unto the drawer of thy water: That thou shouldest enter into covenant with the LORD thy God, and into his oath, which the LORD thy God maketh with thee this day: That he may establish thee to day for a people unto himself, and that he may be unto thee a God, as he hath said unto thee, and as he hath sworn unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath; But with him that standeth here with us this day before the LORD our God, and also with him that is not here with us this day: (Deuteronomy 29:9-15).

The Hebrew word for *standeth*, in verse fifteen, conveys the idea of taking up a position for the solemn purpose of ratifying a covenant.

Thus, all the creation in Heaven and in Earth will rejoice when the LORD's Covenant with the Father has been fulfilled and all the world has been judged with Righteousness and Truth.

Say among the heathen that the LORD reigneth: the world also shall be established that it shall not be moved: he shall judge the people righteously. Let the heavens rejoice, and let the earth be glad; let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof. Let the field be joyful, and all that is therein: then shall all the trees of the wood rejoice Before the LORD: for he cometh, for he cometh to judge the earth: *he shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth* (Psalm 96:10-13).

At the Battle of Armageddon, the Earth will experience a state of chaos and decay.

And it shall come to pass, that he who fleeth from the noise of the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that cometh up out of the midst of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for the windows from on high are open, and the foundations of the earth do shake. The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly. The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage; and the transgression thereof shall be heavy upon it; and it shall fall, and not rise again (Isaiah 24:18-20).

The Earth will shake and tremble. It will be broken down completely and crumble away. It continually will falter and, like a drunkard, reel to and fro. Then, God the Father will send His only Begotten Son, the Messiah, to bring Righteous Judgment and stability to the Earth and to its world of inhabitants.

Christ will render Just Judgment concerning each nation's final recompense. The guilty nations will receive Christ's Fair Punishment. The worthy nations will receive His Just Rewards.

At the advent of Christ's Millennial Reign of Eternal Peace, all the Universes will be baptized with the floods of Divine Happiness and Joy. All things in nature, afresh and anew, will carry out their Divinely Assigned duties with joy and rejoicing.

The eventual deliverance of mankind from the enemies of sin and death will foster a comprehensive rejuvenation of all nature. All nature was created to serve, support, and sustain man. Therefore, when man fulfills His Divine Obligation to serve God, completely, all nature also will achieve the High Calling of its destiny. As a result, all nature will rejoice and be glad when its gifts are used to serve the Righteous LORD Who will reign with Righteousness and Faithfulness.

Make a joyful noise unto the LORD, all the earth: make a loud noise, and rejoice, and sing praise. Sing unto the LORD with the harp; with the harp, and the voice of a psalm. With trumpets and sound of cornet make a joyful noise before the LORD, the King. Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein. Let the floods clap their hands: let the hills be joyful together Before the LORD; for he cometh to judge the earth: *with righteousness shall he judge the world, and the people with equity* (Psalm 98:4-9).

This Psalm is a prophetic record of the song of praise that will be loosed in all nature. Beginning with the soft, fluid sounds of the harp and progressing to the louder, vibrant tones of the trumpets, then building up with tremendous, thunderous crescendo, as one, all nature will blend in harmonious praise before the LORD Jesus Christ, when He takes His Throne to execute Judgment and Justice in the Earth.

IV. The Final Judgment of the Antichrist and His Armies and the False Prophet

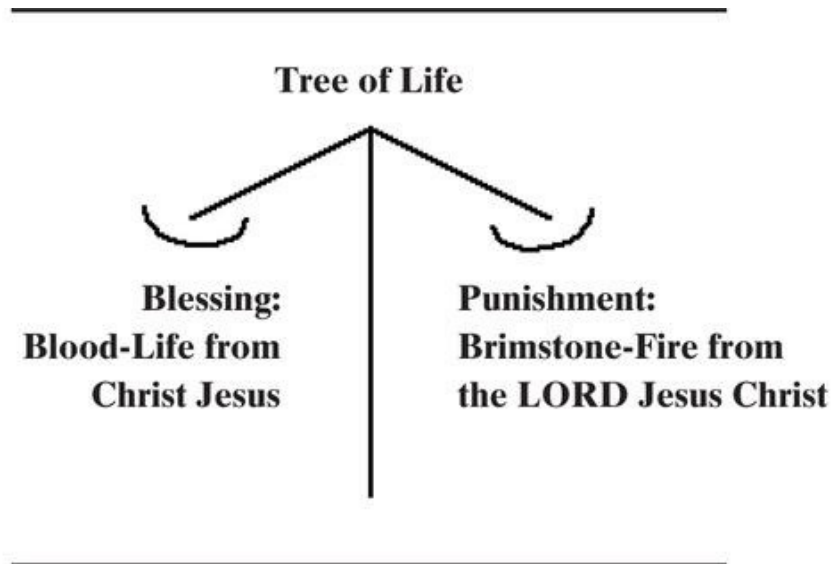
In the midst of all the creation's thunderous praise to their LORD, their Creator, Jesus Christ will lay hold of the Beast or Antichrist and the False Prophet and cast them alive into the Lake of Fire, burning with brimstone.

The Hebrew feminine word for *brimstone* is *gof-reeth*, from the Hebrew root word *go-fer*, meaning a tree, pitch-pine, which is related to the Hebrew word *kaw-far*, which means to cover over. Hence, brimstone has its origin from

a *tree*, both in the natural realm and in the spiritual realm.

A. The Tree of Life from Which Blessing and Punishment Come

In the natural realm, the resin from the pitch-pine and the cypress form brimstone, which is easy to burn. In the spiritual realm, brimstone has its origin from the Tree of Life. There are two sides to the Tree of Life: blessing and punishment.



The Tree of Life is the Tree of Wisdom that God placed in the Garden of Eden, along with the Tree of Knowledge.

And out of the ground made the LORD God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; *the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge of good and evil* (Genesis 2:9).

God commanded man to eat of Wisdom, the Humility Truth of Christ the LORD, and to leave the Tree of Knowledge alone since the Tree of Knowledge belonged to the Father. It is the Ministry of the Son, the Humility Tree of Wisdom, to reveal the Father and to be the Mediator and the Way of Life to the Father's Knowledge.

The wise man in Proverbs revealed that Wisdom is a Tree of Life.

She [Wisdom] is a tree of life to them that lay hold upon her: and happy is every one that retaineth her (Proverbs 3:18).

Wisdom is the Living Tree of God's *Torah*-Truth. After man sinned by rejecting the Living *Torah*-Truth, the Wisdom-Tree of Life, Christ came in Flesh and gave His precious Blood for a *kaw-far* protective covering of Life. What an eternal blessing to mankind!

However, sinful, rejecting mankind cannot by-pass God's Living Tree of Life. If they reject the *Kaw-far* Blood, the blessing side of the Tree of Life, they will have to learn Brimstone-Fire, the punishing side of the Tree of Life. If man sins against the Tree of Life and its blessing of *Kaw-far* Blood-covering, he must experience the Punishing-covering of God's Brimstone from the Tree of Life. If man sins against the Tree of Life, he must be punished by the Tree of Life.

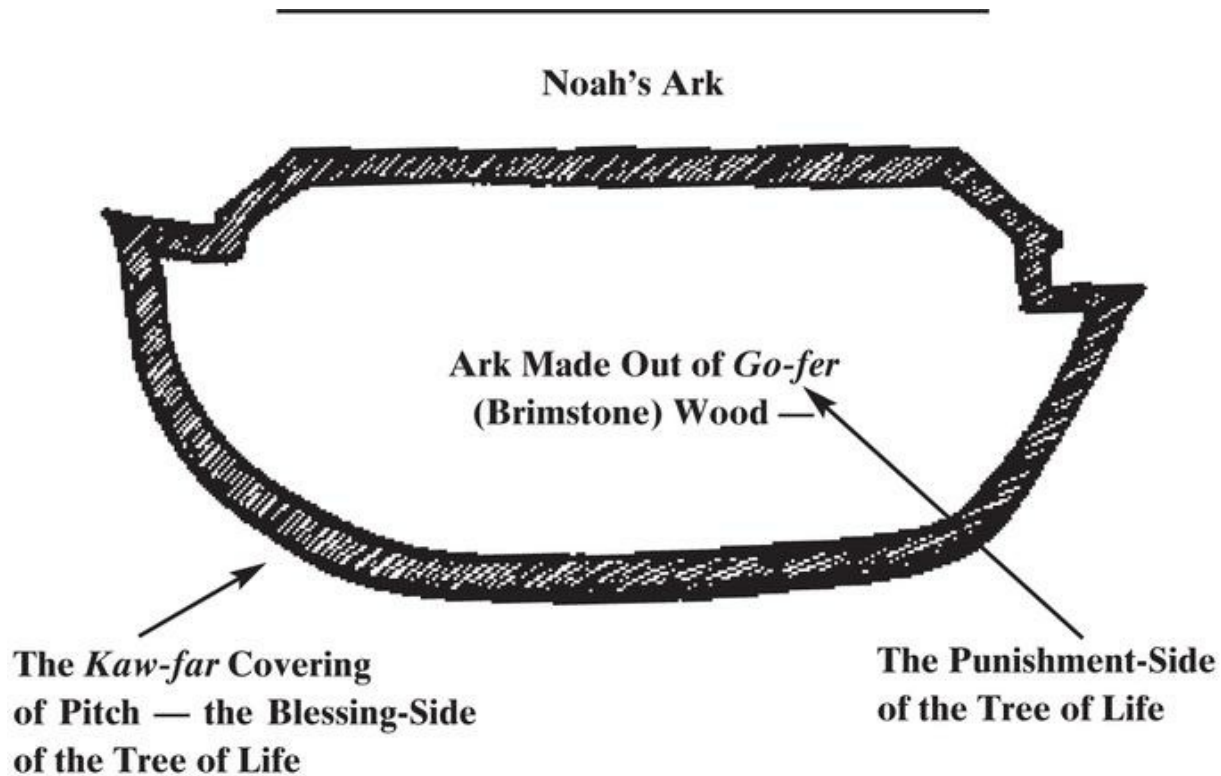
In His Word of Truth, God has demonstrated these two coverings: the blessing and punishment of the Tree of Life.

1. The Blessing-Side of the Tree of Life

God pictured, in the natural realm, the Principle of the Blood Covering of Life (*Kaw-far*) through the ark of safety which He commanded Noah to build.

Make thee an ark of gopher [*go-fer*] wood; rooms shalt thou make in the ark, and shalt *pitch it within and without with pitch* (Genesis 6:14).

God told Noah to build an ark out of *go-fer* wood or pitch-pine, or, in other words, brimstone wood. Then, God told Noah to *pitch (kaw-far)* the ark, cover it with pitch, which was a picture of the Blood-covering blessing of Christ's Atonement.



How beautiful and instructive are God's natural pictures.

God had Noah to cover the *go-fer* wood, the brimstone wood, (which was a picture of Christ's, the Tree of Life's, Fiery Punishment) with the atoning *kaw-far* pitch-covering, the Blessing-covering from the Tree of Life. Hence, Noah and the believing, penitent souls were saved from the Brimstone Punishment from the Tree of Life by the Blessing of the "Pitch-covering" from the Tree of Life.

2. The Punishment-Side of the Tree of Life

At the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, God gave a preview of the final Judgment, when unbelievers will be cast into of the Lake of Fiery Brimstone.

And the men said unto Lot, Hast thou here any besides? son in law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whatsoever thou hast in the city, bring them out of this place: For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of the LORD; and the LORD hath sent us to destroy it. And Lot went out, and spake unto his sons in law, which married his daughters, and said, Up, get you out of this place: for the LORD will destroy this city. But he seemed as one that mocked unto his sons in law. And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city. And while he lingered the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the LORD being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city.... *Then the LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the LORD out of heaven;* And he overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground

(Genesis 19:12-16,24,25).

The LORD's Divine Judgment is a winnowing fan that separates the evil chaff from the good wheat. Although the LORD, in His Great Mercy, delays His Judgments upon the sinful, disobedient ones, it surely will come in due season. Wicked, rebellious sinners and foul devils must be visited with God's Judgments. God is a consuming Fire, and the Tree of Life is also filled with the consuming, fiery Anger or Brimstone which will consume and destroy that which is unclean and vile.

At Christ's Judgment in the Valley of Jehoshaphat, the LORD will cause the punishing Fire of His Anger to rain down, to pour down brimstone from the Tree of Life in such a great quantity that a huge Lake of Fire will be formed for the disobedient rejecters of the blessing-side of the Tree of Life. Brimstone is, in actuality, the solidified Anger of the LORD Jesus Christ, the Tree of Life.

B. The Lake of Fire — the Place of Punishment for the Antichrist and His Armies, the False Prophet, and All Resurrected, Wicked Dead

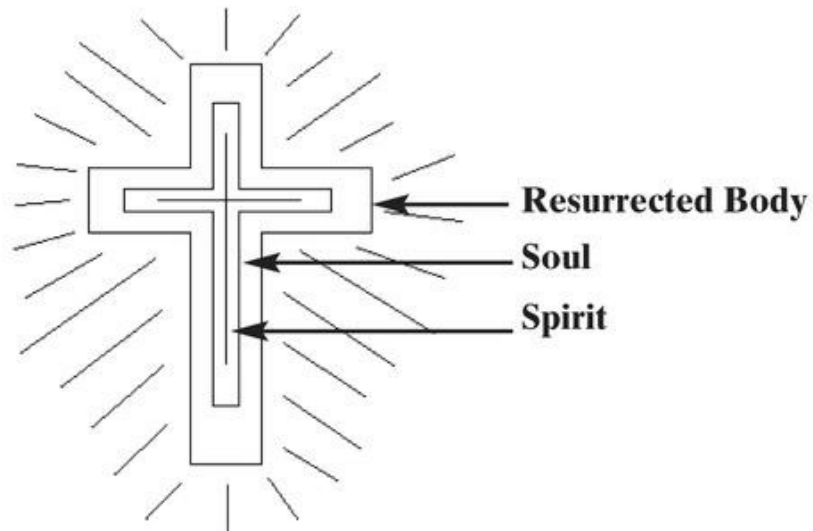
The Lake of Fire is not a place of torment for physical, mortal bodies; it is for spiritual, immortal bodies. When a wicked person dies, he experiences a threefold separation: his body goes to the grave; his soul goes to hell; and his wicked, disembodied spirit is left to roam until the Day of God's Great White Throne Judgment. At that time, Christ will resurrect *all dead*.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live.... Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which *all that are in the graves shall hear his voice*, And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation (John 5:25,28,29).

In Adam the First, death entered into all men. But in Christ Jesus, the Second Adam, shall *all* be made alive.

For as in Adam all die, even so *in Christ shall all be made alive* (I Corinthians 15:22).

At the second or last resurrection, all the wicked dead will be raised up in immortal bodies.



Wicked man's spirit and soul will be returned to his resurrected body; then, he (spirit, soul, and body) will be cast into the Lake of Fire that is kindled with the brimstone or the punishing Fire from the Cross of God's Living *Torah*-Truth. This is the second death.

At the first death, wicked man's body is punished by disintegration in the grave, and the wicked soul is tormented in Hell. But the wicked spirit is left free. However, at the second death, the spirit and soul are reunited in a resurrected body, in order to be cast into the Lake of Fire. The first death is punishment for disobediently ignoring God's Son, the Tree of Life, Jesus Christ, the Living *Torah*-Truth. The second death is punishment for disobediently partaking of the Father's Tree of Knowledge.

Since the Beast or Antichrist will be resurrected out of the Bottomless Pit (Revelation 13:1; 11:7) and since the False Prophet will be resurrected out of the Earth (Revelation 13:11), they will be ready to be cast immediately into the Lake of Fire in the Valley of Decision or Jehoshaphat because they already will be in their resurrected, immortal bodies!

The Psalmist David prophesied about the brimstone that shall be rained upon the wicked.

Upon the wicked he shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, and an horrible tempest: this shall be the portion of their cup (Psalm 11:6).

If man rejects the Blood-blessing of God's Living *Torah*-Truth or Wisdom, he will be punished by the Brimstone, the solidified, fiery Anger of God's Living *Torah*-Truth or Wisdom.

Also, Isaiah the Prophet wrote about the fiery Brimstone-Breath of the *Torah*-Truth.

For Tophet is ordained of old; yea, for the king it is prepared; he hath made it deep and large: the pile thereof is fire and much wood; the breath of the LORD, like a stream of brimstone, doth kindle it (Isaiah 30:33).

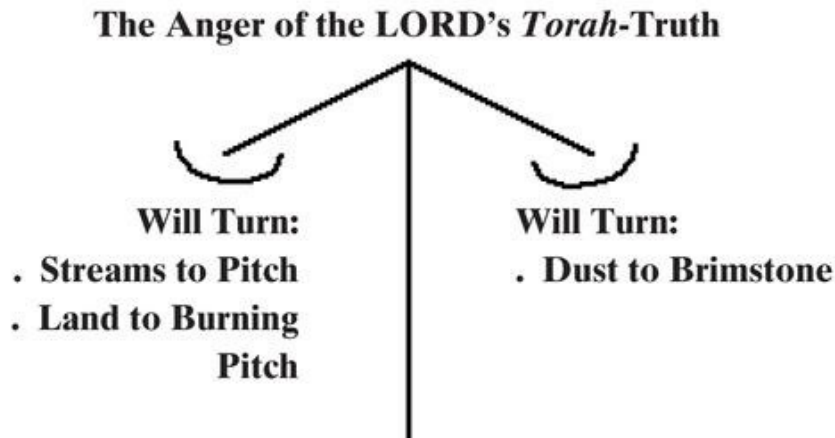
Like a stream of brimstone, the LORD's *Neshamah* Breath from His Tree of Life will keep the Lake of Fire perpetually burning.

Isaiah continued by describing the Battle of Armageddon, the place in which the Lake of Fire will be created.

Come near, ye nations, to hear; and hearken, ye people: let the earth hear, and all that is therein; the world, and all things that come forth of it. For the indignation of the LORD is upon all nations, and his fury upon all their armies: he hath utterly destroyed them, he hath delivered them to the slaughter. Their slain also shall be cast out, and their stink shall come up out of their carcases, and the mountains shall be melted with their blood. And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling fig from the fig tree. For my sword shall be bathed in heaven: behold, it shall come down upon Idumea, and upon the people of my curse, to judgment. The sword of the LORD is filled with blood, it is made fat with fatness, and with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of rams: for the LORD hath a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Idumea. And the unicorns shall come down with them, and the bullocks with the bulls; and their land shall be soaked with blood, and their dust made fat with fatness. For it is the day of the LORD's vengeance, and the year of recompences for the controversy of Zion. And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the dust thereof into brimstone, and the land thereof shall become burning pitch. It shall not be quenched night nor day; the smoke thereof shall go up for ever: from generation to generation it shall lie waste; none shall pass through it for ever and ever (Isaiah 34:1-10).

In the great and dreadful Day of the LORD's Anger against wicked men, against the Antichrist, and against the False Prophet, the LORD will descend the second time from Heaven — and this time His Bridal Armies will be with Him to take vengeance on obstinate rebellors.

When the burning, consuming, fiery Anger from the *Torah*-Truth falls upon the streams and the dust of the Earth, they will be turned into burning pitch and burning brimstone.



The land shall look like the place of Sodom and Gomorrah. The stream in the Valley of Jehoshaphat, which had watered the land, making it to bud, blossom, and become fruitful, and which had satisfied and refreshed the inhabitants, shall be turned into pitch.

As Isaiah said, the streams shall turn to black pitch; they shall be somewhat congealed but shall move slowly. The rushing streams of life shall turn into lazy streams of death. Streams of moving pitch shall overflow the land, which shall be turned into burning pitch by the Fierce Anger of the LORD. The dust shall be turned into brimstone.

The wickedness of the Antichrist, the False Prophet, and their armies will make the streams and the land in the valley so combustible that, at the first sparks of Fiery Wrath from the LORD, the Living *Torah*, the entire valley will become one Lake of Fire.

Christ's enemies will not be able to quench or extinguish the Fire because it will be a perpetual fire. It will burn continuously. It will not be quenched night nor day; its smoke will go up forever.

Into this place, this Lake of Fire, the LORD will cast the Antichrist (the Beast) and the False Prophet who have worked such deceiving miracles that they will have caused many people to be deceived into taking the mark of the Beast and into bowing down in worship to his ungodly image.

The Antichrist and the False Prophet, who will lead their armies by Lucifer's power and by Lucifer's policy of deceit, will be cast, once and for all, into the Lake of Fire. Their armies will be given up to the Executing Judgment of Christ's Sword of *Torah*-Truth, which will proceed out of His Mouth. The resulting carnage will make a Supper or Feast for the fowls and eagles of Heaven.

The LORD will speak forth His First Commandment of *Torah*-Truth: "Thou shalt have no other gods before me. Thou shalt love the LORD thy God with all thy heart, mind, soul, and strength." Because the LORD Jesus Christ will speak the Truth from the punishing-side of the Tree of Life, without His redemptive, blessed Blood-Truth, His enemies will be slain immediately. Since they will have chosen to follow and to fight, *for and with*, a false "Christ" and a False Prophet, they will have to fall and to perish with them and, ultimately, be cast into the same Lake of Fire.

The LORD Jesus Christ is qualified to judge because within Him are God's Seven Spirits of All Truth: the Spirit of the LORD, the Self-existent One; the Spirit of Wisdom; the Spirit of Understanding; the Spirit of Counsel; the Spirit of Might; the Spirit of Knowledge; and the Spirit of Fear.

The Father and the Son will subdue *all* enemies, judging them in Righteousness and Truth. At the Battle of Armageddon, the punishment-side of the Tree of Life, the solidified, fiery Anger of God's Living *Torah*-Truth, will form the Lake of Fire into which the Antichrist and his armies, the False Prophet, and all resurrected, wicked dead will be cast.

The end of all Jesus Christ's detractors is written in the Book of Revelation by the Spirit of Christ, the God of

Truth; so the end of all wicked is settled and sure — their Eternal abode will be the Lake of Fire and Brimstone.

Chapter Seven

The Premillennial Judgment of Fallen Lucifer

Originally, God created Lucifer and placed him as an Anointed Cherub of Protection over God's Holy, Spiritual Mount Zion in Heaven and as a "Doorkeeper" for the Sun of Righteousness.

However, Lucifer had a vain, insatiable desire to be like God. His desire caused him to beget pride in his will, and he tried to ascend to an equal position with God. Consequently, he was cast out of Heaven and became the first of his peers in Hell. Angels who followed Lucifer also had their heads broken by pride; therefore, they became his fellow companions in Hell.

I. Lucifer's Original Sin — Pride

Pride emptied Lucifer's head of any sane, sensible, spiritual reasoning and filled it with a magnetic selfishness, which he used to draw as many Angels after himself as he could so that they would not follow the LORD God Who was their Creator.

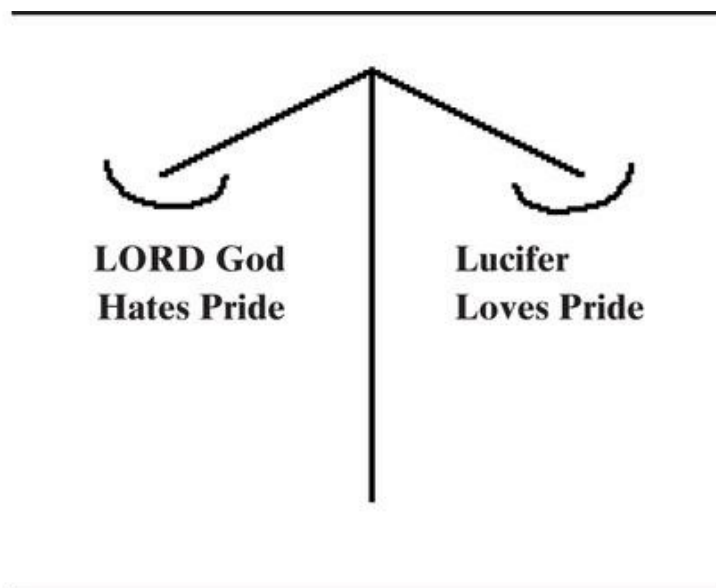
When Lucifer removed Truth from the throne of his heart and enthroned pride there, he became the archenemy of God and of God's true children.

Fallen Lucifer, from his head of pride, continually feeds the tumor of pride in the head of fallen man so that the grievous tumor spreads roots of vile corruption into man's system, polluting all the thoughts and deeds of sinful man.

Because the poisonous worm of pride hidden in the heart of fallen man is always being fed by Lucifer, it becomes strong and voraciously eats away at the good virtues in others, slandering their good reputations and detracting from their good names. The proud, poisonous worm in man's heart feasts on its own vainglory. It is a staunch friend of vain flatterers. The proud, poisonous worm is the mother that gives birth to a keg of envious, baby, poisonous worms. In the heart of man, the proud, poisonous worm engorges itself on hatred, wrath, strife, and fury.

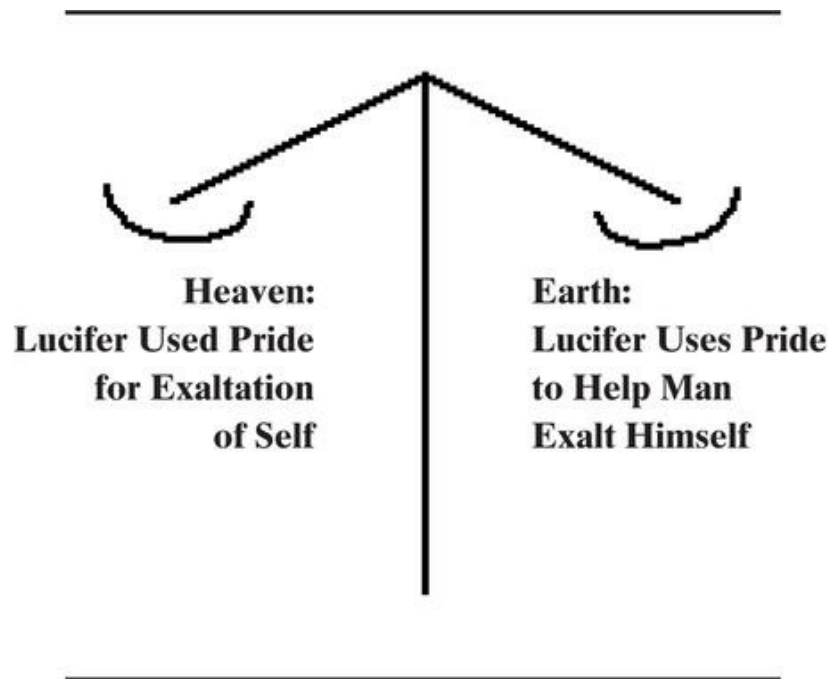
The ugly monster of pride was the sin produced by Lucifer and practiced by some of the Angels in Heaven; then, pride became the sin committed by Adam and, consequently, all mankind.

Proud Lucifer hated his superiors: God, and His only Begotten Son. He scorned his inferiors in Heaven and never acknowledged that anyone else was his equal. Lucifer loved his pride, but God hated Lucifer's pride.



Until sinful man can hate pride and allow it to be removed from his heart by confessing it and repenting of it before God, he is a target and mark for God's Hatred and Judgment.

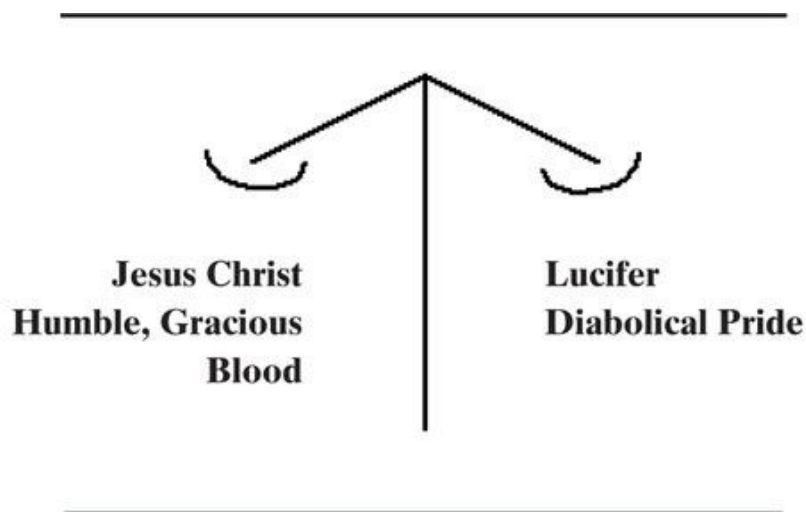
Pride is the master tool Lucifer used in Heaven to try to exalt himself, and it is his master tool on Earth with which he tries to tempt man into exalting himself.



The pride with which Lucifer clothed himself made him admire and adore himself, while he detested God and hated God's other creation in Heaven.

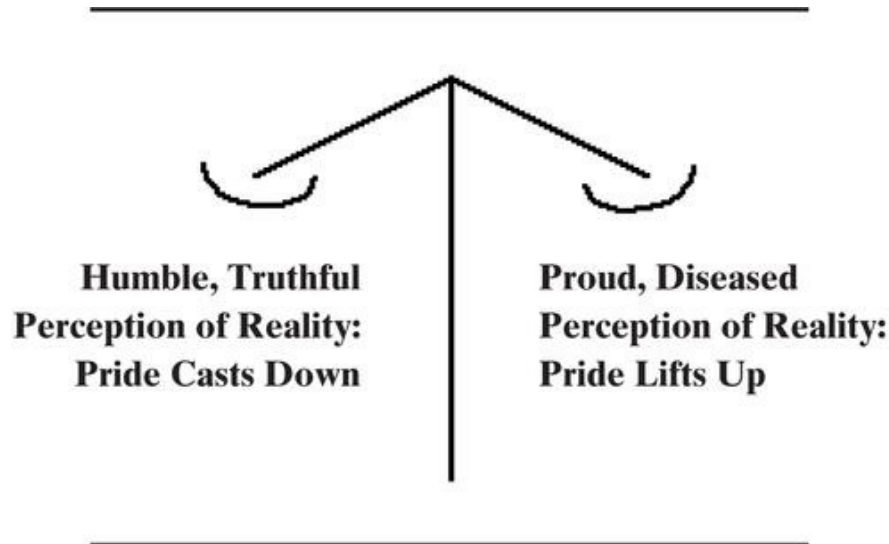
After Lucifer had been cast out of Heaven, he clothed the hearts of mankind with his filthy, beggarly rags of pride. The Sovereign, Humble Grace of Jesus Christ is the only Force and Power that is able to constrain the human heart to put off its vestures and costumes of pride.

Pride is a diabolical force that is implacable, inextinguishable, uncooperative, and nonconsentable to the Humility of Jesus Christ. Pride produces a crooked mentality and diseased perception of reality that makes the heart fancy it deserves the honours, favours, good positions, and titles that others possess. Pride feels it is worthy to be admired and adored instead of being overlooked; it hates all the favours and attentions bestowed upon others. The diabolical pride of Lucifer can be washed away only by the Humble and Gracious Blood of Jesus Christ.



Jesus Christ, the Saviour of the world, can take a heart that has been made a desert by the diabolical pride of Lucifer, wash and cleanse it through His own Humble, Gracious Blood, and convert it into a paradisiacal garden, filled with the flowers of love, humility, and gratitude.

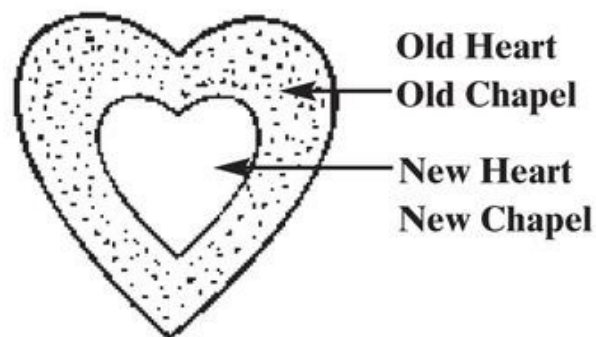
God's Truth heals pride's diseased perception of reality. Pride does not lift one up, as a person's diseased perception thinks. Pride casts down!



Because of pride, Lucifer was cast down from Heaven. And because of pride, Adam male and female were cast down from their sovereign power and authority over the Earth, and then they were cast out of the Garden. Because of pride, King Saul was cast down from his earthly kingdom, and Haman was cast down from the king's court to hang on the gallows that his pride had built for another — Mordecai. Pride also cast down Nebuchadnezzar and thrust him out from his earthly throne and kingdom.

Fallen Lucifer is not an inactive spirit; he is a restless vagabond, a fugitive who never stays in one place with one person. His complete goal and objective is to ruin mankind, totally and eternally, by infecting everyone he can with destructive pride.

When God begins building a chapel, a new heart, in man, Lucifer tries to build a chapel next door in the old heart of man.



Thus, Lucifer competes with Jesus Christ for the heart, the mind, the time, and the works of man. We need to resist the workings of Lucifer as he tries to infiltrate our old heart and our carnal mind and, then, defy him in the Name of the LORD Jesus Christ! Lucifer is a very intelligent Angel of Light; therefore, he will flee when we resist him in the Name of the LORD Jesus Christ. Lucifer knows he is a created being, created by the Son of God, the

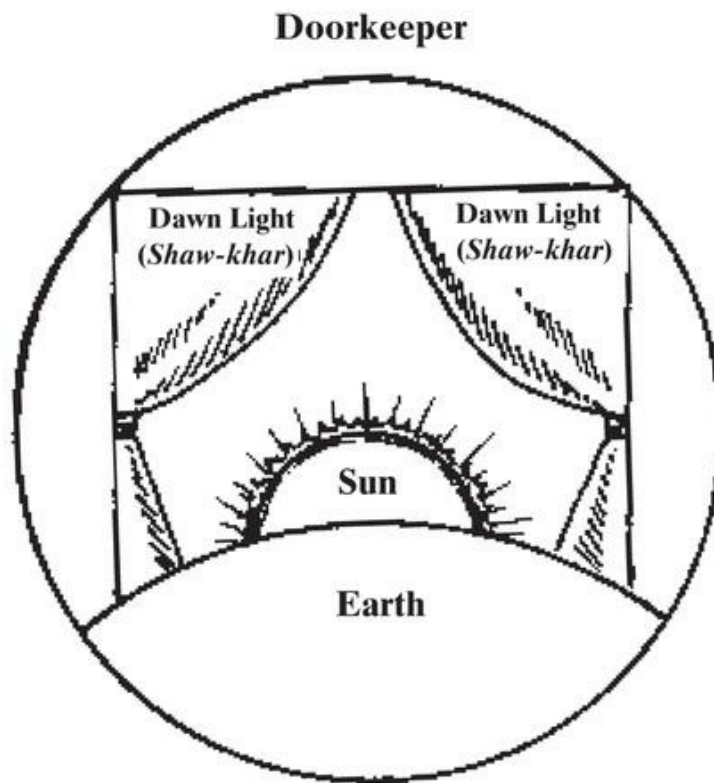
LORD Jesus Christ. Lucifer knows that the LORD Jesus Christ is his LORD and MASTER.

All Christians are in spiritual conflict with fallen Lucifer. Since all conflict between good and evil is so intense these days, it should provoke us seriously to consider the battle at hand and the methods of operation our enemy uses as he tries to overcome us in our journey toward spiritual maturity in Jesus Christ.

When we view Lucifer in his original, angelic state, we see him as the covering Cherub and as the Son of the Morning.

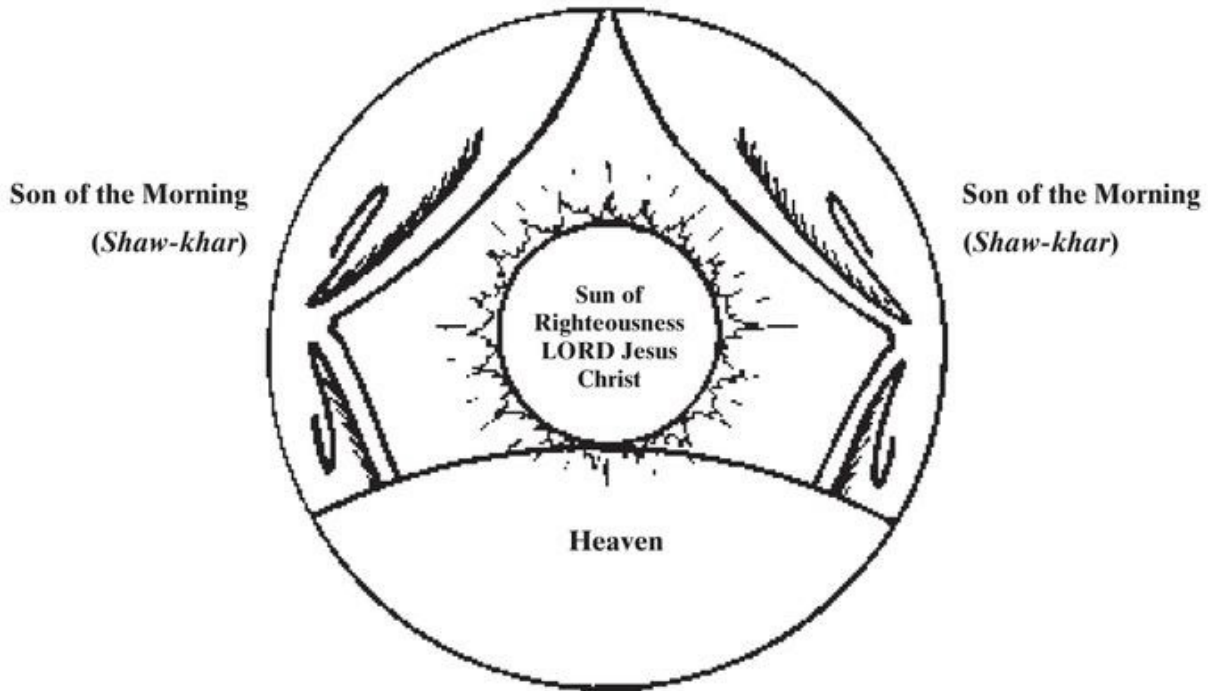
How art thou fallen from heaven, O *Lucifer, son of the morning [shaw-khar]*! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! (Isaiah 14:12).

The Hebrew word for *morning* is *shaw-khar*, meaning the first rays of dawn. It is the *shaw-khar* rays of the morning that act as the “doorkeeper” of the day by pulling back the dark curtains of night and making way for a greater light — the fresh, new rising of the sun.



In the same manner, Lucifer was the guarding Angel, the doorkeeper, for the Heavenly Sun of Righteousness. He was to use his small, beginning “Dawn Light” to unveil the Sun of Righteousness at the appointed time.

Lucifer's Ministry as the Heavenly Doorkeeper



Lucifer's ingratitude for his honourable position in Heaven caused him to beget pride. Therefore, he became jealous of the LORD Jesus Christ and His Divine Righteousness. Then, by his Pride of Revelation, Pride of Redemption, and Pride of Satisfaction, he endeavoured to lift himself above all other Angelic Stars of Light in order to make himself equal with God in Glory, Brightness, and Power. Thus, he became a corrupt doorkeeper, an unveiler for himself instead of a righteous doorkeeper for the LORD Jesus Christ.

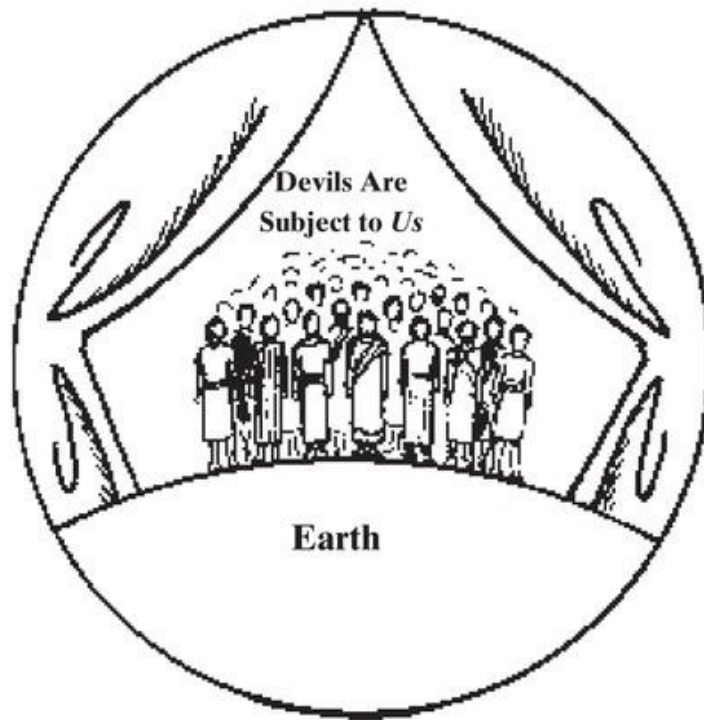
Because of Lucifer's proud, flagrant, outrageous sin against the only Begotten Son of God, the Father cast Lucifer out of his Heavenly position.

The LORD Jesus Christ Himself confirmed Lucifer or Satan's fall, which was caused by his pride.

And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name. And he said unto them, *I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven* (Luke 10:17,18).

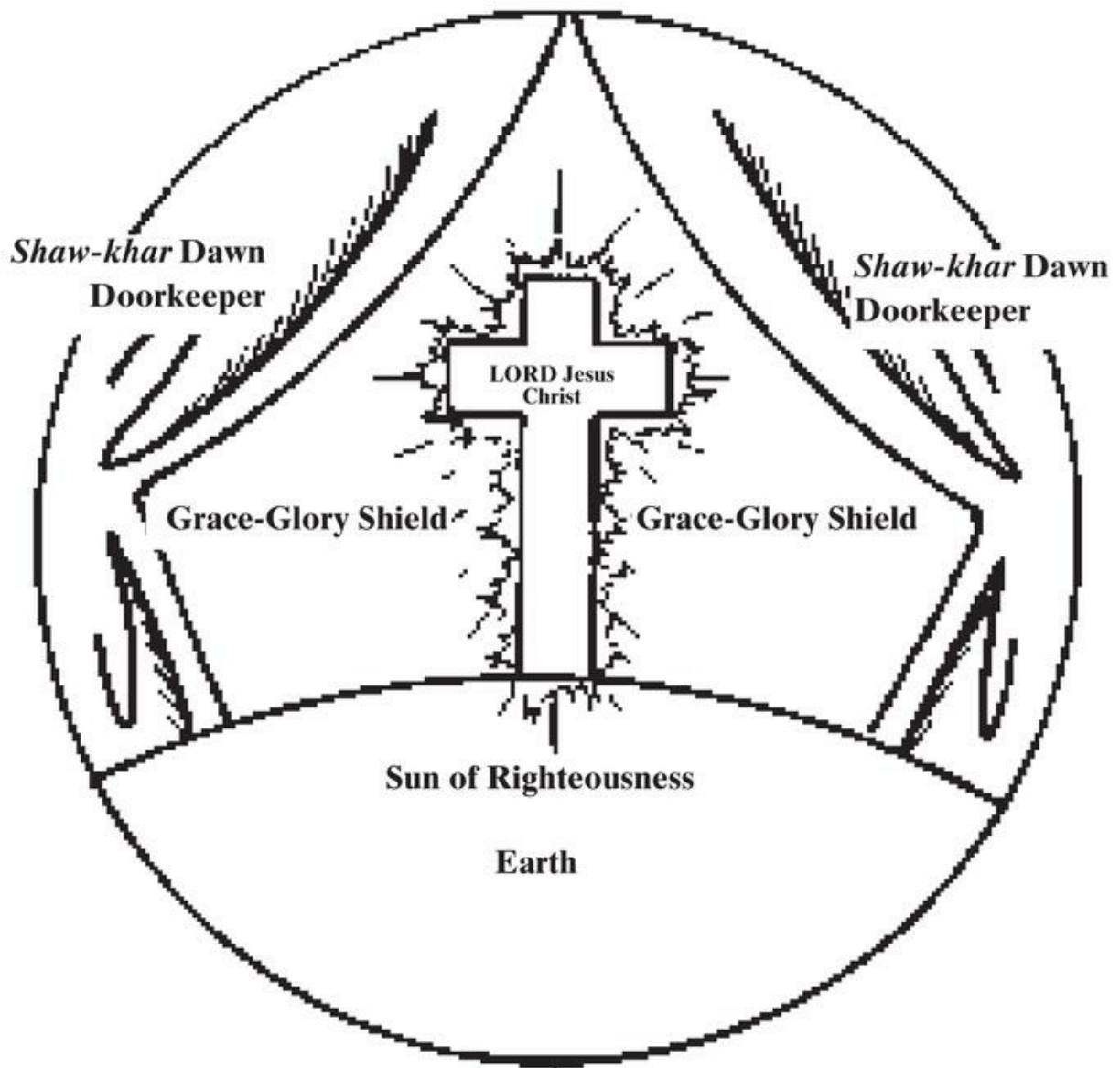
When Jesus' seventy disciples returned from their ministry, proudly boasting to Him about their great power and successes, He warned them of how Lucifer fell when he became a doorkeeper for "self-exaltation."

Seventy Disciples - Doorkeepers for Self-exaltation



The proud, blind disciples placed the "us" before the Name of the LORD Jesus Christ. They had used Jesus' Name and had taken victory over devils. However, instead of giving all the Glory to Jesus' Name and, thereby, being faithful doorkeepers to unveil Jesus, they unveiled themselves. They should have returned rejoicing and unveiling the Name of Jesus, which a true, faithful doorkeeper will do.

A True Doorkeeper's Ministry



What a blessed privilege to surrender humbly to be the lowly “curtain light” that we are, in order to unveil the brightest, most brilliant Light in Heaven and in Earth, with the exception of the Heavenly Father Himself.

Some people, down through history, have overcome Lucifer’s pride and have been faithful doorkeepers of the LORD. King David was a faithful doorkeeper of the LORD.

For a day in thy courts is better than a thousand. *I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God*, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness. For the LORD God is a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly (Psalm 84:10,11).

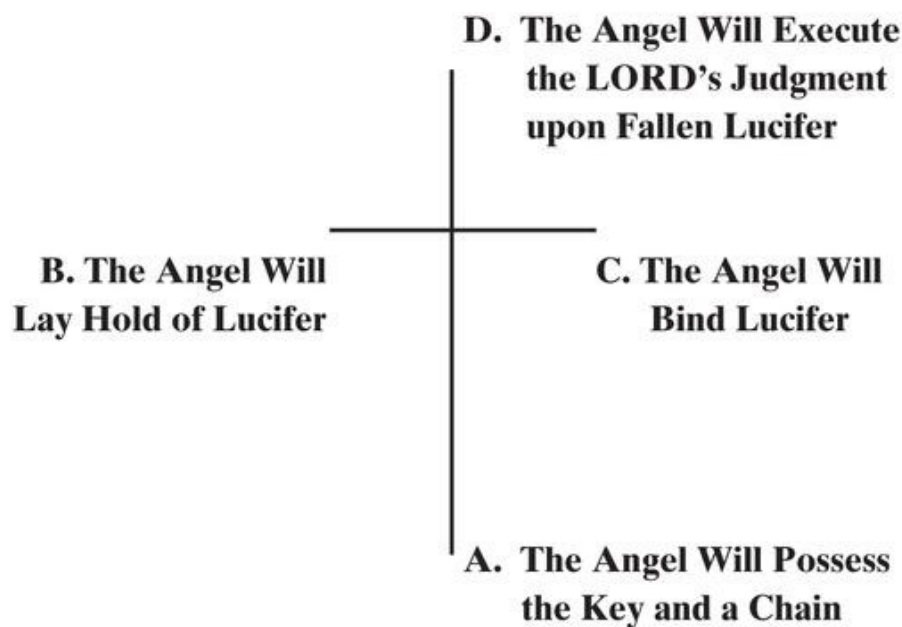
If we are a doorkeeper for the Sun of Righteousness, He will rise up as a new Shield and protect us against the attacks of the enemy and against the pitfalls of deceitful mental errors and misunderstanding of God's Truth. The Light from the Sun of Righteousness will shield us from Lucifer's darkness and deceit. The Sun of Righteousness will permeate the heart and mind with fresh, new Grace or appreciation for having the privilege to be a humble doorkeeper for His Great Light. A new rising of the Sun of Righteousness always will bring new, unprecedented waves of dazzling, spiritual illumination of the LORD's precious Word.

II. God's Judgment on Lucifer for His Pride

To return to Lucifer, we see that after Lucifer had sinned against the LORD and against his own ministry as a doorkeeper, and after the LORD had cast him down out of Heaven, he became the LORD's archenemy and the deceiver of mankind. He *still* is the doorkeeper for his exalted self and will continue to be so until he is cast farther down — to the Bottomless Pit. This will be his punishment during the Millennial Reign of Jesus Christ and His Bride on Earth — Lucifer will be confined in the Bottomless Pit by an Angel who has the key to the Pit and the chains to bind Lucifer in all his wicked, evil forms.

And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key [maf-tay-akh] of the bottomless pit and a great chain [keh-bel] in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season (Revelation 20:1-3)

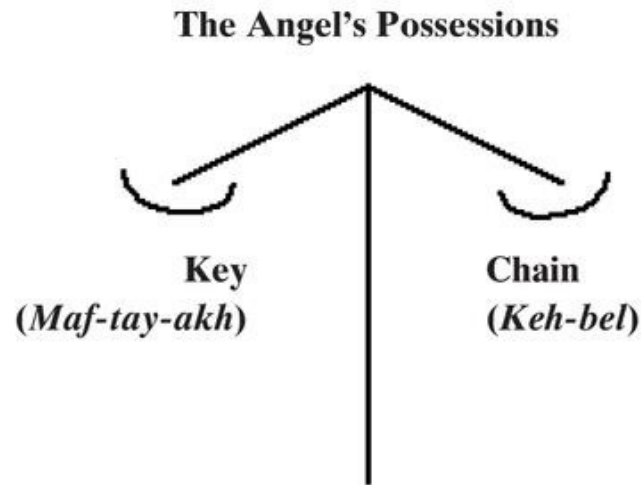
There is a Stature of Truth about the Angel who comes to mete out God's premillennial Judgment on Fallen Lucifer. The following four points become clearer as we search the Scriptures which shed Light on what the Angel holds in his possession, what he does to Lucifer, and the place in which he confines Lucifer.



A. The Angel Will Possess the Key and a Chain

The fact that the Angel will come down from Heaven with a key and a chain means that he had received this key and chain while he was in Heaven. Since the LORD Jesus has been given ALL POWER in Heaven and in Earth

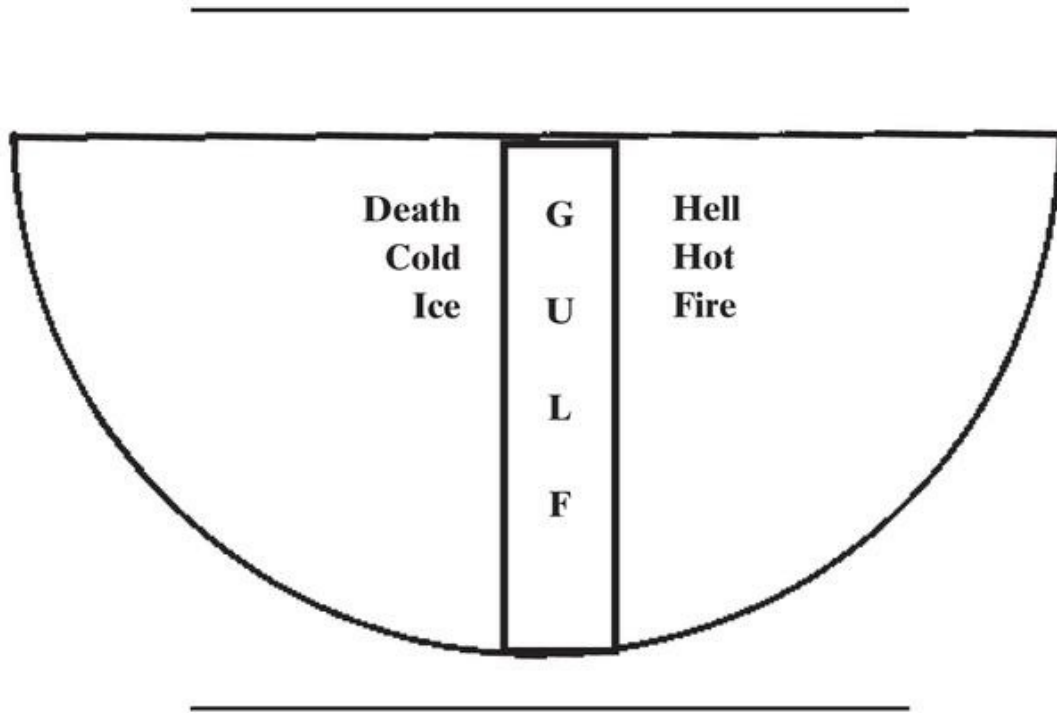
(Matthew 28:18), we know He was the One Who gave this powerful Key and Chain to the Angel for him to use in subduing the powerful, inimical Lucifer.



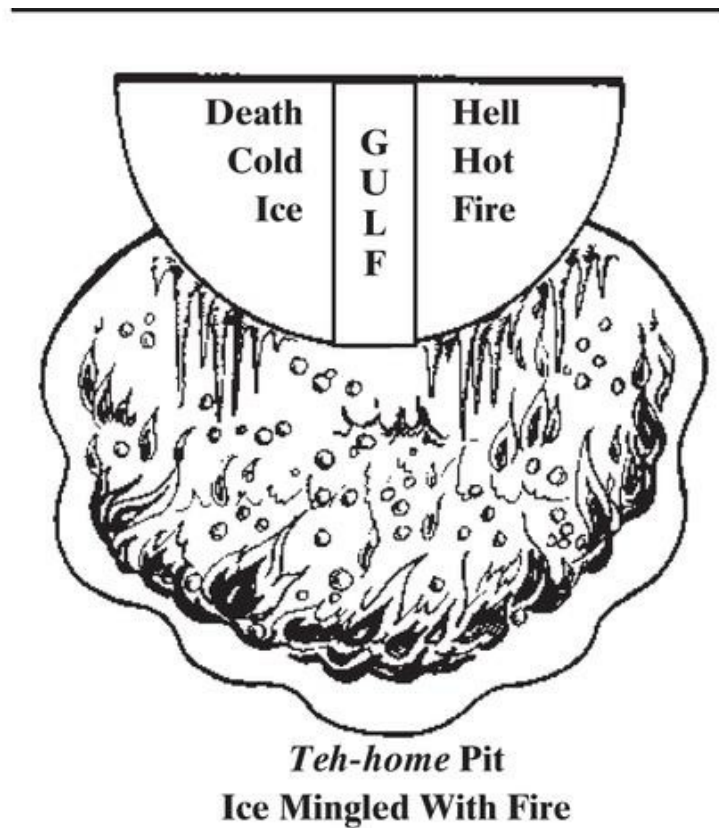
The Hebrew word for *key* is *maf-tay-akh*, meaning to open. This Key is the “opener” to the Bottomless Pit, the Sea-Pit (Revelation 11:7; 13:1) or the *Teh-home* Pit. The *Teh-home* Pit is the *nether* part of Death and Hell.

In the *upper* regions of Death and Hell, the Ice of Death and the Fire of Hell are separated.

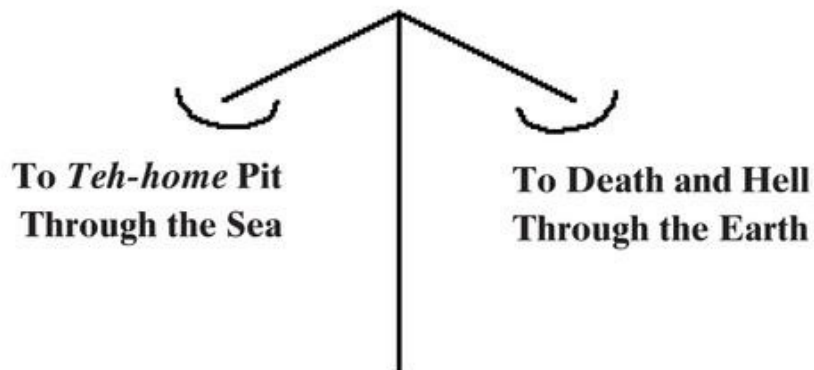
There was a certain rich man, which was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day: And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores, And desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores. And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; And *in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments*, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for *I am tormented in this flame*. But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise *Lazarus* evil things: but now he *is comforted, and thou art tormented*. And beside all this, *between us and you there is a great gulf fixed*: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence (Luke 16:19-26).



In the *Teh-home* Pit, however, there is no gulf between the Ice and the Fire.



The entrance to Death and Hell is through the Earth. The entrance to the *Teh-home* is through the Sea.



This is why the first Beast, the Antichrist, is said to come up out of the Sea or Bottomless Pit, and why the second Beast, the False Prophet, is said to come up out of the Earth or Death and Hell.

The LORD Jesus Christ possesses the Keys to all these places. Therefore, He can open them at will, according to His Father's Master Plan.

Isaiah prophesied about the royal, ruling Key of Authority that would be laid upon the Shoulder of the LORD Jesus Christ when He takes over the House of David or the Kingdom of Israel, His natural Bride.

And the key [*maf-tay-akh*] of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open. And I will fasten him as a nail in a sure place; and he shall be for a glorious throne to his father's house (Isaiah 22:22,23).

And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, *he that hath the key* [*maf-tay-akh*] of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth; (Revelation 3:7).

The Almighty Power of the LORD Jesus Christ in the Kingdom of Heaven and His Control of all the affairs of His Kingdom are absolutely irresistible and incontestable.

The second exercise of the LORD's Almighty Authority from His Glorious Throne of Judgment, after He has returned to Earth, will be to give the Key of the Bottomless Pit to the Angel so that he can confine fallen Lucifer in the Pit for a thousand years.

Jesus testified about *His* possession of the *Maf-tay-akh* Keys of Death and Hell, which include the Key to the Bottomless Pit.

I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; *and have the keys* [*maf-tay-akh*] of hell and of death (Revelation 1:18).

The LORD Jesus Christ arose from the dead with ALL Power and Dominion, both over the invisible worlds and the visible world; therefore, when He opens, no one can shut, and when He shuts, no one can open. As the Judge of all, Christ opens the gates to either happiness or misery, depending on the choice of each soul.

The Highest Power and Authority is the Court and Judgment Bench of Jesus Christ, the Eternal Judge, from Whose sentence there lies no appeal! Hence, when Christ decides it is time to open the Bottomless Pit so that fallen Lucifer can be confined there, no one will be able to keep the Bottomless Pit shut.

The LORD will furnish the Angel with the Key to the Pit, and He also will furnish him a Chain with which to fetter fallen Lucifer.

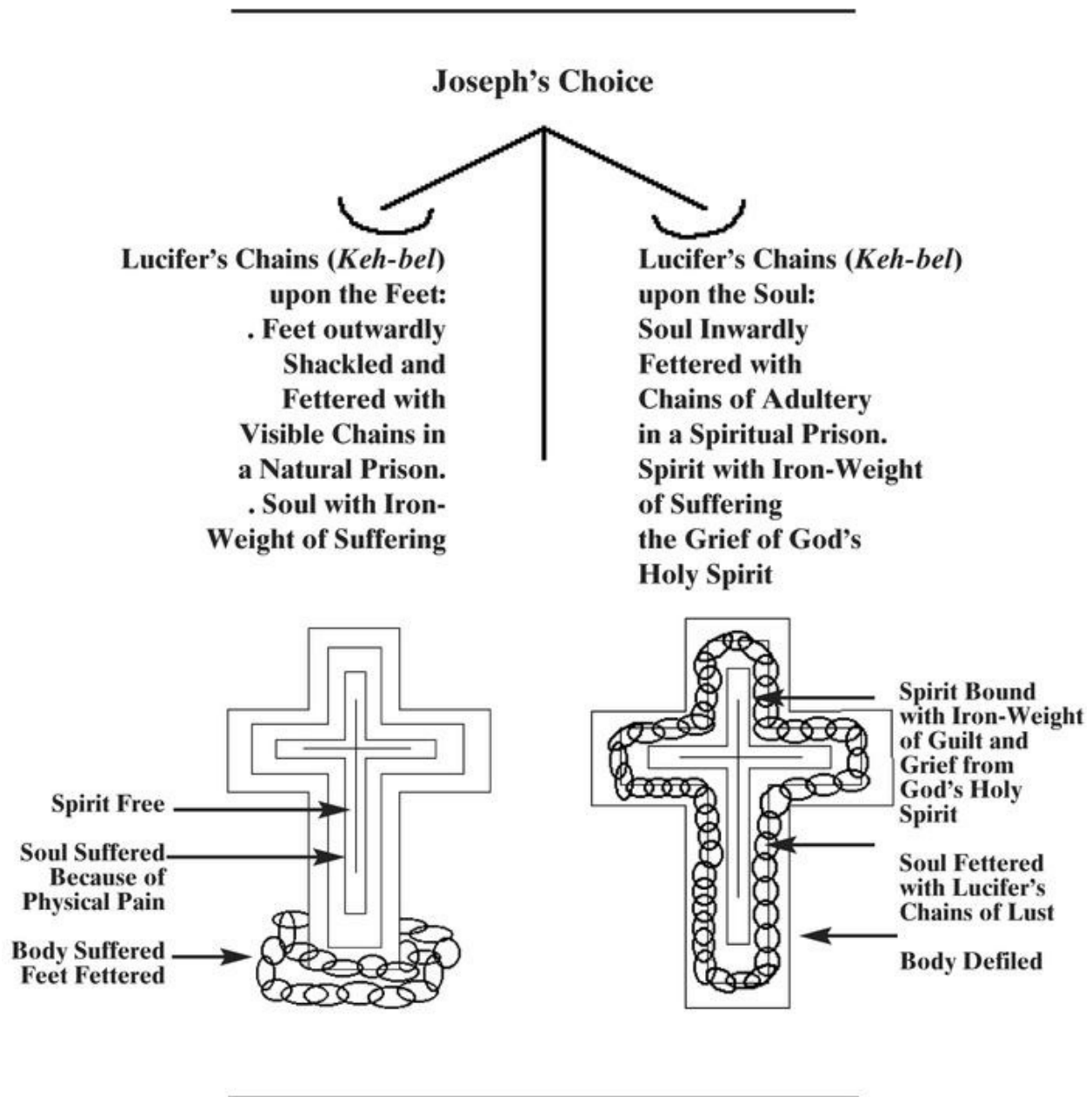
The Hebrew word for *chain* is *keh-bel*, meaning a bond, a fetter, to twine and to braid together. This is the same word that was used for the fettering of Joseph in Egypt, during the days of his humiliation, before the days of his exaltation.

He sent a man before them, even Joseph, who was sold for a servant: *Whose feet they hurt with fetters* [*keh-bel*]; he was laid in iron: (Psalm 105:17,18).

Nineteen years before the historical famine began in Egypt, the LORD God sent Joseph to Egypt and allowed him to be sold as a slave. During Joseph's time of slavery, the LORD permitted fallen Lucifer to work through wicked men to afflict Joseph's feet with fetters and to lay his soul in iron.

When Joseph was imprisoned because of Potiphar's wife's false accusations against him, they put his feet in fetters. They shackled his feet with chains. Thus, he was confined and restrained in the prison house.

The two ways Joseph chose to suffer were in marked contrast to the two ways he would have suffered had he given in to the temptation Potiphar's wife offered. He chose to be humiliated before the world by having Lucifer shackle chains, outwardly, on his feet, and he chose the grievous iron-weight of suffering upon his soul, which resulted *only* from his *physical* suffering. These he chose, rather than to choose the suffering of being humiliated before God and the spiritual world by letting Lucifer shackle chains of adultery, inwardly, upon his soul, which would have caused a second suffering — the grievous iron-weight of suffering upon his spirit as a result of sinful corruption.



The suffering Joseph chose was only for a season.

Lucifer's motive was to destroy Joseph with his chains, but God's motive was to purify and to perfect Joseph's soul through the testings, trials, and tribulations of Lucifer's "chains." Lucifer can open and close, but only as God allows him to do so.

Fallen Lucifer has *sown*, as it were, chains upon God's people. Consequently, he shall *reap* chains upon his own feet and imprisonment in the Bottomless Pit.

The Prophet Isaiah was not the only one to prophesy about the chaining of Christ's enemies. The Psalmist foretold the LORD's Second Coming and how His Armies of Bridal Saints also will have a part in binding and chaining the LORD's enemies.

Let the saints be joyful in glory: let them sing aloud upon their beds. Let the high praises of God be in their mouth, and a twoedged sword in their hand; To execute vengeance upon the heathen, and punishments upon the people; *To bind their kings with chains, and their nobles with fetters [keh-bel] of iron*; To execute upon them the judgment written: this honour have all his saints. Praise ye the LORD (Psalm 149:5-9).

Christ's Bridal Armies will exult in the LORD's Unbegotten *Kabode* Glory that will fill their bodies while they are resting upon their beds of Eternal rest.

These Armies that go out to the final battle do not place their trustful confidence in carnal weapons, but in praises to the LORD's Name and to the two-edged Sword of Truth in their hands. They will help to bind the wicked with Chains and Fetters at the LORD's Second Coming to Earth.

Thus, the Angel from Heaven, who probably is Michael, will have the Key with which to open the Bottomless Pit, and he will have the Key to the Chain with which he will bind fallen Lucifer.

Next the angel will lay hold of Lucifer to judge him.

B. The Angel Will Lay Hold of Lucifer

The Hebrew word for *laying hold* is *khaw-fas*, meaning to seize, to catch, and to hold fast. Securely, the angel will lay hold of Lucifer's full stature: Dragon, Serpent, Devil, and Satan.



First, the Angel will seize and take captive the head-realm of Lucifer's stature. He will lay hold of the highest part of fallen Lucifer's knowledge and power, which is his Dragon head.

The Hebrew word for *Dragon* is *tan-neen*, meaning to elongate, to stretch out, to fascinate through the idea of capturing, grasping, and entrapping. The Dragon has the ability to elongate his corrupt wisdom, lengthening it and extending it, in order to make it appear longer and broader than the Wisdom of the LORD Jesus Christ.

Lucifer, who has spent his corrupt life capturing and entrapping poor lost souls, soon will find himself captured and entrapped by the mighty Seizing-Power of the Angel. He, who has trapped others, will not be able to escape the Angel's trap. Lucifer used his power to sow traps for others; therefore, he will *reap* the LORD's traps through the Angel.

Next, the Angel will seize and capture the Serpentine nature of Lucifer's stature. The Hebrew word for *Serpent* is *naw-khash*, meaning to hiss, whisper, cast a magic spell, prognosticate, divine, enchant, learn by experience, and diligently observe.

The deceitful Serpent uses his powerful ability to hiss and deceitfully whisper his prophetic, magical words, alluring blind souls into taking the immoral road of disobedience in order to gain experience. He falsely prophesies, as he did to man in the Garden of Eden, that his is the *best* road.

He captivates man's soul by casting a cloak of his enchantment upon it. When the soul feels the Serpent's enrapturing, enchanting, bewitching delight, it deceitfully believes the Serpent's way is the best way. Thus, he leads the soul into complete defection from God's best and highest Way.

Lucifer, the Serpent, who deceitfully has sown his wisdom in order to capture other souls, will reap Christ's Powerful, Omniscient Wisdom through the Angel who will take Lucifer's Serpent nature captive. This powerful

creature, who has overpowered so many souls by his deceitful wisdom, at last, will be overpowered by Christ's Truthful Wisdom. Lucifer cannot escape the Angel's grasp upon him!

Next, the Angel will lay hold of the Devilish nature of Lucifer's stature. The Greek name for *Devil* is *dee-ab-ol-os*, meaning false accuser, slanderer, to exhibit as a spectacle, a traducer.

The Devil is a devourer (I Peter 5:8). He devours the peace of the soul by his untrue, malicious accusations against it. He devours the soul's respect for itself by defaming and slandering it. He devours the soul's courage and its endeavours to do good by ridiculing its works and making it feel like a worthless spectacle.

Because the Devil greedily has devoured and has swallowed up the works of so many souls, he will reap Christ's Engulfing Power through the Angel, who will seize his courage, endeavours, and works.

Last, the Angel will lay hold of or seize and capture the Satanic nature of Lucifer's stature. The Hebrew name for *Satan* is *saw-tawn*, meaning opponent, the archenemy of good, adversary, to withstand or stand against.

God, in the beginning, gave Lucifer great standing, authoritative Power to stand for the Truth and to stand against all opposition to the Truth. Lucifer was God's minister on His Holy Mountain, to guard and to protect the Truth.

However, when Lucifer sinned against the Truth by choosing to use his standing power to resist and to oppose the Truth in all places and in all persons, he became God's archenemy.

For this reason, when a soul receives, within it, the LORD Jesus Christ and His Truth, Satan begins to stand against that soul in a special way. For example, Satan "stood against" David, Job, Joshua, Jesus Christ, Peter, the children of God, Judas, and Ananias and Sapphira.

Because Lucifer, in His Satanic nature, has opposed the Master Plan and Purposive Will of the Truth, the Truth will oppose Lucifer by empowering the Angel to lay hold of, to seize, and to take captive his Satanic nature, in order to cast him into the Bottomless Pit.

Lucifer's followers also plot and plan how they can stand against the Truth by slandering and searching for occasions against God's servants, just as Saul plotted against David and just as wicked men in Darius' court plotted against Daniel.

Who whet their tongue like a sword, and bend their bows to shoot their arrows, even bitter words: That they may shoot in secret at the perfect: suddenly do they shoot at him, and fear not. They encourage themselves in an evil matter: they commune of laying snares privily; they say, Who shall see them? They search out iniquities; they accomplish a diligent search: both the inward thought of every one of them, and the heart, is deep (Psalm 64:3-6).

In the depths of their hearts, the followers of Lucifer devise wily, evil plots and plans against the Truth in order to stand against the Truth, hoping by their vain efforts to destroy the Truth.

But the Truth always has overpowered error. Likewise, the Truth in the hands of the Angel will overpower Lucifer's stature — from his head to his feet — the Dragon, the Serpent, the Devil, and Satan.

Then, the Angel will bind Lucifer after he has laid hold of him.

C. The Angel Will Bind Lucifer

After the Angel lays hold of Lucifer, he will bind him for a thousand years. The Hebrew word for *bound*, here, is *aw-sar*, meaning to yoke or hitch, to fasten, to join in battle, bind, fast, gird, harness, and to put in bonds.

The Hebrew word *aw-sar* is a word used for the actual tying up or binding down of the will (Numbers 30:3,4,6).

Since Lucifer is a fallen Angel or spirit, he must be bound (*aw-sar*) with spiritual chains. The Angel from the LORD will bind Lucifer's will with the LORD's *Torah*-Truth. The very Truth that Lucifer has hated will enclose and encompass his will, limiting and confining it to do God's Will — which is for him to go to the Bottomless Pit. After the Angel binds Lucifer's will, he can offer no resistance nor fight against the Angel.

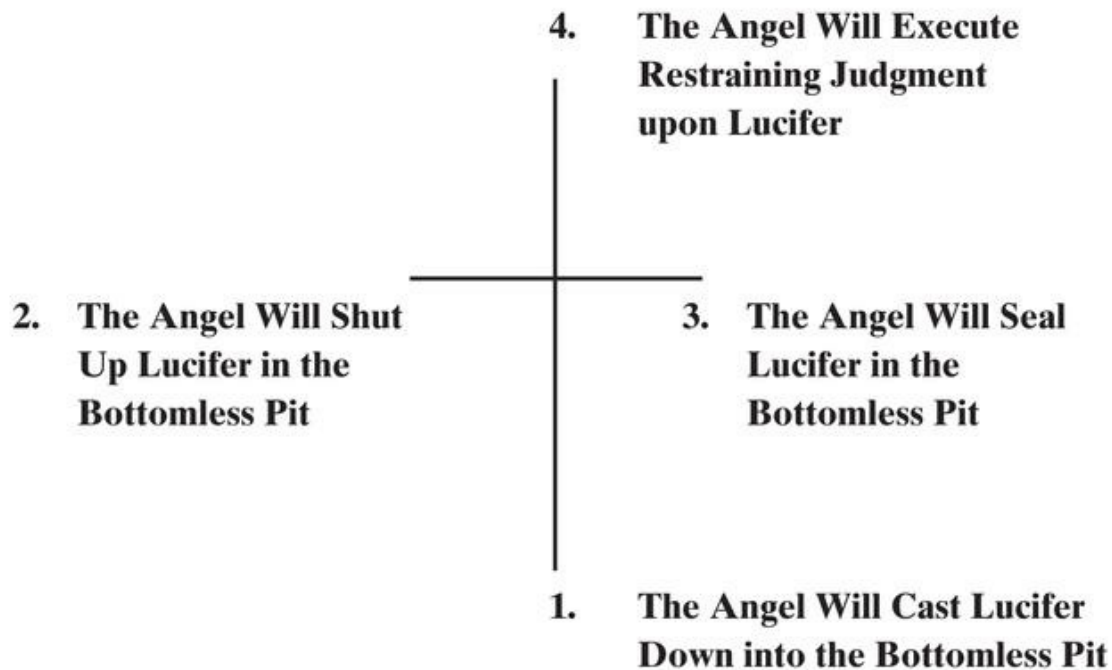
When Lucifer's will is yoked to the Truth, it will have to come under subjection to the Truth.

One of Lucifer's great punishments will be to have his unholy will yoked, girded, and tied to Christ's Holy Truth. The Truth of the LORD Jesus Christ will be a continual Sharp, Two-edged Sword, piercing Lucifer's Pride of Revelation, Pride of Redemption, and Pride of Satisfaction. Consequently, Lucifer will be whipped by the Truth because he sinned against the Truth.

Finally, the Angel will execute the LORD's Judgment upon fallen Lucifer.

D. The Angel Will Execute the LORD's Judgment upon Fallen Lucifer

The Angel will be faithful to administer the LORD's Judgment upon Lucifer by doing these things: casting him down into the Bottomless Pit; shutting him up in the Bottomless Pit; putting a seal on him; and restraining him from his deceit, which he loves.



1. The Angel Will Cast Lucifer Down into the Bottomless Pit

Because Lucifer, in his pride, rose up against the LORD's Truth in Heaven, he was cast down to Earth, where his pride caused him to continue withstanding the LORD's Truth. He will be cast down again, going further down this time — into the Bottomless Pit.

The Hebrew word for *cast*, here, is *shaw-lak*, meaning to hurl down, to throw down, throw away. The Angel will not cast Lucifer down gently, but he will hurl him down violently, as the wind of a furious storm casts down the blossoms from a tree.

He shall shake off his unripe grape as the vine, and shall cast [*shaw-lak*] off his flower as the olive (Job 15:33).

When an unripe grape fails to draw nourishment from a vine, it is shaken off violently.

The olive tree is the most prodigal of all the fruit-bearing trees, producing such an extravagant abundance of blossoms that the tree literally bends under its load. Then, the slightest wind casts (*shaw-lak*) millions of blossoms off the tree, hurling them to the ground as valueless objects. Hence, they never come to the fruition God has ordained for them in His Master Plan.

Likewise, Lucifer will be cast down, hurled down to the Bottomless Pit, as a fruitless seed-blossom is cut down to the ground.

When the Israelites failed to be spiritually fruitful in the Promised Land, God violently cast them into another land.

And the LORD rooted them out of their land in anger, and in wrath, and in great indignation, and cast [*shaw-lak*] them into another land, as it is this day (Deuteronomy 29:28).

God made a great instructive example out of the Nation of Israel, showing the world that whoever refuses to obey His Master Plan and be fruitful in His Purposive Will will be cast down. God uprooted Israel, His choice vine, from her soil, and in His Anger, Wrath, and Great Indignation, He cast her into another land.

God allowed the enemy to cast down Israel's dwellings when she became a fruitless vine in the land.

For a voice of wailing is heard out of Zion, How are we spoiled! we are greatly confounded, because we have forsaken the land, because *our dwellings have cast [shaw-lak] us out* (Jeremiah 9:19).

God ultimately judges all who become fruitless in His Purposive Will. Likewise, Lucifer, who became fruitless in God's Purposive Will, first, was cast down out of Heaven; then, when the Angel seizes him, he will be cast down from the Earth to the Bottomless Pit.

The Bottomless Pit, the *Teh-home*, has, for a long time, been a place of Judgment for God's disobedient creation.* The following examples tell us about previous times that God has ministered judgment through the fire and the waters of ice in the *Teh-home* Pit:

The last creation, before our present one, was cast down into the *Teh-home* Pit because of its disobedience and unfaithfulness to its Creator.

And the earth was without form, and void; *and darkness was upon the face of the deep [teh-home]*. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters (Genesis 1:2).

The LORD cast down Pharaoh and his army into the *Teh-home* Pit because of his proud, blatant arrogance toward the LORD, His Master Plan, and His Purposive Will. The floods of the Red Sea, by the blast of God's Nostrils, cast down the enemies to the depths — to the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit.

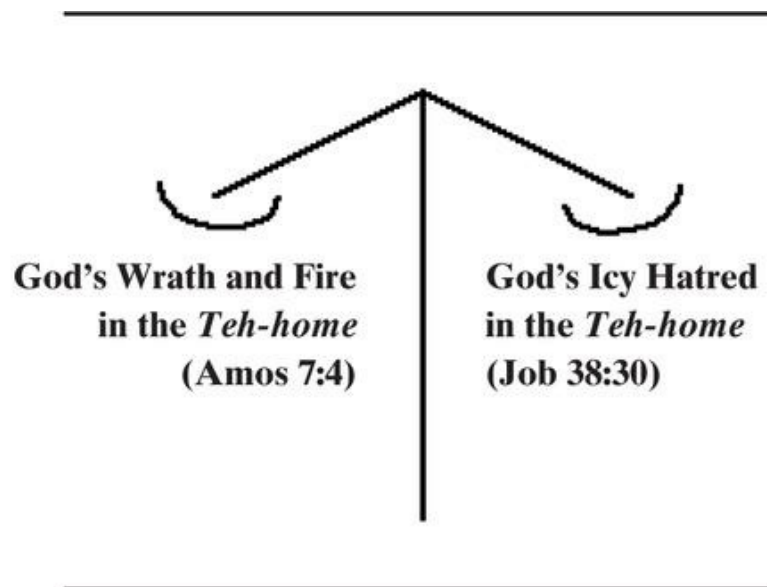
The depths *[teh-home]* have covered them: they sank into the bottom as a stone.... And with the blast of thy nostrils the waters were gathered together, the floods stood upright as an heap, and the depths *[teh-home]* were congealed in the heart of the sea (Exodus 15:5,8).

The Psalmist bore witness that the LORD's Judgments are found in the deep or the great *Teh-home*, the Bottomless Pit.

Thy righteousness is like the great mountains; *thy judgments are a great deep [teh-home]*: O LORD, thou preservest man and beast (Psalm 36:6).

God's Righteousness is as Immovable and Eternal as the mountains. His Judgments in the great *Teh-home* are Unfathomable and Inexhaustible.

The Ice of God's Hate and the Fire of His Wrath are found in the great *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit.



a. God's Wrath and Fire in the *Teh-home*

The Fire of the LORD's Wrath contends with the wicked in the great *Teh-home*, devouring and eating up a part of the corruption of the wicked.

Thus hath the Lord GOD shewed unto me: and, behold, *the Lord GOD called to contend by fire, and it devoured the great deep [teh-home]*, and did eat up a part (Amos 7:4).

Lucifer, for example, will go into the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit with his full stature of natures: his Dragon, Serpent, Devil, and Satan natures. However, God's Fiery Wrath in the *Teh-home* will devour and eat up Lucifer's Dragonish elongation and his Serpentine deceit. Consequently, when he is loosed out of the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit, he will come out stripped of his Dragonish and Serpentine natures; only his Devilish and Satanic natures will remain.

b. God's Icy Hatred in the *Teh-home*

God's Face is frozen, as it were, with His Icy Hatred toward iniquity, sin, and wickedness.

The waters are hid as with a stone, and *the face of the deep [teh-home] is frozen* (Job 38:30).

God's Holy Nature feels a vehement, icy hatred for evil and wickedness. Sin is grievously offensive to the LORD's Righteous Nature. Iniquity is repulsive and repugnant to the LORD's Glorious, Holy Name.

Lucifer has sown his hateful, abhorrent attitude toward the LORD's Holy Name, His Sovereign Authority, His Master Plan, His Purposive Will, and His Truth, both in Heaven and in Earth. Lucifer has made God grievously feel the fiery wrath and icy hatred that he has toward Him; therefore, Lucifer will reap God's Fiery Wrath and Icy Hatred in the *Teh-home*. God will make Lucifer *feel* His Fiery Wrath and Icy Hatred for his proud, sinful arrogance.

Consequently, when the Angel casts or hurls Lucifer down to the *Teh-home*, Lucifer immediately will become conscious of a realm of God's Fiery Wrath and Icy Hatred he never before has known.

The second aspect to the Angel's execution of the LORD's Judgment will be to shut Lucifer in the Pit, the *Teh-home*.

2. The Angel Will Shut Up Lucifer in the Bottomless Pit

The LORD, in His Infinite Knowledge and Wisdom, knows Lucifer will not remain, of his own willing accord, in the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit. Therefore, He will empower His ministering Angel to shut him up in this place. The Hebrew word for *shut* is *saw-gar*, meaning to close up, enclose, and to stop.

Moses, in his prophetic song just before his death, warned Israel that God would shut (*saw-gar*) her up in His Judgment and allow one enemy to chase a thousand of them and two enemies to chase ten thousand of them.

How should one chase a thousand, and two put ten thousand to flight, except their Rock had sold them, and *the LORD had shut [saw-gar] them up?* (Deuteronomy 32:30).

God is not a respecter of persons. When His people sin, He shuts them up in His Judgment and abandons them to their enemies.

Likewise, because of Lucifer's iniquitous sins of pride and rebellion, the LORD will shut him up in the *Teh-home* and abandon him to his great enemy, the Truth of the Judgments of God's Wrathful Fire and Hateful Ice.

There are many examples of people whom God has "shut up" or delivered up for Judgment because of their sins. Saul is one example.

God, in His Judgment upon Saul, shut him up or delivered (*saw-gar*) him into David's hands.

And thou hast shewed this day how that thou hast dealt well with me: forasmuch as when the LORD had delivered [*saw-gar*] me into thine hand, thou killedst me not (I Samuel 24:18).

Because of his jealousy and hatred toward David, Saul constantly sought ways to kill him, even though David

was the one whom God had raised up to redeem Saul from a tormenting, evil spirit and from his enemies. By playing on his harp, David drove back the spirits that beleaguered Saul, and by killing the Philistines, David redeemed Saul from constantly being attacked by his enemies.

Although God had shut up Saul by delivering him into David's hand, David mercifully spared Saul. Likewise, God will shut up Lucifer in the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit, but He mercifully will spare him for one thousand years.

Then, we have the example of the LORD's people, whom the LORD always gave up (*saw-gar*) to judgment when they committed aberrations against Him.

He gave [saw-gar] his people over also unto the sword; and was wroth with his inheritance. The fire consumed their young men; and their maidens were not given to marriage. Their priests fell by the sword; and their widows made no lamentation (Psalm 78:62-64).

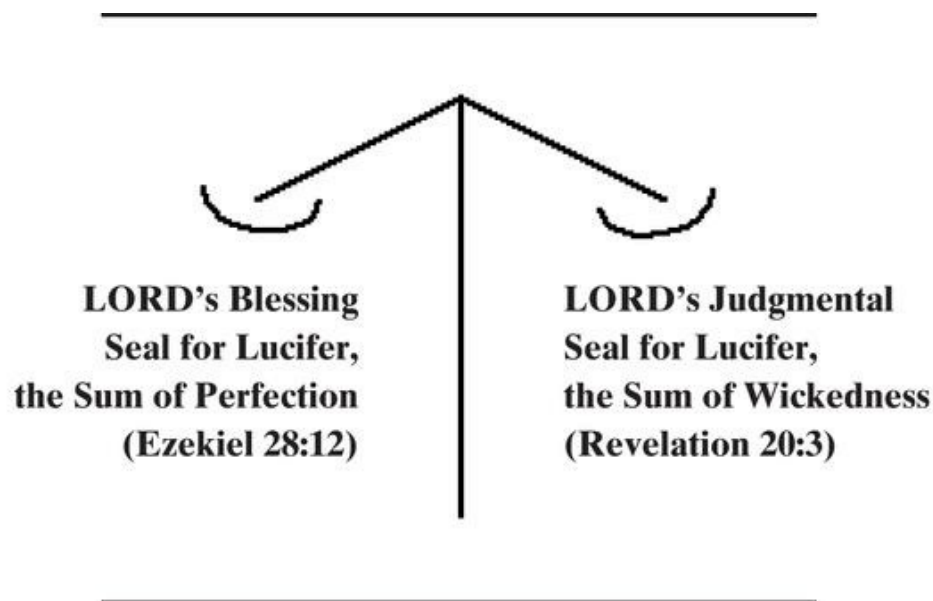
Because God "gave over" or shut His people up in judgment, His Wrathful Fire consumed them through their enemies.

Likewise, the LORD will give Lucifer up to his enemy — the Truth of His Righteous Judgments in the Bottomless Pit.

After Lucifer has been shut up, he will be sealed in the Bottomless Pit by the LORD's Angelic Messenger.

3. The Angel Will Seal Lucifer in the Bottomless Pit

The Hebrew word for *seal* is *khaw-tham*, meaning to make an end, to stop, and to make a mark. God's Word reveals the dual sealing of Lucifer — once for blessing and once for judgment.



God's *khaw-tham* Seal is His die with which he makes the Image of His Power and Authority. In the beginning, God placed His Seal of the Sum or the total of perfection upon Lucifer, the Son of the Morning.

Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Thou sealest [khaw-tham] up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty (Ezekiel 28:12).

Lucifer corrupted his good Seal of Beauty and Authority from his LORD by proudly choosing to be a doorkeeper to exalt and to display himself, instead of exalting and displaying the LORD Jesus Christ, the Sun of Righteousness. How unspeakably sad that after some thousands of years the LORD will be forced, by Lucifer's sins, to put a diametrically different seal upon him.

Let us note how the *khaw-tham* seal was used in the Scriptures. It demonstrated the royal rights and legal authority of kings. For instance, after the wicked Haman (who had endeavoured to have all the Jews annihilated in

the kingdom of King Ahasuerus) had been hanged upon his own gallows, Queen Esther besought the king to reverse the wicked laws Haman had made. The king granted Esther's request and allowed her cousin Mordecai to write a new, protective law for the Jews and to sign it with the king's seal so that all who saw it would know it bore the king's royal power and authority.

Write ye also for the Jews, as it liketh you, in the king's name, and seal [khaw-tham] it with the king's ring: for the writing which is written in the king's name, and sealed [khaw-tham] with the king's ring, may no man reverse. Then were the king's scribes called at that time in the third month, that is, the month Sivan, on the three and twentieth day thereof; and it was written according to all that Mordecai commanded unto the Jews, and to the lieutenants, and the deputies and rulers of the provinces which are from India unto Ethiopia, an hundred twenty and seven provinces, unto every province according to the writing thereof, and unto every people after their language, and to the Jews according to their writing, and according to their language. And *he wrote in the king Ahasuerus' name, and sealed [khaw-tham] it with the king's ring,* and sent letters by posts on horseback, and riders on mules, camels, and young dromedaries: (Esther 8:8-10).

Thus, Haman's plot to kill all the Jews was thwarted, and he was hanged upon his own gallows.

Likewise, when the LORD's Angel places the LORD's Royal, Judgmental Seal upon Lucifer in the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit, all inhabitants will see Lucifer for the deceiver he is. For example, Pharaoh and his army will see how Lucifer enchanted and allured them away from the One and Only True God. God's Royal Judgmental Seal upon Lucifer will be a witness to his wickedness and his punishment.

The LORD's Royal Judgmental Seal will mark an end to Lucifer's wicked works as Dragon, Serpent, Devil, and Satan.

The last act of the Angel's commission at this time will be to execute the LORD's Restraining Power upon Lucifer.

4. The Angel Will Execute Restraining Judgment upon Lucifer

Lucifer has, for a long time, enjoyed his stolen position of exaltation that his proud deceit has gained for him from the LORD's creation. By Lucifer's lies against the Truth and by his deeds of representing as true that which is in reality false, he has deceived the world into believing he is the true "God" of their world. By his dishonest acts and tricks in using his stolen light and glory, he has caused multitudes of God's creatures to bow down and worship him as God. His deliberate misrepresentation of the Truth, by his words and actions, has caused mankind to follow the wrong course and to err and to sin against God's Truth.

Since the beginning of this present world, when he beguiled Adam-female with his use of wiles and his enticing promises that his way is the best way, a way of prosperity and good fortune, he has beguiled and deceived mankind.

Lucifer will have spent many millenniums practicing his deceit upon mankind. But when the LORD's Angel puts a fence of restraint upon his deceitful lies, Lucifer will discover that his humiliating position in the *Teh-home* Pit will be lower than many of its other inhabitants. Many of the inhabitants, whom he previously will have exalted himself above, having made himself a god over them, will see him cast down low under their feet. Thus, they will see the one, whom they thought was the great "god," as the deceiver he really is. The LORD's restraint upon him in the *Teh-home* Pit will control, suppress, and prevent his strong, deceitful authority from exercising itself; his deceit will be confined and prevented from manifesting itself until Christ's thousand-years of ruling and reigning upon the Earth are finished.

Yet, in spite of all Lucifer's humiliations in the Bottomless Pit, he will not change. As soon as the LORD's Restraining Fence is removed, and he is loosed from the Pit, Lucifer will return to his old, deceitful, wicked ways.

Thus, we have seen the LORD's Judgments executed upon Lucifer for his sin of pride.

The Angel will possess the Key to the Bottomless Pit and the Chain with which to bind Lucifer. The Angel will lay hold of Lucifer and bind him, casting him into the *Teh-home*, where he will be shut up, sealed, and restrained until Christ and His Bride have ruled and reigned on the Earth for one thousand years.

* B. R. Hicks, [*The Missing Link Between the Genesis Creation and Scientific Findings*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1988), pp.111-136.

Chapter Eight

The First Resurrection

All people will die, and all people will be resurrected. There are two resurrections. The first resurrection is for all believing saints who are in the special class called overcomers, and the first resurrection has three phases: (1) The resurrection in which Old Testament overcomers arose from the dead following Jesus Christ's resurrection; (2) The Rapture of dead and living overcomers when Jesus Christ comes in the air; (3) The resurrection of overcomers who will die during the Tribulation Period.

The second resurrection is for every other human being who has died — believers who were not overcomers and all sinners.

God's Word is filled with the Spiritual Truth of the resurrection of the dead.

And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and *I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God*, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; *and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years. But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.* Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years (Revelation 20:4-6).

In both the Old Testament and the New Testament, the word for *resurrect* means to take from the grave, as a dead body, restoring life to it, making it alive, reanimating it, and giving fresh vitality to it. Thus, the resurrection consists of the body rising again. The resurrection is for the bodies of men because their souls and spirits have lived on during the intermediate period between dying and living again.

God assured Adam-male and female that they *would surely die* if they disobeyed His Word and ate of the forbidden tree (Genesis 2:16,17). Adam, indeed, disobeyed God and, consequently, died after having lived 930 years (Genesis 5:5). Adam passed the deadly disease of sin and the dreadful punishment of death upon all creation. However, through the LORD Jesus Christ, God has given all mankind a Gift of Redemptive Salvation for the spirit, soul, and body. If any person chooses, as the First Adam did, to remain in death, he will experience both the first death, the one inherited from Adam the First, and the second death, the one a man chooses when he refuses the Life offered him through the Death of the LORD Jesus Christ.

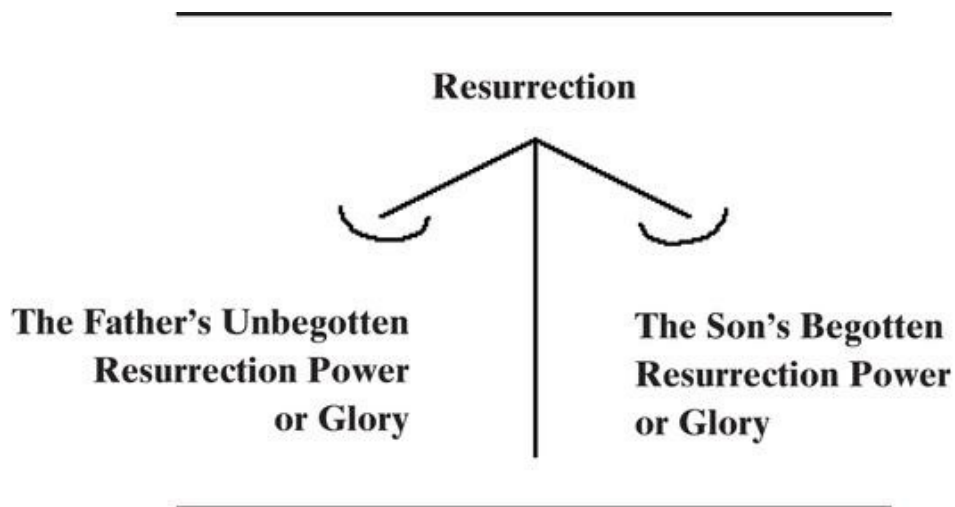
Ezekiel revealed each person's responsibility for his sin.

As I live, saith the Lord GOD, ye shall not have occasion any more to use this proverb in Israel. Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: *the soul that sinneth, it shall die.* ...The soul that sinneth, it shall die. *The son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, neither shall the father bear the iniquity of the son:* the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him (Ezekiel 18:3,4,20).

Since God is the Creator, Owner, and Master of all souls, each and every soul stands in the same relationship to God. In God's sight, each person is a separate entity from his or her parents. Therefore, the sins of the parents do not determine the destiny of the child. The individual sinner must suffer the consequences of his or her own sin and no one else's. God lives; therefore, if a soul stays in close proximity to Him, it lives also. If it sins and loses its union with God's Life, it dies; but, in God's time, all bodies will be resurrected and joined again with their souls and spirits to stand before God and give an account for their lives on Earth. Then each person, every individual, either will be rewarded for his righteous deeds or judged for his evil deeds. All will be tried.

I. The Two Kinds of Resurrection Power or Glory

The Bible teaches us about two kinds of Resurrection Power: the Son's *Begotten* Resurrection Power and the Father's *Unbegotten* Resurrection Power.



A. The Son's Begotten Resurrection Power or Glory

The Son came to Earth and shared His Begotten Resurrection Glory with His creation. However, His Begotten Resurrection Glory raised up the body only temporarily because Jesus' *Begotten* Glory is a cycle of Glory that has a beginning and an end.

For example, the Prophet Elisha had so much of the Son's Begotten Resurrection Glory upon him that, even after he had died, his bones brought resurrection life to a dead man.

And Elisha died, and they buried him. And the bands of the Moabites invaded the land at the coming in of the year. And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band of men; and they cast the man into the sepulchre of Elisha: and when the man was let down, and touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood up on his feet (II Kings 13:20,21).

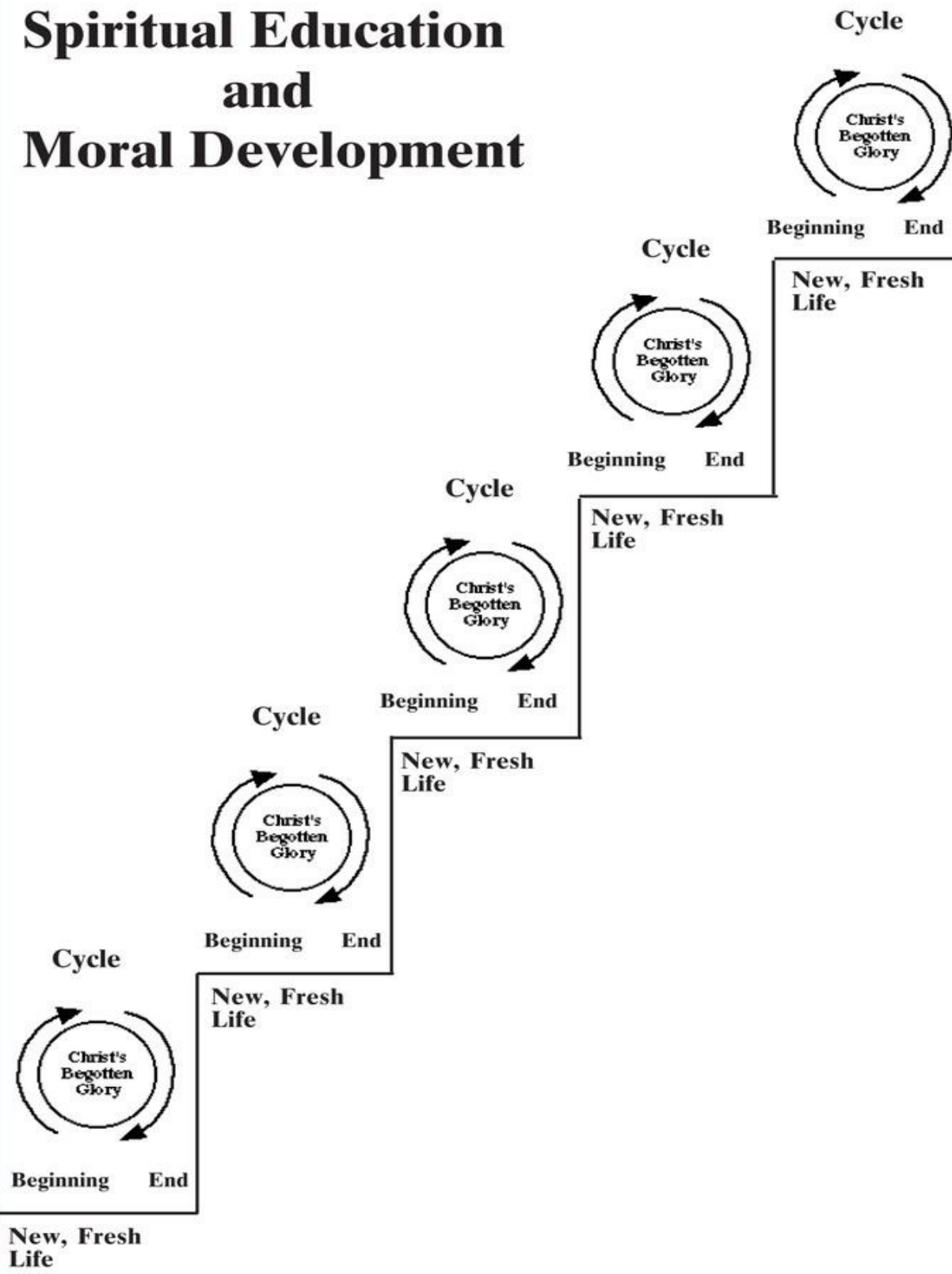
When the climatic conditions were favourable in Israel, the enemies invaded her land, stealing her vegetation in order to provide food for their men and horses. In this scene in Second Kings, some men were in the process of digging a grave for a dead man, but they stopped when they saw a band of men, for fear they were the invading enemy. Hence, they cast the dead man into Elisha's sepulchre, and to their shocking surprise, the dead man revived and stood up.

This was the crowning miracle of Elisha's spiritual ministry through the Son's Begotten Resurrection Glory. Nevertheless, this resurrection by the Son's Begotten Glory was a cycle that came to an end, and the person died again. This was true in Lazarus' life.

The Begotten Resurrection Glory is a cycle of fresh new life. We need the cycles of the Son's Begotten Resurrection Glory in order to move from one plane of Glory to another plane of Glory in our spiritual education and moral development.

But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord (II Corinthians 3:18).

Spiritual Education and Moral Development



As we behold Christ's Begotten Glory with an open face or with a penitent countenance, our soul and spirit are changed by His fresh, new life on our present spiritual plane, and we are raised up by Christ's Begotten Resurrection Glory to a *new* spiritual plane, which ultimately will lead us to the Father's Unbegotten Glory which will raise up our body eternally.

Although the Son's Begotten Resurrection Glory is basically for the spirit and soul, Jesus used His Begotten Resurrection Glory on bodies to make a visible, outward demonstration of what He is able to do, inwardly, upon the spirit and soul of the believer.

Jesus personally proved He possessed this Begotten Resurrection Glory by raising Lazarus and a widow's son from the dead.

Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?... Jesus said, Take ye away the stone. Martha, the sister of him that was dead, saith unto him, Lord, by this time he stinketh: for he hath been dead four days. Jesus saith unto her, Said I not unto thee, that, if thou wouldest believe, thou shouldest see the glory of God? Then they took away the stone from the place where the dead was laid. And Jesus lifted up his eyes, and said, Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me. And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said it, that they may believe that thou hast sent me. And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth. And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go (John 11:25,26,39-44).

Jesus displayed a cycle of His Begotten Resurrection Glory by raising the dead body of Lazarus, who later died again.

Jesus also raised up the dead son of a widow from the city of Nain.

And it came to pass the day after, that he went into a city called Nain; and many of his disciples went with him, and much people. Now when he came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow: and much people of the city was with her. And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not. And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise. And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother. And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us; and, That God hath visited his people (Luke 7:11-16).

Jesus again made a notable demonstration of His Begotten Resurrection Glory in His answer to the disciples of John, when He reminded them that the dead were raised up in His Ministry (Matthew 11:5).

The previous day, Jesus, by the Power of His Begotten Glory, had raised the Centurian's servant who was nigh to death. On this day, Jesus raised up the son of the widow of Nain. Jesus never lost a day doing good for either sick bodies or dead bodies. However, since Jesus' Begotten Glory is a cycle of Glory with a beginning and an end, these bodies all died again and are waiting for the Father's Unbegotten, Unending Resurrection Glory to bring them up from Death.

B. The Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Power or Glory

The Father's Unbegotten Glory is perpetual and Eternal. Consequently, when He raises up the body of a person, it is an Eternal Work.

Job, in his day, had the assurance that one day the Father, by His Unbegotten Glory, would raise up his body.

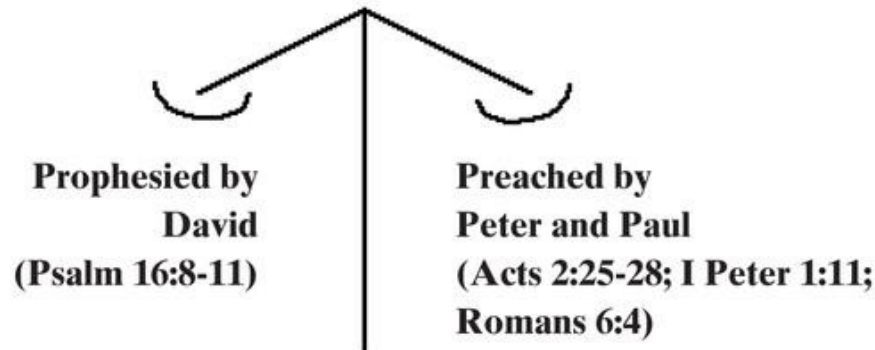
For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth: And though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God: Whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me (Job 19:25-27).

In the midst of Job's unbearable afflictions that he was suffering in his dying body, and in the midst of the harsh condemnation of his misunderstanding friends, and in the midst of the terrors and tortures of his soul and spirit, he knew that, even after his death, one day Jesus Christ, the Redeemer, would come and stand upon the Earth, bringing the Father's Unbegotten Glory, which would stand him up again. Job's faith in God assured him that he would be admitted into the Presence of God; therefore, he would enjoy the radiating Light of His Countenance.

The sweet Psalmist of Israel prophesied that the Father, by the Power of His Unbegotten Glory, would resurrect

His Son, Jesus Christ. After the prophecy had been fulfilled, Peter preached about it.

The Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Power or Glory



1. Prophesied by David

David foretold how Jesus Christ must suffer and die, how He must put off His Body of Flesh and go through the pains of Death, and how His Begotten Glory would be joined to the Father's Unbegotten Glory at His Resurrection.

I have set the LORD always before me: because he is at my right hand, I shall not be moved. Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope. For *thou wilt not leave my soul in hell*; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. Thou wilt shew me the path of life: in thy presence is fulness of joy; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore (Psalm 16:8-11).

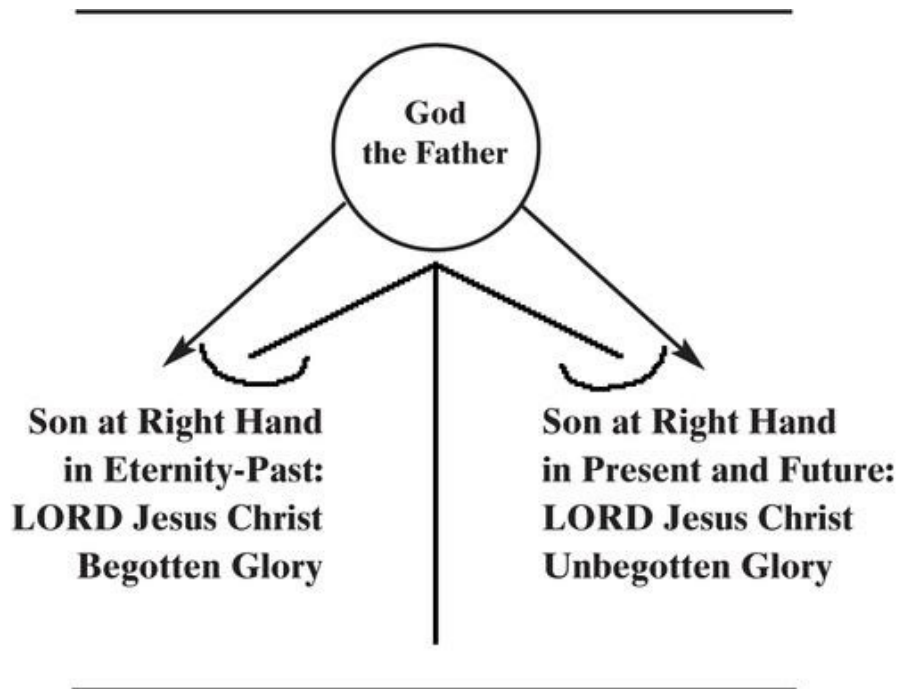
In the midst of Jesus' Suffering, the Father always was before His Face. The Father was at the Cross, ready to receive Jesus' Spirit when He gave up the Ghost (Luke 23:46). Jesus ever walked in His earthly journey in the Presence of His Father. The Father was ever at His Right Hand as His Governor and Guide, from the womb to the grave. As a result of His oneness with His Father, Jesus' Soul and Spirit never were moved by doubts and fears about whether His Begotten Glory would be joined to His Father's Unbegotten Glory.

Hence, the Heart of Jesus' Soul and Spirit was glad, happy, willing, and pleased to go through Death and Hell, knowing that they were the pathway to His Father's Unbegotten Glory.

Jesus' Begotten Glory rejoiced and was full of delightful joy, because He knew that soon His Eternal desire would be fulfilled by the Eternal Union of His Glory with His Father's Unbegotten Glory. Jesus knew His Father would not abandon His Soul to the nether world of Hell and Death.

In addition to the blissful joy of Jesus' Spirit, His Flesh (His Body) enjoyed security in the grave, knowing that the Father soon would fill His Body with His Unbegotten Glory, eternally standing it up again. He knew His Father never would abandon Him to the pit of corruption. Jesus' Heart, Glory, and Flesh gave Him a threefold witness of the promised Union with His Father's Unbegotten Glory.

Jesus also knew that joy and pleasure abide at the Right Hand of His Father. Jesus knew the joy and pleasure of the Father's Begotten Glory when He abode at the Father's Right Hand in Eternity-Past. At His Resurrection, He knew the joy and pleasure of the Father's Unbegotten Glory, and He knows it now as He abides at the Father's Right Hand.



In the Father's Presence is fullness of joy, both in His Begotten and Unbegotten Glory through His Son. Therefore, the spirit and soul of man never will be satisfied by worldly pleasures. A person's spirit and soul can be satisfied only when a person comes to Jesus in humble, sincere repentance and experiences the delights and pleasures that God dispenses through His Son, Who is at His Right Hand.

In Psalm twenty-two is another prophecy given by David about Christ's Crucifixion, Death, and Resurrection. David, in anticipation of the future, when the Messiah would come to Earth to die and be raised again, penned this beautiful prophetic Psalm about the Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Glory.

My strength is dried up like a potsherd; and my tongue cleaveth to my jaws; and thou hast brought me into the dust of death.... Save me from the lion's mouth: for thou hast heard me from the horns of the unicorns. I will declare thy name unto my brethren: in the midst of the congregation will I praise thee. Ye that fear the LORD, praise him; all ye the seed of Jacob, glorify him; and fear him, all ye the seed of Israel. For he hath not despised nor abhorred the affliction of the afflicted; neither hath he hid his face from him; but when he cried unto him, he heard (Psalm 22:15,21-24).

By way of the Cross, Jesus' persecutors laid Him in the dust of Death. Jesus' Soul was laid in Death and Hell by the sword, by His Death of violence upon the Cross. The precious Life of God's only Begotten Child suffered the violence of the Cross, at the hands of heartless men. Jesus Christ willingly went to Death and Hell as a substitute in sinful man's place. From the depths of Hell and Death, at the end of three days and three nights, Jesus *cried* unto His Father, Who heard Him and raised Him up to be eternally at His Right Hand.

2. Preached by Peter and Paul

The Apostle Peter, by the Power of the Holy Ghost, confirmed the validity of David's prophecy.

Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know: Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain: Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it. For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved: Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope: Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. Thou hast made known to me the ways of life; thou shalt make me full of joy with thy countenance. Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day. Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins,

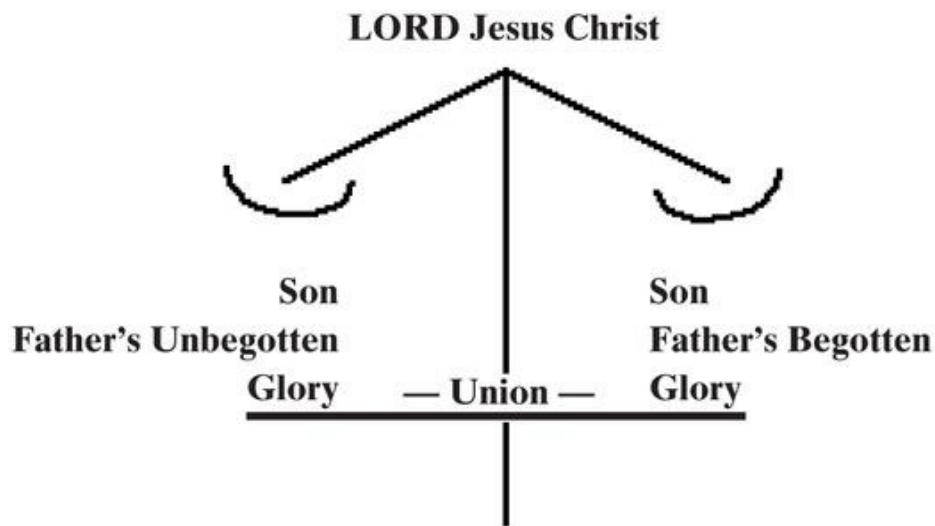
according to the flesh, *he would raise up Christ, to sit on his throne; He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ* that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. *This Jesus hath God raised up*, whereof we all are witnesses (Acts 2:22-32).

The Apostle Peter was full of the Holy Ghost on the Day of Pentecost when he preached the Truth of Jesus Christ's Death on the Cross, His Burial, and His Resurrection by the Father's Unbegotten Glory.

The Apostle Paul also confirmed the Truth of Christ's being resurrected from the dead by the Father's Unbegotten Glory.

Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as *Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father*, even so we also should walk in newness of life (Romans 6:4).

Paul established that the resurrection is for walking in a new kind of life. When Jesus Christ arose from the dead, He walked in the New Life of His Father's Unbegotten Glory.



This is why Jesus Christ now has ALL Power in Heaven and in Earth (Matthew 28:18). All four of the Gospels bear witness of Christ's Resurrection from the dead.

And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not ye: for I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified. *He is not here: for he is risen*, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay. And go quickly, and tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead; and, behold, he goeth before you into Galilee; there shall ye see him: lo, I have told you. And they departed quickly from the sepulchre with fear and great joy; and did run to bring his disciples word. And as they went to tell his disciples, behold, Jesus met them, saying, All hail. And they came and held him by the feet, and worshipped him (Matthew 28:5-9).

Afterward he appeared unto the eleven as they sat at meat, and upbraided them with their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they believed not them which had seen him after he was risen (Mark 16:14).

And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed it, and brake, and gave to them. And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight. And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures? And they rose up the same hour, and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven gathered together, and them that were with them, Saying, *The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon* (Luke 24:30-34).

And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus. Jesus saith unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou? She, supposing him to be the gardener, saith unto him, Sir, if thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him, and I will take him away. Jesus saith unto her, Mary, She turned herself, and saith unto him, Rabboni; which is to say, Master. Jesus

saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God. *Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that he had spoken these things unto her* (John 20:14-18).

When the LORD Jesus Christ arose from the dead, He came up with ALL Power of the Father's Unbegotten Glory. Now, through His Father's Unbegotten Glory, He has Power to raise up dead bodies eternally or transform living, mortal bodies, according to His Father's Purposive Will.

Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life (Romans 6:4).

All who plant their faith in Jesus Christ at the Cross will also be raised up by Him. The recorded fact of Christ's Resurrection from the dead by the Father's Unbegotten Glory is the earnest of the resurrection of all dead.

But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept. For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead. *For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.* But every man in his own order: *Christ the firstfruits;* afterward they that are Christ's at his coming (1 Corinthians 15:20-23).

Firstfruits in the natural realm are those fruits that ripen *first*. The firstfruits of a Jewish harvest were carried to God's House, blessed, and then offered wholly to the LORD. By the firstfruits being blessed in God's House, the rest of the harvest was blessed so that it would mature to complete fruition.

Likewise, Jesus Christ, the Son of Man, is the Firstfruits of those who arose and those who will arise from the dead. His "Firstfruit Resurrection" assures the resurrection of all who have died because of the death penalty brought upon the human race by Adam the First.

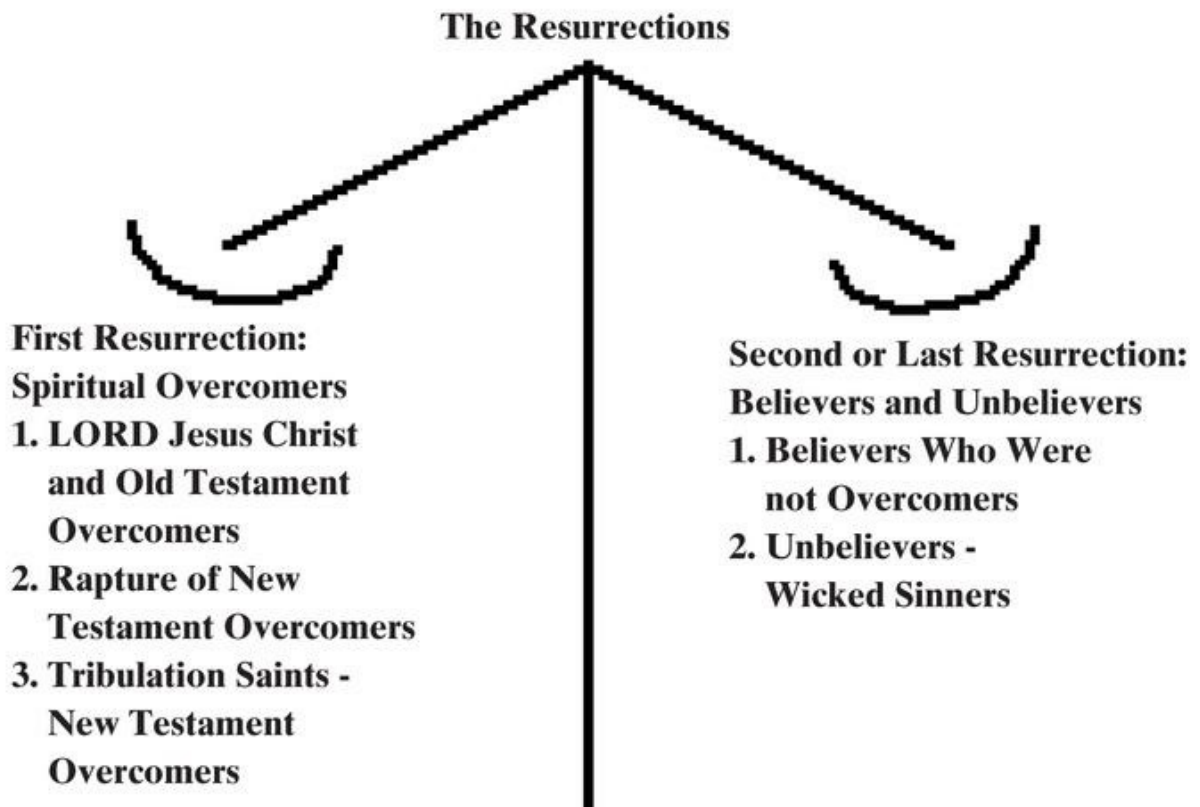
II. The First Resurrection

Jesus also confirmed that the rest of the harvest of mankind will be resurrected because the Son of Man, the Firstfruit of mankind, has been raised from the dead.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when *the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live....* Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which *all that are in the graves shall hear his voice,* And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation (John 5:25,28,29).

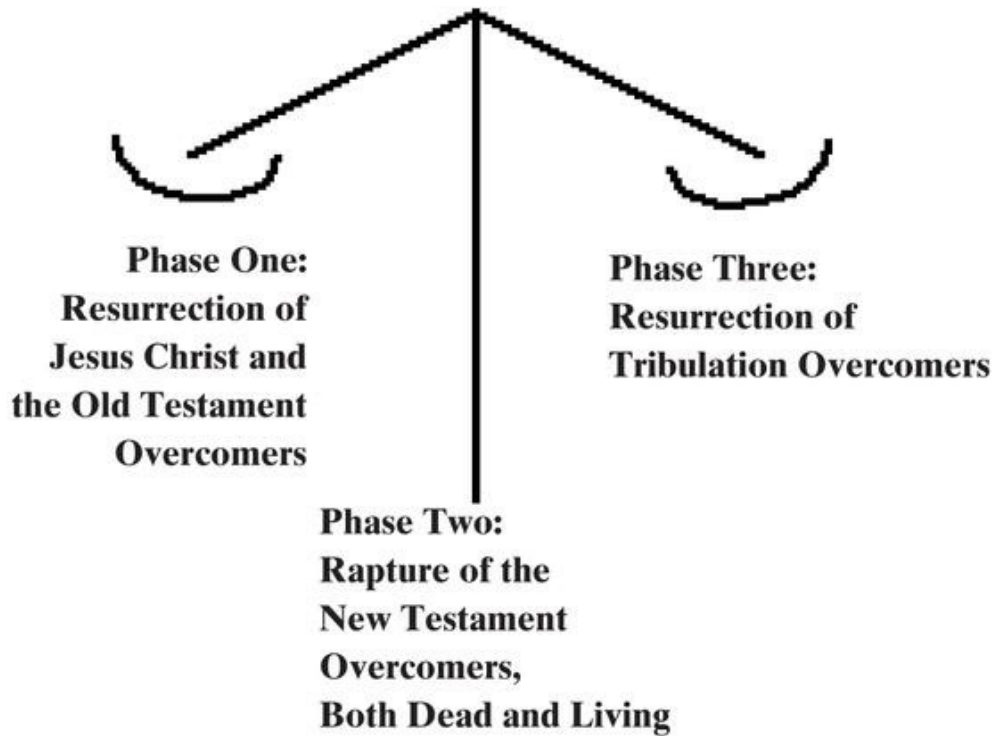
Since the Father has bestowed upon the LORD Jesus Christ His Unbegotten Resurrection Glory, the Son now has ALL Power to raise up all dead who have lived, both in this present creation and those who have lived in the previous, prehistoric creations.*

As we stated in the beginning of this chapter, the resurrection of the dead is divided into *two* resurrections — one for overcoming saints, and one for sinners and those believers who were not classed as overcomers when they died. The first resurrection is divided into three phases. In all three phases, spiritual overcomers are raised.



Chapter twelve of this book covers the second resurrection, but now we will cover, in more detail than was mentioned in chapter two, all phases of the first resurrection.

The Three Phases of the LORD's First Resurrection



A. Phase One of the First Resurrection — the Resurrection of Jesus Christ and the Old Testament Overcomers

After Jesus Christ's Resurrection, He opened the graves of *many* bodies of the saints who had been overcomers in the Old Testament dispensation and led them into the first phase of the first resurrection.

And the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints which slept arose, And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many (Matthew 27:52,53).

The first death is but the sleep of the body, and the grave is the bed in which it sleeps. These Old Testament overcomers, mentioned in Matthew, were awakened and lifted up by Jesus Christ after He was raised out of the grave by His Father's Unbegotten Glory and All-Power. Jesus used His All-Power to lift up many of the Old Testament saints — those who were overcomers when they died. He raised up these overcoming saints who had been held captive by Death and the grave, and He made them *His* captives.

Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men (Ephesians 4:8).

Jesus Christ loosed the chains of Death and the Grave that had kept the spirits, souls, and bodies of these saints bound until His Resurrection from the dead and until He took possession of the Keys of Death and Hell (Revelation 1:18).

Those who were overcomers and who had lived and had died before the Death and Resurrection of Jesus Christ

were rewarded by Him at His Resurrection. He gave them the honour of having part in the first phase of the first resurrection.

B. Phase Two of the First Resurrection — the Rapture of the New Testament Overcomers, both the Dead and the Living

The second phase of the first resurrection will occur when Jesus Christ appears in the air at the Rapture of the overcoming Wedding Party, which includes both the dead and those who are alive.

*For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and *the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air:* and so shall we ever be with the Lord (1 Thessalonians 4:14-17).*

The dead will be resurrected, and the living will be changed by the Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Glory that He will bring with Him at the Rapture. Jesus prophesied about His return with the Unbegotten Glory of His Father.

For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works (Matthew 16:27).

Jesus declared that those who followed Him who were too proud, selfish, greedy, and too ashamed of the Truth to deny themselves and take up their cross and lay down their life for His sake would be the losers when He would come in His Father's Glory.

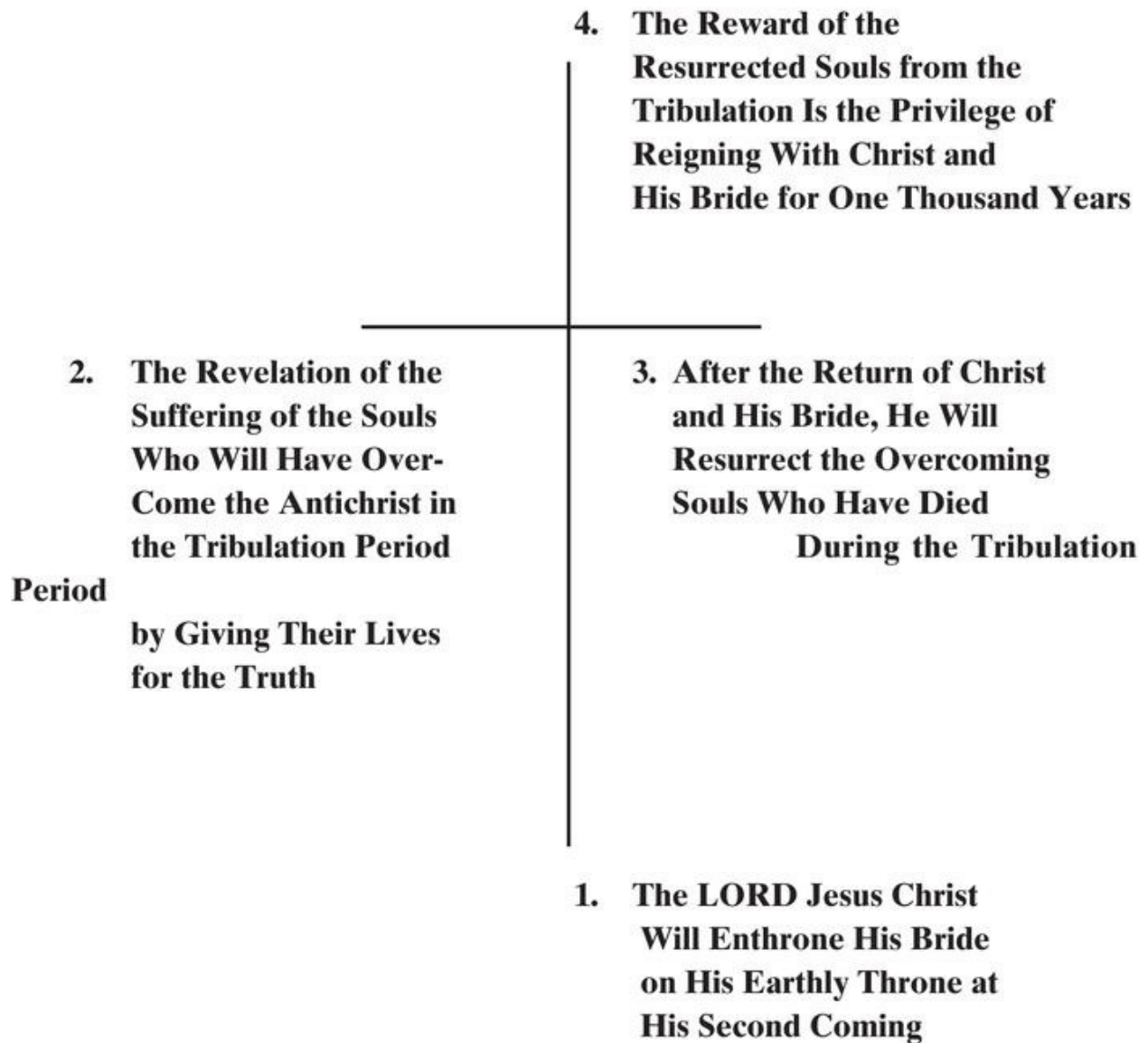
Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels (Mark 8:38).

Non-overcoming believers are ashamed of Christ, His Cross, and His Humility Way when they are before the world. They feel embarrassed for anyone to know they belong to Christ. They are fearful of appearing foolish before their worldly friends. Because they have not overcome their pride, they feel mortified and humiliated when they think their superiors at work might know they are joined to the humble Christ. They feel their worldly profession and business would be disgraced and restrained in progress if everyone knew they were on the side of the humble Christ.

Non-overcomers are extremely blind and selfish. They accept all Christ's Humiliations in His Flesh and all His Sacrificial Suffering for them, but they selfishly are unwilling to be humiliated and to suffer for Christ's sake. Consequently, Christ will be ashamed to share His Father's Unbegotten Glory with them at the Rapture. Hence, they will have no part in the second phase of the first resurrection. They will have to wait for the second resurrection — the resurrection of the All Dead.

C. Phase Three of the First Resurrection — the Resurrection of the Overcomers from the Tribulation Period

The third phase of the first resurrection is revealed in the twentieth chapter of Revelation. However, before the third and final phase will take place, other scenes will be enacted. There will be the enthronement of Christ's Bride; then, the revelation of the sufferings of the souls who will have overcome the Antichrist by giving their lives for the Truth; the resurrection of the overcoming Tribulation souls; and, finally, the reward of the resurrected Tribulation souls.



The LORD Jesus Christ and His Bride will reign over all the Earth for a thousand years, while Lucifer is bound.

1. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Enthroned His Bride on His Earthly Throne at His Second Coming

After Lucifer has been bound in the *Teh-home* Pit, the first thing the LORD will do will be to enthrone His Bride as His Queen, on His earthly Throne, to assist Him in His Rule and Reign upon the Earth.

And I saw *thrones*, and they sat upon them, and *judgment was given unto them*:... (Revelation 20:4).

The LORD will endue His Bride with Royal Reigning Power, Authority, and Control to implement the Master Plan of His *Torah*-Truth and with the Divine capability of judging both the obedient and the disobedient.

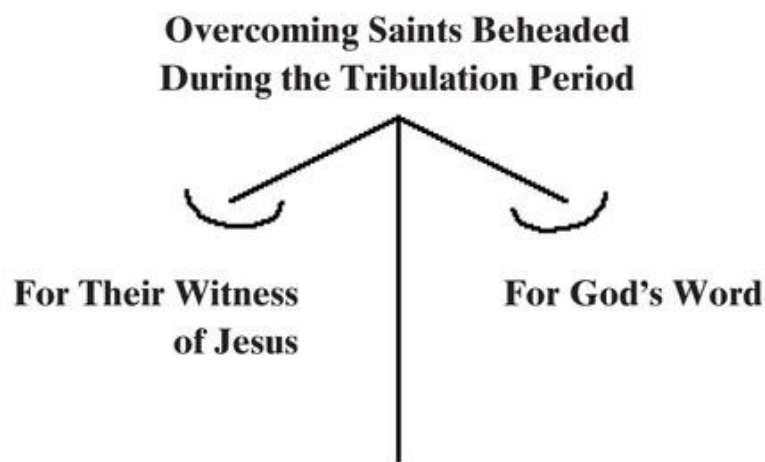
By the expertness of her Knowledge of the LORD's Word that she will have gained during her days on Earth, and

by Christ's Divine, Vested Authority, the Bride will be qualified to settle all controversies and to decide the relative merit of all things during her Millennial Reign with Christ. She will carry out all the just, righteous Judgments that are given to her by her Bridegroom.

Those who will have suffered for Christ unto death in the Tribulation Period, faithfully adhering to Him and overcoming the Antichrist by firmly taking a stand for the Truth unto death, will be raised at the end of the Tribulation Period.

2. The Revelation of the Suffering of the Souls Who Will Have Overcome the Antichrist in the Tribulation Period by Giving Their Lives for the Truth

All saints who will become overcomers during the Tribulation Period, by taking a strong stand against the Beast, the Antichrist, will suffer being beheaded for Christ's sake. They will be murdered by the Antichrist for their witness and for the Word of God.



The saints who will become overcomers during the Tribulation Period are those who will have failed to be overcomers before the Rapture; therefore, they will have missed being caught away with the overcomers in the Wedding Party at the Rapture. However, when they see they have missed the Rapture, they will choose to die witnessing for Jesus and preaching the Truth of God's Word, rather than living and being deceived and being damned with the Antichrist.

They will witness for Jesus by giving a firsthand account of their personal Salvation, which they have received from Jesus, the True Christ. Their witness and testimony will attest to the fact that the Antichrist is a deceiver.

They will preach the Truth of God's Word which reveals Jesus, the True Christ, the Son of God and the Saviour of the world. They publicly will preach from God's Word, proclaiming the Beast as a usurper and a false Christ, and they strongly will urge the people not to accept his mark or his number.

In order to silence these disturbing voices of Truth, the Beast will have them murdered by decapitation. The Beast's unlawful, malicious, premeditated killing of God's saints in the Tribulation Period will be explained as "good riddance." The barbarous, inhuman treatment of God's saints will be justified as "necessary" to the progress of the Beast's unified, one-world government and his rule and reign. Therefore, the Beast will behead these overcoming saints for their witness about Jesus and about God's Word.

These are the things the suffering saints will have to overcome during the Tribulation Period: the worshipping of the Beast and his image, and the acceptance of his mark upon their foreheads and in their hands.

a. They Will Overcome by Not Worshipping the Beast

In the Tribulation Period, the Antichrist will sit in the Temple in Jerusalem, declaring himself to be God, the True Christ and Israel's Messiah. He will try violently to force all men to bow down in worship and adoration to him. In order to keep his idolatrous image before the people, he will have an uncountable number of images made of himself which will be inhabited by all kinds of evil spirits. By Lucifer's stolen power and by the power of evil spirits upon his idolatrous images, he will control the hearts and minds of the deceived people. His enchanting, alluring, and deceiving powers will be so great that many people will feel constrained to fall down and idolize him, offering him intense love and engaging in great demonstrations of their devotion to him.

However, just like the three Hebrew children who, in their day, refused to bow to Nebuchadnezzar's idolatrous image, sincere saints adamantly will decline to bow down to the Beast and his idolatrous images. Steadfastly, they will cling to Jesus and to God's Word. By the Power of Jesus' Name, and by the Power of God's Word, these Tribulation saints will overcome the delightful, charming, and bewitching powers of the Beast and, thereby, will save their spiritual lives, although it will cost them their mortal lives.

b. They Will Overcome by Not Taking the Mark of the Beast

The Tribulation saints also will refuse and reject the taking on of the Beast's mark in their forehead and in their hands.

The Greek word for the Beast's *mark* is *kar-ak-tare*, meaning a figure stamped, an exact copy, or a representation, express image.

The Antichrist knows that the LORD Jesus Christ will come again with His Bride, having the Father's Name, the Name of the New Jerusalem, and Christ's New Name written in their foreheads (Revelation 3:12; 14:1). Therefore, he will try to imitate Jesus Christ by having his mark and the number of his name put on the people, and his mark and number will bring such degrees of false peace that the recipients will imagine their sins are forgiven.

The Antichrist will take multitudes of his marked and numbered armies up to meet the LORD and His marked Bridal Armies in an endeavour to defeat them. Imagine the Beast thinking he can use his corrupt, creature-image and number to defeat the Father's Infinite, Divine Name in His Son and in His Son's Bride!

But the overcoming saints in the Tribulation Period will not be deceived as to Who the real Christ is and as to Who ultimately will be the real Conqueror.

These overcoming saints will overcome the Beast's mark by refusing to take it in their foreheads and hands. Hence, they will go down with the Truth, knowing they will rise again with the Truth.

Having died as overcomers, the Tribulation saints will be resurrected in the final phase of the first resurrection.

3. After the Return of Christ and His Bride, He Will Resurrect the Overcoming Souls Who Have Died During the Tribulation Period

Although the overcoming Tribulation saints will have given up their lives as martyrs for the Truth, they will enjoy the great exaltation of being resurrected and living with Christ during His Reign of one thousand years.

...and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years (Revelation 20:4).

These faithful ones who will have adhered to Christ during the Tribulation Period, although it will have meant giving up their mortal lives for a short season, will be raised up by Christ Jesus to live eternally. The LORD Jesus Christ will use His Father's Unbegotten Glory, which He will bring with Him at His Second Coming to the Earth, to raise up these Tribulation saints, which will complete the third and final phase of the first resurrection.

These saints will have given up their mortal lives, just a little "gleam of time" between Eternity-Past and Eternity-Future, in exchange for Spiritual Life with Christ that will last *throughout* Eternity-Future. They courageously will have chosen to endure pain for a season at the hands of the Beast, the Antichrist, in order to enjoy pleasures forevermore with Christ. They will have used their mortal lives to fight for the Truth in order to gain the honour of being a partaker of the last phase of the first resurrection. The account of their lives of faithfulness and self-sacrifice is preserved in God's Eternal Records.

Our mortal life is as fleeting as a drop of dew that shimmers and dances on the tip of a leaf, and then is gone. Consequently, we should, like the Tribulation saints, use every fleeting moment to stand for the Truth, resisting all Lucifer's opposing forces. Then we, too, can gain the Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Glory, through Christ Jesus,

in the first resurrection at the Rapture, whether we have died or are alive at that time.

God has given us our mortal life so that we can learn the deep lessons of Christ's Humility by suffering with Him; then, we will be counted worthy to reign with Him.

The highest part of the first resurrection is a Prize that can be won only by mature, overcoming saints. Christ's Suffering, Sacrificial Footsteps are in the road that leads to the Prize of being in His Bride or His Bridal Armies.

Although the Tribulation saints will have missed the Prize and the Rapture of Christ's Wedding Party, they will toil for the Truth in the Tribulation Period and earn the triumph of being a part of the first resurrection.

The Tribulation saints' wise use of their mortal lives in standing for the Truth and in standing against the Beast and False Prophet is their passport to the satisfaction of Eternal, Resurrected Life with Christ in the Millennial Reign.

Remember, mortal life lived for Christ is a road to Christ's Obedient Death, and that Death is a passport to the Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Life.

The last point of Truth about the resurrected Tribulation saints is their reward.

4. The Reward of the Resurrected Souls from the Tribulation Is the Privilege of Reigning with Christ and His Bride for One Thousand Years

The LORD always is faithful to recompense all who serve Him: for their faithfulness in His Word and in prayer, for their good deeds, and for their just merits.

The LORD also will reward the resurrected Tribulation saints for all the sufferings they will have endured while standing for the True Christ and resisting the Antichrist and his False Prophet. He will give them a position in His New Temple as reigning Priests.

Ezekiel the Prophet described Christ's Millennial Temple in chapters forty through forty-four of the book that bears his name. He foretold the renewal of the Jewish Priesthood and sacrifices. From the details Ezekiel gave about this Temple, it is plain to see that it *never* has existed and that it, therefore, is foretelling Christ's Millennial Temple.

Then comes the question: since Christ was the end of the Ceremonial Law, why would God allow these ceremonial sacrifices to be offered again in Christ's Millennial Temple?

Unless we understand one of God's important Spiritual Principles, which will explain this phenomenon, we will not comprehend this mystery nor the mystery of the Millennial Ministry of the resurrected Tribulation saints who will reign as Priests for a thousand years.

Let us study this mystery! God is the Owner and Master of all creation, and He has a Master Plan and Purposive Will for the tiniest creature in the world of mankind. All creation came into being by the Creating Power of the LORD Jesus Christ, and they *are* and *were* created solely for His Pleasure.

Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created
(Revelation 4:11).

All creation is and was created to bring pleasure and satisfying delight to the Heart of Jesus Christ.

The Creator can take pleasure in His creation only when they bow in humble submission to Him and to His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father (Philippians 2:9-11).

The Father and the Son will continue their mutual work until *all* creatures *learn* to bow to the LORDship, the Sovereign Dominion, of the Son and the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

If a soul is rebellious and refuses to learn his lessons during his spiritual education in this life, that soul will have to learn his lessons in his future abode, whether it be in the New Heavens, in the New Earth, or in the Lake of Fire. Every soul will come under Christ's LORDship and the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will, which is to give pleasure to God's Son by giving Homage, Honour, and Glory to Him.

For example, the White Robed ones, who will have missed the Prize of being in the Bride and the New City, will weep in Heaven when they become aware of what they missed during their spiritual education in their earthly journey. But God, in His great Mercy, will lead them to fountains of Living Waters of Truth so that they can

continue their spiritual education and, ultimately, be able to bring pleasure to the LORD's Heart by giving Him the praise due His Holy Name.

For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes (Revelation 7:17).

The LORD will give these White-Robed ones, who will remain in the New Heavens for Eternity, food and drink so that they can mature in their spiritual education.

The Apostle Paul purposed to continue working in the Gospel until every man bowed in perfect submission to Christ.

Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus: (Colossians 1:28).

Paul knew the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will are to bring *all* things under subjection to Christ; therefore, he had faith to continue working until this will be accomplished.

That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:... Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places, Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all (Ephesians 1:10,20-23).

Theoretically, the Father has put all things, all creatures, under Christ's Feet. And He will keep Working until every creature comes to the empirical Knowledge of this Truth.

Whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working of his power. Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ; And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ: (Ephesians 3:7-9).

God will not cease Working until His Master Plan and Purposive Will are made known to all men, which is the LORDship of His Son.

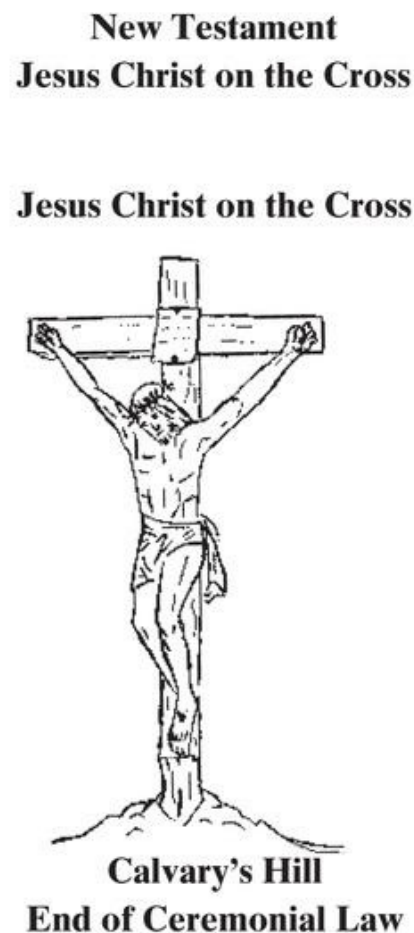
Thus, we see, from a few of the many Scriptures written, that God will implement His Master Plan whether man chooses to go to the New City, the New Heavens, the New Earth, or the Lake of Fire.

Likewise, God will not stop Working with the Nation of Israel until she learns the lessons He always has intended for her to learn.

For example, God gave Israel the Mosaic Tabernacle and Solomon's Temple. Both structures were laid out in the form of a Cross; therefore, both structures were a shadow and type of the Stature of Jesus Christ, the greater and more perfect Tabernacle, and His Heavenly Father.

The Holy Ghost this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing: Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience; Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation. But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit, offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? (Hebrews 9:8-14).

The LORD's Master Plan and Purposive Will called for the Nation of Israel to look, by faith, beyond and above every ceremonial sacrifice and see Christ, Who would point their eyes of faith *forward* to Calvary's Cross.



Among the Israelites, there were *individuals* whose eyes of faith saw Christ beyond and above the shadow and type. They looked beyond to the Cross and Christ Who, as God's true Sacrifice for sin, would end the Ceremonial Law.

For example, Job was a man who served God by offering the Old Testament sacrifices (Job 1:5); yet, through his eyes of faith, he saw Christ, his Redeemer.

For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth: And though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God: Whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me (Job 19:25-27).

Job had firm confidence in Christ, his Redeemer, and he knew that Christ was above and beyond the sacrifices required by the Ceremonial Law and that the Christ was the only One Who could redeem him. He looked forward, by faith, to the Death and Resurrection of Christ, knowing that Christ, at His Resurrection, would set him free from the chains of Death and the Grave.

Jesus bore witness that Abraham had looked through his eyes of faith and had seen the future day when God's Sacrificial Lamb would be slain for his redemption.

You father *Abraham rejoiced to see my day*: and he saw it, and was glad (John 8:56).

Abraham rejoiced when he saw, above his animal sacrifices, the Christ Who pointed his faith on to the Cross of Calvary.

Many individuals in the Old Testament possessed a living faith that enabled them to see Christ above and beyond the animal sacrifices. However, the nation of Israel, as a whole, completely missed seeing that Christ would be the fulfillment of their sacrifices. Therefore, they also missed seeing Christ's Cross at Calvary. Because they did not seek Salvation according to God's Master Plan and Purposive Will, they *rejected* the True Saviour from sin, Jesus Christ, Who brought an end to the Ceremonial Law by fulfilling it at the Cross. Animal blood never had the power to expiate sin. It sufficed only for a season until Jesus Christ shed His Atoning Blood on Calvary.

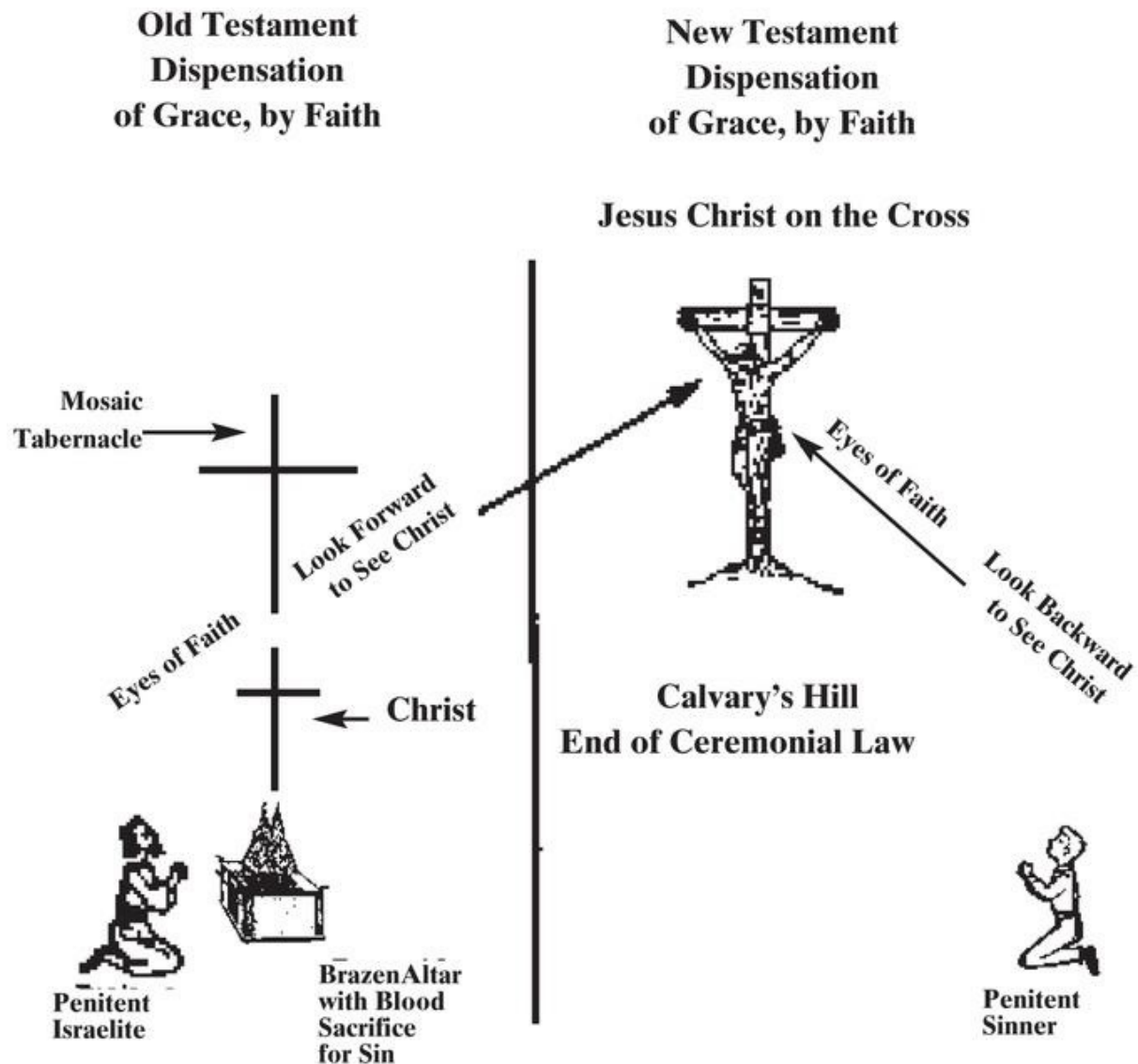
But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness. Wherefore? *Because they sought it not by faith*, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone; (Romans 9:31,32).

Israel followed after the Law of Righteousness, which is in Christ Jesus, but she never attained it because she sought it not by the eyes of faith. Israel depended solely upon the works of her animal sacrifices, without laying hold of God's Faith to see the One, the Christ, above her sacrifices which were only a picture, a shadow, and a type of the Christ.

Because the nation of Israel failed to learn God's Master Plan and Purposive Will during the Old Testament dispensation, the LORD Jesus Christ, during His Millennial Reign, will force the nation to return to the LORD's Master Plan for them.

God's Master Plan always has been "Salvation by faith," whether in the Old Testament dispensation or in the New Testament dispensation.

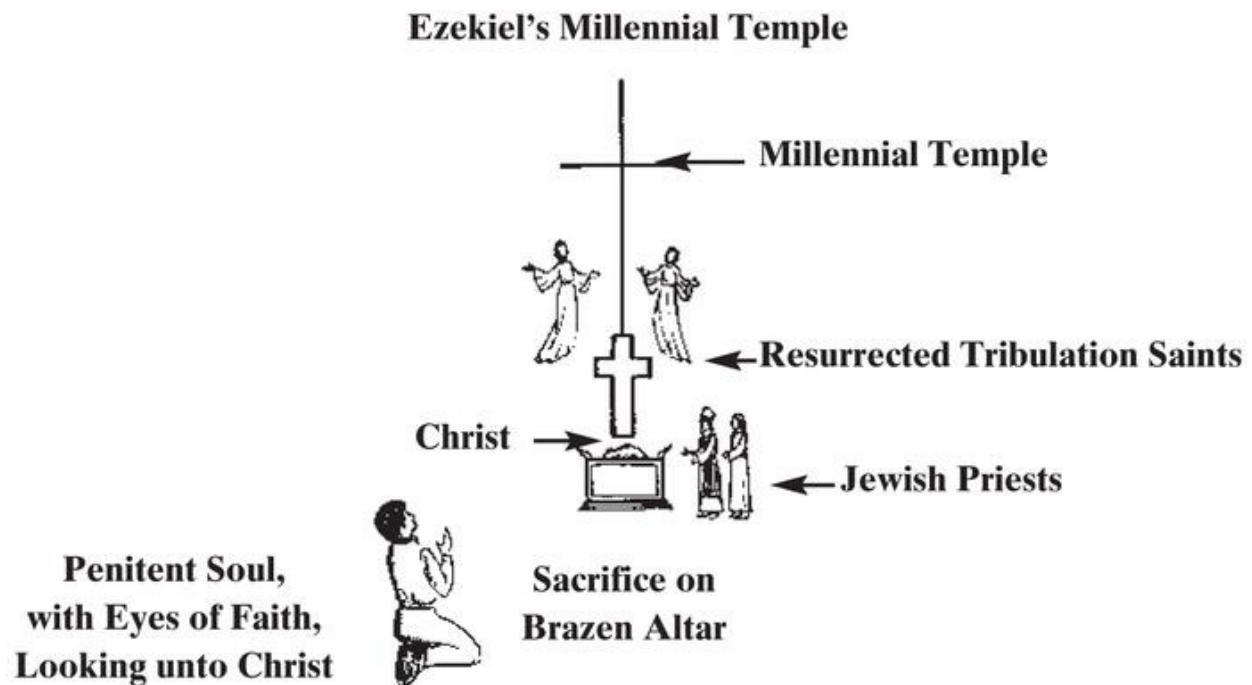
God intended that Israel look forward, by faith, to Christ's Cross, and He also purposes for believers in the New Testament dispensation to look back, by faith, to the Cross.



Israel, with her shadows and types of animal sacrifices, was to look forward, by faith, to the Cross. And we are to look backward, by faith, to Christ's Cross.

Because Israel failed her classes in her spiritual education during the Old Testament dispensation of Grace, she will have to return for the same spiritual classes in the dispensation of Grace during the Millennial Reign of Christ.

With each new offering the Israelites will bring during Christ's Millennial Reign, the resurrected Tribulation saints will help the LORD Jesus Christ teach the nation of Israel the Truth about the types and shadows of each offering. They will help them to see the LORD Jesus Christ above every offering and every sacrifice.



Israel will be forced to learn, in Christ's Millennial Reign, the Truth she refused to learn, both in the Old Testament dispensation and in the New Testament dispensation. Thus, the resurrected Tribulation saints will help Christ in His Rule and Reign over Israel's darkened understanding by assisting Him as His Priests.

The Hebrew word for *priest* is *ko-hane*, meaning an officiating priest, acting as a priest, chief ruler, or principal officer.

When Israel's natural Priests in the Millennial Temple receive and offer the natural sacrifices, the resurrected Tribulation saints or Priests will be above the sacrifices, pointing the Priests and the offerers to the Glorious LORD Jesus Christ, God's True Lamb Who has taken away the sin of the world.

These saints, who were martyrs for Christ during the Tribulation Period because of their bold, courageous witness to the Antichrist about the Blood of Jesus Christ, will be well-qualified to witness to the Jewish Nation about the Blood of Jesus Christ.

...but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years (Revelation 20:6).

The resurrected Priests will possess Christ's Kingly Power and Authority to take command over all ignorance and darkness in all the people's minds in Israel; and they will teach them the Spiritual Truths of the tiniest details that are found in the shadows, pictures, and types of the natural sacrifices. With each new vision the people receive of the Blood of Jesus Christ at Calvary's Cross, by understanding the types and shadows, they will mourn as a nation for their former rejection of their Messiah, Jesus Christ.

And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon. And the land shall mourn, every family apart; the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of Nathan apart, and their wives apart; The family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart; the family of Shimei apart, and their wives apart; All the families that remain, every family apart, and their wives apart (Zechariah 12:10-14).

After the momentous victory of the LORD and His Bridal Armies and after the Millennial Temple has been built, the nation of Israel will begin her sacrifices in the Temple. Each time she offers a sacrifice, the resurrected

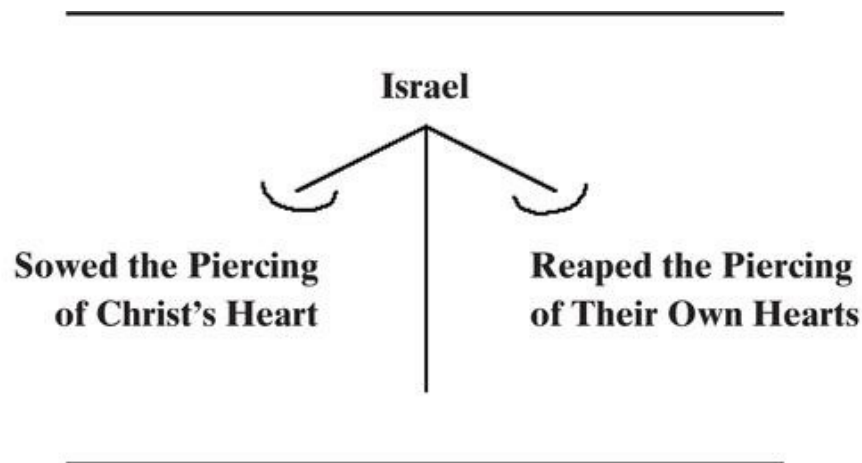
Tribulation saints will be there to teach them the counterpart of the Sacrifice that Jesus suffered when He went to Calvary's Cross. They will experience feelings of remorse for their dastardly deeds of rejection of Christ Jesus and their beseechings for Him to be crucified. They will cry with penitent lamentation over their piercing of the Son of God upon Calvary's Cross.

The LORD will pour out His Spirit of Grace and supplications upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem. They will see Christ through every sacrifice they offer. Therefore, they will be moved to ask for and to seek, humbly and earnestly, His forgiveness for their past guilt and sins against Him, their True Messiah. Then, they shall find Grace in His Eyes, although it was at their hands that He suffered Death on the Cross.

The nation of Israel will be stricken with remorse and penitence over their guilt, as the resurrected Tribulation Priests teach them continually, through their sacrifices, what Jesus Christ, their Messiah, did for them on Calvary's Cross.

Jesus Christ was their Good Shepherd, but they rejected Him and put Him to death. However, as a nation, they cannot escape God's Master Plan and Purposive Will, either through the shadows and types in their sacrifices or through the fulfillment of them in the LORD Jesus Christ. They must return to both the sacrificial types and the Sacrifice of the LORD Jesus Christ and take their spiritual education as a nation.

They will look upon Jesus Christ, their Messiah, Whom they have pierced, and they will reap a piercing in their own hearts.



All Israel will mourn, both publicly and privately. They will have public days of collective mourning, as they did when there was universal grief occasioned by the premature death of the good Josiah, whom Necho, as Pharaoh, killed in the plain of Megiddo, except on this occasion, their mourning will last for a thousand years.

All the land will wail privately in great grief and in long lamentations. The mourning and wailing will be universally *collective* in the land; yet, it will be universally *private* in the land.

- **The Kingly family of David's house**, male and female, will wail and mourn.
- **The Prophetic family of Nathan's house**, male and female, will wail and mourn.
- **The Priestly family of the house of Levi**, male and female, will wail and mourn.
- **All families in general, male and female**, will wail and mourn.

It will take the nation of Israel one thousand years to learn about the depths, heights, length, and breadth of their terrible crime against Christ's Blood and to make sufficient mournings, lamentations, and repentances over it.

For their faithful witness during the Tribulation, the resurrected saints, who were overcomers, will be rewarded with the privilege of continually ministering as chief Priests and Teachers of Israel's natural Priests until Israel has fulfilled her moral mission to be a Priestly nation to all the other nations of the world, leading them to the saving knowledge of the LORD Jesus Christ.



Israel will learn from the Priestly, resurrected Tribulation saints, and the nations of the world will learn from Israel, the LORD's Priestly nation.

And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of *the LORD's house shall be established* in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; *and all nations shall flow unto it*. And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; *and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem* (Isaiah 2:2,3).

During the Millennial Reign of the LORD Jesus Christ, Mount Zion will be the center of spiritual instruction, and it will be the place of the Supreme Court of the world's nations because Israel's Messiah, the LORD Jesus Christ, will rule and reign from there, bringing peace to the whole world. The Kingdom of Heaven firmly will be established.

All nations will flow like a stream into Mount Zion to learn about the LORD Jesus Christ and His *Torah-Truth* and to receive instruction from Him. The nation of Israel will fulfill her moral mission to the world because of the ministering help of the resurrected Tribulation saints, who have been rewarded with the honourable ministry of being Priests during the Millennial Reign with the LORD Jesus Christ.

This chapter has shown the two kinds of Resurrection Power which the LORD Jesus Christ possesses — the Begotten Power, which is a cycle of new life for a season, and the Unbegotten Resurrection Power of the Father, which resurrects for all Eternity.

There are also two resurrections. The first resurrection, which is for overcomers, happens in three phases. One resurrection took place at the end of the Old Testament dispensation after Jesus Christ was brought forth by the Unbegotten Glory of the Father. Old Testament overcomers came forth with Jesus at this time. The second phase of the first resurrection will be the Rapture of overcomers when Jesus returns in the air to catch away His Bride and the Wedding Party. The resurrection of the souls who will overcome the Beast and his mark during the Tribulation will *complete* the first resurrection. Only dead, non-overcoming believers and dead sinners will be left to be raised in the

second resurrection.

Next, we will see what will transpire after the Millennial Reign of Christ and His Bride.

* B. R. Hicks, [*The Missing Link Between the Genesis Creation and Scientific Findings*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1988), pp. 39-174.

Chapter Nine

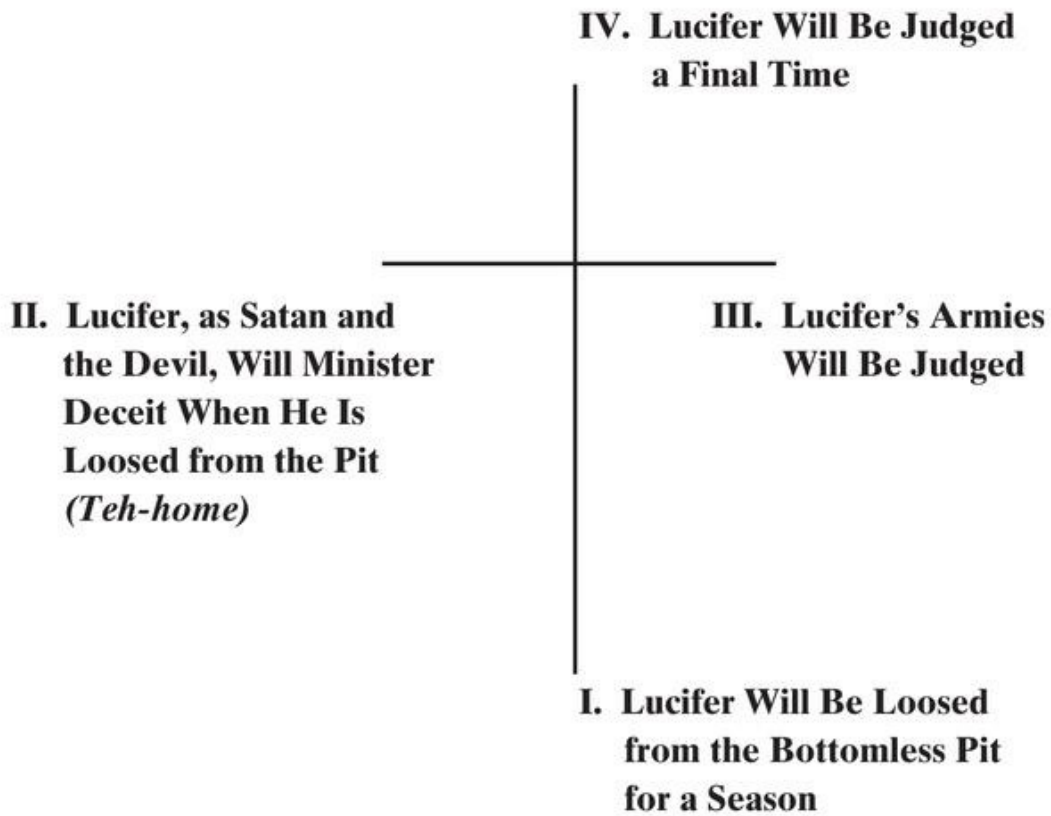
The Final Loosing and Judgment of Lucifer and His Luciferic Army

After Christ reigns in peace for a thousand years with His Bride and His resurrected Priestly saints who have died during the Tribulation, fallen Lucifer will be loosed out of the Bottomless Pit, the *Teh-home*, where he will have been bound for a thousand years.

And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever (Revelation 20:7-10).

Lucifer will be loosed from the Bottomless Pit with only his Satan and Devil natures; his Serpent and Dragon natures will remain in the *Teh-home* Pit. He will proceed to carry on his deceitful ministry as Satan and the Devil and will deceive many who have been living under the peaceful reign of Christ and His Bride. Then will come Judgment on his armies; and, at long last, Lucifer's final Judgment will be executed. Never again will he deceive men. He will be a totally vanquished foe.

Never having lived in this world without the presence of Lucifer, it is hard to imagine the freedom and tremendous peace a person will experience when he is gone. How much more difficult it is to imagine that anyone, once having experienced this peace, ever could be deceived into following Satan and the Devil. But it will happen. All the events that will transpire at this time form a Stature of Truth.



I. Lucifer Will Be Loosed from the Bottomless Pit for a Season

God will loose Lucifer from his confinement, taking away his chains of restraint and freeing him, to see what his attitude toward the LORD Jesus Christ will be after his long period of humiliating chastening and stripping in the *Teh-home* or Bottomless Pit.



After he has been loosed, Lucifer will use his corrupt Satanic nature to continue to *stand against* the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bride and the rebuilt, earthly Jerusalem.

Lucifer also will use his corrupt Devilish nature *to try to devour* the LORD's Holy, Heavenly Kingdom that has been established upon the New Earth. But he will fail, utterly and miserably.

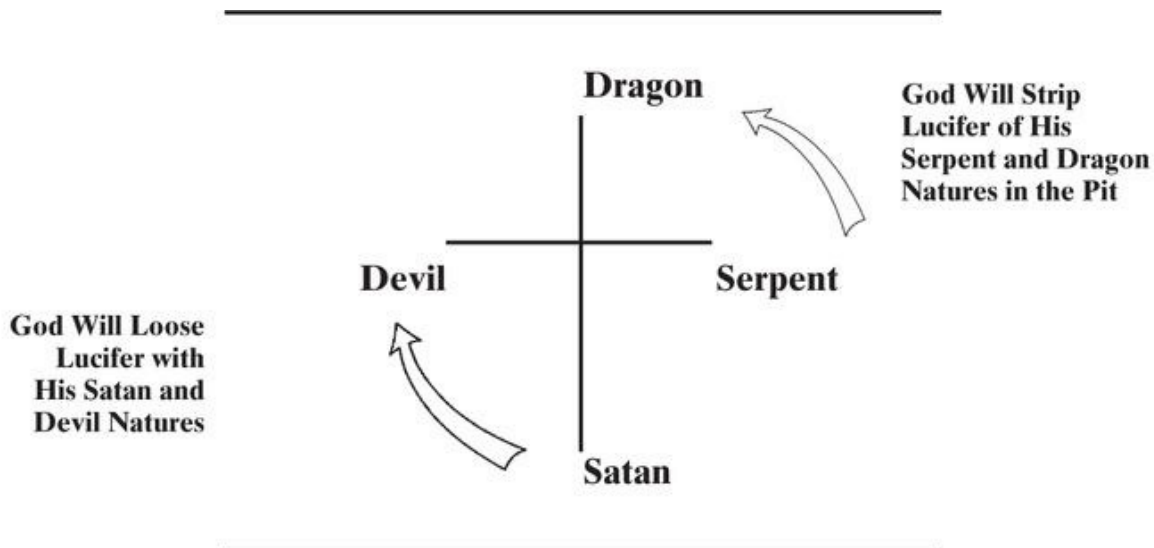
In order to comprehend the last and final works of Lucifer, let us examine in some detail what will be stripped from Lucifer in the Pit and what he will have when he comes out of the Pit.

Since the beginning of fallen Lucifer's warfare against God, he has been known as Satan, Devil, Serpent, and Dragon.

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the *great dragon* was cast out, that *old serpent*, called *the Devil*, and *Satan*, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him (Revelation 12:7-9).

The most powerful part of Lucifer's stature is the union of his Serpent and Dragon natures. The less powerful part of his fallen stature is the union of his Satan and Devil natures.

When God looses him, Lucifer will come out of the Pit in a stripped, humiliated condition, but he will continue his inimical warfare against God until his final judgment in the Lake of Fire.

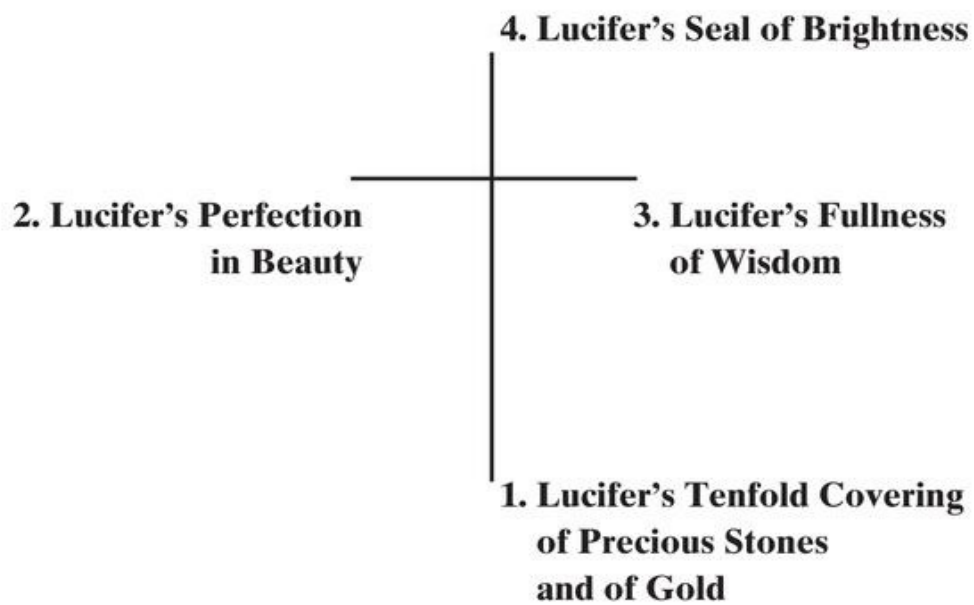


If we examine Lucifer's nature before he fell into sin, we will be able to see what he corrupted within himself of His God-given Gifts. Thus, we will comprehend, better, his fallen nature and understand which of his powers he will leave in the Pit and which powers he will retain to try the people who will be born during Christ's Millennial Reign, and who will not have been tested, yet, by God's adversary.

A. Lucifer's Nature Before He Sinned

In the beginning, God created Lucifer as a beautiful Angel, as a Seal; he was full of Wisdom and perfect in Beauty. Then God gave him a tenfold covering, which consisted of nine Precious Stones and of Gold. His glorious covering demonstrated the shining Light of the *Torah*.

Lucifer Before His Fall



What a splendid display of God's Creative Power, Glory, and Wisdom was exhibited in Lucifer before his fall.

Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; *Thou sealest up the sum: full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty.* Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; *every precious stone was thy covering*, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, *and gold*: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created. Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire (Ezekiel 28:12-14).

1. Lucifer's Tenfold Covering of Precious Stones and of Gold

The Prophet Ezekiel named all the stones with which God endowed Lucifer. They were nine in number. However, God, being Supreme and All Powerful, has twelve Precious Stones, which denote His complete Ruling, Governmental Power over all creation. Three of God's Precious Stones never were given to Lucifer.* In addition to the nine Stones, Lucifer was given Gold, which represented God's Wisdom.

To know what his Precious Stones represented, we must study the Breastplate of the High Priest.* To the High Priest, who wore them in his Breastplate, the twelve Stones were a picture of All Governmental Power which belongs to the LORD Jesus Christ. Lucifer, then, did not ever have ALL Power. This was and is reserved only for God's Son.

The meanings of the names of the Stones, plus the Gold, that Lucifer had as a covering before his fall are descriptive of the Gifts of Ruling Power Lucifer had as the Son of the Morning.

Very briefly, let us note the meanings found in the Stones' names, and what they represent in the Stature of Jesus Christ, for these are the attributes also found in Lucifer *before* he be-came proud and jealous and rebelled against God.

- The *Sardius* Stone — means red, rosy, to show blood in the face, to separate, remove, scrape out. It stands for the loving, gracious, redemptive Power of Jesus Christ that longs to remove sin and sadness from the human heart and replace it with praise to God. Lucifer had the power to "scrape out" all opposition to God's Will and have his heart filled with continual praise to God.
- The *Topaz* Stone — means to be bright and sparkling, therefore, a pasture, a pleasant place, satisfaction, or a dwelling place. It stands for the gracious, bright, glorious, pleasant, satisfying Nature of Jesus Christ. Lucifer was covered with the gracious, pleasant, satisfying Nature of Christ.
- The *Carbuncle* Stone — means burning, flashing, like lightning. Lightning was a symbol of the glorious and awful majesty of the Power of Jehovah. It stands for the gracious, glorious Light of protection for the Truth and Majesty of the Father that is in the Nature of Jesus Christ. Lucifer was given this glorious Stone of Light to protect God's Holy Mount Zion with its Holy Jerusalem.
- The *Emerald* Stone — means to glisten, shining. The natural emerald stone is characterized by its hidden breaches, breaks, and fractures. It stands for the Heart of the Crucified Christ which was broken for our sins. Lucifer was given this glistening stone for helping God's Angels to become broken in heartfelt praise and worship to their Creator.
- The *Sapphire* Stone — means to inscribe, engrave by scratching, by descending into another substance, giving the connotation that inscribed words are like stairs, like pillars, with their hidden revelations of Truth. It stands for the gracious, compassionate Light of Sharing that is in the Nature of Jesus Christ. Lucifer was given this Stone with its power to lead into the depths and heights of God's Truth.
- The *Diamond* Stone — means hardness, to strike down, hammer, stamp, conquer, disband, that which cuts, eats, transparent and is hard. It stands for the diamond Light of Truth that Jesus Christ employs in order to break, cut, and eat away the false, diseased perception of reality in our carnal mind, which he replaces with His glorious, liberating Truth. Lucifer was given this Stone to give him Power and Light to conquer, to break, and to cut down anything that opposed the Light of Truth.

- The *Beryl* Stone — means a fortress, which comes from a root word that means to be firm, strong, to break in pieces, to destroy, to be broken down. It also means testing, trying, or investigating. It stands for Jesus Christ's Power to test and try the children of men by the Light of His glorious Eyes. Lucifer had this stone, which gave him Power to test severely, try, and break. He was to use it to test the Angels with the Light of Truth in order to lead them into deeper depths, higher heights, and wider breadths of God's Truth.
- The *Onyx* Stone — means to blanch, to take the colour out, make lustrous. It stands for Jesus Christ's powerful Nature that purges and purifies believers of all the colours of sins that are unlike His Holy, White Nature. Lucifer was given the Power to remove colours also. He was to remove all colours of all creatures, as it were, by being a doorkeeper for the LORD Jesus Christ, revealing Him in the glorious splendour of His Holy, White Nature.
- The *Jasper* Stone — means to polish, prevailing power, strength. It stands for the gracious, polishing Power in Jesus Christ that uses His Light of Truth to smooth away the roughness in our nature. Lucifer, then, had the power to polish and make smooth and bare, which means he could have used the Light of Truth to polish the Heavens, erasing the defilement left from its previous rebels.
- *Gold* — stands for God's Divine Wisdom. Lucifer was covered with the Divine, Eternal Wisdom of God.

2. Lucifer's Perfection in Beauty

In the beginning, the creature Lucifer was perfect, for God created him so and gave him the fullest possession of all that was pleasant to the eyes. Lucifer possessed a grand assemblage of graces. His shape and symmetry were exceedingly fine. The symmetry of his features and the elegance and gracefulness of his being made him flawlessly handsome. He had strength, grandeur, and majesty. His exquisite qualities gave the eyes of the beholder intense pleasure. The beauty of Lucifer gratified the intellect and moral feelings of the beholders. For this reason, he had encompassing, influencing Power with the Heavenly creation. Lucifer was given this beauty of intellect, courage, and strength of will to guard and protect the Word of God.

3. Lucifer's Fullness of Wisdom

The LORD also filled Lucifer with the *Khok-maw* Wisdom of His *Torah*-Truth before his infamous fall.

The Hebrew word *khok-maw* means skill in art, proficiency in learning and piety. It also means the *Truth that now is*.

Lucifer was full of Wisdom that made him know the *Truth that now is*, which is that the Sovereign, Divine Son of God is the Creator, the Governor, and the Guide of all His Father's creation. Lucifer's Wisdom enabled him to see the heart of the Truth which was within him, which was there to help him form the best judgment in all things presented to him for consideration.

God gave Lucifer Wisdom in order to lead him to the Knowledge of his Son, the LORD Jesus Christ. God's Wisdom was for helping him discern the *best* End of all things, which is Knowledge of His only Begotten Son. And, God's Wisdom was for showing Lucifer the best means of reaching the End, which was the Way of Humility. God's Wisdom in Lucifer was to give him readiness of apprehension and dexterity in executing all that he comprehended.

4. Lucifer's Seal of Brightness

Lucifer was created to be a bright, protective Seal over God's Truth. He was to guard and protect the Truth by authenticating it, ratifying it, and proving it by the brightness of his Seal.

The Hebrew word for Lucifer's *brightness* is *yif-aw*, meaning splendour and beauty. The word *yif-aw* comes from the Hebrew root word *yaw-fah*, meaning to shine, to be light, shew self, cause to shine forth. This word is used *only* in connection with the LORD's Brightness and Lucifer's Brightness before he fell.

Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will

lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee (Ezekiel 28:17).

Yaw-fah is used in Deuteronomy to describe God's *Bright Shining* when He brought His *Torah-Law* to Mount Sinai, Seir, and Paran.

And he said, *The LORD* came from Sinai, and rose up from Seir unto them; he *shined [yaw-fah] forth* from mount Paran, and he came with ten thousands of saints: from his right hand went a fiery law for them (Deuteronomy 33:2).

The *Yaw-fah* Splendour and Brightness on Mount Sinai, Mount Seir, and Mount Paran refers to *one* way the Light appears from out of all the stages Light passes through in its progressive revelation.

The *Yaw-fah* Brightness is the *first* stage of Light out of darkness. It is a bright glimmer which heralds the brighter, coming Light of Day or the coming of the Sun of Righteousness in the spiritual realm; while in the natural realm, it refers to the Sun at daybreak.

Thus, *Yaw-fah* Brightness is related to the dawn, the breaking of the day. When the LORD's *Yaw-fah* Bright Shining broke upon Israel at Mount Sinai, it revealed the heralding of a new *Dawn* for the whole world that lay in moral darkness. Hence *Yaw-fah* Brightness is "Dawn" Light, which is for the heralding of the *greater* Light of the Sun of Righteousness.

The meaning of the word *brightness* reveals that God clothed Lucifer with a Seal of Brightness or *Yaw-fah* Dawn Light so that he could be a doorkeeper, using his "Dawn Light" to draw back the curtains of darkness, thus revealing the LORD Jesus Christ, the Sun of Righteousness, the Living *Torah*.

God's *Yaw-fah* Dawn Light shines out of Zion as a doorkeeper to unveil His *Torah-Truth*.

Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, God hath shined *[yaw-fah]* (Psalm 50:2).

In the same manner in which the dawn light draws back the curtains of darkness so that the sun can illuminate the Earth, God's *Yaw-fah* Dawn Light draws back the curtains of moral darkness so that the Sun of Righteousness and His *Torah-Truth* can illuminate the minds and souls of men.

Likewise, the LORD shines forth with the heralding Rays of His *Yaw-fah* Dawn Light from the Ark of His Covenant which dwells between the cherubims.

Give ear, O Shepherd of Israel, thou that ledest Joseph like a flock; *thou that dwellest between the cherubims, shine [yaw-fah] forth* (Psalm 80:1).

God Himself is a faithful Doorkeeper for His Son and His *Torah-Truth*. On the other hand, the Son is a faithful Doorkeeper to unveil His Father. This was God's Purpose in clothing Lucifer with a Seal of Bright, *Yaw-fah* Dawn Light. He was to be a faithful doorkeeper for the Sun of Righteousness.

God also uses His *Yaw-fah* Shining Light to draw back the curtains of moral darkness, revealing His Son as the Just Judge Who metes out His Vengeance.

O LORD God, to whom vengeance belongeth; O God, *to whom vengeance belongeth, shew [yaw-fah] thyself* (Psalm 94:1).

When the Son of God is unveiled, He avenges thoroughly. The LORD's Holy, Righteous, Divine Nature recompenses and wreaks vengeance and destruction upon insolent, wicked creatures who have poisoned the fountains of justice in order to reveal themselves.

Nevertheless, in spite of all his glory and power, his beauty, wisdom, and brightness, Lucifer fell. And when he fell, he corrupted his glorious stature — his tenfold covering of Precious Stones and Gold, his perfection in Beauty, his fullness of Wisdom, and his Seal of Brightness.

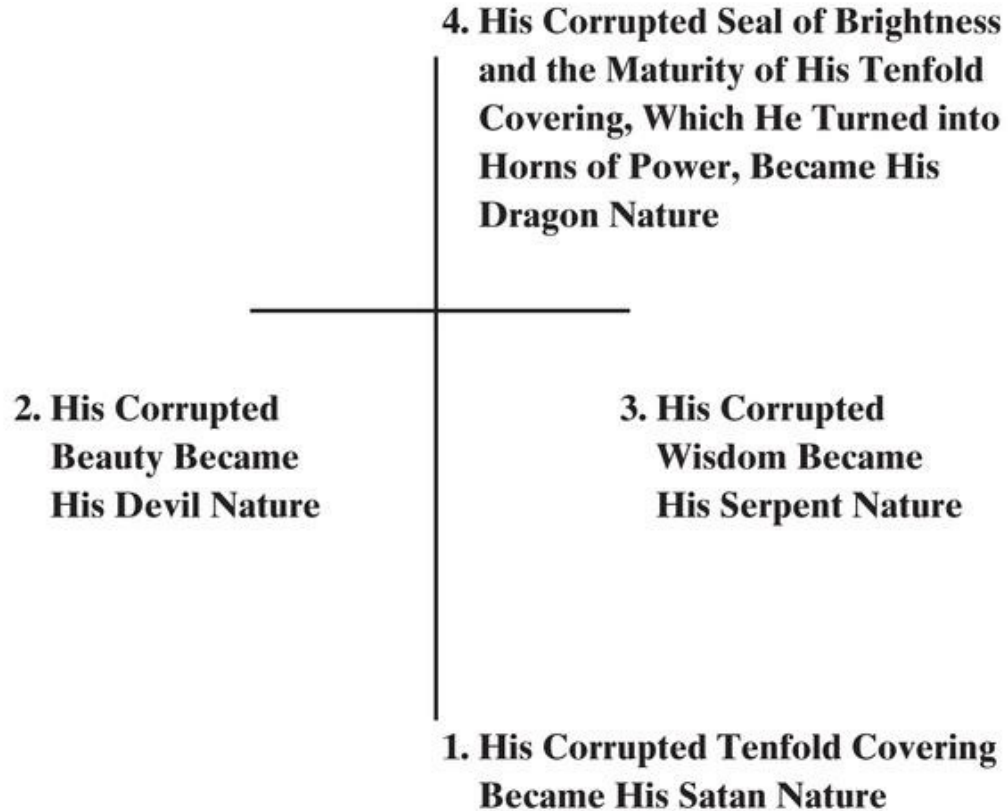
His nature became the opposite of what God intended, and all the ways he was to use his Gifts to serve God became perverted tools of wickedness to oppose God, His Son, His Holy Spirit, His people, and Christ's Bride. Lucifer opposes all Light of Truth, all of God's Master Plan, and all of His Purposive Will.

B. Lucifer's Nature After He Sinned

After he sinned, Lucifer's nature changed, and his tenfold covering of Precious Stones and of Gold became a Satan; his Beauty became a Devil; his Wisdom became a Serpent; and his Seal of Brightness became a Dragon.

Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee. By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and *thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub*, from the midst of the stones of fire. *Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee* (Ezekiel 28:15-17).

Lucifer After He Sinned



1. His Corrupted Tenfold Covering Became His Satan Nature

After his fall, Lucifer became the antithesis of his original self and of Jesus Christ. He corrupted his tenfold covering of Precious Stones and of Gold and has used them in the opposite way from God's intended Purpose.

God gave Lucifer nine of the Precious Stones from the Breastplate of the High Priest, the LORD Jesus Christ, to use to receive confirmation of God's Purposive Will. They were the Stones from the east, south, and north sides of the LORD's Stature.

Instead of Lucifer allowing these Stones to impart great strength and hardness of determination to execute God's Purposive Will in Heaven, he corrupted them, using their strength to give him a hard, impenitent heart against the LORD, the God of Truth. Consequently, instead of using his strength and hardness of determination to obey the Truth, he has used his strength and hardness to disobey the Truth and to stand against it.

Lucifer also corrupted his Gold or Wisdom by using it to give honour and value to his corrupted stones that he

has used to stand against the Truth.

He has used the ten Gifts God gave him for his Heavenly Ministry to minister in his own behalf. Since he has corrupted them, he has used the power of his nine stones in this way:

- The *Sardius* Stone — he has used to “scrape out” his ingratitude toward God, pouring it out in the form of impudence and criticism of God.
- The *Topaz* Stone — he has used to tempt men to seek satisfaction through indulging the lust of their flesh, the lust of their eyes, and the pride of life.
- The *Emerald* Stone — he has used to destroy the Image and Likeness of the Truth in God’s creation. He has used its power to cause man to fracture or break the Will of God in their lives.
- The *Sapphire* Stone — he has used to lead souls into descending into depths of idolatry and fornication, and he has used his Dragon-nature to lead souls to ascend to spiritual wickedness of hate in high places. So, instead of being a protective seal for the Truth, he has and does blaspheme the Truth as being unreal, unreliable, and fraudulent, something to refute, veto, and disprove.
- The *Diamond* Stone — he has used to fill men with his hardness, unmercifulness, and pitiless hate for the Truth so that they go to war against their brothers and sisters.
- The *Beryl* Stone — he has used for destructive purposes by tempting men to test, try, and investigate the faults, failures, and shortcomings of others, thus breaking the unity of the Spirit between believers.
- The *Onyx* Stone — he has used to strip the colour of godly fear and love out of the hearts of God’s children, teaching them to be doorkeepers for themselves instead of doorkeepers for the LORD Jesus Christ. His deceitful workings make the Judgment and Punishment of God seem powerless, colourless, and ineffectual.
- The *Jasper* Stone — he used to strip Adam-male and female of their covering of glorious Light and Truth, which left them naked, smooth, and bare. Therefore, all their offspring also have been born into this world naked, smooth, and bare, both spiritually and physically.
- *Gold* — he has and does use to blind the hearts and minds of sinners, which prevents them from coming to Christ. He also has and does clothe the minds and hearts of believers with ignorant, undiscerning, and unenlightened opinions and ideas, trying to prevent them from growing in the Grace and Knowledge of the LORD and Saviour Jesus Christ.

2. His Corrupted Beauty Became His Devil Nature

When Lucifer corrupted his beauty and fairness, he became exceedingly ugly, very unpleasant to the sight, very offensive, very vile and repulsive, very disagreeable, and dangerously threatening.

Lucifer’s Devil nature has had the brazen audacity to try to tempt God’s only Begotten Son.

Then was Jesus led up of the spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil (Matthew 4:1).

In spite of the Devil’s abuse and misuse of Truth, Jesus overcame his ugly attack with God’s Written Word of Truth.

The Apostle Paul warned the early Christians not to give place or provide a place in their hearts for the ugly Devil.

Neither give place to the devil (Ephesians 4:27).

Those who obstinately determine to hold on to their sinful anger and wrath create a dwelling place for the Devil to come into their hearts and to abide there. Hence, he will not stop working in their hearts until he fills them to the

uttermost with his malice and hate. Consequently, the mouth of each of these persons will become a servant of the Devil, slandering and accusing the brethren.

The Apostle Paul described the Devil's beguiling nature.

Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against *the wiles of the devil* (Ephesians 6:11).

We must put on all the Armour of Christ's Truth in order to stand against the Devil's sly tricks and deceitful artifices which lure us away from the Truth.

The Apostle Paul also warned Timothy about the Devil's condemnation and snares he uses against those who are novices in God's Word.

Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil. Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil (1 Timothy 3:6,7).

The more ignorant we are of God's Word, the easier it is to be lifted up in pride. After the Devil causes God's people to lift themselves up in pride, he condemns them to God, proving to Him their wrongdoing. He condemns the guilty person to his own heart and mind, censuring him and making him feel he is a complete failure. He condemns the guilty person to his brethren in the LORD, telling them the person's guilt makes him unfit for God's use or service.

The Devil also uses a person's former way of living as a snare to tempt and attract him back to his former sinful ways.

The Apostle Peter warned the early Christians about the Devil's devouring nature.

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary *the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour*: (1 Peter 5:8).

The Devil, as a roaring lion, goes about seeking, greedily and hungrily, to eat up one's desire and determination to serve God.

How unspeakably sad it is that such a beautiful creature turned from his Creator and became so unspeakably ugly!

3. His Corrupted Wisdom Became His Serpent Nature

Lucifer also corrupted his pure, Holy Wisdom by turning it into a Serpent.

Lucifer was *filled* with God's glorious Wisdom. He had no reason or excuse for his disobedience. However, Lucifer corrupted his Wisdom with his pride, turning it into a cunning, deceitful, and subtle Serpent. Thus, he lost his ministry as a true Son of the Morning or Light and became a Son of Darkness.

Since Lucifer's fall, he uses his corrupt wisdom to lead God's creation away from God's *Best*, which is His Truth, the LORD Jesus Christ. He scorns and blasphemes the Truth, trying to make it a lie which, therefore, makes it appear unreal. Lucifer uses his Serpentine wisdom to unite hearts and minds under his headship so that he can lead them astray from the Truth, as he did with Adam-male and female in the Garden of Eden.

4. His Corrupted Seal of Brightness and the Maturity of His Tenfold Covering, Which He Turned into Horns of Power, Became His Dragon Nature

Lucifer corrupted the Brightness of his Seal and became a Dragon, using his corrupted seal to make the Truth appear unreal, unreliable, and fraudulent. He also has used, and does use, his seal to refute, veto, and disprove the Truth.

Lucifer corrupted the Brightness of His Seal of Dawn Light by using his Bright Seal to unveil himself instead of using it to unveil the LORD. Thus, he became a *Dragon*.

As the Dragon, Lucifer uses his corrupted seal of brightness to entice God's children to use their *yaw-fah* dawn light to unveil themselves instead of unveiling Christ, the Sun of Righteousness.

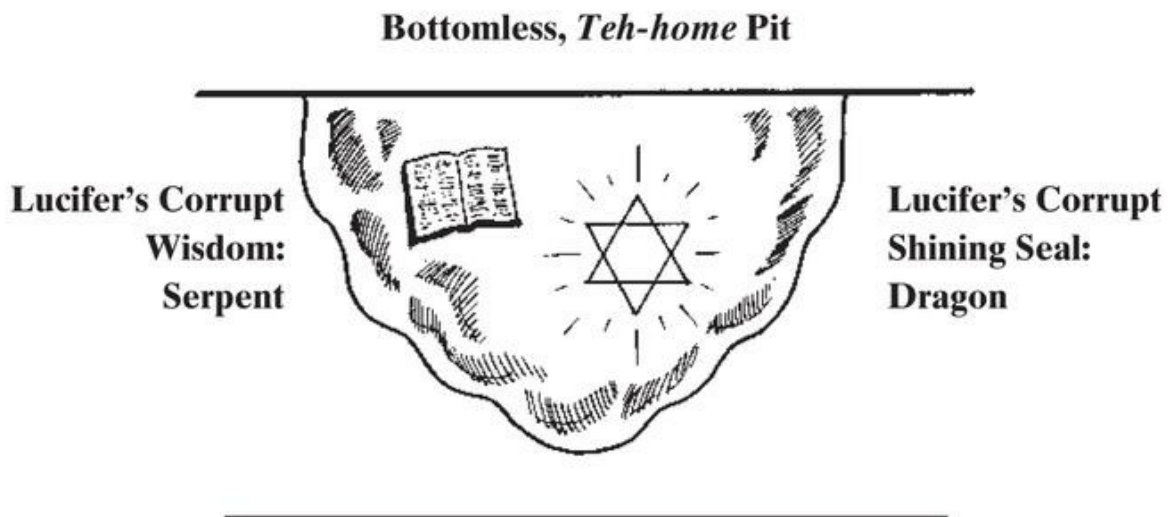
Lucifer also took Satan's tenfold covering of opposition to the Truth and helped it to grow unto the full measure of his mature stature of wickedness. Therefore, Satan's tenfold opposition to the Truth in the low place became the Dragon's ten horns of opposition against the Truth in high places.

C. Lucifer's Dragon and Serpent Natures Will Be Left in the *Teh-home* Pit When He is Loosed for a Season

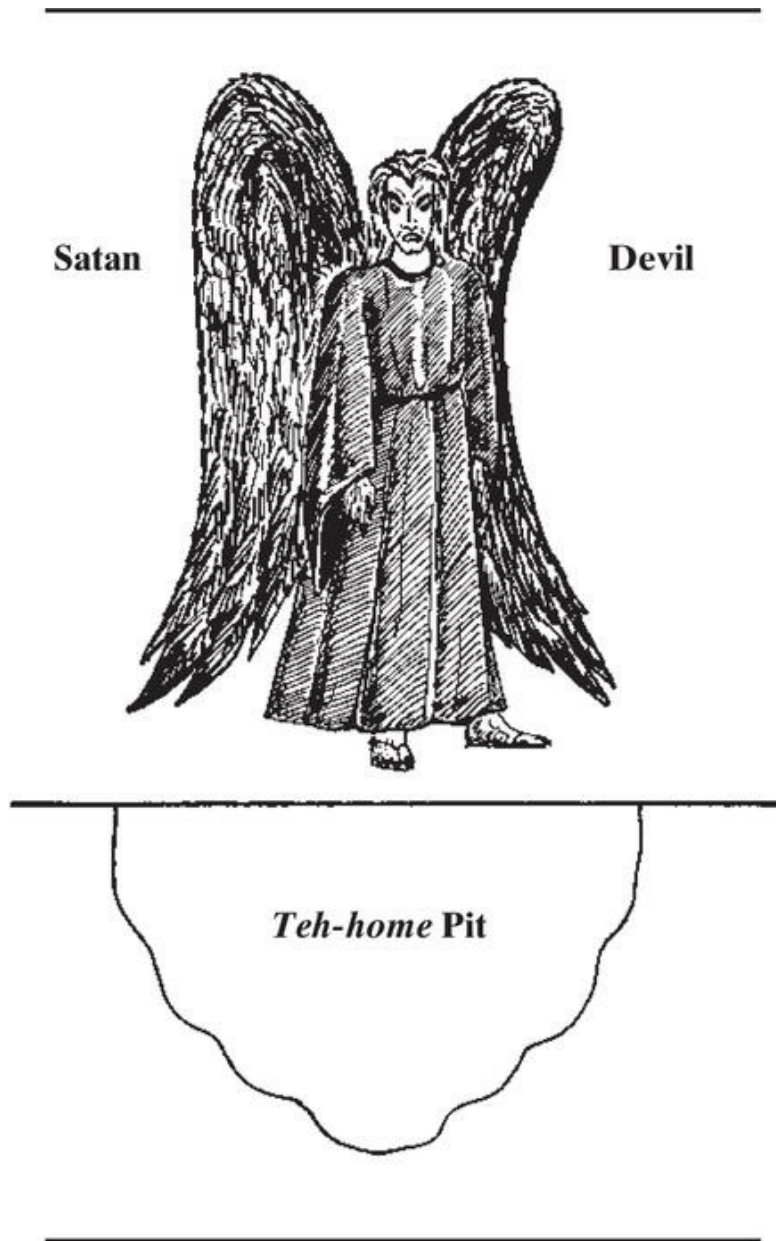
When the day comes that God casts Lucifer's bright Dragon-light into the *Teh-home* Pit and strips it from him, he never again will come forth as the bright shining doorkeeper of himself and make himself the "god" of this world.

He will not come forth as a Serpent, with his corrupt wisdom, to blaspheme the enthroned Truth, the LORD Jesus Christ, Who will be ruling and reigning upon the New Earth.

Thus, Lucifer's corrupt, bright, shining seal of light, which made him a doorkeeper, will be left in the *Teh-home* Pit. The fullness of Lucifer's corrupt wisdom that he used for ruling in his kingdom of darkness will be left there, too.



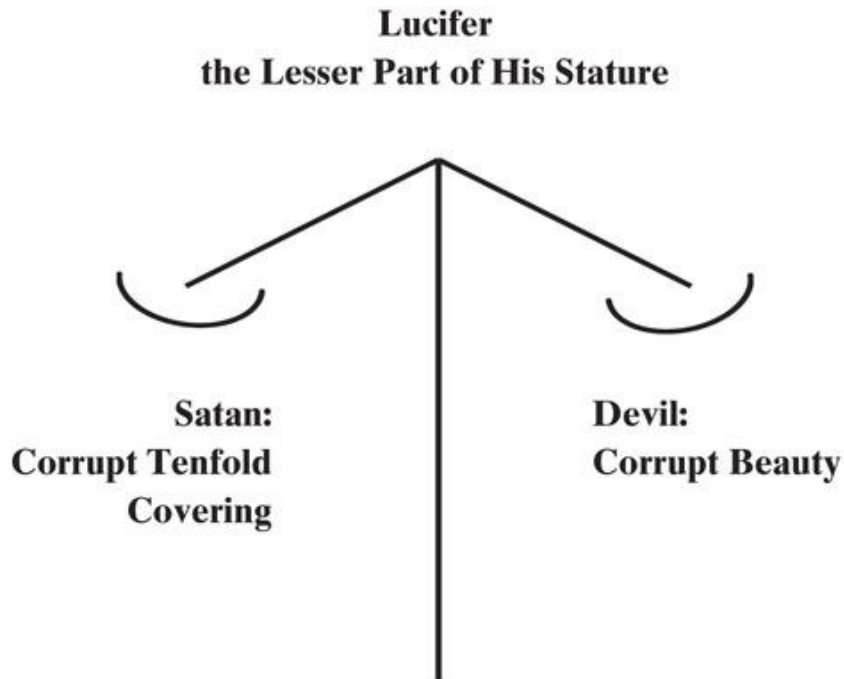
When Lucifer is loosed out of the Pit, after 1,000 years, he will be very greatly humiliated by reason of having been stripped of his Dragon seal of light and his Serpentine ruling wisdom. Only his Devil and Satan natures will be left, with which he will begin a new warfare and attack against the LORD Jesus Christ and His Kingdom.



The LORD, by His *Yaw-fah* Dawn Light, will draw back the sealed, dark curtain of the *Teh-home* Pit so that Lucifer can come forth to see and to receive the vengeance of the unveiled Son of God as the Just Judge.

II. Lucifer, as Satan and the Devil, Will Minister Deceit When He Is Loosed from the Pit (*Teh-home*)

Lucifer will come forth from the Bottomless Pit with his tenfold corrupt *covering* as Satan to war against the Truth in the low place. Lucifer will have been stripped of his tenfold opposing power, which came from his *ten horns* that have withstood the Truth in High Places. Lucifer also will be loosed out of the Pit with the corrupt beauty of his Devil nature. Lucifer will be stripped of all his power to work in high places. He will be greatly humbled by being left with the lower, lesser part of his nature. However, God has a Purpose in loosing Lucifer upon the Earth one more time.



Lucifer will be loosed to stand against the Truth once again. With his corrupt tenfold covering, which works in the humility, low place, Lucifer will go forth to deceive and to stand against the Truth as soon as he is loosed from the *Teh-home* Pit.

A. Even with the Lower, Lesser Part of His Stature — His Satan Nature — He Will be Able to Deceive People

The Hebrew root word for *deceive* is *naw-dakh*, meaning to push off by impelling, forcing out, or thrusting out. If we look at the use of this word in Deuteronomy 20:19, we clearly will see how Lucifer, as Satan, deceives.

The word *naw-dakh* is used to describe the act of forcing an ax into a fruit tree for the purpose of destruction.

When thou shalt besiege a city a long time, in making war against it to take it, thou shalt not *destroy the trees thereof by forcing [naw-dakh] an axe against them*: for thou mayest eat of them, and thou shalt not cut them down (for the tree of the field is man's life) to employ them in the siege: (Deuteronomy 20:19).

The fruit tree is a picture of the Truth, and the *naw-dakh* force of the axe is a picture of Satan's axe of deceit that is forced, first, into the Fruit Tree of Truth. For, if Satan succeeds in cutting down the Fruit Tree of Truth, his destruction of it will stop believers from feeding on the Truth.

Lucifer's Devilish nature deceived Adam-female, causing her to cut down, as it were, the Tree of Life from before her vision. Therefore, by her choice, she cut herself off from feeding on the Truth and the Life in Christ.

The word *naw-dakh* also means to expel, as we see in Second Samuel.

For we must needs die, and are as water spilt on the ground, which cannot be gathered up again; neither doth God respect any person: yet doth he devise means, *that his banished be not expelled [naw-dakh]* from him (II Samuel 14:14).

King David expelled Absalom, his son, from his presence and the throne after Absalom had killed Amnon, his brother. Later, Absalom tried to expel King David permanently from his throne, but Absalom failed and was cast into death and the grave. Absalom's actions present a picture of Lucifer who was expelled from God's Presence and

Throne in Heaven for killing the Truth in his heart and rebelling against the One Who sat on the Throne. When Lucifer, as Satan, is loosed out of the Pit, he will go forth, as Absalom did in his day, after he had been expelled, to deceive an army of people into trying to *expel* the LORD Jesus Christ from His Throne of Glory at the end of the Millennial Reign. However, Lucifer will fail, as Absalom did, and he will be cast into the Lake of Fire.

After Satan uses his hard, corrupt force to cut down the fruitful Tree of Life in a believer's mind, he then endeavours, through deceit, to remove the Truth from the throne of his heart.

The word *naw-dakh* also means to impel, incite, or induce to an action. After Satan cuts down the Truth and casts it from its Throne of Glory, he then stirs up the heart and mind to stand against the Truth *by driving the heart and mind into darkness*.

The Prophet Isaiah used *naw-dakh* in this way.

And they shall look unto the earth, and behold trouble and darkness, dimness of anguish; *and they shall be driven [naw-dakh] to darkness* (Isaiah 8:22).

The Prophet was describing people who have been turned over to the leadership of Satan because they have allowed the Light of Truth to be cut down and cast from the throne of their hearts. Consequently, the LORD has turned them over to Satan's deceit; then, they have been driven or deceived into walking in darkness.

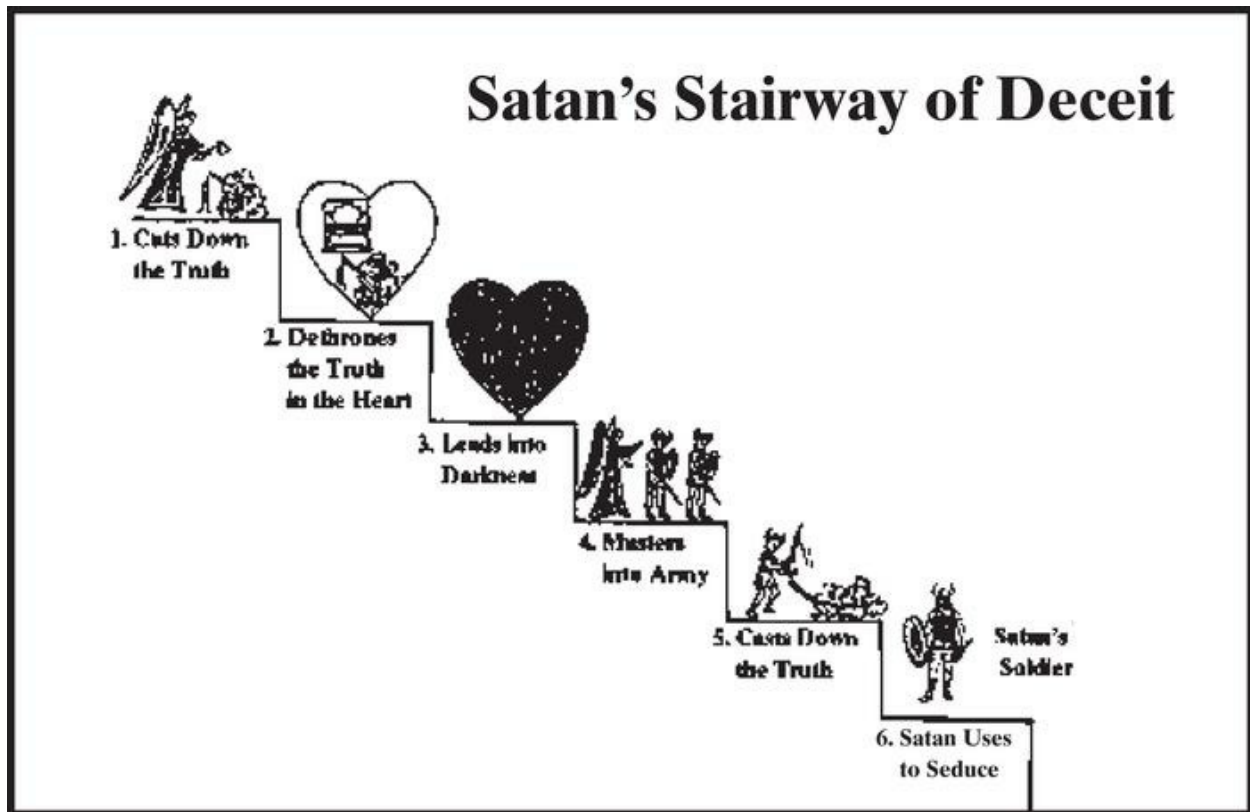
The LORD looses Satan out of the *Teh-home* Pit for the purpose of testing those who have been born and have lived during Christ's Millennial Reign to see if they will make a permanent choice for the Truth.

First, Satan will lay his axe of deceit to the Truth in their hearts and minds. Second, he deceitfully will expel the Truth from the throne of their hearts. Third, he will lead them into his darkness so that they will join his army.

According to the Psalmist, the word *naw-dakh* also means to cast down.

They only consult to cast [naw-dakh] him down from his excellency: they delight in lies: they bless with their mouth, but they curse inwardly. Selah. My soul, wait thou only upon God; for my expectation is from him (Psalm 62:4,5).

After Satan leads a person down his stairway of deceit, which first causes him to cut down the Truth, then dethrone the Truth, the person then takes on Satan's darkness. Having taken these three steps, the person then allows Satan to muster him into his army; as a result of his joining Satan's army, Satan will empower that person to cast down the Truth, deceitfully and actively.



When Satan is loosed out of the Pit, he and his deceived army will endeavour to cast down the LORD Jesus Christ, the Truth, from His Throne. However, their futile efforts will fall to the ground because *whom God has exalted, man cannot bring down*.

A Scripture in Lamentations shows that *mad-doo-akh*, which comes from the root word *naw-dakh*, means to urge and to seduce. *Mad-doo-akh* is translated as *banishment* in chapter two, verse fourteen.

Thy prophets have seen vain and foolish things for thee: and they have not discovered thine iniquity, to turn away thy captivity; but have seen for thee false burdens and causes of banishment [mad-doo-akh] (Lamentations 2:14).

When Israel committed idolatrous sins by following Lucifer's false prophets, God allowed her to be destroyed by the Babylonians. The false prophets were to blame for the great calamity because they had used Satan's seducing power to continue in their aberrations from God.

If the false prophets fearlessly had exposed the sins of the people, and if they had told the evil consequences that would befall them, the people would have repented. But instead, being *false* prophets, they enchantingly indulged in alluring, seducing prophesies which mesmerized the people into false security and self-righteousness. Hence, the calamity of God's Judgment was not avoided.

Likewise, when Satan is loosed out of the Bottomless Pit, he will use his same corrupted, seducing power to prophesy to the people who will be born during Christ's Millennial Reign, saying that he, Satan, is the true Son of God, and that Jesus Christ is a fake. He will promise them that, if they will follow him, they will overcome Jesus Christ, and that he, Satan, will give them the best of exaltation.

B. He Will Enchant and Deceive with His Devil Nature — His Beauty

When the LORD looses Lucifer from the Bottomless Pit, Lucifer also will have his Devil nature, which is his corrupted beauty. Lucifer, in his fall, took his Perfection of Beauty and turned it into a Devil. The Hebrew word for Lucifer's *beauty* is *yof-ee*, meaning to be bright, beautiful, fairest one, comely, and pleasant.

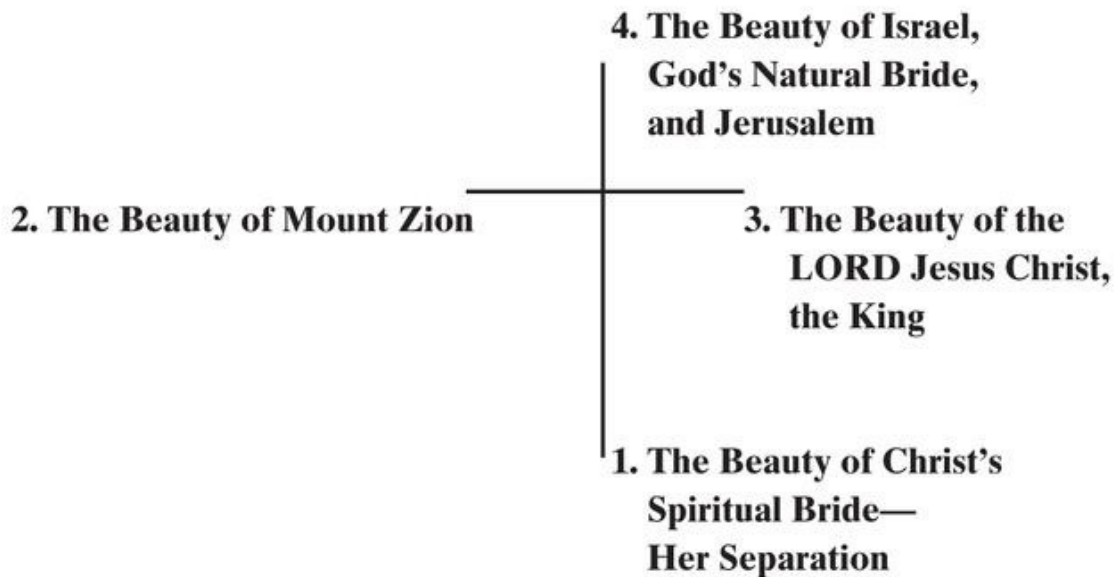
The Devil is an ugly creature, but he *does not* appear with a forked tail, a red suit, and a pitchfork. He uses his

stolen beauty to cover his corrupt nature, and he also uses his stolen beauty to enchant and to deceive.

Let us examine the word *yof-ee* in order to comprehend fully how the Devil devours the human will by the power of his corrupt beauty.

Yof-ee is a word God uses to describe the beauty of Christ's Spiritual Bride; the beauty of Mount Zion — the support of Jerusalem; the beauty of the LORD Jesus Christ; and the beauty of Israel, God's natural Bride, and Jerusalem.

God's Description of *Yof-ee* Beauty (The Beauty Which Lucifer Possessed in the Beginning)

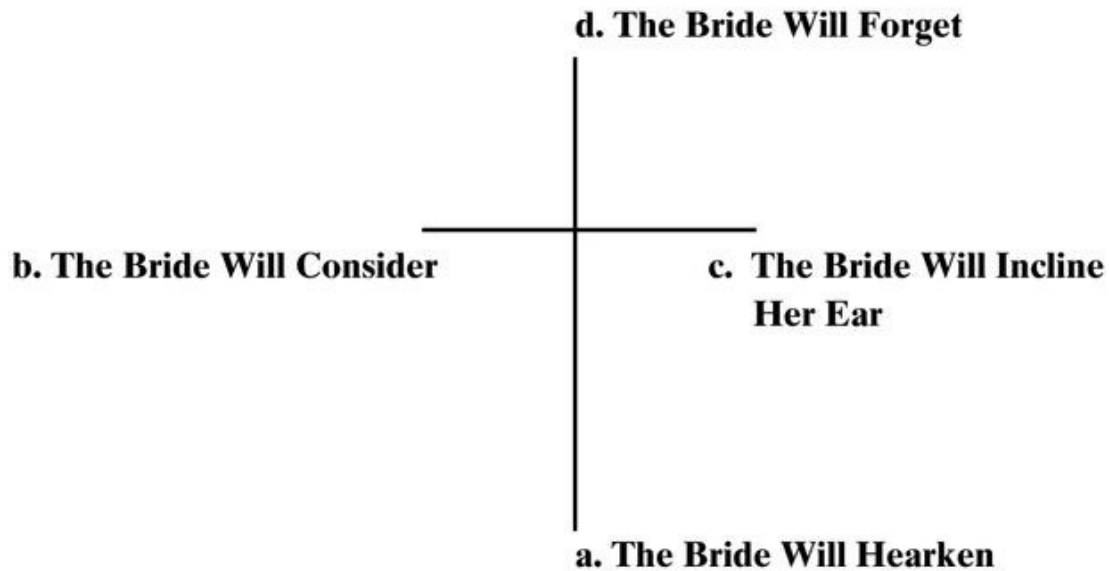


1. The Beauty of Christ's Spiritual Bride — Her Separation

All those in Christ's Bride will have the *yof-ee* beauty of *separation* unto the LORD.

Hearken, *O daughter*, and consider, and incline thine ear; forget also thine own people, and thy father's house; *So shall the king greatly desire thy beauty [yof-ee]*: for he is thy Lord; and worship thou him (Psalm 45:10,11).

Christ's Spiritual Bride will have gained her separation by adhering to the following Stature of Truth:



a. The Bride Will Hearken

Christ's Spiritual Bride will hearken to His Voice so that she can follow Him whithersoever He goeth. She will pay attention to His Word and listen carefully, lest she allow one jot or tittle to fall to the ground.

b. The Bride Will Consider

Christ's Spiritual Bride will consider or think upon His Word. She will direct her mind to His Word in order to better understand it and, therefore, make the right decisions in her moral behaviour.

c. The Bride Will Incline Her Ear

Christ's Spiritual Bride will incline her ear to His *Torah*-Truth. She will bend the "ear" of her mind from a vertical position to a horizontal position in order to become more willing to obey His Commands.

d. The Bride Will Forget

Christ's Bride will forget her people of this world and life. She will separate herself by identifying herself with God's Kingdom over which her Husband, the LORD Jesus Christ, rules. So shall the King greatly desire this *yof-ee* beauty of separation from all others unto Him.

In the beginning, Lucifer had the same beauty of separation unto the LORD as the Bride. Then, he took his beauty of separation to the LORD and used it to separate God's creatures from Him and to turn them to himself. The Devil will use his separating beauty to separate from the LORD Jesus Christ these people who will be born during Christ's reign on the Earth; then he will unite them to himself and use them as his army.

2. The Beauty of Mount Zion

Mount Zion has the *yof-ee* beauty of exaltation. In position, Mount Zion is one of the highest tablelands in the country in which it is located. It is the supporting place of God's *Shekinah* Glory, of God's *Kabode* Glory, of God's *Torah*-Truth, and of God's Great King, His Son.

Lucifer also had the beauty of exaltation for the support of God's Glory, Truth, and His Son. But, he corrupted his exalted beauty by using it to lift himself up in pride and by teaching others to lift themselves up in the corrupt beauty of their pride.

Likewise, when Lucifer is loosed out of the Pit, he will use his corrupt beauty of exaltation to deceive some of the people born during Christ's Millennial Reign, and he will lead them into lifting themselves up in their corrupt beauty of pride to war against the LORD Jesus Christ.

3. The Beauty of the LORD Jesus Christ, the King

The LORD Jesus Christ possesses *Yof-ee* Beauty of Reigning and Ruling Power. This Reigning and Ruling Power is manifested by the LORD Jesus Christ, the KING OF KINGS during His Millennial Reign.

Hear, ye that are far off, what I have done; and, ye that are near, acknowledge my might. The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings? He that walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil; He shall dwell on high: his place of defence shall be the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure. *Thine eyes shall see the king in his beauty [yof-ee]:* they shall behold the land that is very far off (Isaiah 33:13-17).

The LORD of hosts shall defend them; and they shall devour, and subdue with sling stones; and they shall drink, and make a noise as through wine; and they shall be filled like bowls, and as the corners of the altar. And the LORD their God shall save them in that day as the flock of his people: for they shall be as the stones of a crown, lifted up as an ensign upon his land. For how great is his goodness, and *how great is his beauty [yof-ee]!* corn shall make the young men cheerful, and new wine the maids (Zechariah 9:15-17).

The *Yof-ee* Beauty of the King is the devouring Fire of His Reigning Power. His beautiful, flowing Wrath destroys the wicked and purifies the penitent. However, the faithful and the righteous abide in peace and tranquility in the midst of the LORD's beautiful, raging, consuming Fire.

Lucifer, as the Devil, will use the corrupt beauty of his devouring fire to deceive some of the millennial-born people into thinking his beautiful fire is more powerful than the LORD's Fire.

4. The Beauty of Israel, God's Natural Bride, and Jerusalem

Israel and Jerusalem were given *yof-ee* beauty. When God enthroned the nation of Israel as His Queen in Jerusalem, He clothed her with His Beauty of Queenly Reigning Power.

And thy renown went forth among the heathen for thy beauty [yof-ee]: for it was perfect through my comeliness, which I had put upon thee, saith the Lord GOD. But thou didst trust in thine own beauty, and playedst the harlot because of thy renown, and pouredst out thy fornications on every one that passed by; his it was (Ezekiel 16:14,15).

All that pass by clap their hands at thee; they hiss and wag their head at the daughter of Jerusalem, saying, *Is this the city that men call The perfection of beauty [yof-ee],* The joy of the whole earth? (Lamentations 2:15).

After God had bestowed the *Yof-ee* Beauty of His Reigning Power upon Israel, His queenly nation, the Devil taught her how to use her reigning beauty to exalt herself by drawing the other nations to her and her city instead of to the LORD and His *Torah*-Truth.

C. As Satan and the Devil, Lucifer Will Gather Gog and Magog to Fight Against the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bridal Armies

Loosed from the Pit as Satan and the Devil, Lucifer will use his corrupt, exalted, reigning beauty of perfection to

deceive some of the millennial-born people by persuading them to think they will be able to exalt themselves into a reigning position by taking up arms against the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bridal Armies. He will teach Israel to draw the nations of the world to herself instead of to God; then he will deceive the nations into arraying themselves for battle against Christ and His Bride, in an attempt to take their Throne.

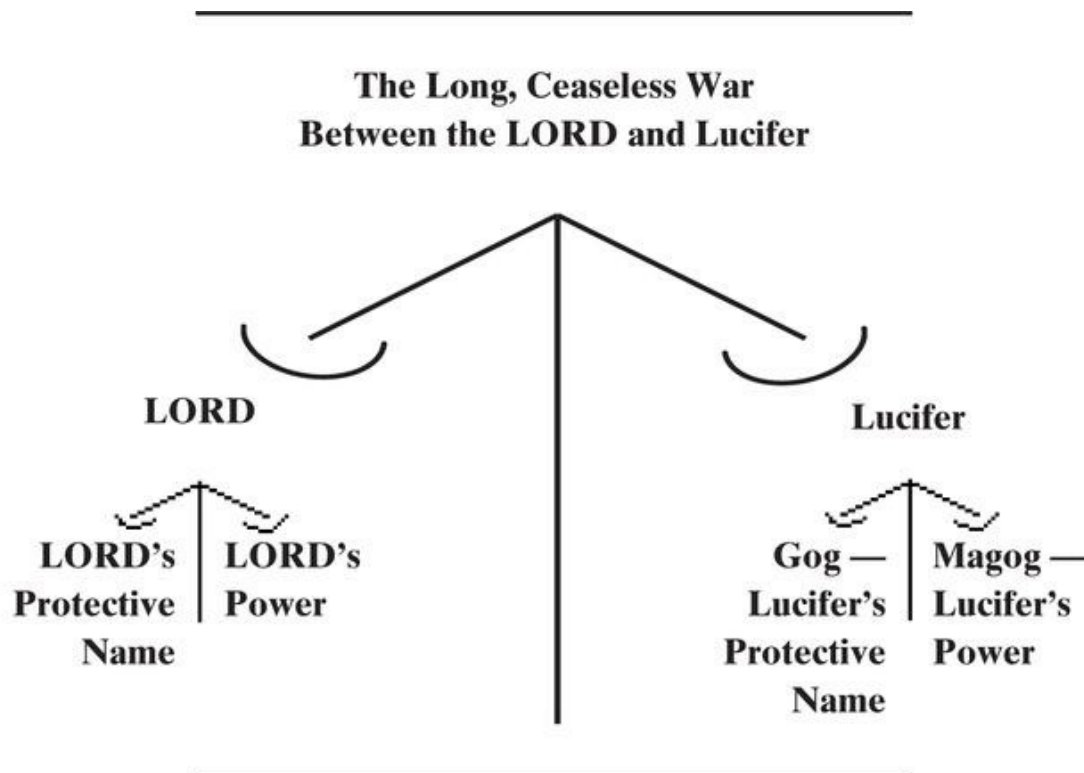
Lucifer, with his Satanic tenfold covering and his Devilish beauty, will seduce and deceive nations from the four quarters of the Earth into gathering as Gog and Magog, which are nations who will bring their people together in armies to battle against the LORD and His camp of saints at Jerusalem.

Gog and Magog are representatives of the deceived nations that will be seduced by Lucifer to engage in deceitful warfare against God's Kingdom of Heaven upon Earth (the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bridal Armies at Jerusalem).

1. Lucifer's Age-old Battle Against the Truth: His Protective Name, Gog, Versus the LORD's Name; and the Power of His Name, Magog, Versus the Power of the LORD's Name

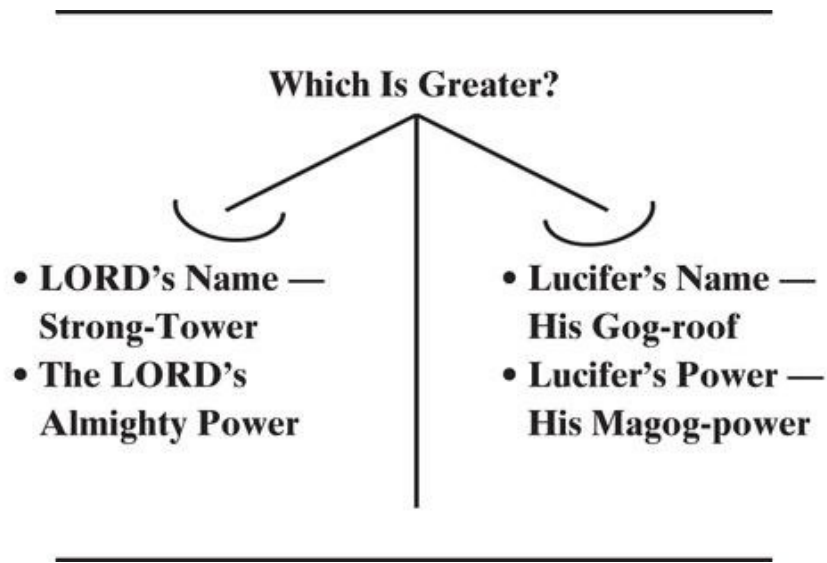
Let us examine the names of Gog and Magog so that we may obtain their spiritual meanings, which reveal Lucifer's age-old battle against the Truth.

The Hebrew word for *Gog* is *gohg*, which is connected to the Hebrew word *gawg*, meaning a roof or the top of an altar, or roof of a house; *gawg* comes from the prime root *gaw-aw*, meaning to mount up, to rise up, to be majestic, glorious, or triumphant. Thus, we see from these meanings how Gog (the roof or protective covering) represents the deceitful protection of Lucifer's name, and how Magog (the triumphant majesty) represents the power of his name. Gog and Magog have warred ceaselessly against the LORD's Name and its Power from the beginning.



God's instructive, historical record gives examples of this age-old warfare so that we can comprehend the final battles involving Lucifer's Gog-name and his Magog-power.

The question is this: Which is the greater protection — the LORD's Name or Lucifer's name, his "Gog-roof"?

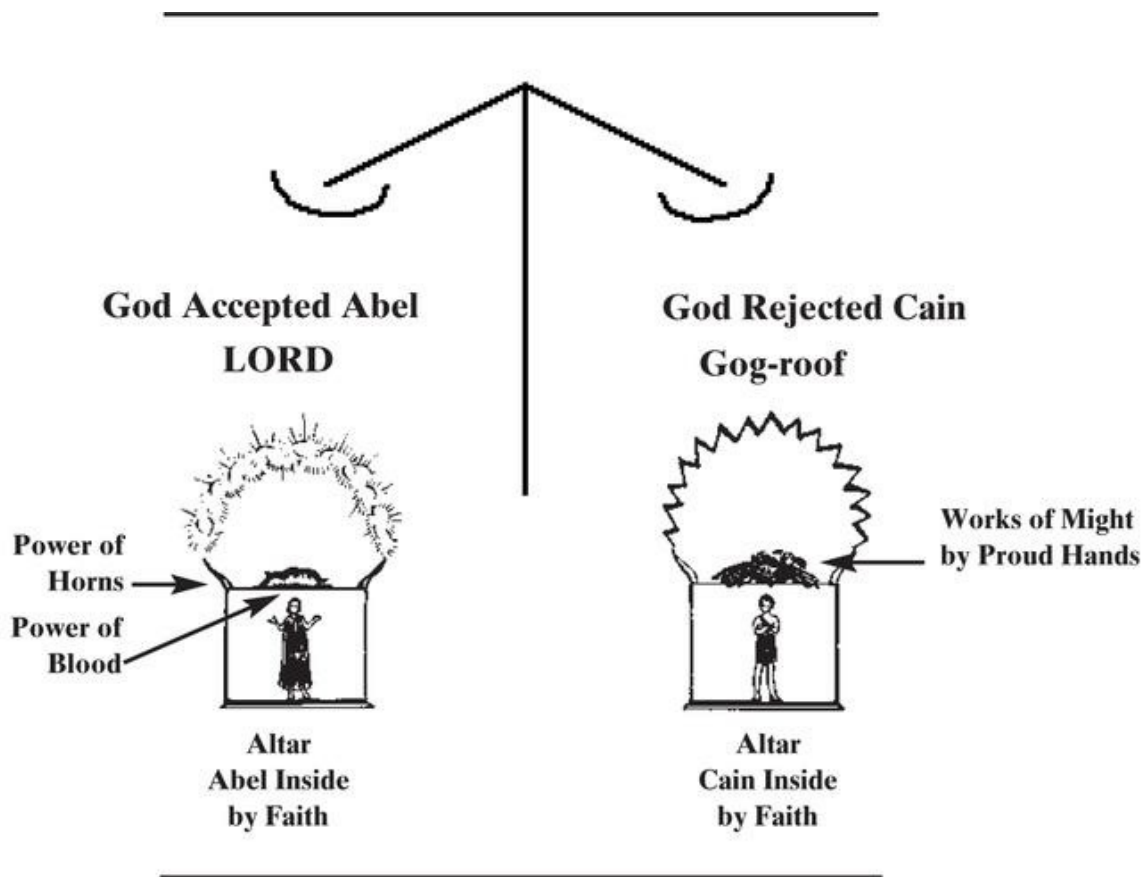


a. Abel and Cain, First Example

The LORD's first battle with Lucifer's Gog-roof and Magog-power was evidenced in the confrontation between Abel and Cain.

Abel built his altar under the Name of the LORD, with the horns of the LORD's Power and the Redemptive Power of the Blood of the Lamb upon it. Abel made himself safe and secure by the LORD's Invisible Name and Power.

However, Cain sought to find security and protection under Lucifer's Gog-roof and Magog-power. Therefore, he built an altar with strong walls and crowned it with his human greatness, displayed in the beautiful, visible fruits of the land that he had grown. He deceitfully imagined that he had built an altar-house with a Gog-roof that would protect him against the LORD's Name from above and His Power to rule over him. Cain blindly thought that his fine altar-house, built by the power of his own might, would protect him in his independence from God.



The LORD's Name is a Strong Tower-roof; the righteous runneth into it and is safe.

The name of the LORD is a strong tower: the righteous runneth into it, and is safe (Proverbs 18:10).

Abel ran under the Invisible Tower-roof of the LORD's Name and won the battle. Cain ran under Lucifer's Gog-roof and lost the battle. The LORD, the Father's Name, is set up so high that it is inaccessible to the dangers that threaten it from below.

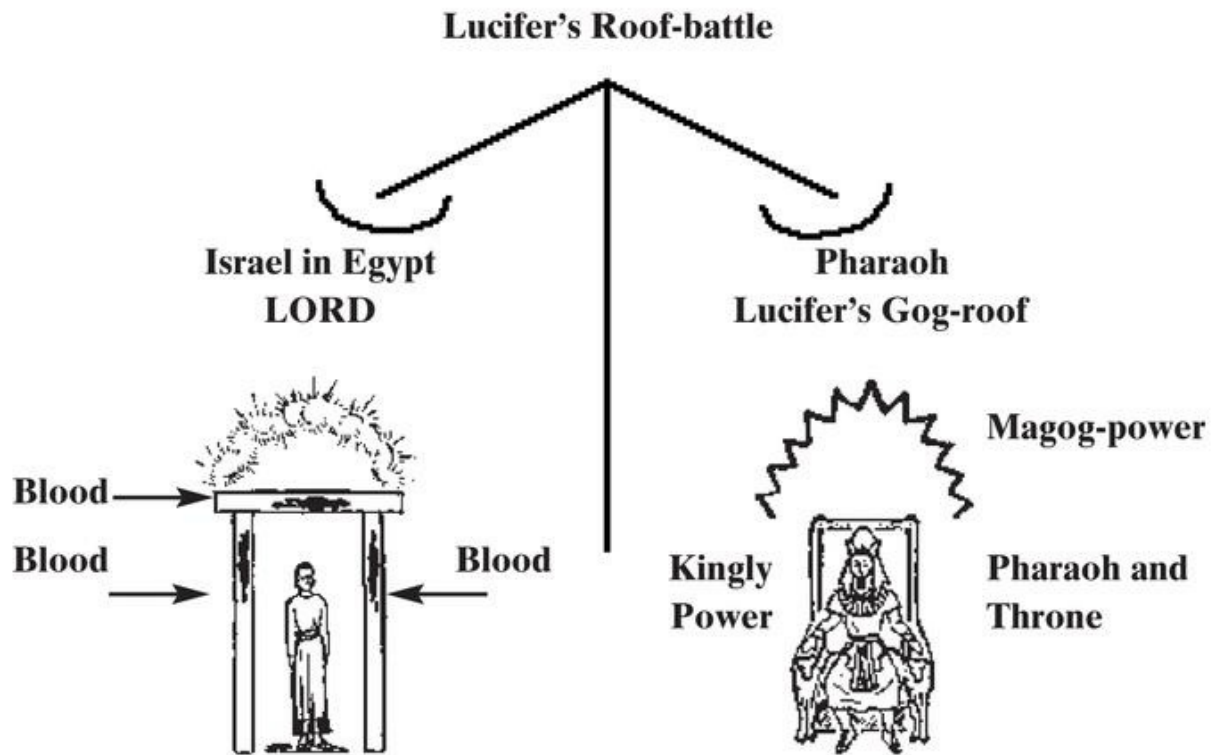
Since Lucifer proudly ascended on high to be like God, he has warred continually with his Gog-roof against the LORD's Tower-roof, by using visible creatures.

b. Jacob and Esau, Second Example

Lucifer battled against the LORD's Tower-Name or roof through Esau, who began his warfare in Rebekah's womb in an effort to win over Jacob, but he, too, lost the battle because his fight was against the LORD's Tower-Name.

c. Hebrew Children and Pharaoh, Third Example

Working through Pharaoh, Lucifer continued his roof-battle against God's chosen people, Jacob's children, in Egypt.



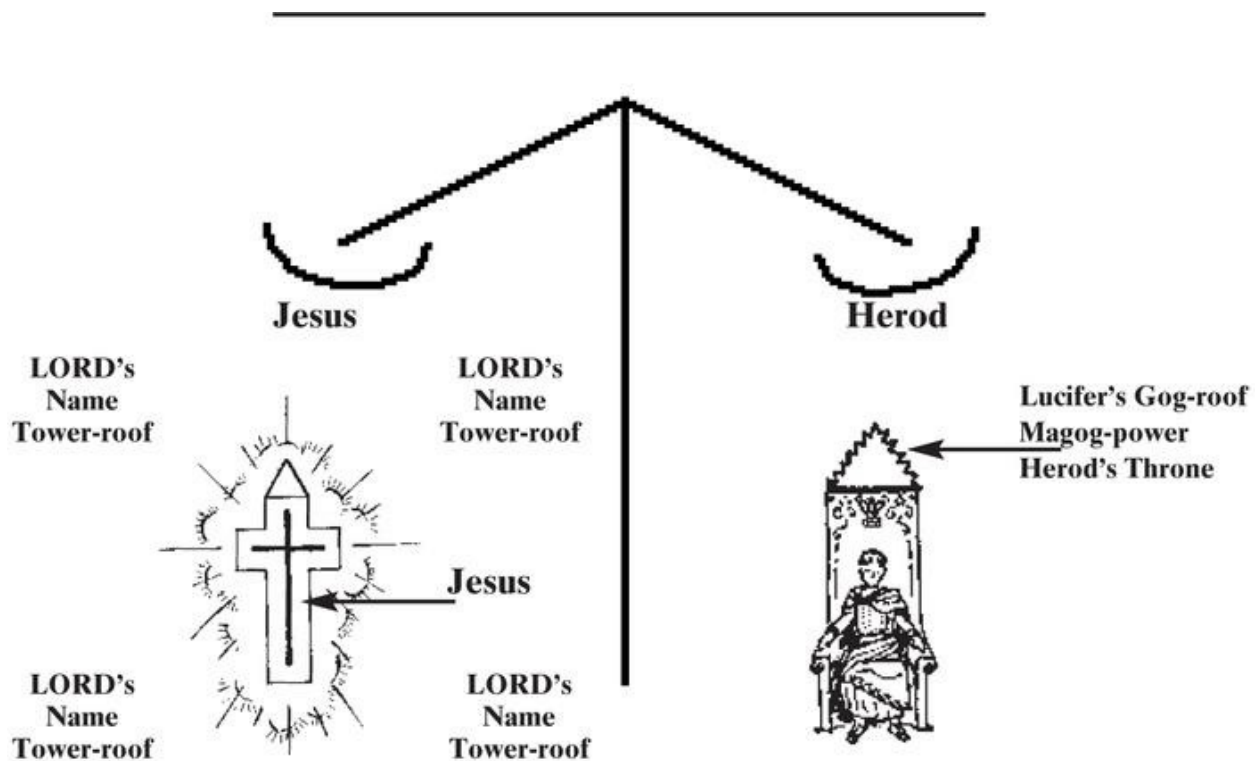
Again, Lucifer's Gog-roof and Magog-power collapsed in death and destruction while the LORD's Tower-roof remained strong, leading the children of Israel to Canaan's Land.

These are just three examples, but the Old Testament is full of classic examples of the battle that rages between Lucifer's Gog-roof and Magog-power and the Tower-roof of the LORD's Name and His Infinite, Divine Power.

Examples exist in the New Testament, too.

d. The Baby Jesus and King Herod, One Example

When Jesus Christ was born under the protection of the Name of the LORD, His Tower-roof, Lucifer immediately gathered his Gog-roof and Magog-power together, working through wicked, old King Herod, as he continued his age-old battle.



History and experience bear witness of the defeat of Lucifer's Gog-roof and Magog-power when it has battled against the LORD's Tower-roof and Omnipotent Power.

e. Believers in the Dispensation of Grace and Lucifer, Another Example

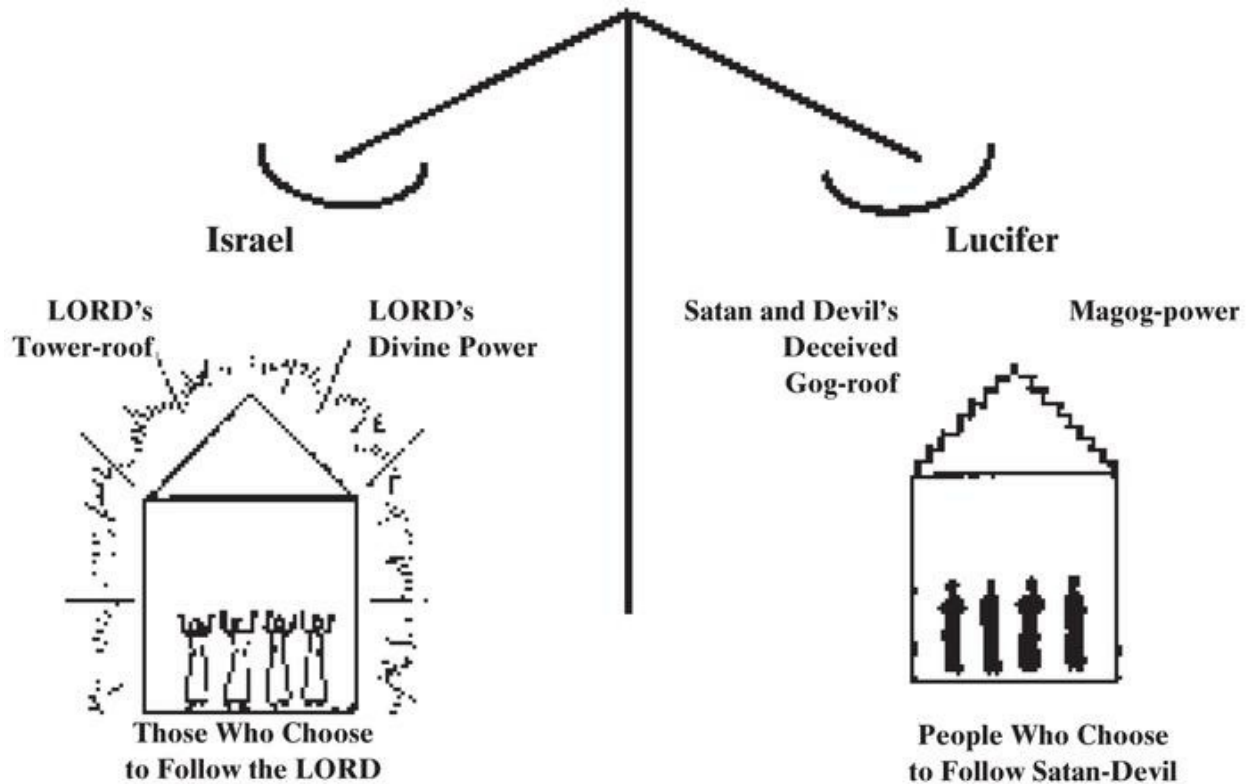
Lucifer has continued his age-long battle against God's Tower-roof, fighting against Christ's children in the dispensation of Grace. Believers are faced with the choice of trusting the invisible Tower-roof of the LORD's Name and His Almighty Power to save them and to protect them, or they can, like Cain, choose to come under Lucifer's Gog-roof and his Magog-power and strive in their own human greatness in opposition to the LORD's Name and Power. They can build their own Luciferic Gog-roof, thus rendering themselves totally independent from the LORD's Tower-roof, if they so choose.

f. Millennial-born People and Lucifer's Satan and Devil Natures, the Last Example

Now we are able to see what Lucifer's battle is all about when he is loosed to practice his Satanic and Devilish deceit after Christ's 1,000-year reign of peace.

Through his lies and deceit, Lucifer will convince many people who have lived under Christ's Rule and Reign that his Gog-roof is stronger than the LORD's Tower-roof and that his Magog-power is mightier than the LORD's Almighty Power.

**LORD Jesus Christ
and His Bridal Armies
in Jerusalem**



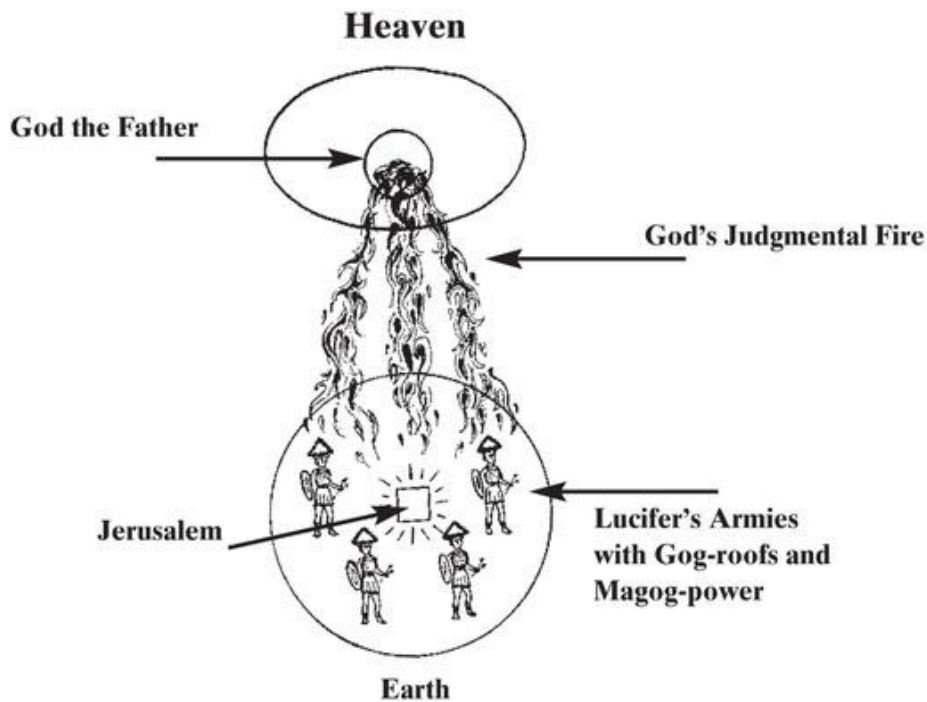
The LORD's final battle with Lucifer's age-old Gog-roof Principle and his Magog-power Principle will be won for Eternity. Human souls never again will be subjected to Lucifer's Gog-roof deceit and his Magog-power deceit.

When Lucifer has gathered Gog and Magog with their barbarous hordes, they will encompass the camp of the saints in God's beloved city, Jerusalem, setting the final battle in array.

III. Lucifer's Armies Will Be Judged

What bold, blind deceit will exist in the hearts of those in Lucifer's armies for them to imagine that Lucifer's Gog-roof and Magog-power can protect them from God the Father's Judgmental Fire from above.

When God the Father sees these formidable armies, with their Gog-roofs and their Magog-power, He will release His Judgmental Fire from above, which will burn through their Gog-roofs and devour them.



God's Judgmental Fire will burn right through Lucifer's deceitful Gog-roof, consuming those who have placed their trust in Lucifer's protective Gog-roof.

The Fire from the LORD's Divine Name and Omnipotent Power will eat away at the bodies of Lucifer's armies until they are wasted away, destroyed, and have perished.

God never has tolerated, nor will He ever tolerate, another "rooftop name" to be in competition with His Divine, Powerful Tower-roof Name. Hence, He will execute His Judgment of Fire upon Lucifer's Satanic and Devilish natures, manifested in his armies who will gather to fight the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bridal Armies.

Lucifer's Satanic nature will be devoured by God's Judgmental Fire at this time, leaving him with only his Devilish nature to go into the Lake of Fire.

IV. Lucifer Will Be Judged a Final Time

God has judged and will judge fallen Lucifer's corrupt nature from above, from below, in length, and in breadth.

Down through the ages, Lucifer continually has been judged by God for his sins. God cast him out of Heaven, and, eventually, he will be cast into the Lake of Fire.

Lucifer's Final Destination

Heaven



**1. Lucifer's Fall to Earth
from Heavenly Position**



Earth



Heaven

**2. Lucifer Confined
to the Earth**



Earth



Earth

**3. Lucifer Chained
in Bottomless Pit**



Bottomless
Pit

Loses His
Dragon and
Serpent Nature



Heaven

**4. God's Judgment
Fire Poured
Down from
Heaven**



**5. Lucifer's Devilish
Nature Cast into
the Bottomless Pit**

Loses His
Satanic Nature



Devil Confined
in the Lake of Fire

When fallen Lucifer originally was cast down from his ruling position in Heaven, he still had access to go there and accuse God's people (Luke 10:18; Job 1:6-12; Job 2:1-7). Being cast out of Heaven was God's first Judgment on him.

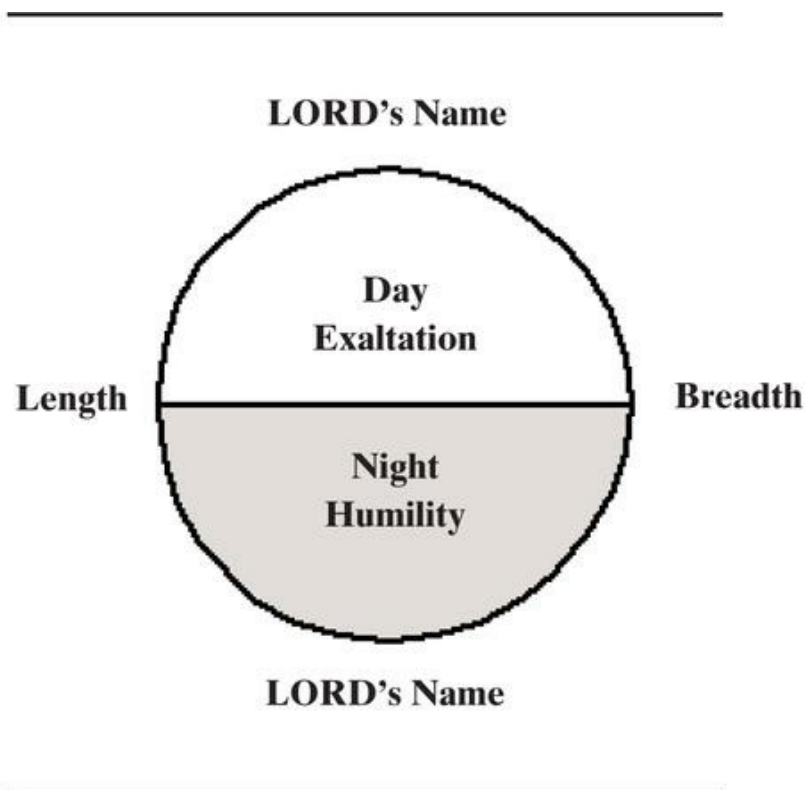
Second, just before the Tribulation Period, fallen Lucifer will be cast down to the Earth *to remain* there. No more will he enter into Heaven to accuse God's people (Revelation 12:7-10)!

Third, fallen Lucifer will be chained and cast into the Bottomless Pit where he will leave his Dawn Light Seal (his Dragon nature). It was his Dawn Light Seal which qualified him to be a doorkeeper in Heaven, but Lucifer corruptly used his seal to unveil himself instead of the LORD. His corrupted wisdom (his Serpent nature) also will be left in the Pit. The fullness of Wisdom, which was His God-given Gift in the beginning, he used corruptly to beguile and deceive the human race. In the Bottomless Pit, the LORD Jesus Christ will judge Lucifer from *below* with the Fire and Ice of His Wrath and Vengeance, stripping him of his Dragon and Serpent natures.

Fourth, Lucifer will be loosed to come forth from the Pit so that God can punish his Satan nature with His Judgment Fire from *above*.

Fifth, loosed Lucifer, left with only his Devil nature, will be cast into the Lake of Fire to be punished in the length and breadth of the Lake of Fire, which will be kindled by God's Fiery Breath for ever and ever.

The term *for ever and ever*, or Heavenly day and night, is used to express the great revolution or turning of the LORD's Holy Name from the depths of its Humility to the heights of its Exaltation.



Fallen Lucifer has used his perfection in beauty to compete with the Beauty of Holiness of the LORD's Name. Therefore, he will be punished by the turning of the Wheel of the LORD's Name in the Lake of Fire. Each tiny move of the LORD's Name will flatten Lucifer with his corrupt Devilish beauty until Lucifer is totally humbled by being stripped of all his corrupt beauty.

Then, they who have followed him shall say:

All they shall speak and say unto thee, *Art thou also become weak as we? art thou become like unto us?* Thy pomp is brought down to the grave, and the noise of thy viols: the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.... Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, *Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;* (Isaiah 14:10,11,15,16).

When the Wheel of the LORD's Great Name strips Lucifer of his abused beauty, his victims in the Lake of Fire will greet him with derision and taunting remarks, saying, "Look at the great, powerful, beautiful one who has become as weak as we are."

He who thought of himself as an immortal god, who noisily plucked the strings of his heart in accompaniment to his song of how great he was, who lauded his triumphs over human souls, was cast down and trodden under by the depths of humility of the LORD's Great Name.

Beyond human understanding is the incomparable contrast of Lucifer's beginning splendour with his ignoble ending. He originally had his God-given Light Seal, his Wisdom, his Perfection of Beauty, and his Tenfold Covering of Precious Stones and of Gold. In the end, he had his grievous degradation, his Eternal judgment, his Eternal stripping, and his Eternal humiliation!

Lucifer will lie in the Lake of Fire, weak and helpless. He, who, by his enchanting deceits, made victims out of the other creatures who will be with him in the Lake of Fire, will be exposed to their weeping and the gnashing of their teeth upon him. The strong one will now be weak. Lucifer will reap incogitable indignities as he becomes the victim of all those whom he deceitfully has victimized during the days of his power.

Fallen Lucifer's historical record and his prophetic record show forth many spiritual Truths, which he and all who have followed him will have to acknowledge:

- God is the Sovereign King.
- God punishes the disobedient.
- God allows everyone to reap what he sows.
- God humbles a proud heart as low, proportionately, as the height to which it has lifted itself.
- God judges in Righteousness and Justice.

These are only a few of the moral, spiritual lessons we can learn through studying what God reveals in His Word about fallen, loosed, judged Lucifer: the Dragon, Serpent, Devil, and Satan.

* B. R. Hicks, [*Lucifer*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1984).

* B. R. Hicks, [*Precious Gem in the Tabernacle*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1972).

Chapter Ten

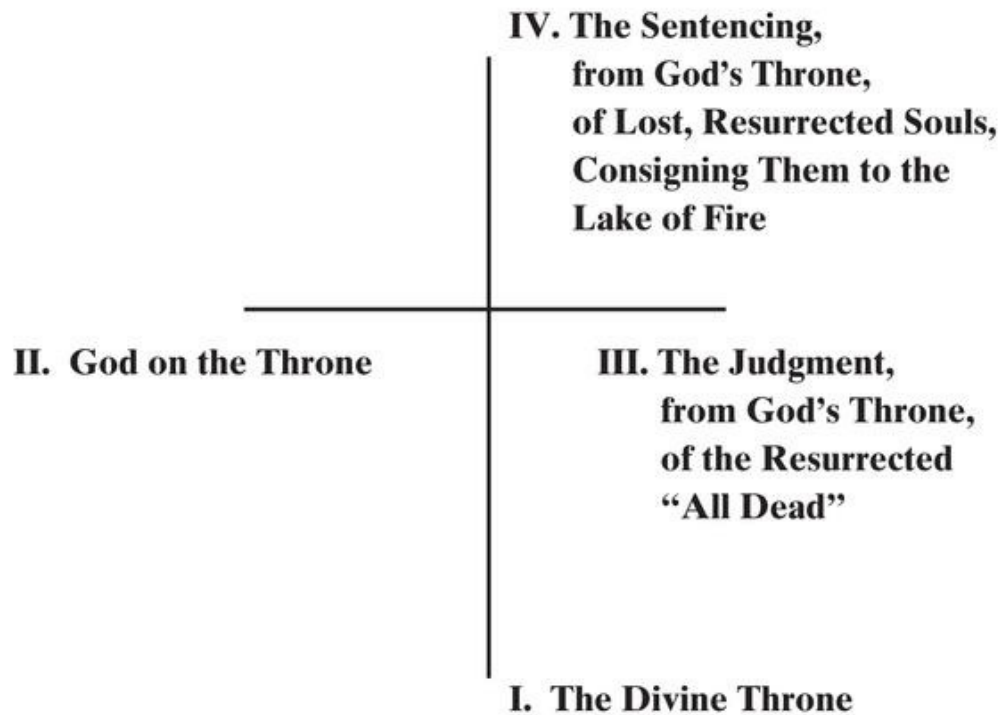
The Great White Throne Judgment

As surely as God brought His creation into being, and as surely as mankind rejected his Creator and sinned, so there will be a day of reckoning, a Day of Judgment when, from His Throne, God will pronounce His verdicts on all unbelievers and on believers who were not overcomers when they died. These will be the two groups of people who will have missed the first resurrection. They will stand before God in the Judgment Day.

In his vision, the Apostle John saw God's Great White Throne and Him that sat on it, and he saw the dead raised from the Sea (the Pit) and from Death and Hell, to stand before God and be judged according to their works. Those whose names were not written in the Book of Life were cast into the Lake of Fire along with Death and Hell.

And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire (Revelation 20:11-15).

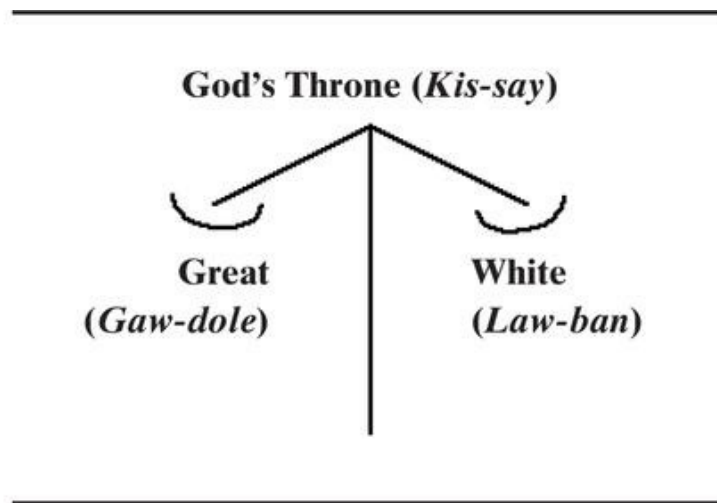
There is a Stature of Truth contained in John's vision which tells us about God's Throne, the Judge Who sits on the Throne, the dead who are judged, and the sentencing of the judged.



The LORD's Throne is one of Power, and He Who sits on the Throne of Power is Sovereign over all, and He will Judge, righteously and justly, those who never acknowledged God as their Master and Ruler while they lived on Earth.

I. The Divine Throne

By using just two adjectives, *great* and *white*, to describe His Divine Throne, God's Spirit has revealed a wealth of Knowledge about it for us to discover as we study these two words. The Hebrew word for *great* is *gaw-dole*, and the Hebrew word for *white* is *law-ban*.



First, let us note the Hebrew word for *throne*, which is *kis-say*, meaning a covering seat, stool, or canopy. The Throne (*Kis-say*) of Judgment designates a forcible separation and cutting off. In other words, it denotes complete withdrawal from sight and unapproachability to touch. The *Kis-say* Throne is a base which raises the person who mounts it to an *above* position that is unreachable by all others.

When God mounts His Throne at the Judgment of the "all dead," the people will not be able to touch His Throne. The *Kis-say* Throne is a High Seat upon which the LORD will sit to judge.

The King uses His *Kis-say* Throne for the purpose of ministering Judgment, which, in turn, will bring all His subjects into peaceful, internal submission in His Kingdom.

God commanded Israel's kings to write a copy of the *Torah*, first, as an unalterable rule of conduct for their lives and, secondly, as a guide for them to use in judging God's people. This was to be the sum of each king's mission (Deuteronomy 17:18).

The LORD Jesus Christ already has written the *Torah*-Truth on Mount Sinai. He already has come in Flesh to prove that His Father's Written *Torah* is the Moral Guide of His Life as the Living *Torah*. Therefore, when the LORD Jesus Christ ascends to the *Kis-say* Throne, He will ascend as the Living *Torah* with the Written *Torah*, with which He will judge the resurrected "all dead."

God's Throne is Eternal. It is a place where all people must come, first, to give an account for their actions when they were in a mortal body before they died and, secondly, to receive God's just, righteous retributions after their resurrection from the dead.

For thou hast maintained my right and my cause; *thou satest in the throne [kis-say] judging right...* But the LORD shall endure for ever: *he hath prepared his throne [kis-say] for judgment.* And he shall judge the world in righteousness, he shall minister judgment to the people in uprightness (Psalm 9:4,7,8).

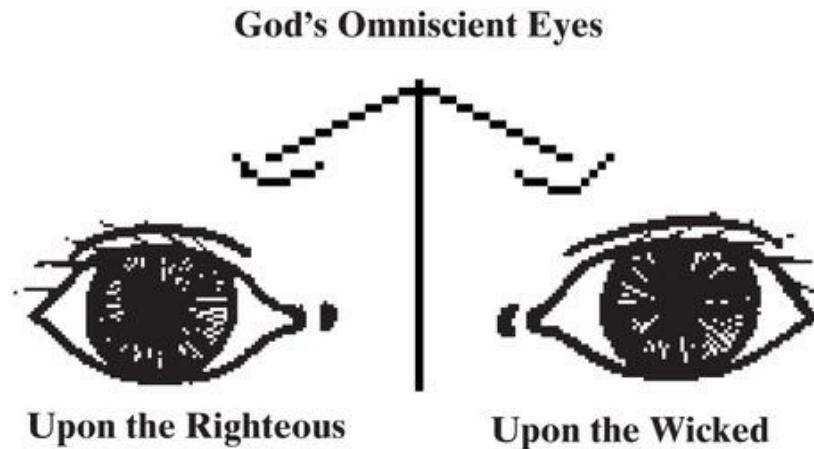
The LORD's Throne of Justice and Righteousness is forever. He will sit permanently on His Throne to punish the wicked unceasingly until they are destroyed and total righteousness reigns.

The LORD's Throne is in Heaven from which He Rules and Reigns.

The LORD is in his holy temple, *the LORD's throne [kis-say] is in heaven:* his eyes behold, his eyelids try, the children of men (Psalm 11:4).

From His Throne in Heaven, the LORD observes and examines all the deeds of both the righteous and the wicked. The LORD's scrutinizing Eyes penetrate into the innermost recesses of man's spirit and heart. The LORD's Eyelids move in perpetual motion, examining and clearly beholding every human thought and action.

From His Throne, God sees those who serve Him with unswerving faithfulness and love, without Lucifer's deception. He also sees the wicked who surreptitiously seek to delude themselves into believing that God is not watching from His Throne.



From His Throne, the LORD is faithful to test and examine both the sincerity and the insincerity of mankind. The LORD's Throne is *for ever and ever*.

Thine arrows are sharp in the heart of the king's enemies; whereby the people fall under thee. *Thy throne [kis-say], O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre (Psalm 45:5,6).*

God's Throne is Divinely ordained to crack evil and to establish right. The LORD's Throne is *Holy*, consisting of the deepest and highest spiritual purity.

God reigneth over the heathen: God sitteth upon *the throne [kis-say] of his holiness (Psalm 47:8).*

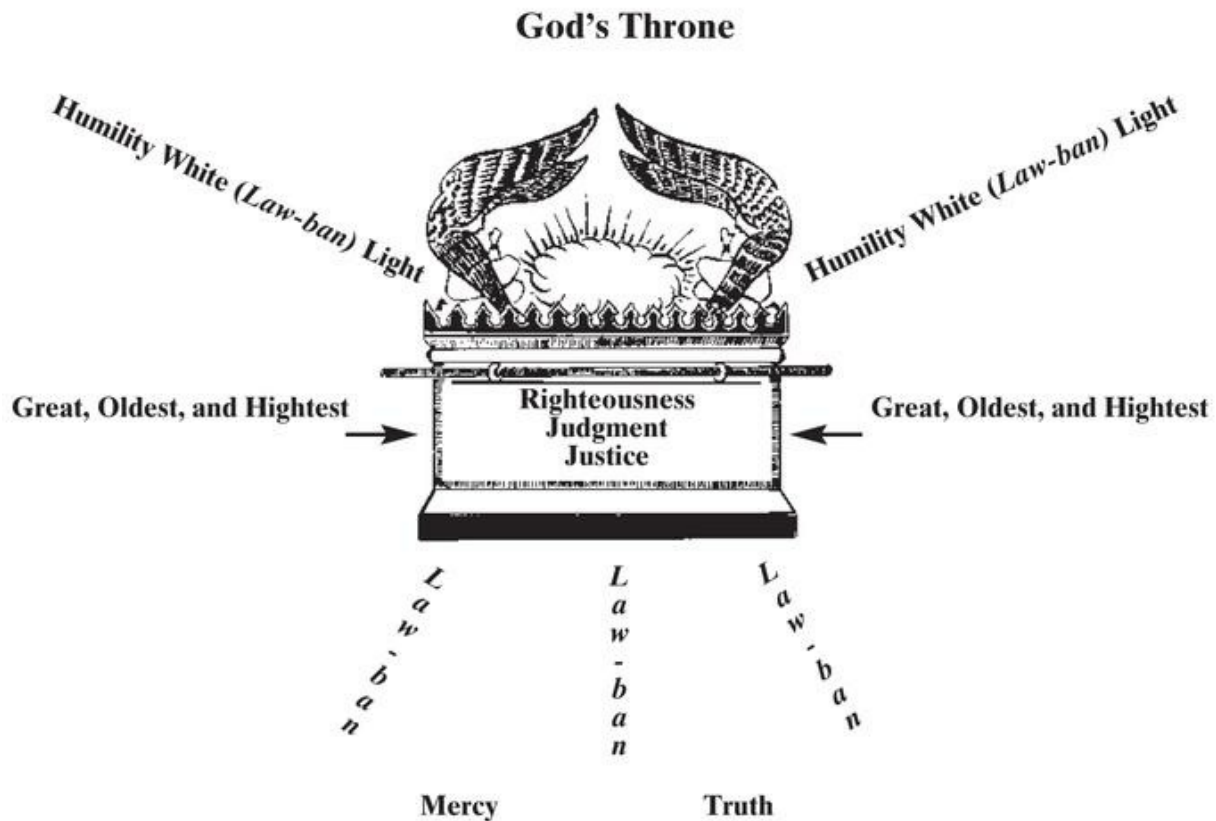
God will sit upon His Throne of Holiness at the Great White Throne Judgment in order to conduct a lengthy and exacting investigation into the deeds of the resurrected "all dead."

Justice and Judgment are the habitation of God's Throne.

Justice and judgment are the habitation of thy throne [kis-say]: mercy and truth shall go before thy face (Psalm 89:14).

Clouds and darkness are round about him: *righteousness and judgment are the habitation of his throne [kis-say] (Psalm 97:2).*

God's Justice, Judgment, and Righteousness are the foundation of His Throne. God is Sovereign over all His creation, and His Dominion is Eternal. God's creation continues to exist, despite its defects, errors, and flaws, because God is Merciful and Truthful.



God's Mercy proceeds from His Face, pushing back the total annihilation that man deserves, and His *Torah*-Truth proceeds from His Face, showing mankind the moral standards of His Divine, Holy Purposive Will.

God established His Throne of *old*, from the beginning.

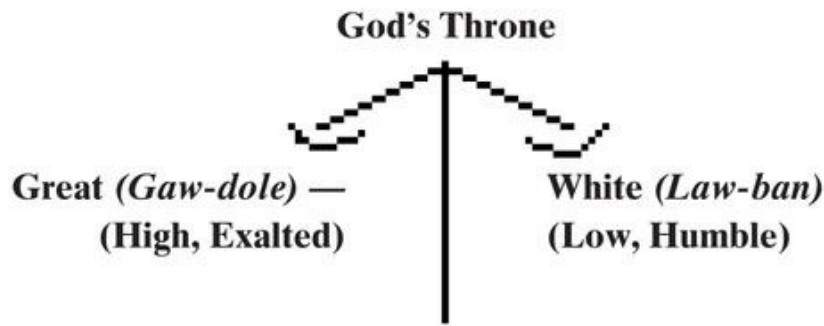
Thy throne [kis-say] is established of old: thou art from everlasting (Psalm 93:2).

At the Great White Throne Judgment of the resurrected "all dead," all mankind will realize that God's Throne was established from the *first* moment of creation and that God has Sovereign control of all His creation.

The LORD hath prepared his throne [kis-say] in the heavens; and his kingdom ruleth over all (Psalm 103:19).

God has established His Throne in the Heavens; therefore, it will endure eternally; and His Kingdom will rule eternally over all.

God's Throne is *Great and White*!



The Hebrew word for *great* is *gaw-dole*, meaning great in the sense of being older, eldest, exceedingly mighty, high, long, loud, more, and noble.

The first use of the word *gaw-dole* in the Scriptures was in connection with the two great light bearers in the sky, the sun and the moon. God created these great luminous bodies of old, the eldest, through whose light the whole physical life on Earth is ruled.

And God said, Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and years: And let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth: and it was so. And God made two great [gaw-dole] lights; the greater [gaw-dole] light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: and he made the stars also (Genesis 1:14-16).

In Exodus, we see another use of the word *gaw-dole*. God used Great (*Gaw-dole*) Judgment against the wicked in Egypt in order to separate the righteous — His people — from the wicked — the Egyptians.

Wherefore say unto the children of Israel, I am the LORD, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great [gaw-dole] judgments: (Exodus 6:6).

From His Eternal Throne, God stretched forth His Arm of Power, projecting His Great Judgments wherewith to punish the oppressing tyrants of wickedness, thus separating His people from them. God intervened in order to redeem His helpless, suffering people from slavery.

Likewise, God will stretch forth His Arm of Power from His Great Throne, projecting His Righteous Judgments to the wicked and redeeming the saved from the chains of death with which they have been bound in paradise since their death.

Because Israel's High (*Gaw-dole*) Priest was a picture of the LORD Jesus Christ, he held an exalted position above all the other Priests.

And he that is the high [gaw-dole] priest among his brethren, upon whose head the anointing oil was poured, and that is consecrated to put on the garments, shall not uncover his head, nor rend his clothes; (Leviticus 21:10).

Jesus Christ, our Great High Priest, possesses perfect, ideal, spiritual qualities, which place Him above all His priestly creation. God's Great High Priest is placed at the very height of all creation, and the creation is commanded to give priestly praise to its Creator.

Hence, it is most fitting that Jesus Christ, the Great Priestly Judge, should ascend to a *Great* Throne in order to minister His Judgment to the wicked and to the righteous.

God's Throne is not only Great, but it also is *White*. The Hebrew word for *white* is *law-ban*, which we already have seen refers to the horizontal, humility Moon Glory of Jesus Christ and His Bride.

The Bride in the Song of Solomon is said to be as fair as the Moon. Christ's Humility Glory, which she will have obtained by following Him in His Crucified Way while she was in her night season upon the Earth, will cause her to be as beautifully shining as the Moon.

Who is she that looketh forth as the morning, fair as the moon [law-ban], clear as the sun, and terrible as an army with banners? (Song of Solomon 6:10).

The beauty of Christ's Bride consists of the horizontal Light of Surrender found in Christ's *Law-ban* Moon Glory. God fed Israel with Manna from Heaven that was clothed with Christ's White (*Law-ban*) Moon Glory.

And the house of Israel called the name thereof *Manna: and it was like coriander seed, white [law-ban]*; and the taste of it was like wafers made with honey (Exodus 16:31).

If all the children of Israel would have eaten, by faith, of this White (*Law-ban*) Glory-Bread, they would have been trustfully happy and peacefully contented with God's provision of food, knowing it possessed due sufficiency of humility Strength to take them to Canaan's Land.

The LORD's White (*Law-ban*) Throne possesses sufficient Strength to support all the Judgments of the LORD Jesus Christ.

God's humility Glory-Strength *always* has been the support of all things.

Moses, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy elders of Israel saw the White or Paved (*Lib-naw*, from the word *Law-ban*) Work of the Sapphire Stone, which was God's Footstool.

And they saw the God of Israel: and there was *under his feet as it were a paved [lib-naw] work of a sapphire stone*, and as it were the body of heaven in his clearness (Exodus 24:10).

They beheld God's Majesty, and beneath His Majestic Throne, the humility, Paved (*Law-ban*) Work of His Precious Stones. All God's creation, His Works, and His Judgments rest upon His humility (*Law-ban*) Glory.

Thus, God's Throne is Great and Exalted. It reaches above all the highest peaks of man's superiority pride; conversely, it reaches below the lowest valley of all man's inferiority pride. Therefore, God's Throne is capable of judging all man's sinful deeds of pride in the heights and in the depths.

John saw God sitting upon this Great White Throne.

II. God on the Throne

The appearance of the LORD Jesus Christ as a Judge, Who has put on the terror and majesty of the heights of His exalted Glory and the depths of His humility Glory, will cause the Earth and the Heaven to flee from His Face.

...and him [God] that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them (Revelation 20:11).

Before this coming event, the Heavens and the Earth never will have been aware of the tremendous heights and depths of man's sins. When Jesus Christ died upon the Cross, the creation trembled and shook in fright, as it saw the Creator dying, because it knew He was the One upholding everything with His Power (Hebrews 1:3). It also will tremble and shake out of fear when the LORD, with wrathful Anger and Fire, returns to the Earth the second time.

But at the Great White Throne Judgment of God the Father, when, through the LORD Jesus Christ, God judges from His Throne, the creation will flee away in fear and fright because it will be aware of how it has been defiled by the sins of man. When the Heavens and the Earth behold the *heights* of the LORD's Exalted *Kabode* Sun Glory and the *depths* of His Humble Moon *Law-ban* Glory, they will flee in fright and fear of partaking in man's Eternal judgments.

They will flee to escape from the danger of man's judgment. As a demonstration of their past unwillingness to be a partaker of man's sins, they also will disappear in order to avoid and to shun man's great judgment.

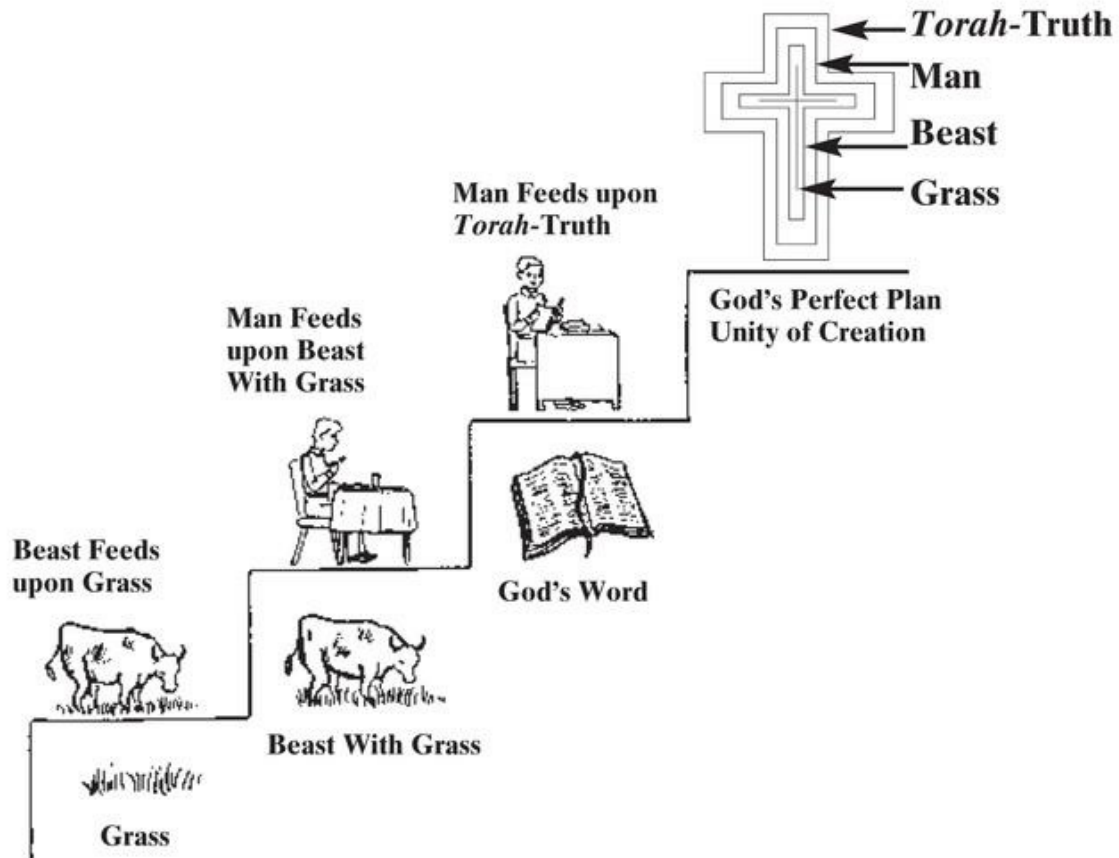
The Apostle Paul described the pain the creation endures because of the bondage of man's sins under which it lies.

For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us. For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God. For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who hath subjected the same in hope. Because the creature itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God. *For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now* (Romans 8:18-22).

God's creation, all the way from Heaven to Earth, has been sullied and stained by the defilement of man's sins. God's great *Tiphereth* Wheel of Unity and Harmony has been defiled and deformed by man's sins. All nature's balance of winds, weather, and water has been distorted and unbalanced by man's sins. The land lies under a curse

because of man's sins. Much of God's created substance has been abused and misused by man's idolatrous hands. Many of God's creatures have been slain for man's lustful sport and greedy appetite. Few of mankind have fed upon God's *Torah*-Truth, with which they could have lifted and brought all other God-created life into union with His *Torah*-Truth.

God's Perfect Plan Unites All Creation



God's original, Perfect Plan was for the created beasts (animal life) to lift the created plant life higher by feeding upon it; by feeding upon plant and animal life, man would bring them to their highest potential as he used their sacrificial, imparted strength to feed upon God's *Torah*-Truth. In mankind the strength of the creation would be joined to the *Torah*-Truth.

All creation groans and travails in pain for the Great White Throne Judgment of Jesus Christ, when it will be loosed once and for all from the defiling bondage of man's sins.

Then, loosed from the terrible, painful bondage of man's sins, the Earth and the Heaven will flee in fright from the awesome Face of the LORD Jesus Christ as He sits on His Great White Throne.

Man's sins covered the LORD's Face with shame and spite at the Cross, but at His Great White Throne Judgment, His Face shall shine with triumphant Mercy and Truth, toward the righteous and against the wicked.

The eyes of the LORD are upon the righteous, and his ears are open unto their cry. The face of the LORD is against them that do evil, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth (Psalm 34:15,16).

The Face of the LORD, His Presence, and His Disposition will be one of blessing to the righteous and one of

anger to the wicked when all the remaining dead are raised.

Two classes of people will remain to be judged at this time — the unbelievers and the believers who were not overcomers at the time of their death. These groups make up the ones called the “all dead.” At last, the people who refused God’s great Mercy and Grace, when offered the chance on Earth to accept Christ’s Sacrifice for their sins, will be judged for their hate and enmity against God. And believers who, although they accepted Christ’s Death for their sins, did not grow spiritually to be overcomers of their fleshly dispositions, will be resurrected to face the Great White Throne Judgment of God.

III. The Judgment, from God’s Throne, of the Resurrected “All Dead”

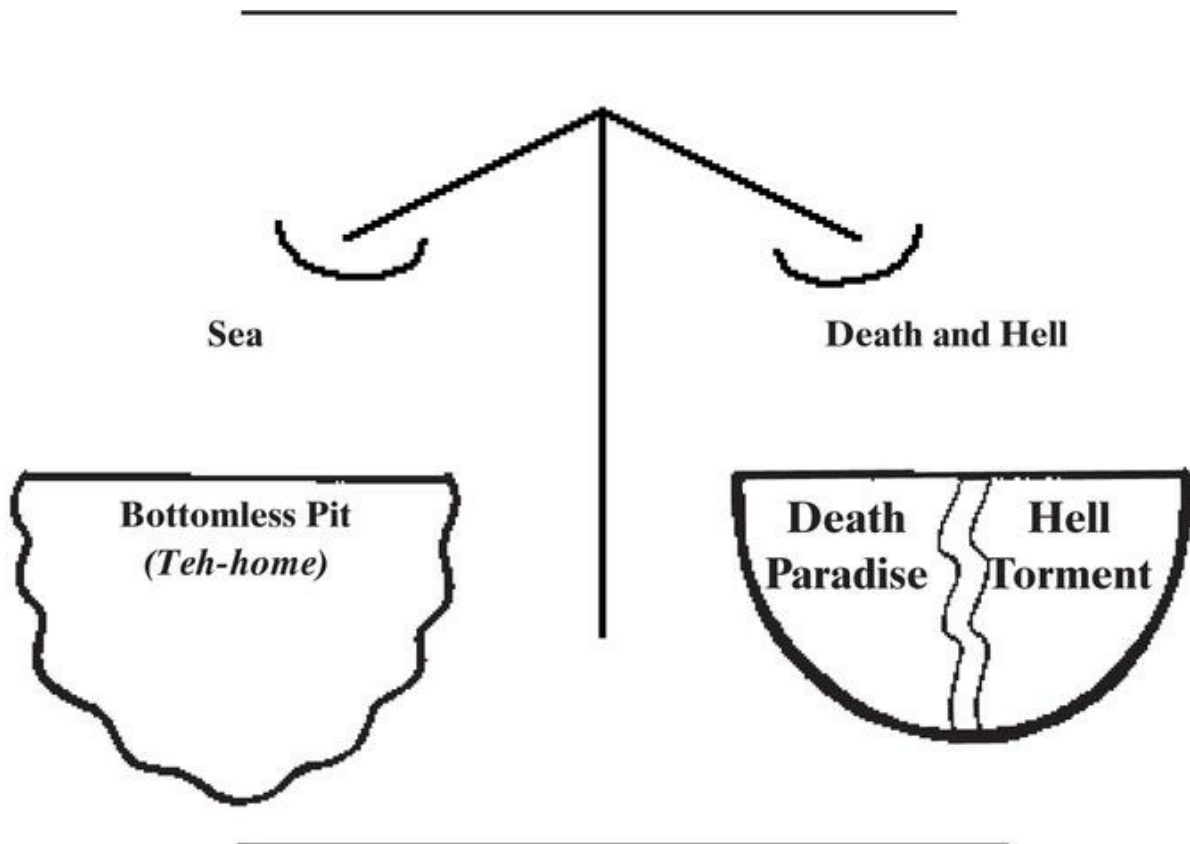
The Apostle John recorded Jesus’ Prophecy of His Great White Throne Judgment.

For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:... Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live.... Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice, And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation (John 5:22,25,28,29).

Believers from the Old Testament and New Testament dispensations who missed Christ’s first resurrection because they were not overcomers will be raised to stand before the LORD Jesus Christ at the Great White Throne Judgment where they will give an account for the deeds they did when they lived in their fleshly bodies.

The wicked also will hear the LORD’s Voice when He gives the final call to *all* the dead who still remain in the grave.

The Sea or the Bottomless Pit, which houses the dead from the prehistoric worlds, plus some from the present world, and also Death and Hell will deliver up the dead in them when they hear the LORD’s final call to ALL the remaining dead.

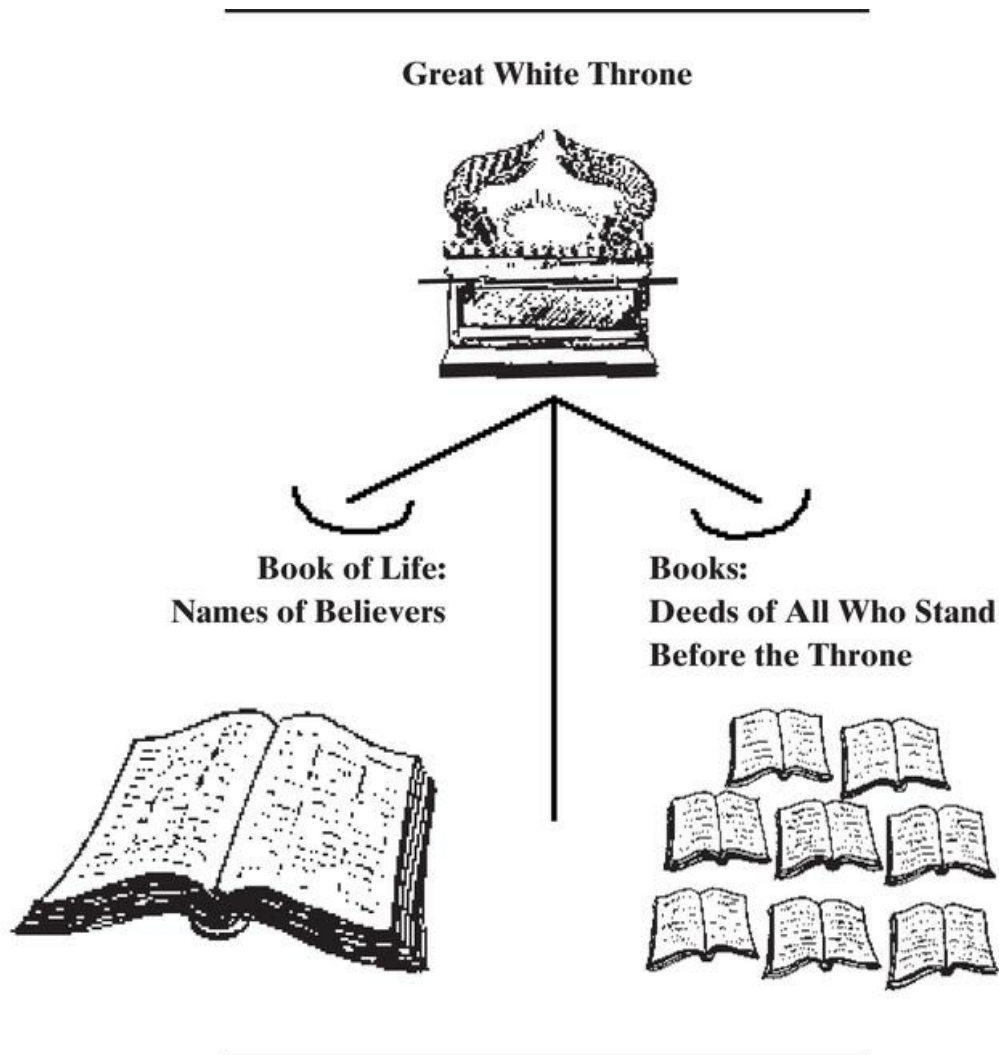


We have explained how Jesus led some of the Old Testament overcomers out of Death or Paradise at His

Resurrection (Matthew 27:52,53), but God's Word does not say that *all* came out of Death and Paradise, only that *many* came out.

At the Great White Throne Judgment, all the nonovercoming saints will come up out of Death and Paradise, and all the wicked souls in Hell and in the Sea or Bottomless Pit will come to stand in the Judgment before the LORD, and they will be sentenced or rewarded according to their works.

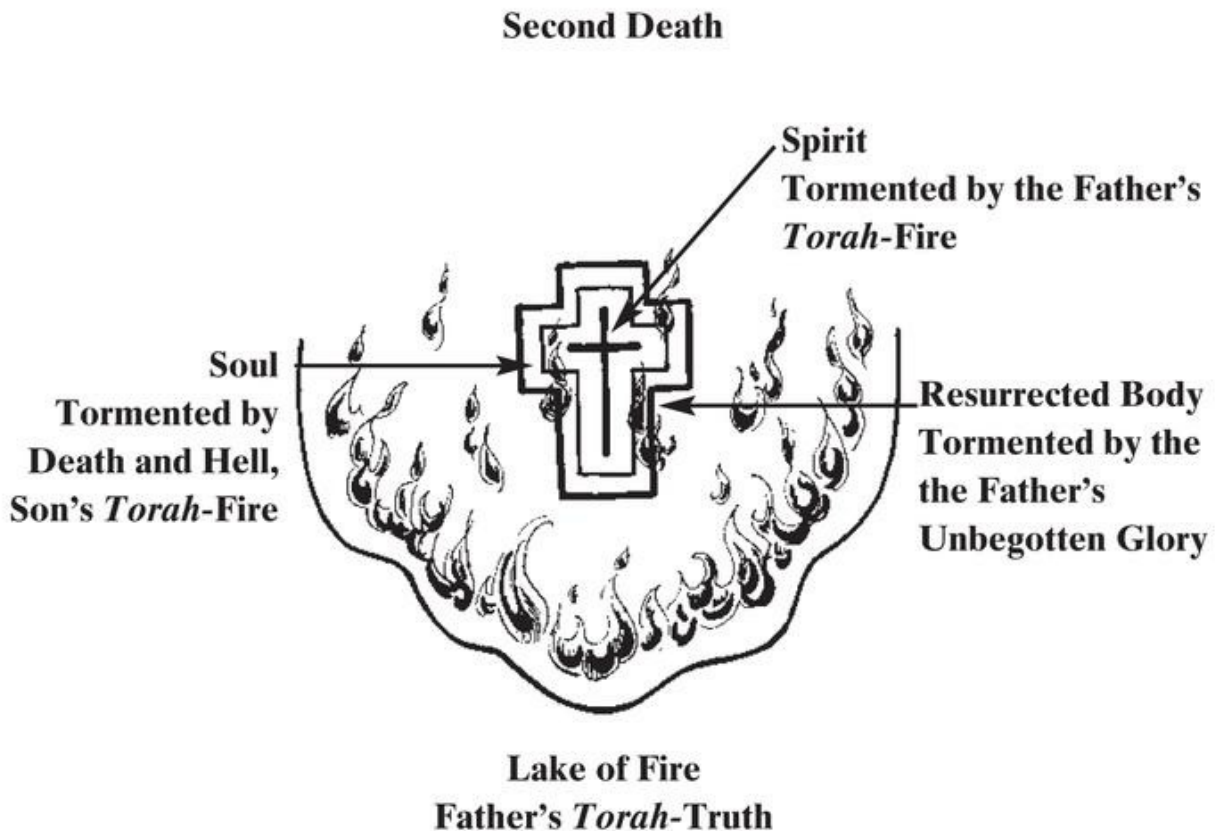
The LORD will open the *books*, the records of man's deeds, and the *Book of Life* which contains the names of believers.



Some men's names will not be found in the Book of Life. These souls will be sentenced by the LORD's Judicial Power.

IV. The Sentencing, from God's Throne, of Lost, Resurrected Souls, Consigning Them to the Lake of Fire

When a lost, wicked person dies, his body goes to the grave to be punished by Death; his soul goes to Hell to be punished by Hell Fire, the *Torah*-Fire of the Son; but his wicked spirit is left free to roam until the resurrection of the "*all dead*." At this time, all wicked persons' spirits and souls will be reunited in their resurrected bodies. After the judgment of the "*all dead*," the wicked will be cast into the Lake of Fire where God the Father's *Torah*-Fire will punish all wicked spirits for their contribution to man's sins.



Wicked, resurrected souls and bodies, joined to their wicked spirits, ultimately will be cast into the Lake of Fire. Death and Hell also will be cast into the Lake of Fire to continue, by the Son's *Torah*-Fire of Truth, their purging work on wicked souls. The Son's flames of "Thou shalt" and "Thou shalt not" will do their Eternal Work upon wicked souls until they bow in humble submission to their Creator.

The Father's Unbegotten Glory-Fire, which will enter the body to resurrect the wicked dead person, will be a flaming witness to his soul and spirit that, from Eternity, they (his spirit and soul) were called to live and to surrender and to bow to the LORD in praises and worship.

With its fiery lessons of "Thou shalt" and "Thou shalt not," the Father's Unbegotten *Torah*-Fire of Truth will do its purging work on wicked man's spirit until man learns to bow in true worship and adoration to his Creator.

Isaiah the Prophet has told us how the Lake of Fire will be created at Christ's Second Coming. The LORD will cast the Beast or False Prophet into the Lake of Fire.

For it is the day of the LORD's vengeance, and the year of recompenses for the controversy of Zion. And *the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the dust thereof into brimstone, and the land thereof shall become burning pitch*. It shall not be quenched night nor day; the smoke thereof shall go up for ever: from generation to generation it shall lie waste; none shall pass through it for ever and ever (Isaiah 34:8-10).

The Lake of Fire and Brimstone will be naked and open to the eyes of those who will be dwelling upon the Earth during the thousand years of Christ's Millennial Reign; and it will be open to the view of those who will live forever on the New Earth.

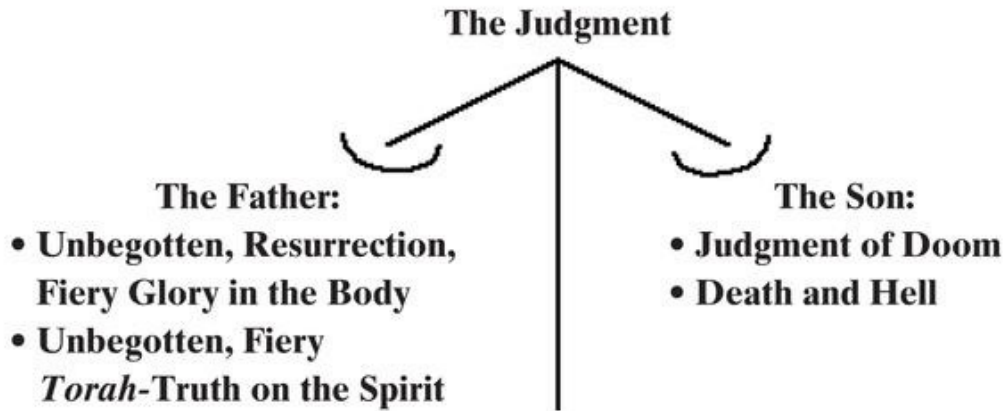
For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the LORD, so shall your seed and your name remain. And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith

the LORD. *And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcases of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh* (Isaiah 66:22-24).

These resurrected creatures will lie as a spectacle to all who come up to worship at Jerusalem on the New Earth. In the world to come, these obstinate souls, who were idolaters in the days of their flesh, will be subject to the never-ending flames of the Father's Unbegotten *Torah-Truth*.

Death and Hell are the punishment of both worlds: the temporal and the Eternal.

The Lake of Fire presents the full picture of the doom of the Flames of the Father's *Torah-Truth* that follows man's sin, transgression, iniquity, and trespasses, which are the results of his unfaithfulness to God.



Wicked souls will escape neither the Father's Fire of His *Torah-Truth* for purging of the body and the spirit, nor the Son's Judgment of the doom of His Ice and Fire of Death and Hell for the soul.

What a tragic fate! What an awesome destiny! What Eternal condemnation! And to think, all wicked people, condemned forever, could have avoided the Son's Judgment of Doom by taking the Son's sacrificial, blessed and free offer of Eternal Life!

The Scriptures that tell us about God's Judgment and Punishment are part of the "all Scripture" that is profitable for doctrine, reproof, correction, and instruction in righteousness. Therefore, let us never forget this dreadful Day of the Father and the Son's Great White Throne Judgment! Let us always keep it in view so that it may be a warning for us to frame every thought, feeling, word, and action according to the unchanging Judgments of the LORD Jesus Christ.

The Great White Throne Judgment of Jesus Christ will terminate the dispensation of Grace, when time shall be no more. And the Eternal state of *all* resurrected dead shall be unchangeably fixed. This event is necessary to vindicate God's Justice.

God's Word gives an abundance of evidence that this appointed day of Judgment surely will come. Death will not keep the righteous from Eternal Glory nor the wicked from Eternal damnation.

Rejoice, O young man, in thy youth; and let thy heart cheer thee in the days of thy youth, and walk in the ways of thine heart, and in the sight of thine eyes: *but know thou, that for all these things God will bring thee into judgment* (Ecclesiastes 11:9).

But I say unto you, That every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment (Matthew 12:36).

Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead (Acts 17:31).

And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, *In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction* from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power; When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them

that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day (II Thessalonians 1:7-10).

And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but *after this the judgment*: (Hebrews 9:27).

And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: *whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not*. For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment; And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly; And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked (For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed his righteous soul from day to day with their unlawful deeds;) *The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished*: (II Peter 2:3-9).

But *the heavens and the earth*, which are now, by the same word *are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment* and perdition of ungodly men (II Peter 3:7).

Jesus Christ will be the Divine Judge at the Great White Throne Judgment. This will be a universal Judgment of all who will be raised at the second resurrection to face the Creator as the Judge of their deeds and as their Sentencer. The time for accepting the Creator as the Redeemer will have passed forever.

Officiating from God's Great White Throne, Jesus Christ will make the final and irreversible decision of life or death, admitting the believers whose names are in His Book of Life to the joys of His Kingdom and rejecting the wicked, not only to the doom of the Judgmental Fire of the Father and the Son, but to the doom of spiritual, outer darkness and to the Eternal despair of never being removed from their Eternal abode in the Lake of Fire.

Let us learn from the Judgment of the wicked and the non-overcoming believers at the Great White Throne what *not* to do. These believers will have missed all three phases of the first resurrection. The wicked ones completely will have missed having their names written in God's Book of Life.

Remember, the destructive force of God's Holy Hatred against wickedness will lie eternally upon His enemies like a sharp sword.

God's Judgment will deprive His enemies of their power to wreak any future havoc and desolation in His Kingdom.

We have seen that God's Throne is unreachable by any other being than the LORD Jesus Christ, Who will sit on the Throne to administer Just Judgment on "all dead" people who will be left in their graves until the second and last resurrection.

God's Throne is Eternal; it is forever; and it is in Heaven. His Throne is for ever and ever. God established His Throne of *old* to be Holy and to be the habitation of Justice and Judgment, which, together with Righteousness, are the Foundation of the Throne.

God's Throne is Great, holding the highest possible position from which to redeem, and it is White, reaching below all man's inferiority pride to lift him into peace and happiness. It is the Humility Strength of God's Throne that supports all creation.

God will sit on His Great White Throne to judge His creation, which has been defiled and deformed by man's sins. From His Throne, God will judge believers who were not overcomers during their lifetime on Earth, and He will judge the wicked. Opening the *books*, which record the deeds of sinners, and the *Book of life*, which contains the names of believers, God will judge them all. Then, He will sentence all lost, wicked souls to the Lake of Fire.

Why people would rather live a few short years in serving Lucifer and wallowing in their own lusts than in living for God is really a mystery; when, in the Light of God's Word, it is clearly established that their Eternal End will be the Lake of Fire.

Man's surmisings and theories about the Truth does not change it. How sad to be one of the lost souls who will miss all the pleasure and glory of being one of God's redeemed ones!

Chapter Eleven

The Renewing of the Heaven, the Earth, the New Jerusalem, and All Things, and the Establishment of the LORD Jesus Christ's Everlasting Kingdom

Sin has polluted all creation on Earth so that after all creation has been judged, God will make all things new.

Environmentalists work to preserve the present Earth, but they are attempting an impossible task. This present world is doomed because of its rebellion and sin, and it will pass away. In its place will be a new Earth — an Earth that will be preserved by God because He, being the Creator, knows how to renew and uphold what He has made. Man will never tap all of God's secrets that would make it possible for him to keep renewing the Earth. God, alone, can keep His creation going on forever. Left to sinful man, destruction and death reign over all. But what hope we have in God!

John's vision continued, and after all had been judged and sentenced, he saw all things being made new.

And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new....
(Revelation 21:1-5).

I. How Heaven, Earth, the New Jerusalem, and All Things Will Be Made New (*Khaw-dash*)

How will the LORD make a New Heaven, a New Earth, a New Jerusalem, and all things new? In order to understand the class of newness God will create in the future when He makes the Heaven, the Earth, and the New Jerusalem new, we must study the meaning of the Hebrew word for *new*, which is *khaw-dash*.

Khaw-dash means to *rebuild*, *renew*, or a fresh, new thing. *Khaw-dash* proclaims Salvation from sin and evil, and it is the commencement of all spiritual building.

For example, *khaw-dash* is the word that is used in connection with God's making a person's heart and spirit new.

And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new [khaw-dash] spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh (Ezekiel 11:19).

A new [khaw-dash] heart also will I give you, and a new [khaw-dash] spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh (Ezekiel 36:26).

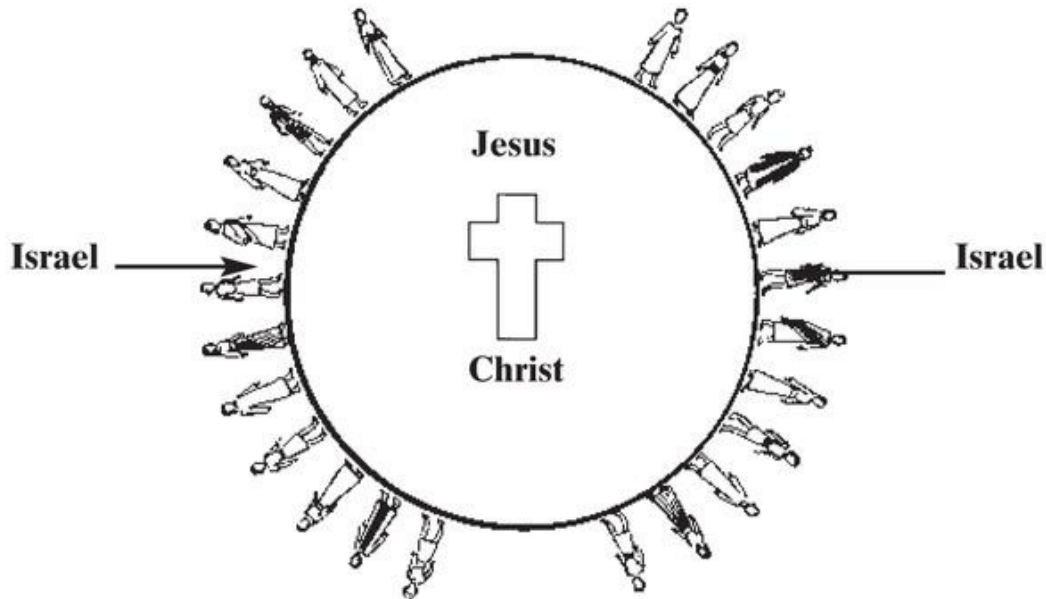
God promised Israel that someday her new (*khaw-dash*) heart and spirit will no longer be divided between worship of God and false gods, but that she will be wholly loyal in the center of her being to God and will recognize Him as her Governor and Guide.

God promised Israel a new (*khaw-dash*) heart because He would *remake* it. He would take out her former hardness and obstinacy and transform her heart into a soft, sensitive, surrendered organ. When God *cleanses and changes the nature* of a thing, it is said to be *new (khaw-dash)*.

A new heart and spirit gratefully and willingly accept reproof and instruction.

Israel's new spirit and single-minded heart of flesh, which God will give her in the Millennial Reign, will enable her to revolve on Jesus Christ's great *Tiphereth* Wheel of Unity, of which He is the Center.

Jesus Christ's *Tiphereth* Wheel of Unity



God's Word commands us to sing a new (*khaw-dash*) song unto the LORD. In this world of misery, and after every painful tragedy we experience, God wants our heart and spirit to form new songs of praise and thanksgiving. He wants us to play well on our harp of humility, with fresher and deeper feelings. When we have been broken with seemingly unbearable pains and shattering afflictions, God wants our heart and spirit to sing joyfully a new song of gratitude to Him for His Redeeming Presence.

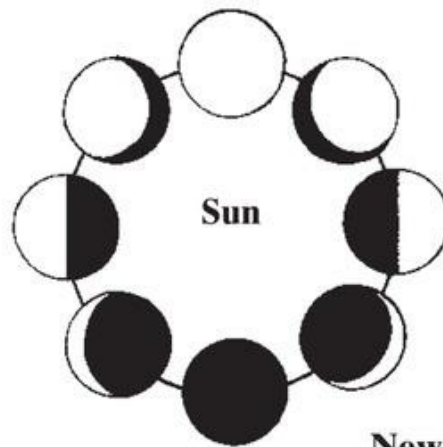
When God called Israel to begin her journey from Egypt to Canaan's Land, He instituted the Feast of the Passover at the time of the new (*khaw-dash*) Moon.

Israel's first month of freedom under the Blood and under the light of the new Moon was to begin her reckoning of time. Israel's spiritual calendar was to be reckoned from the hour of her freedom.

Israel was commanded to celebrate the arrival of the new Moon each month so that she always would remember her hour of freedom and the LORD's Redemptive Love for her. Hence, she would grow in her spiritual love, gratitude, and reverence.

The renewal of the Moon in the natural realm was a reminder to Israel always to seek God, especially for a spiritual renewal in her own heart. The fresh, new birth of the Moon was to be an inducement to Israel to experience a similar spiritual rejuvenation in her heart and spirit.

The LORD showed His people a lesson of renewal and rejuvenation through the continuous cycles that the Moon makes around the Sun. The Moon always is hurrying to a new birth, another rejuvenation, as it takes in fresh light from the Sun.



**New Birth of
Moon Light**

When Israel saw the tiny, new crescent of light from the Moon that had struggled to birth out of complete darkness, it was a reminder that she, too, could be rejuvenated in heart and spirit.

This Principle is an instructive example from God, which shows that man always has the privilege of making a fresh, new start in his heart and spirit.

As Christ's people of Light, we voluntarily must seek a rebirth of His Light of Truth in our inner self and find a fresh, new union and communion with His precious Spirit.

This newness is the foundation for all spiritual beginnings and growth in Christ Jesus.

These few examples of the use of the word *new* (*khaw-dash*) allow us to comprehend that something *new* does not mean that the part of creation referred to never before has been in existence, but that the thing or person has been refreshed and rejuvenated, made young again, brought back to the youthful strength and beautiful appearance that it originally had.

This is how, then, the LORD will make new the Heaven, the Earth, the New Jerusalem, and all things. He will renew them.

II. King David Will Take the Earthly Throne in Jerusalem While the LORD Jesus Christ Returns to His Heavenly Throne to Begin His Work of Renewing All

After the Great White Throne Judgment, from His Throne in Heaven, the LORD will begin His Work of making new the Heaven, the Earth, the New Jerusalem, and *all* things. After Christ has ruled and reigned a thousand years, He will give the Throne in the earthly Jerusalem to resurrected King David for him to rule, as God had promised through the Prophets that he would do.

But they shall serve the LORD their God, and David their king, whom I will raise up unto them (Jeremiah 30:9).

Jesus Christ will leave the ministry of ruling and reigning over the New Earth to resurrected King David and the nation of Israel. At this time, Israel will enter into the fullness of God's Moral Mission and High Calling for her to rule over all the nations of Earth.

And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. And I the LORD will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the LORD have spoken it (Ezekiel 34:23,24).

And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them. And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever. Moreover I will make a covenant of peace with them; it shall be an everlasting covenant with them: and I will place them, and multiply them, and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore. My tabernacle also shall be with them: yea, I will be their God, and they shall be my people. And the heathen shall know that I the LORD do sanctify Israel, when my sanctuary shall be in the midst of them for evermore (Ezekiel 37:24-28).

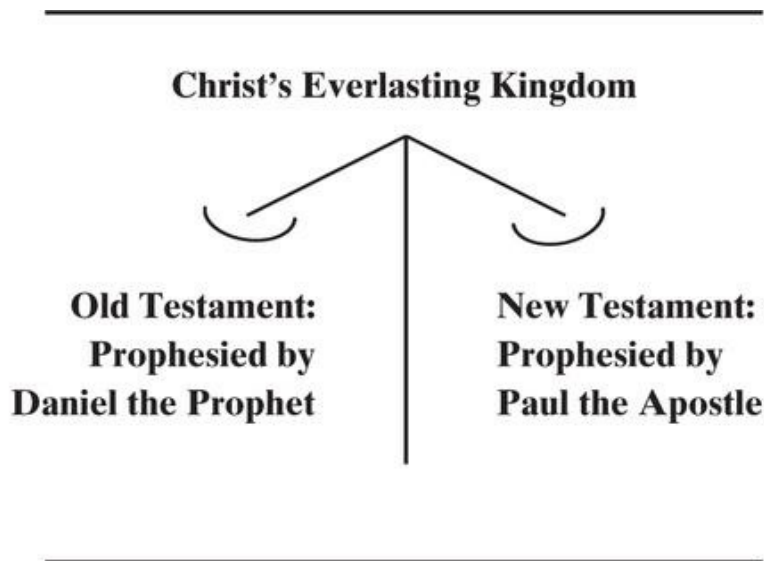
These Scriptures are very clear and self-explanatory.
Hosea the Prophet also foretold King David's future reign in Israel.

Afterward shall *the children of Israel return*, and seek the LORD their God, *and David their king*; and shall fear the LORD and his goodness in the latter days (Hosea 3:5).

When David takes the Throne in earthly Jerusalem, Jesus Christ and His Bride will return to their Heavenly Father to receive an Everlasting Kingdom in which Jesus will make *new (khaw-dash)* the Heaven, the Earth, the Heavenly Jerusalem, and *all* things.

III. The Everlasting Kingdom, in Which All Will Be Made New, Will Be Given to the LORD Jesus Christ

Both the Old Testament and the New Testament tell us about the LORD Jesus Christ's Everlasting Kingdom and Dominion.

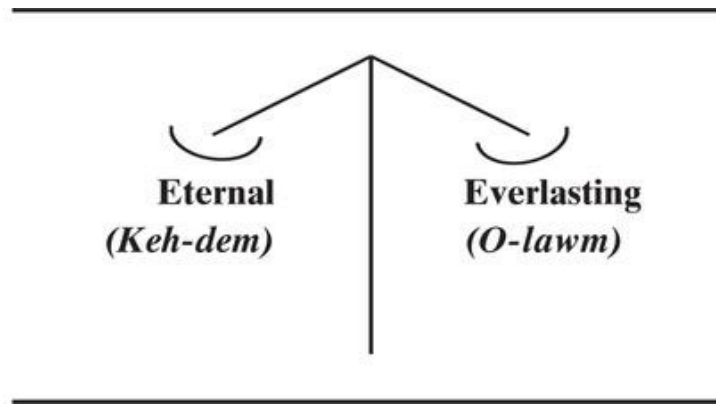


I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: *his dominion is an everlasting dominion*, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.... But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and *possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever....* And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, *whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom*, and all dominions shall serve and obey him (Daniel 7:13,14,18,27).

The Son of Man, Jesus Christ, came and was brought *before (keh-dem)* the Ancient of Days, the Heavenly Father, Who gave His Son Dominion, Sovereign Authority, Power, and Rulership as Master and LORD, with which He was to govern, control, and subdue all people, all nations, and all languages in Heaven, in Earth, and in the Lake of Fire. His Kingdom is to be an *Everlasting (O-lawm)* Kingdom.

There is a difference between the terms Eternal and Everlasting. The Hebrew word for *eternal* is *keh-dem*, meaning in front of all things, the forepart, antiquity. The Hebrew word for *everlasting* is *o-lawm*, meaning to hide,

conceal, a time hidden, indefinitely and unlimited.



The Ancient of Days, the Unbegotten LORD Who has no beginning nor end, existed in Eternity-Past. He begot His only begotten Son (the Christ, His Wisdom-Word, His *Torah*-Truth) and placed upon Him His Infinite, Divine, Ineffable, Tetragrammaton Name of “LORD” and set it in Everlasting (*O-lawm*) Motion for the support of all creation that was to be created and brought forth.

The LORD possessed me [Wisdom] in the beginning of his way, before his works of old. *I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was.* When there were no depths, I was brought forth; when there were no fountains abounding with water. Before the mountains were settled, before the hills was I brought forth: (Proverbs 8:22-25).

The Eternal (*Keh-dem*) God possessed His Son in His Bosom in Eternity-Past (*Keh-dem*).

No man hath seen God at any time; *the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father*, he hath declared him (John 1:18).

In the beginning was the Word, *and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by him;* and without him was not any thing made that was made (John 1:1-3).

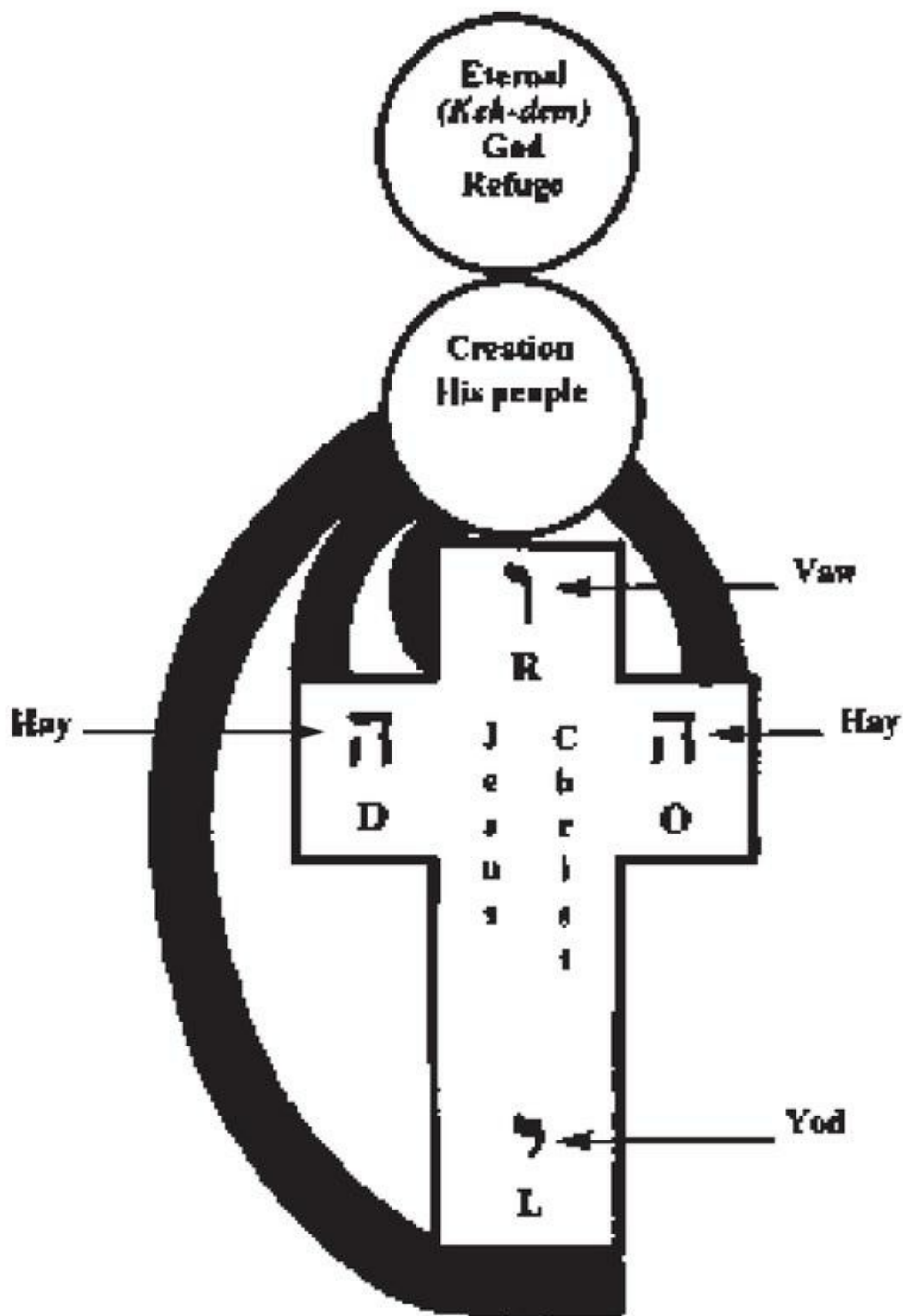
God created all things by His Word, the Christ, and He upholds all things by Him Who has the Everlasting Wheel of His Name, LORD.

God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets, Hath in these last days spoken unto us by *his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;* Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and *upholding all things by the word of his power*, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; (Hebrews 1:1-3).

Moses confirmed, in the *Torah*, this same Truth of the Everlasting Arms of the LORD’s Name in Christ Jesus.

The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them (Deuteronomy 33:27).

The Eternal God is the Refuge, the Dwelling Place, the Temple, from Eternity-Past. He is the Dwelling Place for His people, and the Everlasting Arms of His Name in His Son are the upholding supports, from beneath, for all creation.



The Eternal God is the Sovereign, Unbegotten God Who rules in the heights. And His Son is the Word Whose Arms of the LORD's Everlasting Name bear, from the depths below, every fleeting moment of present Time. The Eternal God abides of *old (keh-dem)*.

God shall hear, and afflict them, even *he that abideth of old*. Selah. Because they have no changes, therefore they fear not God (Psalm 55:19).

He Who is enthroned from old, from Eternity-Past, is the Enforcer of strict justice; therefore, His Strength and Power surpass that of all His combined creation. He has the Infinite, Divine Power to humble all proud, wicked beings and to exalt the humble, righteous ones.

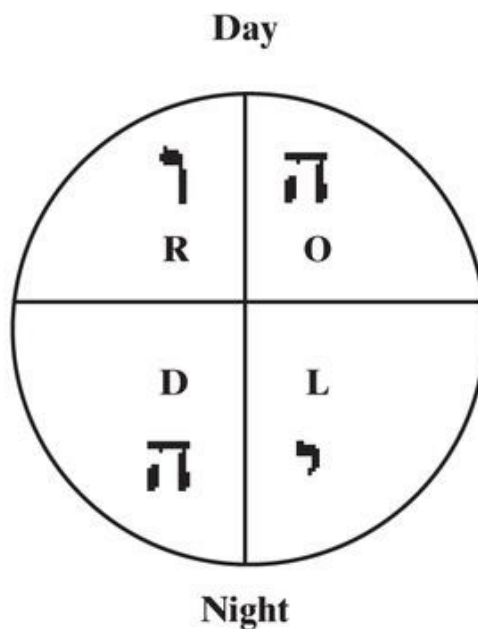
This Eternal Ancient of Days will be the One before Whom the Son of Man will be brought in order to receive His new Everlasting (*O-lawm*) Kingdom or Power from the turning of the Wheel of the LORD's Almighty Name so that He can make a New Heaven, a New Earth, a New Heavenly Jerusalem, and all things new.

In the New Testament, the Apostle Paul confirmed the Son's special Everlasting (*O-lawm*) Kingdom.

Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet. The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death. For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him. And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all (1 Corinthians 15:24-28).

The LORD Jesus Christ will keep turning the Wheel of His Father's Name until He threshes out all the chaff in all the creation.

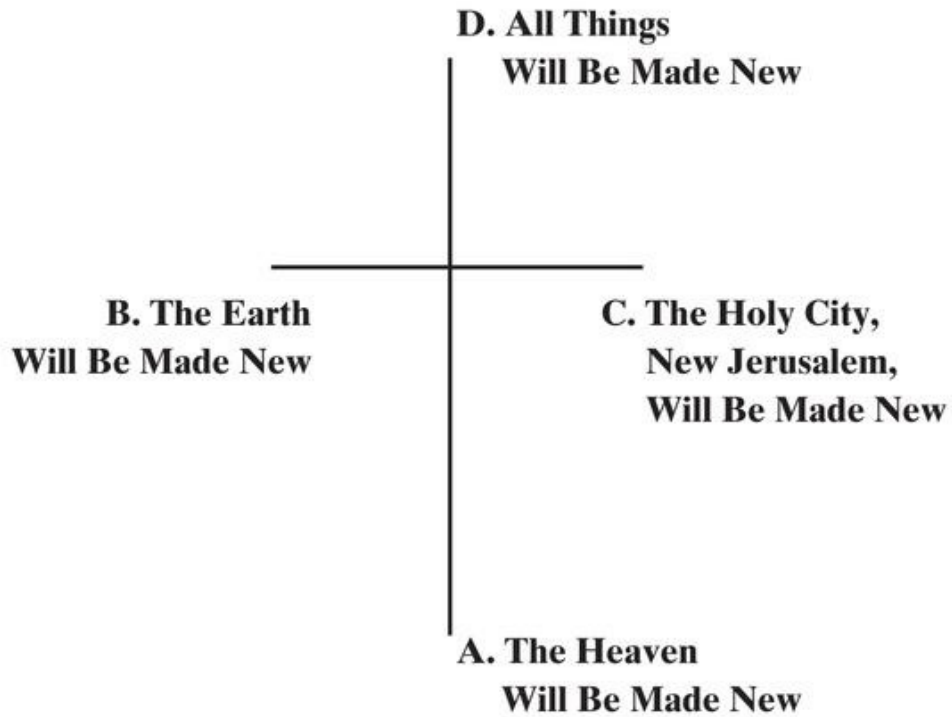
Wheel of the LORD's Name



The revolutions of the Wheel of the LORD's Name is what forms the everlasting cycle of Day and Night in Heaven (Revelation 7:15; 12:10). The revolving Wheel of the LORD's Name also forms an everlasting cycle in the Lake of Fire (Revelation 14:11; 20:10).

When the LORD Jesus Christ is given the Power of the Almighty Father's Name to use in His Everlasting Kingdom, the Wheel of His Name will turn, exerting its Power until all is new — the Heaven — the Earth — the New City — and all things.

The LORD Will Make New:



A. The Heaven Will Be Made New

The Wheel of the LORD's Name, turning in its Everlasting Cycle, must cleanse and sanctify the Heaven, the place of the Father's Temple, until Christ Jesus has put down all opposing rule and all resisting authority and all combating power in Heaven, which will make it a *New (Khaw-dash)* Heaven because it will be freed from sin and evil and returned to its youthful strength and beauty of appearance as in its original beginning. Hence, it becomes a *New Heaven*.

Obviously, since Heaven will be purified and cleansed at this time, it follows that, during this time of renewal, the fallen angels will be judged and cast into the Lake of Fire (Matthew 25:41).

B. The Earth Will Be Made New

Jesus Christ must reign as LORD OF LORDS until He puts all enemies under His feet in the Heaven; and He must reign over the Earth and the Lake of Fire until He subdues all rebellion and destroys death, both the first death and the second death, so that the Earth also will be new.

Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: That *at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth*; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father (Philippians 2:9-11).

Jesus has been made both LORD and Christ (Acts 2:36). Therefore, He possesses the Everlasting Wheel of the

LORD's Name to make all things bow to His Name in Heaven, in the Earth, and under the Earth.

The Apostle John prophetically saw and heard all these creatures giving praises unto the Father and unto the Lamb.

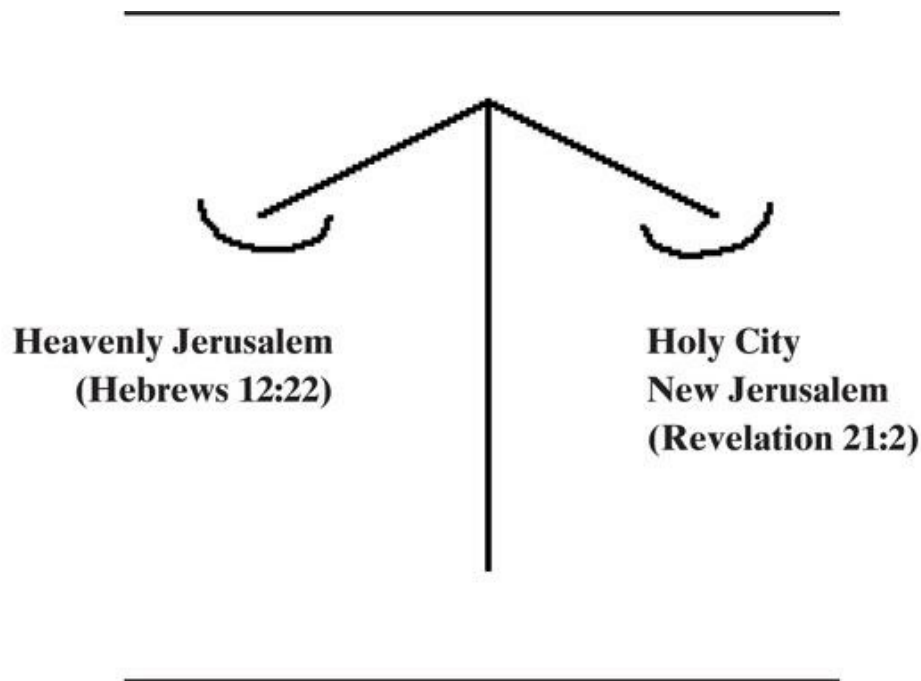
And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever (Revelation 5:13).

Jesus Christ must reign upon His Throne from Heaven until He subdues all in Earth, under the Earth, in the Sea (the Bottomless Pit), and in the Lake of Fire. Ultimately, every creature must give blessing, glory, and honour to the Eternal God and to His Son, the Lamb.

After the Earth has been freed from sin, evil, and death, the Earth will be a *New (Khaw-dash) Earth*.

C. The Holy City, New Jerusalem, Will Be Made New

The LORD Jesus Christ must reign with the Everlasting Wheel of the LORD's Name until He cleanses the Heavenly Jerusalem.



In the Book of Hebrews, the Jerusalem above the Earth is spoken of only as the "Heavenly Jerusalem," not as a *New City*.

But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels (Hebrews 12:22).

The Heavenly City has been defiled by fallen Lucifer and his angels who previously has had access to go there to accuse God's people (Job 1:6-11; 2:1-7; Revelation 12:7-10).

The Heavens and the Heavenly City have been defiled by Lucifer's evil presence and by his rebellious warfare. Also, at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb (Matthew 22:11-13), the Heavenly City will be defiled by intruders who will dare to come in without a resurrected body.

Jesus Christ must reign until the Heavenly City has been freed from all the defiling effects of sin and has been made *new (khaw-dash)*. Then, the New Jerusalem can descend from Heaven with its new cycles of Humility Light, which will be like the light of the new, full Moon.

D. All Things Will Be Made New

The LORD Jesus Christ also must reign until He makes **ALL** things new. The Hebrew root word for *make* is *aw-saw*, meaning to do, to accomplish, to appoint, bid, bear, bestow, bring forth, and to bruise. *Aw-saw* is the word God's Spirit uses to describe all His Works of the present creation that were accomplished by creating, commanding, and forming.

And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day (Genesis 1:31).

God saw all (*kaw-lal*) things He had made (*aw-saw*). As God had made every single creation, He had pronounced that it was good. But when He united them into one perfect whole, which revolved around Him, the Creator, He pronounced that they had now become *very good*.

All Single Creation



Through the LORD Jesus Christ's creating, commanding, forming, preparing, and executing the Judgments of His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will, He brought every single created thing to perfection, joining it into *one* unified whole and setting it into an Everlasting Motion around Himself. As the Creator, He brought *all (kaw-lal)* or the whole of what He had made into one circle around Himself in order to keep maintaining everything's existence. The creation lives by the Creator, as the Creator lives by His Father.

The Hebrew word for *all (kaw-lal)* is not only the conception of plurality, but it also means that *everyone* is included and that none is left out. *Kaw-lal* is connected to a ring, hoop, wreath, crown, the idea of something round, a circle. A circle is the most complete line which revolves or turns around an axis. The circle is ruled by the same measure of forceful power radiating out in every understandable direction from *one focal point* in the center.

This means that the Hebrew conception of completeness and perfection is related to a circle. Therefore, when God saw the whole, the *all things*, harmoniously joined in a new wheel-formation, which turned around the point of Himself, He said, "It (the turning wheel) is *very good*."

This is the reason the LORD Jesus Christ will rule and reign in His Everlasting Kingdom until *all things* are made *new*. The creation must be brought back into its original state of perfection, when everything was in its appointed,

bidden place on Christ's *Tiphereth* Wheel of Unity, humbly bowing in subjection to Him as the Creator. Man can bandy terminology about, calling today a New Age, but as long as sin reigns in the Earth, there will be no new age. Only after Christ has established His Wheel of Unity will a new age begin. Then, *all* will be new, and God will wipe away all tears. Once the rebellious ones of His creation have realized what they have done against their Creator and against themselves, they will weep tears of sorrow. After they have cried and sorrowed sufficiently, the Merciful, Gracious Creator will blot out and dry up their tears by removing their sorrow and pain.

It is God's good pleasure and the mystery of His Will to bring *all* things back into unity and harmony around Christ, the Creator.

Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself: That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him: (Ephesians 1:9,10).

The Dispensation of the Fullness of Times refers to the completion or finish of time. Jesus Christ must reign in His Everlasting Kingdom until the completion of time, when all things will be gathered around Him in a circle of Unity as it was in the beginning of Creation.



IV. The Son Will Put His Everlasting Kingdom Under His Father's Feet

After Christ has *subdued* (brought under subjection, conquered, vanquished, overcome by pervasion, training, control, tilled, and cultivated), He will bring Himself and His Everlasting Kingdom and place them under His

Father's Feet.



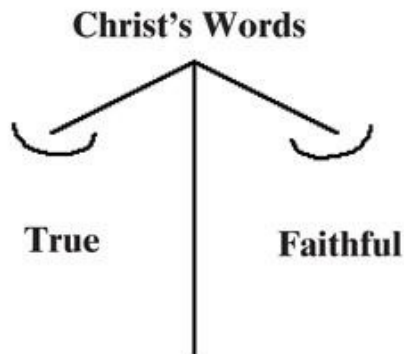
And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all (1 Corinthians 15:28).

Jesus Christ, the Faithful Son, in true allegiance to His Father, will place Himself and His Everlasting Kingdom under His Father's Sovereign Authority and Control so that His Father may be *All in all*.

V. The Truth and Faithfulness of God's Word Will Be Established When All Creation Is Subdued Under the Father's Control

Next in his vision, John heard the great Voice of Christ out of Heaven, saying, "These words are true and faithful."

...And he said unto me, Write: for *these words are true and faithful*. And he said unto me, *It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end*. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely (Revelation 21:5,6)

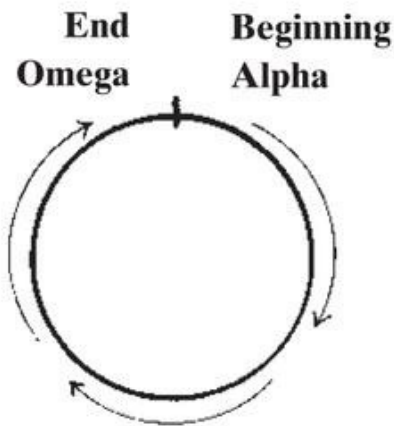


The Hebrew root word for *true* is *eh-meth*, meaning stability, trustworthiness, right, and certain. God's *Eh-meth* Truth is a fence around His Love that will not cease working until all creation is brought to God's Love within His Governing Fence.

God's Word is True and firm of character, purpose, and resolution. It is resistant to change. It is permanent.

God's Word also is Faithful. The Hebrew word for *faithful* is *em-oo-naw*, meaning firmness, security, fidelity, and established. God's Word is an expression of the absolute Faithfulness or Firmness of His Will and the absolute Firmness and Faithfulness of His Holy Nature. Jesus Christ assured *all* that His Word is so True and Faithful that He can say, "It is done." If He says He will make *all things new* — it is done!

He has given His honourable titles of Alpha and Omega as a guarantee that all things will be made new.



The LORD Jesus Christ is the Alpha, the Beginning or the Head; *Roshe* is the Hebrew word. God the Father made Him to be the Beginning Head of all things.

I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning [roshe], or ever the earth was (Proverbs 8:23).

The LORD God set His Son, Wisdom, as the Head or Beginning of His Way and gave Him all creative Power to perform His Father's Purposive Will, as He implemented His Father's Master Plan by bringing all creation into

being and by maintaining the creation after it was brought into visibility.

The Psalmist also confirmed the Alpha or Beginning Headship of Jesus Christ.

The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner (Psalm 118:22).

Christ is the Headstone in the foundation of all creation, and He is the Headstone or End that will crown all creation after he has brought it under subjection to the Father's Will.

Man's rejection of Christ as the Beginning and the End, the Alpha and Omega, the *Roshe* and the *Soofe*, neither will annihilate nor negate His Sovereign Authority and Eternal Position that have been and will be given to Him by His Father.

The LORD Jesus Christ, as the Beginning and the End, will give the Water of Life freely unto the thirsty, those who are eager to know Him and who have strong cravings and intense desire for the Life of His Word and Spirit.

VI. Having Been Given the Prophetic Truth, Mankind Is Presented with a Choice for Present Time so that He Can Prepare for the Future the Apostle John Has Just Foretold

The LORD Jesus Christ, after revealing much about the future, returned to time, in order to show us what our choices are for the present, which are whether we will be overcomers or non-overcomers or whether we will be clean or unclean.

He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son. But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death (Revelation 21:7,8).

Present Choices			
To Be an Overcomer		To Be a Non-overcomer	
Overcome:	Present Reward	Not Overcome:	Present Reward
Fear	Faith	Fear	Fearful
Unbelief	Belief in Word	Unbelief	Unbelieving
Abominations	Christ's Approval	Abominations	Abominable
Murder	Christ's Gratitude	Murder	Murderer
Whoredom	Christ's Will	Whoredom	Whoremonger
Sorcery	Christ as Divine Decider	Sorcery	Self-prophet
Idolatry	Unveil Christ - not Self	Idolatry	Self-love
Lying	The Truth of Christ's Headship	Lying	Deceit
Future Reward		Future Reward	
Inherit All Things		Lake of Fire	

We can choose what we do and what we are now, but we do not determine the rewards of our choices. Through the LORD Jesus Christ, we can overcome the Devil, the world, and the flesh. We can use Christ's Name and Blood to beat Lucifer in his competition for power over us. We can conquer in our struggle against the world. We can master, suppress, and prevail over the flesh through Christ and His Cross!

We can win against the fear, anxiety, and agitation we feel when faced with danger. By putting our faith and trust in the LORD, we can be victorious over the depression we feel when we see danger approaching. We can overcome unbelief by laying hold of God's Word. By using the separating Waters of Christ's Name, Death, and Life, we can overcome abominable things that are hateful and disgusting in God's Sight.

By being filled with Christ's Gracious Gratitude, we can overcome our brutal, murderous tongues that maliciously destroy the reputations of others. We can conquer the whorish lust of the depraved human heart by taking on Christ's Will of Redemption, Revelation, and Satisfaction and making it the shaft of our heart.

By taking Christ as our Divine Decider and Holy Prophet in all things, we can conquer the fleshly spirit of sorcery that endeavours to be the prophet and the decider of all our choices.

We can win over idolatry; that is, we can conquer our own idolatrous self-image which our pride is ever seeking to unveil, by choosing to be a doorkeeper for the unveiling of the LORD Jesus Christ, the One and Only True Image of the Father.

By choosing to believe that God is the Head over all things and that He makes all things work together for good, we can overcome lying.

On the other side of the scales, we can choose to be a non-overcomer and, therefore, become fearful, living in terror and dread of things in the present and of God's Judgments in the future.

We can choose to live in blasphemous unbelief and scornful disbelief of God's Truth, counting it unworthy of respect or fear. By persisting in sinful things that are hateful and detestable to God, we can decide to be an abomination to Him. We can continue filling our heart with murderous hate and using our tongue to slay someone's reputation; or, we even can destroy someone's body by taking his life, thus choosing to be a murderer. The choice is ours to make.

We can, by choice, be a whoremonger and engage in promiscuous, illegal intercourse. We can choose to be our own "sorcerer" by deciding to be our own prophet; plus, we can look to Lucifer's supernatural power of sorcery to govern and guide us.

If we so desire, we can choose to be an idolater and be a devoted slave to some creature by adoring and admiring his image instead of bowing down in total submission to the LORD Jesus Christ.

We can choose to lie by habitually making false statements and giving false impressions with the evil intent of deceiving.

We can choose either Good or Evil, but we cannot choose the reward that accompanies our choice.

If we choose God as our Governor and His Good Word as our Guide, we will be an overcomer, and we will inherit *all things* because He will make *all things* work together for good. God the Father promises to be our Father and to adopt us as His son, when we accept Jesus Christ and grow to maturity in His Spiritual Stature.

However, the rejecter and the refuser of these promised benefits will have their part in the Lake of Fire until they are purged and subdued in their rebellion against God and His Christ.

From this chapter, we have learned that while Jesus is ruling His Everlasting Kingdom, King David will be ruling on the Earth in Jerusalem.

The LORD Jesus Christ *will reign* in His Everlasting Kingdom until He has conquered *all* He has created. Following His establishment of His Dominion, there will be a *New (Khaw-dash)* Heaven, a New Earth, a New Jerusalem, and all things will be new.

After everything in creation has been subdued and gathered around the LORD Jesus Christ in a circle of unity, as it was in the beginning, the Son will put it all under His Father's Feet so that the Father may be ALL in all.

Man's ultimate and final choice will be to serve, worship, and adore his Creator, for this is the reason he was created — to share in the love, peace, and joy of knowing unity with God. God's Purposes and Plans will be fulfilled in spite of every hindrance Lucifer has put in the way. God is Big enough, Powerful enough, Faithful enough to subdue everything He has created, including the most rebellious creature!

Chapter Twelve

The Beginning of the Apostle John's Vision of the Holy City, the New Jerusalem: The Place from Which John Saw the City — Its Greatness and Holiness and Its Glory and Light

In this last great vision of the LORD Jesus Christ as THE KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS, John first saw Him as the Bridegroom at His Marriage Feast in Heaven. Then, he saw Him as the Bridegroom-General returning with His Bride to fight the Battle of Armageddon. Next, John saw the LORD as the peaceful Ruler of the Earth during His Millennial Reign with His Bride. Finally, John saw the Christ coming into His Everlasting Kingdom, ruling and reigning until ALL will have been made new and all creation will have been brought into submission unto the Father.

In the last part of John's vision, he described the Holy City, the Everlasting Abode of Christ the Mighty Conqueror and His Bride, who overcame the world, the flesh, and the Devil through the Name, the Blood, and the Life of her LORD and Saviour, Jesus Christ. Here, in the New City, will be the central Ruling Power of all the Universes for all the ages to come.

John's description of the Holy City, the New Jerusalem, encompasses so much detailed information that one chapter cannot cover it all. Therefore, chapters twelve through eighteen will deal with different aspects of the Holy City: its Greatness and Holiness and its Glory and Light; its Great and High Wall; its Twelve Gates; its Foundations and Stones; its Measurement and Jasper Substance; the Gold of the City and of its Street and the River of the Street; and the Tree of Life in the Midst of the Street and on either side of the River.

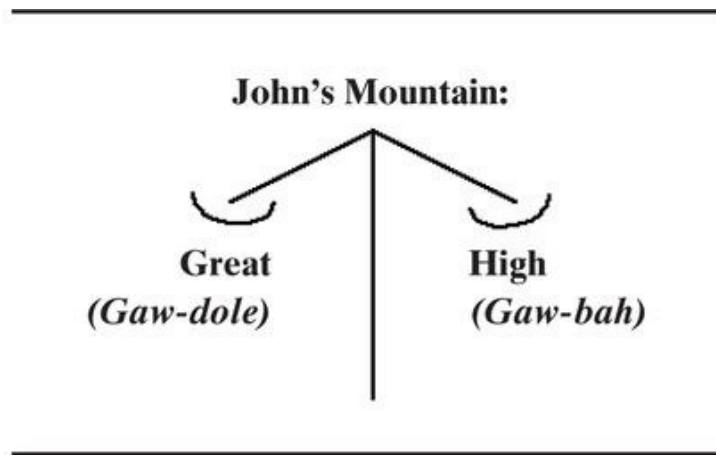
From John's writings, we are acquainted, first, with the place from which he viewed this awesome City. He told us that it is a Great and Holy City, and he described its Glory and Light. These are the details we will cover in this twelfth chapter.

And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.... And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife. And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God, Having the glory of God: and her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal; (Revelation 21:2,9-11).

I. The Place from Which John Saw the Holy City

When one of the seven Angels who had the seven last plagues showed John the vision of the New Jerusalem, he took John in the Spirit to a great and high mountain. From this vantage point, John was able to see God's Holy City.

The words used to describe the mountain upon which John stood are significant because they relate to the LORD's Greatness and Highness.



A. The Mountain Was Great (*Gaw-dole*)

The Hebrew word for *great* is *gaw-dole*, meaning to be mighty and powerful. This same Hebrew word is used to describe the LORD, which shows us the greatness of the mountain upon which John stood. The LORD is the One from Whom all Greatness and Power emanate, Whose Greatness incomparably towers above all the greatness of His creation. His Greatness towers above all comprehensible concepts of greatness. It is by the Greatness of the Might of His Word and Spirit that the LORD rules over His creation. Therefore, we should tremble in Holy Fear when we dare to set our will in opposition to His Purposive Will and the purposes of His Governance and Guidance of our life.

The LORD's Greatness consists of five things: His Great Fire, His Mighty (*Gaw-dole*) Power, His Great Voice, His Great Person, and His Great Anger and Indignation.

1. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Fire

Reference is made to the LORD's Great Fire in the Book of Deuteronomy.

Out of heaven he made thee to hear his voice, that he might instruct thee: and upon earth he shewed thee *his great [gaw-dole] fire*; and thou heardest his words out of the midst of the fire (Deuteronomy 4:36).

God sent His Great (*Gaw-dole*) Fire out of Heaven with His *Torah*-Truth so that His Fiery Presence would penetrate the innermost being of His people.

2. The LORD's Mighty (*Gaw-dole*) Power

In the next verse, the Hebrew word *gaw-dole* is used again when referring, this time, to the LORD's Power. His Fire is Great, and His Power is Great.

And because he loved thy fathers, therefore he chose their seed after them, *and brought thee out in his sight with his mighty [gaw-dole] power* out of Egypt; (Deuteronomy 4:37).

The LORD, with His Great and Mighty (*Gaw-dole*) Power, broke the Egyptian chains of slavery and led His people out from the land of their bondage.

3. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Voice

The LORD spoke the Words of the Law with His Great Voice on Mount Sinai.

These words the LORD spake unto all your assembly in the mount out of the midst of the fire, of the cloud, and of the thick darkness, *with a great [gaw-dole] voice*: and he added no more. And he wrote them in two tables of stone, and delivered them unto me (Deuteronomy 5:22).

God's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Voice came out of the mountain, blazing with Fire and surrounded with darkness. The people of Israel stood in darkness while the mountain blazed with Fire in front of them, and God's Great Voice came out of the Fire with great, exalting Power, making His Moral High Calling known to His people through His Oral *Torah-Truth*.

4. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Person

The LORD came down on Mount Sinai in Person to meet Israel, and Israel personally stood before Him for the purpose of hearing the Word of God directly from Him so that they could learn to fear His Ineffable Name and His Awesome Person. Although Israel did not see the LORD's Great Person, they heard His awe-inspiring Words that provoked fearful respect for His Great Person. The LORD gave His Word on Mount Sinai in order to teach Israel to fear His Great Person and His Ineffable Name.

To fear the Great Person of the LORD means that, through studying God's Word, the soul is constantly aware of the LORD in His invisibility, which brings the soul into an Everlasting Union with Him. In turn, this constant awareness of the LORD's Great Person brings a deeper consciousness of the LORD's Word of Truth, through which His Purposive Will is revealed to the soul.

Israel had a twofold obligation to fear the LORD: first, she was to learn His Purposive Will, revealed in His Word, and allow the LORD's Word and Will to shape her life according to His Master Plan. Second, she was to teach her children to fear the LORD by learning His Word and following His Will so that they, too, could have their lives shaped by the Light of His Truth.

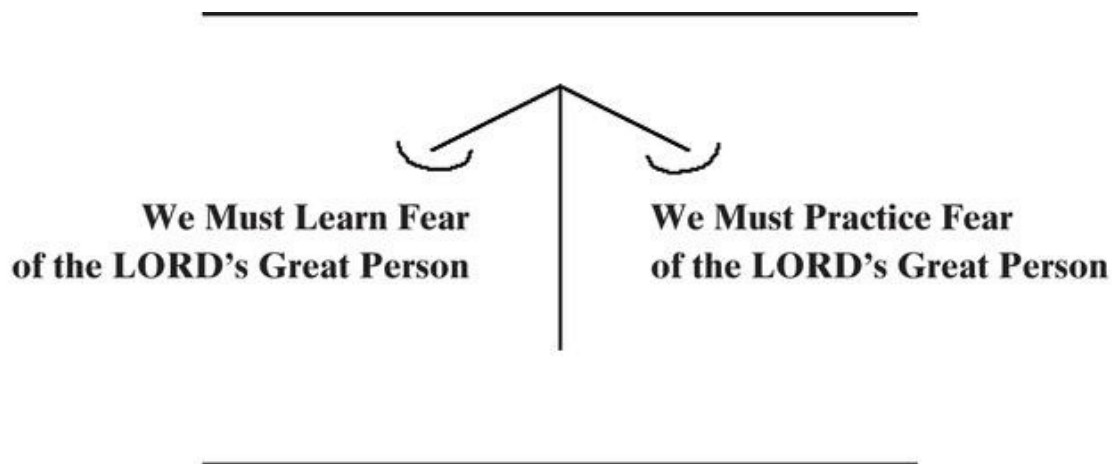
The Presence of the LORD's Great Person causes the soul to take great heed — lest a person forget what his eyes have seen of the LORD's Truth; and lest the Truth depart from his heart; and lest the person corrupt himself and create his own image of the invisible, Great LORD; and lest the soul forget the LORD's Covenant and, therefore, forget the LORD's Great Person (Deuteronomy 4:9,15,16,23).

We cannot destroy true worship of the LORD's Great Person without corrupting and debauching ourself.

It took God's Infinite, Divine Wisdom and Almighty Power to make a true House, Body, or Image in which the LORD Jesus Christ could Tabernacle. So how can finite, mortal man make any image of the LORD's Great Person, except it be an idolatrous image?

The LORD's Great Person deserves to be feared and to be worshipped in Spirit and in Truth!

In order to fear the LORD's Great Person, we must learn to fear or to reverence, and we must practice fear or reverence.



We can learn fear of God's Great Person through studying and acquiring Instruction and Knowledge of His Word. We can practice fear of the LORD's Great Person by continually performing His Purposive Will in our life.

5. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Anger and Indignation

The LORD's Great Anger and Indignation against sin caused Him to cast idolatrous Israel out of the promised

land.

Even all nations shall say, Wherefore hath the LORD done thus unto this land? what meaneth the heat of this great [*gaw-dole*] anger?... And the LORD rooted them out of their land in anger, and in wrath, and in great [*gaw-dole*] indignation, and cast them into another land, as it is this day (Deuteronomy 29:24,28).

These are a few examples of God's Greatness. The meaning of *gaw-dole* or *great* reveals to us how powerful this Great Mountain was from which John received His vision of the LORD's Bridal City.

B. The Mountain Was High (*Gaw-bah*)

The Hebrew word for *high* is *gaw-bah*, meaning to soar, to be lofty, and to mount up. John stood with the Angel atop this Great and High Mountain so that he could see the greatness of the Holy City and describe it to future generations. John's vision is a revelation to us, a glimpse of what can be our Eternal Abode, if we choose to be the part of the overcomers who will be Christ's Bride.

1. The LORD's Throne Is on High (*Gaw-bah*)

According to the Psalmist, the LORD is enthroned on High (*Gaw-bah*).

Who is like unto the LORD our God, *who dwelleth on high* [*gaw-bah*], (Psalm 113:5).

The Holy LORD, like a soaring bird, is above the Earth.

2. The LORD Possesses Excellency (*Gaw-bah*) or Highness

Gaw-bah also is used to describe the LORD's Excellency.

Deck thyself now with majesty and excellency [*gaw-bah*]; and array thyself with glory and beauty (Job 40:10).

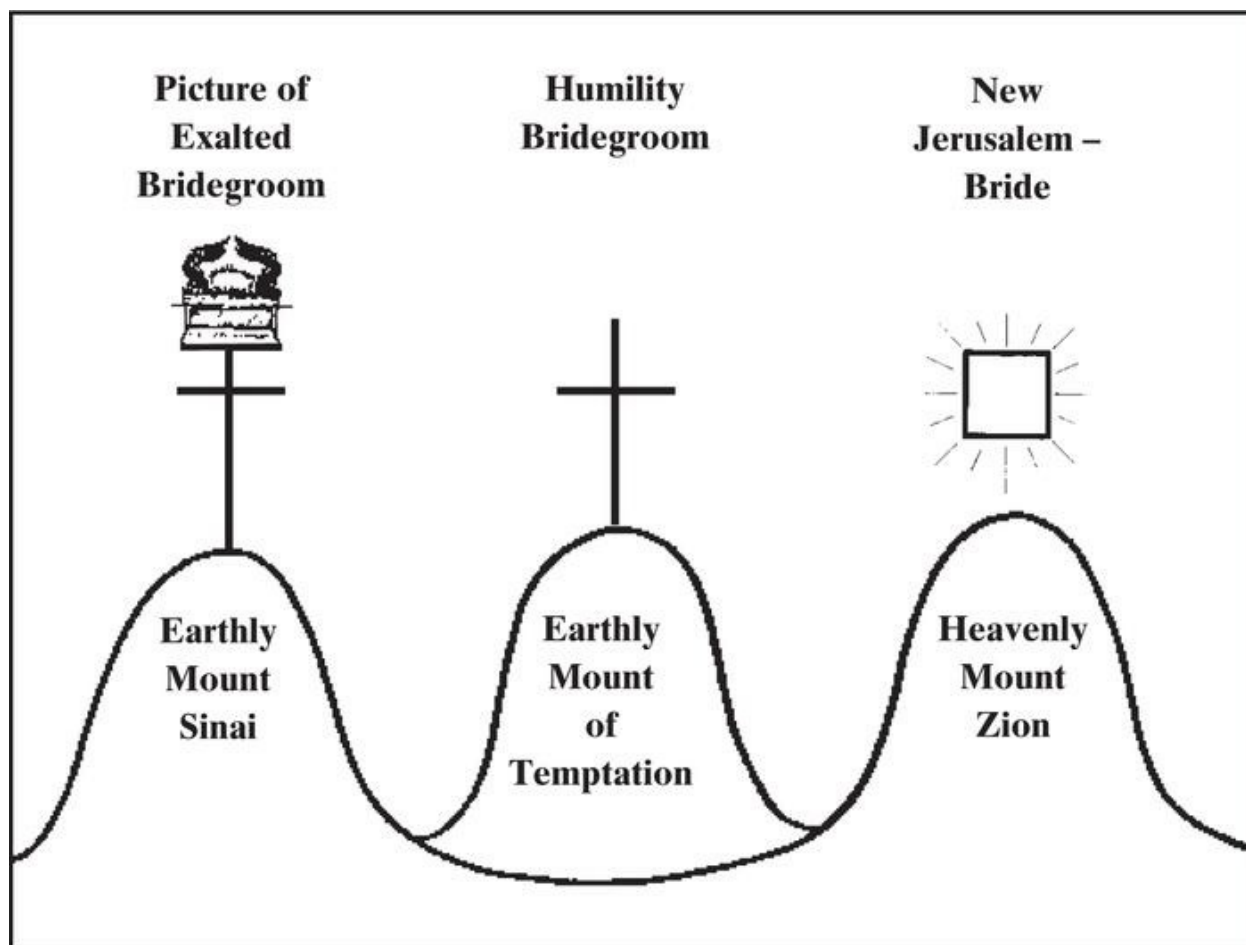
This verse of Scripture is taken from what God said to Job when He talked to him from the whirlwind. Job had complained and criticized God's Governance of his life; therefore, God displayed before Job His Divine Omnipotence by showing him the Glory of His creation. Then, He sarcastically invited Job to deck himself with Majesty and Excellency (*Gaw-bah*) or to place himself high up on a level with God's Excellency or Highness, which would put him in God's place where he could take control of the Universe.

A vision of the LORD's Excellency (*Gaw-bah*) helped Job to humble himself as a finite creature before the LORD's Highness.

C. The Mountain Was the Heavenly Mount Zion

The Great and High Mountain to which God carried John was the Heavenly Mount Zion, from which he had a lofty, elevated, prophetic view of the New Jerusalem. From this Great and High Mountain, John was able to soar on the Great Wings of the Holy Ghost Dove and mount up to see all the marvelous details of the New City.

The Heavenly Mount Zion is the last of a trio of mountains which God has used for special unveilings of the LORD Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom, and, in this instance, His Bride. The first mountain, Mount Sinai, was where the Exalted Bridegroom was revealed. The second mountain, the Mount of Temptation, was the place of revelation of the Humility Bridegroom; and the third mountain, Heavenly Mount Zion, on which John stood, was the place of the revelation of the Bridegroom's Bride, the New City.



God the Father spoke the exalted *Torah*-Truth of His Moral Law from Heaven (Deuteronomy 4:36). Christ, the Heavenly Bridegroom, descended upon the first mountain, Mount Sinai, speaking the same exalted *Torah*-Truth and the same Moral Law, and He gave Moses the Blueprint of a Tabernacle that was laid out in the form of a Cross, which pictured the LORD's Spiritual Stature (Exodus 19:20).

Jesus Christ, the Heavenly Bridegroom, humbled Himself and came down to Earth as the Living *Torah*-Truth in Flesh; and, while on Earth, He went to the second mountain, the Mount of Temptation, to declare God's Moral-Truth to the Devil and Satan:

...*Man shalt not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God* (Matthew 4:4).

...*Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God* (Matthew 4:7).

...*Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve* (Matthew 4:10).

John had followed the LORD Jesus Christ, the Heavenly Bridegroom, in His Humility and in His Exaltation. Therefore, he was privileged to be transported to the Heavenly Mount Zion, the Great and High Mountain, to see the LORD's Bride, the Great, Holy, New Jerusalem.

II. The Greatness and Holiness of the New City

From high on Mount Zion, John saw a marvelous sight.

...*and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem...* (Revelation 21:10).

This *Great City* is the Lamb's Wife because she possesses the *Gaw-dole* Greatness of the LORD's Fire, Power, Voice, and Person. This Great City possesses the LORD's surpassing Goodness, superior Excellence, and excelling Virtue.

This Great City also is a *Holy (Khaw-dash)* City, meaning new. The LORD is Holy, and His Name is Holy; therefore, He has chosen the Holy Jerusalem to dwell in throughout Eternity.

But thou art holy [khaw-dash], O thou that inhabitest the praises of Israel (Psalm 22:3).

Let them praise thy great and terrible name; for it is holy [khaw-dash] (Psalm 99:3).

God is Holy (*Khaw-dash*), meaning He is separated to *all* the Moral Good of His Master Plan and Purposive Will. He commanded Israel, His natural Bride, to be Holy.

Speak unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say unto them, Ye shall be holy: for I the LORD your God am holy (Leviticus 19:2).

The height of God's Moral Calling to His natural Bride is to be *Holy*. He also intends for the innermost part of the believer's being to be penetrated with His Holiness that is ever ready to oppose the evil inclination inherent in man's fleshly nature.

Holiness is the mastery over one's Self; therefore, Holiness is being absolutely ready to perform the Moral Good of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

The Apostle Peter also commanded God's people to be Holy.

But as he which hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation; Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy (1 Peter 1:15,16).

God's Moral, Holy *Torah*-Truth gives us the positive moral aim always to be absolutely ready to do all Moral Good in God's Master Plan and Purposive Will. In His Moral Law, God also has given us the negative limit that is a fence or wall to protect against all opposition to the Moral Good of His Master Plan and Purposive Will.

Jesus Christ came to give us His Humility Surrender and Obedience so that we, too, always can be absolutely ready for all Moral Good in His *Torah*-Truth. Through Christ's Humility Surrender and Obedience, we can gain control over our fleshly, evil inclinations and become a saint, a Holy one, a being worthy of living in the Lamb's Holy Bridal City throughout Eternity.

If we allow Christ to be our Head, our Governor, and Guide, He will help us achieve our Moral High Calling, which is His Holiness.

III. The *Kabode* Glory of the New City

The Great, Holy City is clothed with the LORD's Glory.

...and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God, Having the glory of God:... (Revelation 21:10,11).

The Hebrew word for *glory* is *kabode*, meaning a weight. In the natural realm, it is the weight of the material mass or content of an object that determines its worth and value in one way or another. For example, a diamond's value is ascertained by the carat weight, while the worth of gold is determined by the ounce. Likewise, the LORD's Moral Worth is designated by the spiritual weight of His *Kabode* Glory. Through the LORD's weighty *Kabode* Glory, He makes Eternal, spiritual, mental, and moral impressions of Himself and His Character upon His creation.

The trail of the weight of God's ministering *Kabode* Glory in Israel has left a lasting record of the Moral Character of God and His Master Plan and Purposive Will. There are six major impressions and imprints God desires to put into our hearts and minds by the weight of His *Kabode* Glory:

- God's Bountiful Goodness
- God's *Torah*-Truth
- God's Son, the LORD Jesus Christ
- A Fresh, New Consecration and Devotion to God
- God's Headship and Moral Government

- God's Unbegotten, *Kabode* Glory Seal of Approval in the Mosaic Tabernacle and in the Tabernacle of His Son

These six impressions and imprints form the Seal of God's *Kabode* Glory with which He desires to stamp and seal *all* created hearts and minds.

The types and shadows of what God desires to do in our life in the spiritual realm are depicted in His dealings with natural Israel. God's Merciful *Kabode* Glory brought Bread to the nation of murmuring Israelites in hopes of leaving, on their hearts and minds, a lasting impression and imprint of His Eternal Goodness.

A. The Glory of God's Bountiful Goodness

In the hopeless, desolate desert, God endeavoured to leave a weighty impression and imprint of His Bountiful Goodness upon the hearts and minds of the Israelites. However, their hearts and minds were so hard that they failed to receive the Seal of His Bountiful Goodness. Therefore, they murmured again and again.

And in the morning, then ye shall see the glory of the LORD; for that *he heareth your murmurings* against the LORD: and what are we, that ye *murmur against us?*... And it came to pass, as Aaron spake unto the whole congregation of the children of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, *the glory of the LORD appeared in the cloud* (Exodus 16:7,10).

The LORD's *Kabode* Glory abode upon Mount Sinai when He gave Israel His Oral and Written *Torah*-Truth. God hoped to make an Eternal Impression and Imprint upon their hearts and minds with His Oral, Spoken Word so that, when Israel did receive the Written *Torah*, they would find great joy and delight in studying the Written Truth.

Yet, after *hearing* the Oral Truth, which was clothed with God's *Kabode* Glory, Israel made a golden calf in obstinate defiance of the first three Commandments of the Moral Law.

B. The Glory of God's *Torah*-Truth

The LORD's Glory Fire was in plain view of the people when Moses was on the Mount to receive the Law, the *Torah*.

And the glory of the LORD abode upon mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days: and the seventh day he called unto Moses out of the midst of the cloud. *And the sight of the glory of the LORD was like devouring fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the children of Israel* (Exodus 24:16,17).

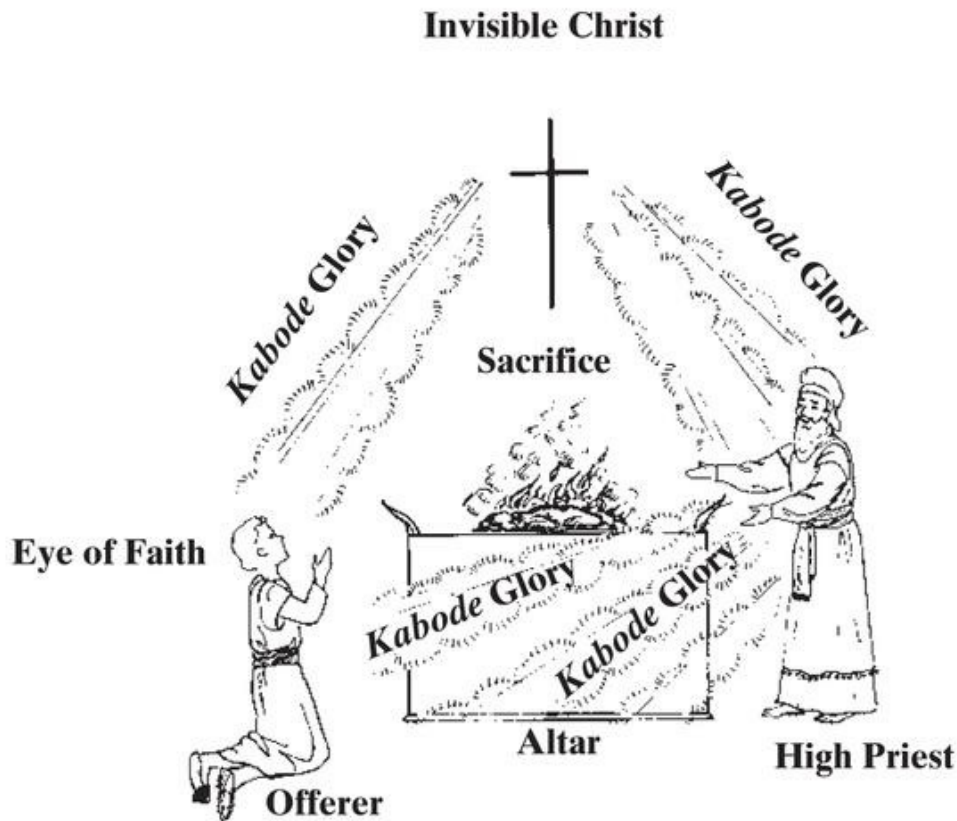
Yet, the hardness of the people's hearts and minds made them reject the Truth, thus preventing them from being sealed with a lasting, awesome respect by God's *Kabode* Glory.

C. The Glory of God's Son, the LORD Jesus Christ

In spite of Israel's hardness of heart and mind, the LORD, in His Great Mercy, continued to reveal His *Kabode* Glory to her. He presented His *Kabode* Glory to her by putting it upon the Garments of Aaron, the High Priest.

And thou shalt make *holy garments for Aaron thy brother for glory and for beauty* (Exodus 28:2).

God's purpose in putting His *Kabode* Glory upon the Holy Garments of Aaron was to make a lasting impression and imprint of Christ upon the hearts and minds of the people who came to bring their sacrifices to the High Priest. God wanted to give them a spiritual vision of the Christ Who, in His Omnipresence, was above the ceremonial sacrifices, which pictured the future Sacrifice of God in Flesh.



Some of the people saw and believed and, therefore, received a lasting imprint and impression of the Christ, of Whom the sacrifices were a picture. Others, because of their hard, impenitent hearts, missed the spiritual vision of the Truth.

D. The Glory of Fresh, New Consecration and Devotion to God

The LORD's *Kabode Glory* joined itself to the continual burnt offering, which was offered morning and evening to make a new, fresh impression and imprint of their Moral High Calling on the hearts and minds of Israel. As God's chosen people, they were to live their whole lives exclusively to the LORD.

This shall be a continual burnt-offering throughout your generations at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the LORD: where I will meet you, to speak there unto thee. And there I will meet with the children of Israel, and the tabernacle shall be sanctified by my glory (Exodus 29:42,43).

The whole burnt offering was an elevation offering, signifying that through fresh consecration in the sacrificial blood that pictured Christ's Blood, they would receive new love and devotion to the LORD and be drawn into closer proximity to God.

Through the union of God's *Kabode Glory* with the whole burnt offering blood, the people were brought fresh consecration and sanctification unto the LORD and left with an impressive seal of the LORD's Good Pleasure and Satisfaction on those who believed.

E. The Glory of God's Headship and Moral Government

God again presented His *Kabode* Glory when He put Moses in a cleft of the Rock and let His Glory pass by.

And he said, I beseech thee, shew me thy glory... And it shall come to pass, while my glory passeth by, that I will put thee in a cleft of the rock, and will cover thee with my hand while I pass by: (Exodus 33:18,22).

Moses needed a new impression and imprint of God's Headship and Government in his life concerning Moses' moral mission to lead Israel to Canaan's Land. So God lifted Moses up on the Rock by Him, from where Moses could receive a fresh, new vision of God's Governance and could look on human conditions from God's point of view.

The loftiest height of spiritual attainment is to see God's Governance as He sees it and, then, allow Him to seal that vision with His Eternal *Kabode* Glory. Remember, the Understanding has to be there before God can seal it with His *Kabode* Glory.

It is obvious Moses did not receive this understanding; therefore, he did not receive a lasting impression and imprint of it because later, in deliberate defiance of God's Command, he smote the Rock instead of speaking to it.

F. The Glory of God's Unbegotten *Kabode* Glory Seal of Approval in the Mosaic Tabernacle and in the Tabernacle of His Son

God filled the Mosaic Tabernacle, which pictured the Spiritual Stature of His Son, with the *Kabode* Glory, demonstrating how He would fill the Personal Body-Tabernacle of Jesus Christ with His Unbegotten, Resurrection *Kabode* Glory on resurrection morning (Romans 6:4).

Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle (Exodus 40:34).

Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life (Romans 6:4).

The Seal of God's *Kabode* Glory on the Mosaic Tabernacle and on the Resurrected Body of Jesus Christ was the Seal of His Approval on the Work that was now completed by His Son, Who had followed His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

This Seal of *Kabode*-Glory Approval, both on the Mosaic Tabernacle and on the LORD Jesus Christ, was a sign that both Tabernacles now could continue striding forward into deeper depths and higher heights of God's Master Plan.

Since Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever, this six-sided *Kabode* Glory Seal shows us why the New Jerusalem is clothed with the *Kabode* Glory when it descends out of Heaven as a central guiding, governing Light between Heaven and Earth.

God's *Kabode* Glory from the New City will be, as it were, a revolving Glory, which continuously will bring a fresh, renewing of God's Glory Seal upon *all* creation. In the Seal is God's Bountiful Goodness; God's *Torah*-Truth; God's Son, the LORD Jesus Christ; fresh, new consecration and devotion to God; God's Headship and Moral Government; and God's Unbegotten *Kabode* Glory-Seal of Approval upon His Son, the LORD Jesus Christ.

What an awesome, unspeakable delight it will be when, from the New Jerusalem, God the Father, God the Lamb, and the Bride begin their Eternal Reign over the Universes!

The New Jerusalem is Great and Holy. It is clothed with *Kabode* Glory; and it also is clothed with Light.

IV. The Ore Light of the New City

The New City John saw was Great and Holy; it radiated the LORD's *Kabode* Glory; and it shone with a Light like a Jasper Stone, clear as crystal.

...and her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal; (Revelation 21:11).

The Hebrew word for *light* is *ore*, meaning to make luminous, dawn, break of day, glorious, kindle, lighten, fire, and to shine.

A. Jesus Is the *Ore* Light of the World

There are many Scriptures which tell us about the LORD's *Ore* Light. For instance, Jesus Christ proclaimed that He is the Light (*Ore*) of the world.

Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light [ore] of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life (John 8:12).

Jesus is the Light that illuminates *all* hearts when they come into the world (John 1:9). Everyone is born with the Light of his conscience.

B. The Word Is an *Ore* Light

Then, we are given more Light through the LORD's Word, which is an *Ore* Light that illuminates our feet as we walk on His Path, once we have accepted the LORD as our Saviour and have commenced our spiritual journey.

Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path (Psalm 119:105).

The LORD's *Ore* Light of Truth guards the feet of the believer and protects his path from the darkness of error and his soul from sinful stumbling. We need the *Ore* Light to save us from the daily pitfalls we encounter in our human existence.

C. The *Ore* Light Comes from the LORD's Countenance

This *Ore* Light is found in the LORD's Face or Countenance.

There be many that say, Who will shew us any good? LORD, *lift thou up the light [ore] of thy countenance* upon us (Psalm 4:6).

For they got not the land in possession by their own sword, neither did their own arm save them: but thy right hand, and thine arm, and *the light [ore] of thy countenance*, because thou hadst a favour unto them (Psalm 44:3).

Blessed is the people that know the joyful sound: they shall walk, O LORD, in *the light [ore] of thy countenance* (Psalm 89:15).

In our times of disappointment and in our longing for improvement in our spiritual education and moral development, we must turn our eyes on the LORD Jesus Christ, look full into His wonderful Face, and wait for the illumination of His *Ore* Light to shine upon us.

It was not Israel's merit that earned God's Divine Help in possessing the Land of Canaan. Instead, it was the Merciful and Gracious *Ore* Light from God's Countenance that obtained the victory for them. Hence, to God be *all* the Glory!

The New City is clothed with the *Ore* Light of the LORD's Countenance, not for overcoming the darkness of disappointments and of wars, but for bringing ultimate joy and happiness to all His creation. In the day the New City descends from Heaven, all sorrow, tears, and death will have been put away, and all God's creation will be awakened spiritually to bow their knees to Jesus Christ. Hence, the *Ore* Light of Christ's Countenance, as it shines out through the New City, will cause a reverberating, universal praise to ascend to the LORD.

D. The LORD's Covering Is *Ore* Light

The Psalmist was the one to tell us about the LORD's Covering of *Ore* Light.

Who coverest thyself with light [ore] as with a garment: who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain: (Psalm 104:2).

The LORD dwells in illuminating Light. Therefore, when it is in close proximity to the Creator, the creation redounds in grateful praise to Him.

E. Christ Was the *Ore* Light in the Beginning of Creation

The *Ore* Light, the Christ, was present at Creation.

And God said, Let there be light [ore]; and there was light [ore]. And God saw the light [ore], that it was good: and God divided the light [ore] from the darkness (Genesis 1:3,4).

The Hebrew word *ore* is related to the Hebrew word *oor*, meaning to awaken, to open the eyes, lift up self, master, raise up, stir up self.

When the prehistoric Earth lay in the darkness and sleep of death in the great Deep, the *Teh-home* Pit, God sent the *Ore* Light of His Son's Countenance to awaken all forces to movement and development. Christ's *Ore* Light awakens everything to individual life and growth.

When the New City descends in the *Ore* Light of Christ's Countenance, all the Universes will be awakened continually to new realms of praise to the Infinite, Divine Father and His Son.

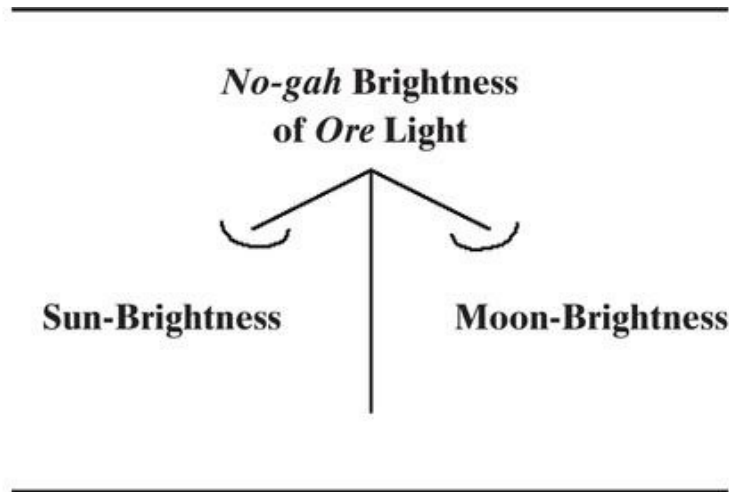
F. The *Ore* Light Has the Brightness of the Sun and the Moon

The *Ore* Light possesses *No-gah* Brightness, which is pictured by the brightness of the Sun and Moon in the natural realm.

The LORD, Who righteously rules over men, is like the *no-gah* shining light of the Sun after the rain.

The God of Israel said, the Rock of Israel spake to me, He that ruleth over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God. *And he shall be as the light [ore] of the morning, when the sun riseth*, even a morning without clouds; as the tender grass springing out of the earth by clear shining after rain (II Samuel 23:3,4).

There are two sides to the *No-gah* Brightness of the *Ore* Light: the exalted side (represented by the Sun) and the humility side (represented by the Moon).



1. The Sun-Brightness of the *Ore* Light

The sunshine after rain is a beautiful, delightful picture of the New City as it will appear when it descends with exalted, *No-gah* Brightness.

The invigorating, refreshing growth of praise when the New City descends will be like a cloudless morning of sunlight after the storm and rain.

2. The Moon-Brightness of the *Ore* Light

Isaiah the Prophet spoke of the *no-gah* brightness of the Moon — a picture of the Humility Brightness of the *Ore* Light with which the New City will appear.

The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light [*ore*] unto thee: *but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light [ore], and thy God thy glory* (Isaiah 60:19).

When the Heavenly New Jerusalem descends, it will eclipse the *no-gah* brightness of the natural Sun and Moon, which no longer will be needed in the Perfect Age, the dispensation of the Fullness of Times (Ephesians 1:10).

The Everlasting *No-gah* Brightness of the *Ore* Light from Christ's Countenance, as it shines out through the New City, never will decline as the Sun does nor wane as the Moon does.

G. The *Ore* Light Lifts to a New Position

When the Father came from Heaven to take His Son out of Death and Hell, He came with both His Exalted and His Humility *No-gah* Brightness.

At the brightness [no-gah] that was before him his thick clouds passed, hail stones and coals of fire (Psalm 18:12).

Out from the LORD's Brightness came His Humility Hailstones and His Exalted Flames from His Coals of Fire. When the Father descended with His Exalted and Humility Brightness, He raised His Son, changing His position from the depths of Humility to the heights of Exaltation.

Likewise, when the New City descends with the Exalted and Humility Brightness from the *Ore* Light of Christ's Countenance, the whole creation will be raised into a new position in God's Perfect Will in the Perfect Age.

The Prophet Ezekiel described God's descent from Heaven in His Throne-Chariot, when He lifted up His *Shekinah* Glory and *Kabode* Glory out of His Temple. The LORD came with the Exalted and Humility *No-gah* Brightness of His *Ore* Light.

And I looked, and, behold, a whirlwind came out of the north, a great cloud, and a fire infolding itself, *and a brightness [no-gah] was about it*, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire.... As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals of fire, and like the appearance of lamps: it went up and down among the living creatures; *and the fire was bright [no-gah]*, and out of the fire went forth lightning.... And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, *and it had brightness [no-gah] round about*. As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain, *so was the appearance of the brightness [no-gah] round about*. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And when I saw it, I fell upon my face, and I heard a voice of one that spake (Ezekiel 1:4,13,27,28).

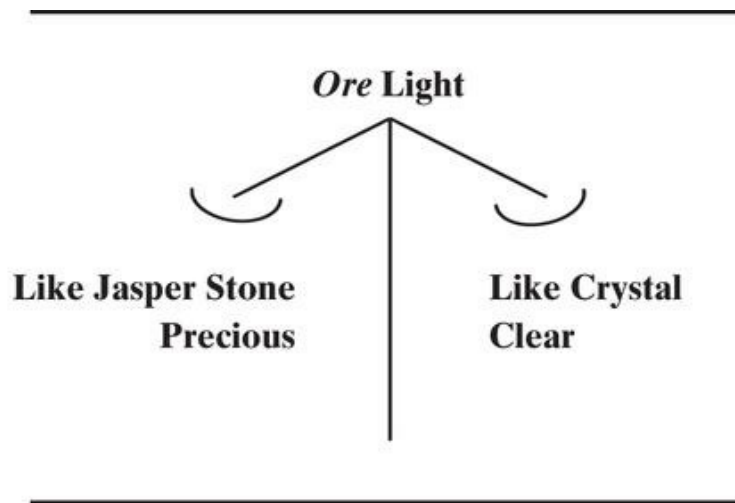
The LORD Himself was clothed with this Exalted and Humility *No-gah* Brightness, and so were His Cloud and His living creatures surrounded by it.

The Humility *No-gah* Brightness allows the LORD to descend to the necessary place in order to lift up a particular person or thing for a change of position. The Exalted *No-gah* Glory allows the LORD to ascend to the appointed place with the designated person or things.

The LORD God (the Father), the Lamb (the Son), and the Bride will descend from Heaven to lift the whole creation to its appointed place on His *Tiphereth* Wheel of Unity so that they, too, will join the universal chorus of perfect, grateful praise to God and the Lamb.

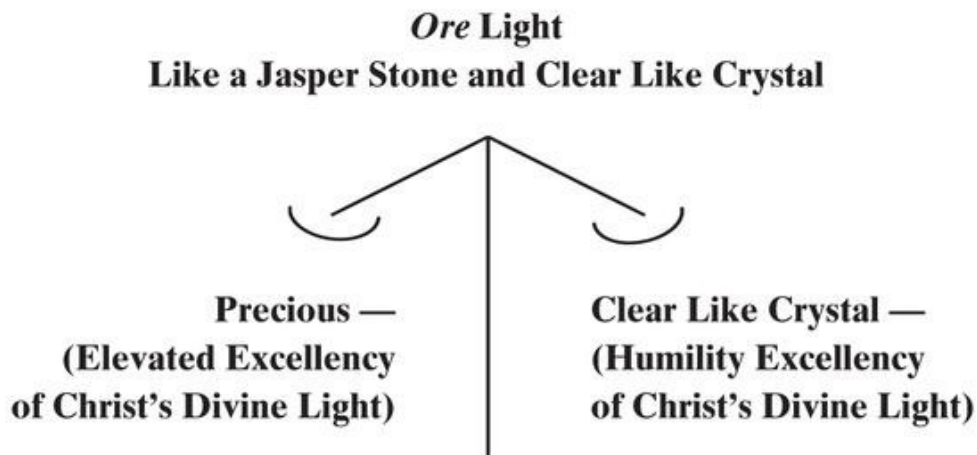
H. The *Ore* Light Is Like a Jasper Stone and Crystal

The *No-gah* Brightness of the *Ore* Light will be like a jasper stone and crystal.



1. The Jasper-Like Ore Light

Because the jasper stone is precious, God's Spirit compares it to His Jasper-like Ore Light.



The Hebrew word for *jasper* is *yaw-shef-ay*, meaning to polish; and it is connected to the root word *shaw-faw*, meaning to abrade, i.e. bare, high, to stick out, to appear visible, conspicuous, elevated, eminent, excellent, and prominent. From the meanings of this word, it is evident that the Ore Light around the descending New City is polished and prominent.

The polished, prominent, *precious* side of the Jasper Ore Light represents the Exalted Excellency of Christ's Divine Light.

By examining the root word *shaw-faw*, we find that it is used to describe a certain kind of cheese which is obtained by separating the curds of milk from the whey.

And honey, and butter, and sheep, and *cheese* [*shaw-faw*] of kine, for David, and for the people that were with him, to eat: for they said, The people is hungry, and weary, and thirsty, in the wilderness (II Samuel 17:29).

This reveals a further meaning to the character of the Jasper Ore Light. Jasper (*Yaw-shef-ay*) Light speaks of separation since it is used in God's Word to describe the separation that takes place when cheese is made. Thus, one

function or ministry of the Jasper *Ore* Light is to separate the New City from all other abodes — from the New Heaven, the New Earth, and the Lake of Fire.

The word *shaw-faw* also is used in Scriptures to describe a high, bare, polished mountain.

Lift ye up a banner upon the *high [shaw-faw] mountain*, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles (Isaiah 13:2).

When Babylon's hour of punishment arrived, God's Spirit commanded Isaiah to prophesy, asking for a banner, an ensign, to be placed on the *high, bare, polished* mountain in Babylon, which would act as a signal for the armies to assemble for the advance against Babylon. In other words, God was asking Israel to remove the trees from the mountaintop so that the view of the mountaintop where their banner was displayed would not be obscured from the invading hosts' sight. They were to make the mountaintop bare, naked, polished, and prominent so that it could help implement God's Master Plan and Purposive Will against Babylon.

Likewise, the Jasper *Ore* Light will descend with the New City, polished and prominent as a banner on a bare mountain, to lead and guide *all* creation in the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will in the Perfect Age.

This Jasper *Ore* Light is weighty and powerful as a *stone (eh-ben)*, which means to build, mason, plummet, chalkstone, hailstone, headstone, and slingstone.

The Jasper *Ore* Light not only will be polished and prominent, but it also will be weighty and heavy like a stone with which to build. During the Perfect Age, new forms of praise and worship to the LORD will be constructed, and new, illuminated forms of Understanding of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will will be built with God's Jasper *Ore* Light.

The Stone of the LORD's Jasper *Ore* Light will lead the nations on the New Earth, by gift, to plumb the depths of the LORD's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light [ore] of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it (Revelation 21:24).

The Jasper *Ore* Light will reveal, by gift, the weight of Christ's Humility Headship when He bows His Head at the Father's Feet as He returns the Kingdom to His Father.

The powerful weight of the Jasper *Ore* Light will enable nations to sling or hurl morsels of Truth to each other. Thus, they continually will feed and feast on the LORD's precious Truth.

The Jasper *Ore* Light that clothes the New City is most precious! The Hebrew word for *precious* is *yek-awr*, meaning dear, esteemed, prized, honoured, respected, rare, splendid, beautiful, and quiet.

The word *yek-awr* is used to describe the precious, jewel-like quality of the lips that speak Knowledge.

There is gold, and a multitude of rubies: but the lips of knowledge are a precious [yek-awr] jewel (Proverbs 20:15).

Knowledge of the LORD is most precious and rare. Therefore, the precious vessels of wise lips that speak Knowledge of Christ, the LORD, are dear, honourable, and beautiful.

The Jasper *Ore* Light is precious, dear, rare, and quiet. Its illuminating, radiating rays will minister, by gift, the perfection of quietness to the nations who are walking in its Light. Its exalting and humbling rays of illumination will lift up the nations into grateful calmness and plunge them into depths of joyful calmness and quietness.

2. The Crystal-Like *Ore* Light

The Jasper *Ore* Light of the New City also is clear, like crystal. The very old Hebrew root word for *clear* is *baw-hak*, meaning to be bright and distinguished. The Jasper *Ore* Light of the New City is clear or bright as a crystal. The Hebrew word for *crystal* is *keh-rakh*, meaning ice, smooth, hail, rock, crystal, and frost.

The icy, crystal clearness of the Jasper *Ore* Light represents the Humility Excellency of Christ's Divine Light.

Christ will clothe the New City with the brightness of the Light of His Humility Excellency, reflecting His Father's Glorious Humility Light in which the nations will walk.

In the Perfect Age, the New City will give forth a steady, continuous brightness of the Father's Humility, which will be reflected through His Son and His Bride. The nations will walk in this Light.

Crystal is purer than water. Therefore, when water is said to be like crystal, it means it is in its purest form. No

objects are so free of corruption and decay, so utterly beyond the reach of inward stain, as God's Icy Crystal.

No objects anywhere are so richly dyed with rainbow colours as God's Icy Crystal. No objects are so transparent, so well seen through, as God's Icy Crystal. No object is so ready and so willing to reflect God's Holy Light as His Icy Crystal.

God's Crystal Humility that was lost by Adam has been brought back by Christ's Humility Obedience, Self-denial, and Sacrificial Atonement on the Cross of Calvary.

Lucifer's pride destroyed *his* original humility. He has defiled and clouded his humility light with cruelty and covered it with selfishness.

However, the clear, Crystal Humility-Brightness of Christ's Jasper Ore Light is free from all cloudiness, from mist and muddiness and blemishes that will have existed previously in all the creation. Christ's Jasper Ore Light is transparent and clear as Crystal.

By God's Humility Breath, Ice or Frost or Crystal (*Keh-rakh*) is given.

By the breath of God frost [keh-rakh] is given: and the breadth of the waters is staitened (Job 37:10).

The LORD, by His Icy Breath, brings forth frost to beautify the Earth and to cause the autumn fruits to ripen and to sweeten.

Likewise, His Icy, Crystal Ore Light will clothe the Earth and the world in a beautiful garment of reflected Light, beautifying the nations and causing them to ripen and to sweeten in the Father's Humility.

The LORD's Icy, Crystal (*Keh-rakh*) above the LORD's Throne-Chariot was seen by Ezekiel.

And the likeness of the firmament upon the heads of the living creature was as the colour of the terrible crystal [keh-rakh], stretched forth over their heads above (Ezekiel 1:22).

The firmament above the LORD's Chariot was like Crystal or awesome Ice. It was awe-inspiring in its brilliance and whiteness. The firmament was like an icy dome that served as a foundational dome upon which the LORD's Throne rested.

Likewise, the LORD's Icy, Crystal Light forms a foundational dome, as it were, upon which the New City rests.

The LORD's Jasper Ore Light is *precious* with its exalted, radiating rays; and it is *glorious* with its radiating rays of Icy Humility, which are clear as Crystal.

What an awesome sight is the New City's Light!

From the Heavenly Mount Zion, a Great and High Place, John saw the City clothed with Glory and Light.

"Great" relates to the Greatness of the LORD — His Great Fire, His Mighty Power, His Great Voice, His Great Person, and His Great Anger and Indignation.

In the High Place, we find the LORD's Throne, the LORD's Excellency, and three High Mountains where God has unveiled the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bride in special ways: Jesus as the Exalted Bridegroom on Mount Sinai; Jesus as the Humility Bridegroom on the Mount of Temptation; and the Bride on the Heavenly Mount Zion as the New City.

The Holy City on top of Mount Zion is clothed with the LORD's *Kabode* Glory. It is by the weight of the *Kabode* Glory that God puts the lasting impressions and imprints within us, which form the Seal of God's *Kabode* Glory. God's Seal of Glory consists of His Bountiful Goodness; the Glory of His *Torah*-Truth; the Glory of the LORD Jesus Christ as the Sacrifice for our sins; the Glory of daily consecration to the LORD and new sanctification; the Glory of God's Headship and Governance; and God's Glory-Seal of approval upon His Son.

The New City not only is clothed with Glory, but it also is clothed and shines with the Ore Light of the LORD. God's Ore Light illuminates all hearts with the consciousness of the Creator. God's Word is an Ore Light. Truth or Ore Light guards our feet from erring because we have the Truth to guide us safely through this life.

The LORD's Ore Light comes from His Countenance to bring us ultimate joy and happiness.

In the beginning, the Ore Light was there to awaken all things to life and growth. Its Brightness is like the Sun's light in its brilliance and like the Moon's light in its humility.

God uses His Light to change the position of a person or a thing. Ultimately, the whole creation will be lifted into perfect Unity through the LORD's Ore Light.

God's Ore Light is Precious, like the jasper stone, and it is Clear, like crystal for purity, transparency, reflectiveness, and brilliance.

Chapter Thirteen

The Continuation of John's Vision of the New City: Its Great, High Wall

John's vision of the Holy City, the New Jerusalem, acquainted him with many details about it. Through the prophetic vision given to John, God wanted to share with all future generations a glimpse of the Prize, the glorious City in which the Lamb and His Bride will spend Eternity and from which they will rule and reign over all the Universes.

After John had told about the City's brilliant *Ore Light*, he began describing its Wall.

And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel: (Revelation 21:12).

The Hebrew word for wall is *ghoh-mah*, meaning to surround. The Wall round about the New City is a structure serving to enclose a space, form a division, form a defense, shelter, or security; it is a solid, permanent, enclosing fence.

First of all, John said that the City's Wall is Great and High. We already know, from studying about the Heavenly Mount Zion on which John stood to view the Holy City, a little about what it means to be Great and High.

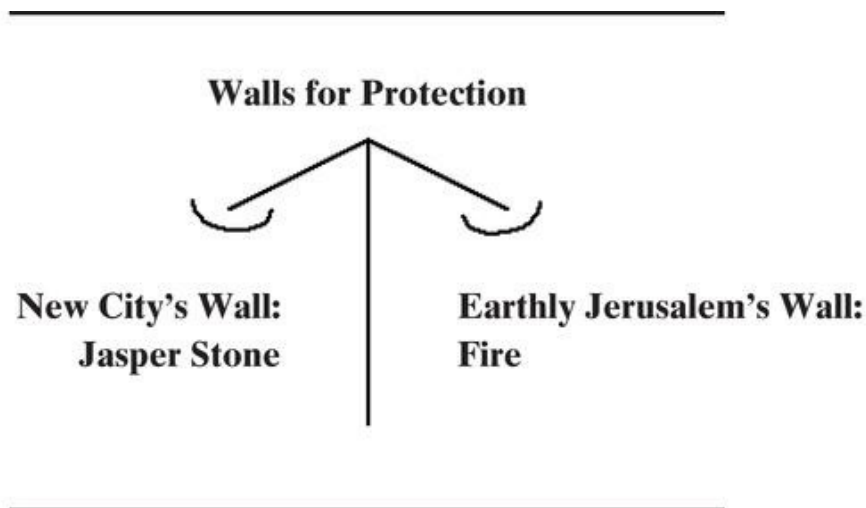
We have seen how *Gaw-Dole* Greatness refers to the LORD's Greatness, which incomparably towers above all comprehensible conceptions of greatness.

Likewise, the *Gaw-Dole* Greatness of the New City's Wall towers above all comprehensible conceptions of the Wall of the earthly Jerusalem.

We also have seen the *Gaw-bah* Highness of Heavenly Mount Zion and the LORD's High, Exalted, Excellent Nature, which Job saw, and it helped him to humble himself.

The New City's Great and High Wall is a constant reminder to all creation of the LORD's Excellent Greatness and His Exalted Highness which will cause all creation to keep a humble position before its Creator and Redeemer.

The earthly Jerusalem's Wall basically is a Wall of Fire. The New City's Wall is a Wall of Jasper Stone. Both Walls are for protection, and both are Eternal.



I. The New City's Great, High Wall Is for Protection

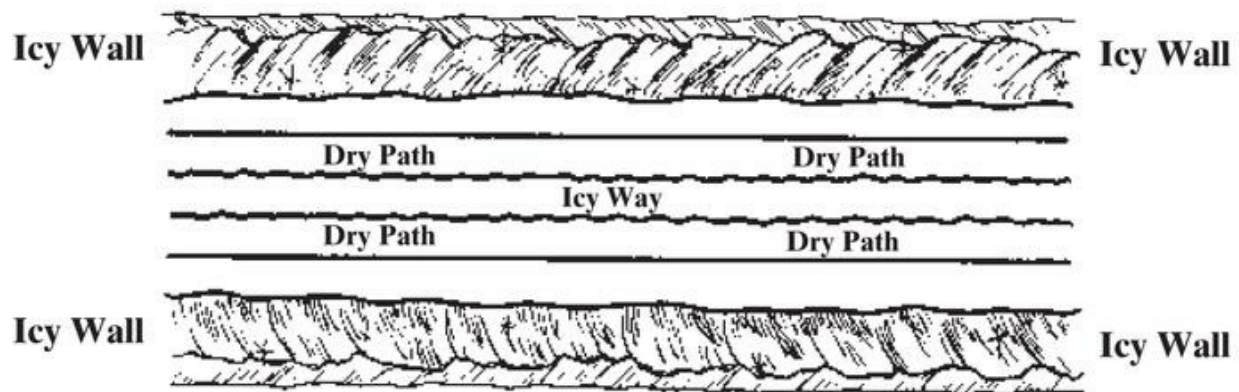
This Wall serves to enclose, from the open view of all the other creation, the Personal Presence of God and the Lamb and Christ's Bride, Who are in the Temple in the New City. The Wall forms a shelter or security to protect the

Oneness of Relationship between God and the Lamb and His Bride.

Israel's crossing of the Red Sea gives us an example of how God uses a wall to form a defense, shelter, or security for those He wants to protect.

And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry ground: and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left.... But the children of Israel walked upon dry land in the midst of the sea; and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left (Exodus 14:22,29).

God's Breath blew an East wind all night long, whipping the waters of the Red Sea apart, right down to the ground. His Icy, Cold, Jasper Breath separated the waters of the Sea into towering icy walls, standing a protective wall to the right and to the left of them. His Cold Breath froze the fountains of the Deep so that there was an Icy Way through the Deep. Then, God used His Hot Breath to blow upon the exposed, muddy ground, drying it and forming Paths on each side of the Icy Way, from east to west, over which Israel crossed.



Thus, because of the icy, protective walls which God formed to shelter Israel, she passed safely through the Red Sea ahead of her pursuing enemy.

God used literal walls of ice to protect Israel, but He also has used people as Walls of protection. In the days of his humiliation, while he was in the wilderness, David was an icy, humility, protective “wall” to Nabal’s shepherds and his sheep.

They were a wall unto us both by night and day, all the while we were with them keeping the sheep (I Samuel 25:16)

Out of the goodness and humility of his heart, David and his men formed a protective “wall” round about Nabal’s shepherds and sheep. Nabal’s men testified not only to the discipline and forbearance of David’s men, but also to the positive, protective “wall” which David and his men afforded them.

When David protected the shepherds and sheep for Nabal, he had no idea that God would take Nabal in death, leaving his wife Abigail a widow, or that he would marry her, thus becoming the owner of all that he had helped to protect.

Later in his life, David cried to the LORD to build a protective wall around natural Jerusalem.

Do good in thy good pleasure unto Zion: build thou the walls of Jerusalem (Psalm 51:18).

This protective wall was supplied by King Solomon after David’s death.

And Solomon made affinity with Pharaoh king of Egypt, and took Pharaoh’s daughter, and brought her into the city of David, until he had made

an end of building his own house, and the house of the LORD, and *the wall of Jerusalem round about* (I Kings 3:1).

When Lucifer, as Satan and the Devil, is loosed out of the Bottomless Pit and deceitfully gathers armies to go up to war against Jerusalem after the Millennial Reign, he and his armies will run into the LORD's protective Wall of Salvation about the City.

The saints inside the City will sing a song of rejoicing and thankfulness for their protective Wall of Salvation, while God the Father sends Fire from Heaven upon Satan, the Devil, and his armies, causing Lucifer's final fall and humiliation at the end of Christ's Millennial Reign.

II. The New City's Wall Is Eternal

God's Master Plan and Purposive Will call for a special, Eternal Wall to be around both natural Jerusalem and spiritual Jerusalem, the New City.

When the New City descends out of Heaven, as a guiding Light to all the saved nations upon the Earth, Israel will enjoy a special portion of God's Glory and Everlasting Light that radiates out from it.

Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise. The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory (Isaiah 60:18,19).

In the Perfect Age, the LORD's Glorious Light will shine *eternally* upon earthly Zion, Jerusalem, and the Earth, eclipsing the natural glory of the Sun and Moon. The Glory of the LORD's Everlasting Light upon Israel's Wall of Salvation and Gates of Praise will neither decline nor wane, as does the Sun and the Moon.

God's Eternal Wall of Salvation around earthly Jerusalem will be a Wall of Fire.

For I, saith the LORD, will be unto her a wall of fire round about, and will be the glory in the midst of her (Zechariah 2:5).

After the Messiah, the LORD Jesus Christ, rebuilds the earthly Jerusalem at His Second Advent, it forever will enjoy a Wall of Eternal Flaming Fire of God's Glory and Truth round about it.

Thus, we have seen that God has planned that the Heavenly City, New Jerusalem, will be surrounded by an icy, protective Wall that is Great and High. And He has planned for a flaming, fiery Wall to be about the earthly Jerusalem to protect her forever, for both Walls are Eternal. How carefully God has planned for His future Bride's protection — both His natural Bride, Israel, and His Spiritual Bride, the New City.

Chapter Fourteen

The Twelve Gates of the New City and the Names of the Twelve Tribes of Israel that Are Written on Them

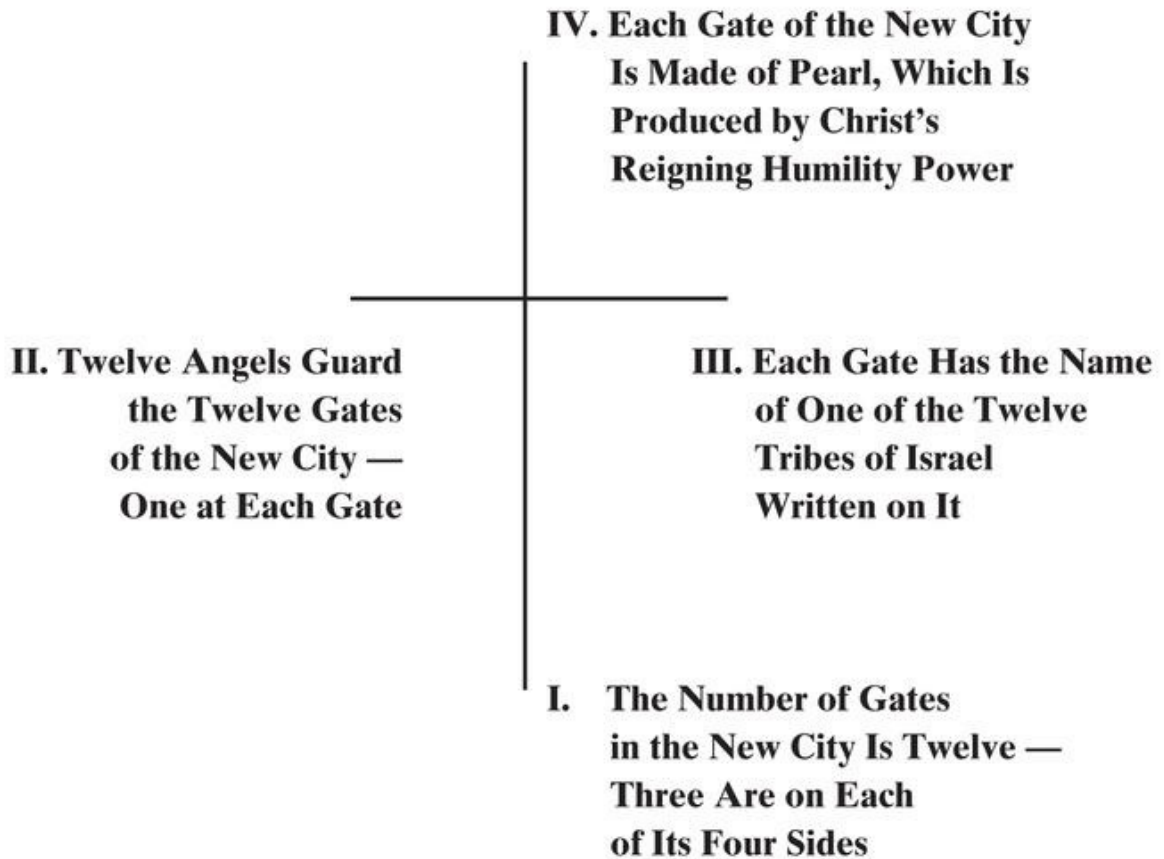
Continuing with his description of the New City, John next told about the Gates in its Wall: They are Twelve in number; three Gates are on each of its four sides. The Gates have the Names of the Twelve Tribes of Israel on them, arranged in the order of their encampment around the Mosaic Tabernacle (Numbers 2:1-34). Twelve Angels guard these Twelve Gates, which are made of the Pearly Humility Substance of Christ's Power to Reign over Pride in all its forms in the human heart.

There are many mysteries about the Gates of the New City that are wonderful lessons for Christians today as they progress in their spiritual journey, for there is nothing in the past nor the future that does not relate to us today. *All* Scripture is profitable — historical Scripture and prophetic Scripture — all is for doctrine, for our reproof, our correction, and our instruction in righteousness. So when John wrote about the New City, the Spirit moved through him to reveal necessary Truths to us that will help us to be part of God's New City. John wrote:

And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel: On the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates.... And the twelve gates were twelve pearls; every several gate was of one pearl:... (Revelation 21:12,13,21).

A gate is for controlling entrance or exit through an opening in a Wall. The entrances to a walled city are secured by gates. A gate signifies Power since the one who possesses the gates of a city possesses the city itself.

The following Stature reveals the blueprint for our study in this chapter:

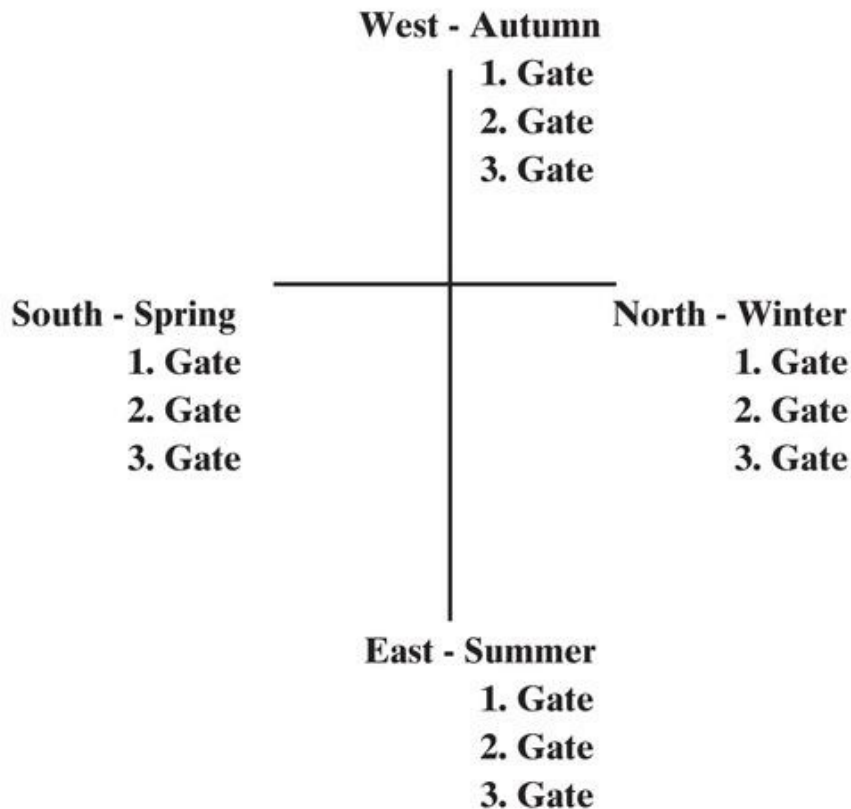


I. The Number of Gates in the New City Is Twelve — Three Are on Each of Its Four Sides

The number twelve is the number of Christ's Perfect Government, and since the New City is to be the ruling and governing center of all the Universes in the Perfect Age, God used the number twelve, repeatedly, in the New City.

And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates... (Revelation 21:12).

Each side of the Foursquare Wall displays three Gates that represent Christ's Perfect Government of the Divine Trinity on the east, south, north, and west sides.



Thus, the manifold Christ manifests the multiplicity of His Perfect Government in all seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter.

The repeated use of the number twelve indicates that the Bride of Christ willingly has submitted to the complete Governing Rule of her Bridegroom in her earthly spiritual journey — in the balmy breezes of her spiritual springtime, when the Breath of God’s Spirit has rocked the cradle of new blossoms of Truth on the Tree of Life — in the hot, dry, desert winds of summer — in the cold, chilling blast of winter’s stripping and chastening — and in the exalted fruitfulness of autumn.

Christ’s Bride has learned to submit herself to the Perfect Governance of the Crucified Christ and the Resurrected Christ in all seasons and in all places. Therefore, she will reap His Perfect Government of His Protective Gates in the New City’s Walls.

It is the LORD Jesus Christ Who controls the Gates of the New City, determining whether they should be open or shut.

II. Twelve Angels Guard the Twelve Gates of the New City — One at Each Gate

The Twelve Angels, who are Cherubims, are posted at the Gates to be Gatekeepers.

And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, ... (Revelation 21:12).

The Angels are posted to keep the Gates open for the outflow of the Glory of God and the Lamb and to escort the kings from the New Earth into the New City (Revelation 21:24). Ultimately, those who will have been healed of their mortality on Earth and who will have kept the LORD’s Commandments also will have the Gates of the City opened to them.

God previously used the Cherubims to guard the Garden of Eden and to protect the Tree of Life. God also used

Cherubims on the Mercy Seat to protect His *Kabode* Glory, His *Shekinah* Glory, and His *Torah*-Truth in the Ark within the Mosaic Tabernacle. Cherubims were used, in times past, on God's Throne-Chariot to protect His *Shekinah* Glory, which was carried away from His Temple by His Chariot because the Temple had been corrupted by Israel's idolatry.

The Cherubims at the Twelve Gates will guard the same Tree of Life in the New Jerusalem that was in the Garden of Eden. Although there will be no need for the same protecting ministry as they have had in the past, since fallen Lucifer and all his followers will have been committed eternally to the Lake of Fire at the time of the fulfillment of John's vision, the Cherubims will stand at the Twelve Gates as living witnesses to their faithful past performances in relation to protecting the LORD's Tree of Life, His Glory, the *Torah*-Truth, and His Bride.

III. Each Gate Has the Name of One of the Twelve Tribes of Israel Written on It

The twelve names of the Twelve Apostles are inscribed, one each, upon the Twelve Foundations of the Holy City, which puts them in the low place of humility; whereas the sons of Israel's names are placed in the high place of exaltation, their names being inscribed upon each of the Twelve Gates, which means they will be visible and lifted up.

...and names written thereon, which are *the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel*: (Revelation 21:12).

The meanings attached to the names of the Jewish tribes indicate spiritual attributes of those who have become true Jews, inwardly — those who have been circumcised by the Name of the LORD Jesus Christ.

Each name means something special:

- **Judah** — praise to the LORD
- **Issachar** — bring a reward
- **Zebulun** — a continuing city, to enclose, to dwell with
- **Reuben** — behold a son
- **Simeon** — one who hears and obeys
- **Gad** — a troop or army
- **Dan** — to judge
- **Asher** — blessedness
- **Naphtali** — one who contends; the fighting of the enthroned one against his enemies
- **Benjamin** — the son of the right hand
- **Ephraim** — fruitful
- **Manasseh** — forgetfulness

All who enter through the Gates of the City will have had the spiritual meaning of the names of the twelve tribes of Israel absorbed into their character so that they will exhibit all these spiritual qualities.

Next, John noted the material from which these Twelve Gates are made.

IV. Each Gate of the New City Is Made of Pearl, Which Is Produced by Christ's Reigning Humility Power

Each Gate has its own Angel, its own Name, and is made of a single Pearl, yet each one differs one from the other.

And the twelve gates were twelve pearls; every several gate was of one pearl: ... (Revelation 21:21).

The phrase "every several gate" indicates that each pearl was different.

We can learn some Spiritual Truths as we contemplate the formation of the natural pearl. When a small, foreign particle, like a grain of sand, finds its way into the oyster, it causes certain glands of the oyster to secrete fluids that form a hard, smooth substance around the foreign object. Hence, a pearl is formed.

Because of the pain the foreign object brings to it, the oyster "weeps," and with its tears, it creates a protective shell around the painful invader. Thus, a pearl is born!

Triggered by the entry of a grain of sand or some small parasite into its shell, the oyster immediately begins to secrete mother-of-pearl, which overlays the foreign substance. Layer after layer is formed until finally the foreign particle becomes a beautiful, lustrous pearl.

This same Principle works for us spiritually. We are that little foreign substance, and if we will hide away (by prayer, fasting, and studying) in the “shell” of God’s Word, Jesus Christ, through His Tears of Intercession for us, will loose His Humility “Mother-of-Pearl” Nature of His Name, which slowly will transform our proud nature into His Humble, Pearl Nature.

Another point of interest is that the formation of the pearl takes place in secret; it is a hidden process. No one can see the formation of the pearl inside a shell in the depths of the sea. As we trace the Hebrew word for *pearl* back to its origin, we find it comes from an unused root word meaning to freeze or crystal (from its resemblance to ice). Therefore, the name *pearl* links its formation to the Cold Humility Breath of Jesus Christ. In fact, the word for *Jasper* comes from the same root word, and, as we have studied about the New Jerusalem, we have seen that it is like a Jasper Stone, clear as Crystal, clear as ice.

Thus, we know from what we have studied that these Twelve Gates of Pearl are formed out of the substance of Christ’s Perfect, Governmental Humility.

These Pearly Gates also must be formed within the spiritual heart of Christ’s Bride during her earthly journey as she spends time alone in the secret place with the Crucified Christ, allowing His Cold Humility Breath to breathe upon her through His Tears of Intercession in her behalf. In this manner, she will be prepared for dwelling eternally in the New City.

If we expect to be included in Christ’s Bride, we must learn to reign over all things of the world, the flesh, and the Devil that would destroy our secret, personal union with Christ. The formation of these precious Twelve Pearls within our heart will never be formed apart from the Waters of Christ’s Name, Death, and Life and His Holy Tears and prayerful Intercession for us. We must humble our pride by surrendering it up for crucifixion and by taking on the Cold Breath of Humility of the Crucified Christ. We have much proud flesh to overcome in order to grow “unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ” (Ephesians 4:13).

In His Word, God has hidden the mystery of the Knowledge of reigning over the hindrances, weights, and sins that beset us. Only those who diligently search after the Pearls of Knowledge that will help them to be overcomers and, thus, be in Christ’s Bride, ever find them. Did Jesus not say, “... thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes”? (Matthew 11:25).

The mysteries pertaining to the formation of the Twelve Gates of Pearl in the Wall of the New City lie hidden in the Parables Jesus taught. If we are to have the Eternal City of God formed within us, we must glean the Truth from His Word so that we can understand how to let God form each part of the City in us — in the case of the Parables — the Twelve Gates of the City.

There are twelve categories of Truth in the Parables Jesus Christ taught, which fit together with the Twelve Gates of Pearl in the Wall of the New City. Although the Bible contains more than twelve Parables, they all fall clearly into twelve categories of Truth that deal with twelve lawless areas of our flesh, which must be subdued and reigned over by Christ’s Humility Truth in order for Twelve Gates of Pearl to be formed in our heart. Our proud, fleshly nature must be crucified and overlaid with Christ’s Humility Nature in order for the Twelve Gates of Christ’s Perfect Government of Humility to be formed in our heart and for them to reign there.

Christ’s twelve Governmental Parables of Truth shine forth like twelve beautiful Pearls. As these Governmental Truths of Humility are formed within our heart, our life will be ruled by Christ’s Humility instead of our Pride of Revelation, Pride of Redemption, and Pride of Satisfaction. Christ’s Twelve Governmental Gates of Humility will shut out the pride of the world, the flesh, and the Devil, but they will open for God’s Spirit and the Truth of Jesus Christ.

In order for the eyes of our understanding to be illuminated and enlightened by the Truth of the Twelve Gates of Pearl and Christ’s Parables that pertain to them, we must willingly humble ourself as babes and sucklings (become small in our own eyes) so that we can feed upon the Infinite, Divine Bosom of God’s Truth, daily drinking the sincere Milk of His Word.

A comprehensive study of the twelve categories of Christ’s Parables of Truth, which form the Gates of the New City in our heart, is too large to be included with any other subject. Therefore, for the time being, let us consider a brief overview of Christ’s twelve classes of Pearly Reigning Humility which we must allow Him to form within our heart. If we expect to abide in the New City, we must allow Him to build within our old heart a New City that is exactly like the New City He is building for His beloved Bride.

The Twelve Pearly Gates of Christ's Reigning Humility Power

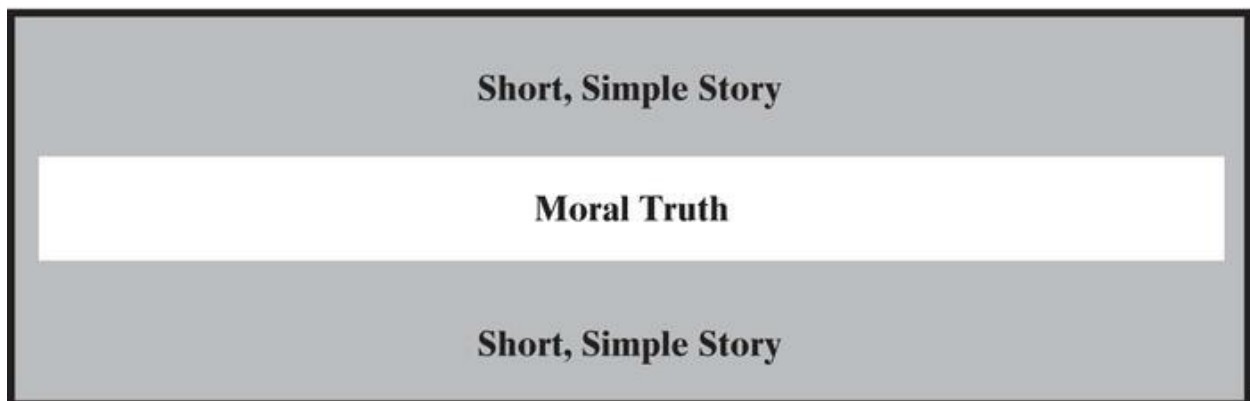
	J. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Anxiety (Benjamin)
	K. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Unjust Judgment (Ephraim)
	L. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prayerlessness (Manasseh)
D. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Rebellion (Reuben)	G. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Murmuring (Dan)
E. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Possessions (Simeon)	H. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Rejection (Asher)
F. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Unmercifulness (Gad)	I. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Unfaithfulness (Naphtali)
	A. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over God's Word to Protect It from Proud Enemies (Judah)
	B. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over the Evil of Pride (Issachar)
	C. Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Shame (Zebulun)

The first category of Truth in Christ's Parables that we must lay hold of, if our proud flesh is to be changed into a Humility Pearl, is for us to learn how to reign over God's Word. As we allow the Truth from this Parable to work in our heart, we will have the first Gate formed in the Wall of the New City within us. This Pearly Gate is the first of the three Gates on the east side of the City, the summertime of our growth to maturity in the Stature of the LORD Jesus Christ.

A. The First Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over God's Word to Protect It from Proud Enemies (Judah)

In The Parable of the Sower and the Seed, which Jesus taught in the thirteenth chapter of Matthew, we clearly can see how we must utilize the Principle of Ruling or Reigning over God's Word. The Parable depicts how, in all four stages of its growth and development in our heart, the Word must be protected in order for it to grow into maturity and fruitfulness because its continued existence is threatened in each stage of development. The *Seed* in this Parable is *Christ's Word of His Kingdom*. Christ's Kingdom pertains to the Truth of the Bride and Bridegroom Relationship and their reign during the Millennial Age and the Perfect Age.

Jesus taught the message of His Kingdom in a Parable in order to hide its spiritual Truths from the proudly wise, the indifferent crowd, and the curiosity seekers. A Parable means to throw beside, to compare. In other words, a Parable is a short, simple story from which a moral lesson may be drawn; it usually is an allegory.



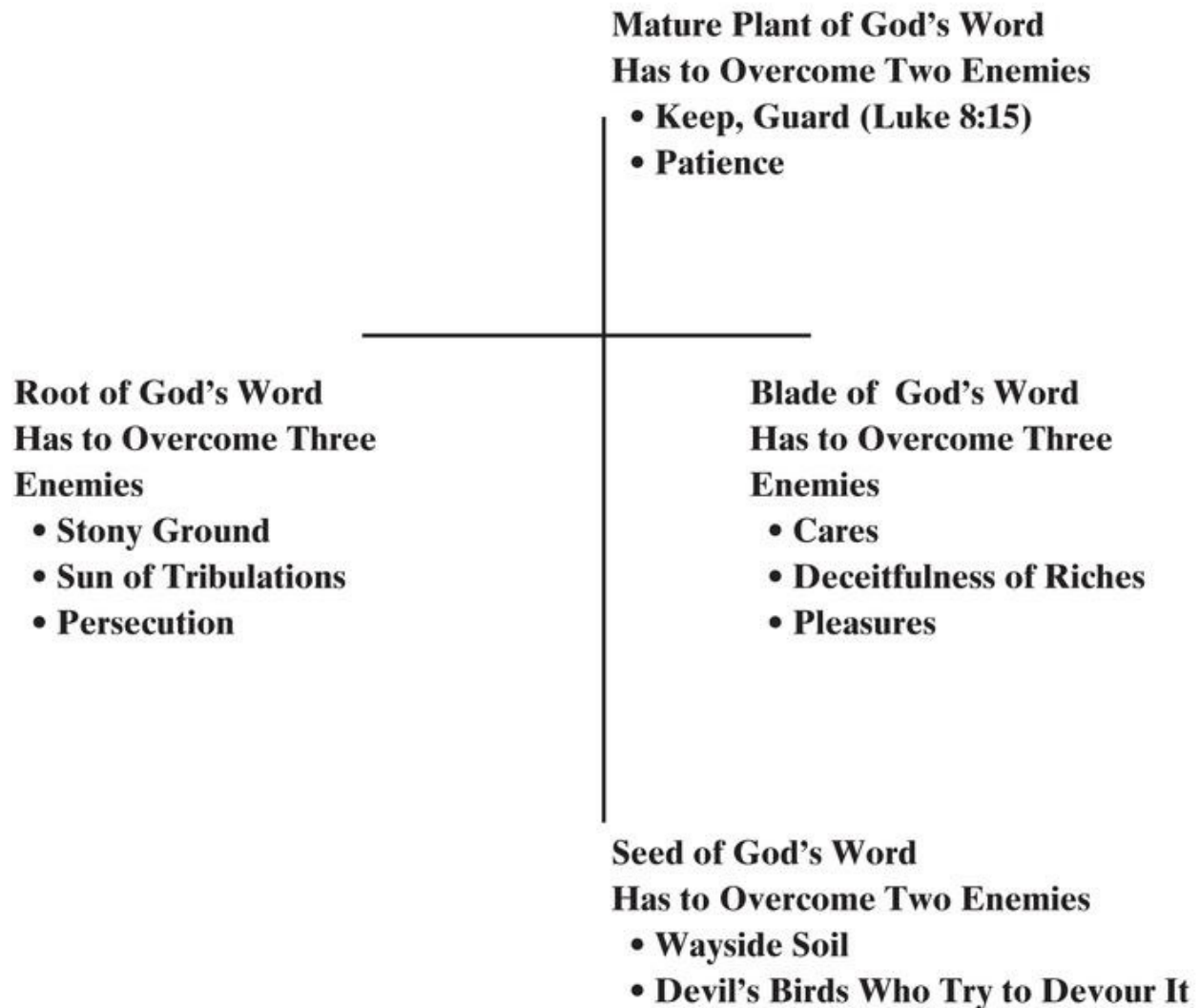
After Christ publicly taught His Parable, He privately expounded the mystery of it to His Disciples. Christ never revealed the hidden meanings of His Parables to the general public. He reserved the privilege of learning their mysteries for those who sat as Disciples at His feet. And so it still is today.

Jesus taught the people The Parable of the Sower and the Seed in the Book of Matthew:

And he spake many things unto them in parables, saying, Behold, *a sower went forth to sow*; And when he sowed, *some seeds fell by the way side*, and the fowls came and devoured them up: *Some fell upon stony places*, where they had not much earth: and forthwith they sprung up, because they had no deepness of earth: And when the sun was up, they were scorched; and because they had no root, they withered away. And *some fell among thorns*; and the thorns sprung up, and choked them: But *other fell into good ground*, and brought forth fruit, some an hundredfold, some sixtyfold, some thirtyfold (Matthew 13:3-9).

When we speak of "reigning" over God's Word, we are not implying that we rule or take command over the Word, but rather that we reverence it by protecting and guarding it against all proud enemies that would try to prevent it from growing to maturity and fruitfulness in the Humility of Christ Jesus in our heart.

Jesus' Parable taught what we have to guard against after the Seed of the Word has been sown in our heart:



We carefully must treasure God's Word, guarding it against the hard, wayside soil of our heart, lest it be stolen from us by the Devil's birds and, therefore, become unfruitful.

From the moment we first receive God's Word of Truth *above ground* in its *seed* stage, we must guard and protect it from the hard, wayside soil of our heart and from the Devil's birds of unbelief that would devour it by trying to convince us it is too much trouble to dig up the hard soil of our carnal heart.

The next level of Reigning over God's Word is when the Truth has grown to the *root* stage in our heart. Then, we must protect it *below ground*, from the hard, proud stones of rebellion, which would prevent the full growth of Christ's Humility Root in the soil of our heart. When the shallow root below ground encounters stones, it is unable to furnish nourishment during the time that the sun of tribulations and persecutions beams down upon the tender plant as it struggles to survive.

The next level of Ruling over God's Word is when the Truth reaches its *blade* stage of growth in our heart. On this level of development, we have to protect the Truth from the proud enemies or the thorns of our fleshly nature that would choke the Truth, should we allow our carnal heart to rule by placing the cares of this world, the

deceitfulness of temporal riches, and the pleasures of this life above the importance of God's Word. Allowed to grow in our heart, thorns will choke the Truth, preventing it from coming to fruition.

Even after God's Word of Truth has reached the stage of fruitful *maturity* in our heart, there still are enemies to overcome in order for the plant to increase in fruitfulness from thirtyfold, to sixtyfold, to one hundredfold.

The Bride of Christ will take God's Seed of Truth, as a tiny grain of sand, into her heart; and, like the oyster, she will weep tears of gratitude for it; and she will weep tears of repentance over having broken it. She will trade the hard, wayside soil, the stony ground, and the thorns of her proud flesh for the growth of Christ's Humility Pearly Substance, out of which He will form the first Gate of Pearl in her heart.

This is the first Gate of Pearl that must be formed in the heart of the Bride of Jesus Christ. Unless we are willing to reign over God's Word by protecting it and guarding it against every enemy that would destroy its Seed, Root, Blade, and Fruitfulness, we will not attain the full Stature of Christ in our heart, which is absolutely necessary if we want to be in Christ's Bride.

The name *Judah* or praise is written on the first Gate of Pearl, which is Christ's Humility Reigning Power over God's Holy Word. The sincere soul who finds treasures of Truth experiences the delight of the soul's approval and admiration as it *extols* God's Glory by its lofty *praise* for the Seed of Truth, the Root of Truth, the Blade of Truth, and the Mature Plant of Truth. The Bride will have grown to the fruitfulness of maturity and, thus, will have expressed her great delight and praise to the LORD for all the wonderful treasures He has given her from His Word.

The second Gate of Pearl and the second category of Truth in Christ's Parables is reigning over evil. Of course, in this instance, we do not reign over evil to guard and protect it, as we do with the Seed of Truth, but to conquer it and expel it from our heart.

B. The Second Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over the Evil of Pride (Issachar)

The second Gate of Pearl in the New City is a display of the Power of Christ's Humility Truth to reign over evil. Remember, a Gate can either be opened, or it can be shut. The Bride must have this particular Humility Gate of Pearl formed within her heart during the days of her flesh.

We must not be enticed nor deceived by evil if we expect to be in Christ's Bride. The Bride must be able to distinguish between good and evil so that she can close her Gate against all evil. Thus, if a sincere soul can discern between the evil of pride and the good of Christ's Pearly Humility, it will know how to join itself to Christ's Pearly Good Substance and how to separate itself from all proud, evil substance of the flesh.

Jesus taught two Parables to show His Disciples how to separate between good and evil: The Parable of the Tares, and The Parable of the Dragnet.

Another parable put he forth unto them, saying, The kingdom of heaven is likened unto a man which sowed good seed in his field: But while men slept, his enemy came and sowed tares among the wheat, and went his way. But when the blade was sprung up, and brought forth fruit, then appeared the tares also. So the servants of the householder came and said unto him, Sir, didst not thou sow good seed in thy field? from whence then hath it tares? He said unto them, An enemy hath done this. The servants said unto him, Wilt thou then that we go and gather them up? But he said, Nay; lest while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the wheat with them. Let both grow together until the harvest: and in the time of harvest I will say to the reapers, Gather ye together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn (Matthew 13:24-30).

Then Jesus sent the multitude away, and went into the house: and his disciples came unto him, saying, Declare unto us the parable of the tares of the field. He answered and said unto them, He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man; The field is the world; *the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked one*; The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. As therefore *the tares are gathered and burned in the fire*; so shall it be in the end of this world. The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. *Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father.* Who hath ears to hear, let him hear (Matthew 13:36-43).

Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind: Which, when it was full, they drew to shore, and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad away. So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just. And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth (Matthew 13:47-50).

The Rule and Reign of Christ and His Bride relate to two dispensations: namely, the “Kingdom of Heaven,” the time of their Earthly Reign during the Millennium; and the “Kingdom of God,” the time of their Universal Reign throughout Eternity in the Perfect Age in the New City.

The Parable of the Tares and the Wheat is prophetic of the sincere soul’s (depicted by the wheat) struggle to separate its appointed portion of the good Seed of God’s Word of Truth from the evil seed of untruth of the Devil’s tares. The soil is the ground of Christ’s Humility Heart and Mind. God allows the tares of error to be planted alongside the wheat of Truth in order for the wheat to discern, clearly, the difference between good and evil and, thereby, not allow the tares to steal the good soil of Christ’s Pearly Substance of His Humility Mind and His Humility Truth.

After Jesus Christ’s Second Coming to the Earth, and after the Battle of Armageddon has been fought, and also prior to the setting up of His Thousand-year Reign on the Earth, Jesus Christ will make a final separation between the wheat and the tares. In other words, He will divide between the good and the evil.

In the Parable of the Tares, the evil tares (the children of the wicked one) grew alongside the good wheat. Thus, the good seed, who are the children of the Kingdom, had to war, daily, to prevent the tares from stealing their very life’s substance — the good soil of Christ’s Pearly Humility Mind — which would have defeated the growth of Christ’s Word of Truth in their hearts.

After Christ has gathered His wheat into His barn, He will send forth His Angels to gather out of His Kingdom the tares which offend and do iniquity. The tares shall be cast into a furnace of fire, but the good wheat shall be gathered into His barn.

Christ’s Bride loves and appreciates the Good Soil of Christ’s Mind, which feeds His Truth with His Revelation. Christ’s Seed and Soil of Pearly Humility Substance is the only substance that can rule over evil. Therefore, through Christ’s Humility Reigning Power, Christ’s Bride can war against all tares, all thieves, in her heart and life that would steal the Pearly Humility Substance of the Crucified Christ that she has laid hold of in her heart.

Remember, it is not for us to decide what is a tare in our heart, nor is it for us to do the separating. As we lay our heart bare before the LORD in prayer, He will come and show us what is a fleshly “tare” in our heart and life and what is the Good Wheat of Truth. He will show us the unchangeable situations that are tares or the unchanging conditions that always will be present to try to steal the Pearl of Christ’s Humility Mind that will feed our good Wheat of Truth. If we will stay in God’s Word and continue to feed and nourish the little Plant of Truth in our heart, with Christ’s Humility Mind (Philippians 2:5-8), our plant of Truth will continue to grow, in spite of the tares, and gather strength by taking its God-given Humility Substance from the tare.

The Parable of the Dragnet, recorded in Matthew 13:47-50, teaches us how to rule and reign over evil by inspection and also by separation. By careful investigation and critical examination, we can discern the good in our heart by the presence of Christ’s submissive Pearls of Surrender, and we can discern the evil in our heart by the presence of fleshly, proud, arrogant rebellion.

In this Parable, the Kingdom of Heaven is pictured as a net. Just as a natural net gathers all kinds of fish, both good and bad, when the Message of the Kingdom of Heaven is preached, it also gathers all types of people, both good and bad.

Even among the so-called Christian ranks, there are those whom God looks upon as unclean and unfit for His Kingdom. Christ’s fishermen, who seined the great sea of humanity with the Net of Truth of the Kingdom of Heaven, did not keep all the fish. When they reached the shore, there was a time of inspection and separation. The good fish that possessed Christ’s Pearls of Humility were retained, but the bad fish that were full of proud, arrogant rebellion were cast aside.

Christ builds our second Gate of Pearl as we learn how to rule over evil by His Humility Patience, by warfare, and by inspection. As this Gate of Pearl is formed in our Wall of Truth that is around the spiritual temple in our heart, we will be able to open this Gate of Pearl to all the good and to close it against all evil of the flesh, the world, and the Devil. We must maintain a humble, patient, and watchful attitude at all times in order to be able to inspect and to separate between the good and the evil, just as Jesus did in the days of His Flesh.

Isaiah, prophetically speaking of Jesus, said, “Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good” (Isaiah 7:14-16). Jesus humbly ate the butterfat or zeal of His Father’s Word, and He humbly ate the honey or sweetness of His Father’s Word, which gave Him the ability always to discriminate between good and evil.

Many of our spiritual failures come because we have not eaten the butter and the honey of God’s Word. The light, sweetness, joy, and zeal of God’s Word give us the ability to war patiently, to inspect carefully, and to separate discriminately between good and evil. Thus, we can gain Christ’s Pearly Substance to form our second Gate.

Issachar's name is written on the second Gate of Pearl in the New City's Wall. The Name *Issachar* means to bring a reward. The LORD will reward His Bride for all the times she will have remained patiently in the place where He has planted her, warring against the tares and preventing them from stealing Christ's Humility Pearly Substance from her heart. And He will reward her for her careful inspection and critical examination of good and evil and for her discriminate separation of good and evil.

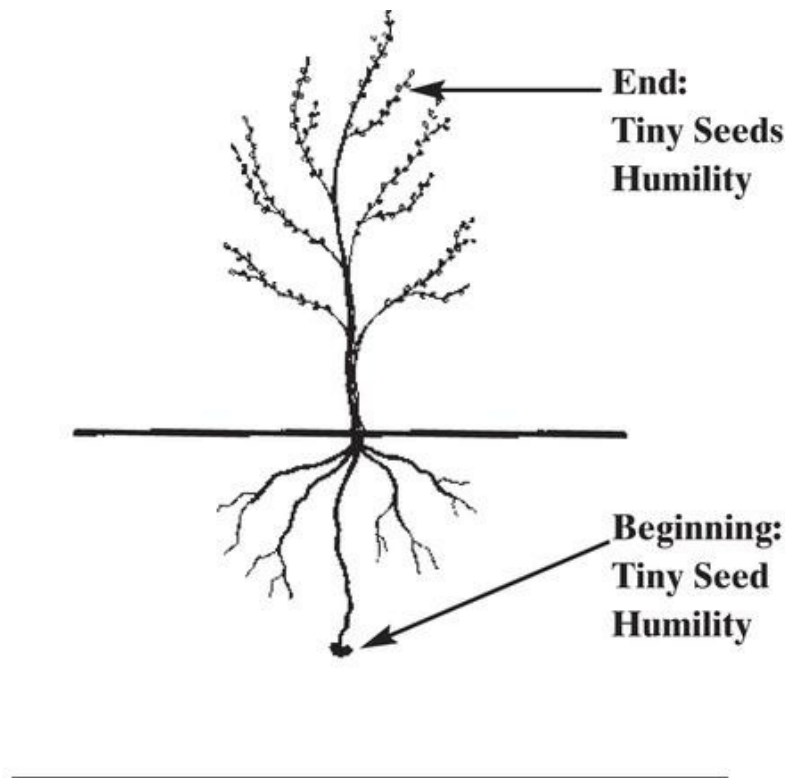
The LORD also will reward the evil tares by giving them to His fiery flames, and He will reward the evil, bad fish by casting them away.

Thus, Issachar's name is altogether fit for the second Gate of Pearl because it speaks of the reward awaiting those who have learned to separate good from evil.

C. The Third Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Shame (Zebulun)

The third Gate of Pearl of the New City's Wall pertains to our reigning over shame through Christ's Humility Power.

Jesus' Parable of the Mustard Seed reveals the Spiritual Principle of a small, humble beginning. Although the great mustard tree grows large, it has its origin in the tiniest of beginnings. And in its great stature of strength, it begets more tiny mustard seeds that always are reminders of God's Purposive Will for it, which is to begin with humility and to end with humility.



Another parable put he forth unto them, saying, *The kingdom of heaven is like to a grain of mustard seed*, which a man took, and sowed in his field: *Which indeed is the least of all seeds*: but when it is grown, it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree, so that the birds of the air come and lodge in the branches thereof (Matthew 13:31,32).

This Parable exposes a class of fleshly shame that is common to us all — shame for our humble beginning, a shame that refuses to beget the same tiny Seeds of Humility in our exaltation as we have known in our unknown, humility days. We must learn to reign over this kind of shame.

The Greek word for *shame* means a disgrace, a dishonour, and to despise. In our tiny beginning, we may have been more bold to witness personally for Christ. But when our tree has grown, we may feel a sense of shame settle down upon us when we witness for Christ because we fear people's rejection and ridicule.

Jesus warned us, saying, “For whosoever shall be *ashamed* of me and of my words, of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come in his own glory, and in his Father’s, and of the holy angels” (Luke 9:26).

Christ’s Bride certainly will reign over the fleshly sense of shame that fears rejection by the creature. Fleshly shame must be crucified within us, if we expect Jesus Christ to take us into Spiritual Union with Him, to bear His Name, and to be His Bride or Wife. Conversely, we ought to be thrilled for the privilege of being His representative. Therefore, we should rejoice and be exceedingly glad when we are rejected for His Name’s sake because we, then, are counted worthy to suffer for Him.

The smallest of seeds is a mustard seed. However, when it is fully grown, it still acknowledges its small beginning by begetting more tiny mustard seeds, which is a witness of its lack of shame for its humble beginning and its humble end.

Oftentimes successful Christians are ashamed of their small beginnings, when in reality they ought to be thankful for their humble, small beginnings. It is in the *Seed of Humility* that the Gates of Pearl are formed in our heart, which opens to us the way to a glorious, exalted union with Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom. Jesus Christ taught that the Reigning Power of His Kingdom is found in humility.

This third Gate of Pearl, Reigning Over Shame, must be formed in the spiritual heart of the Bride by Christ’s Humility Power. All prideful shame can be traced to three things: (1) shame because of our low place or position or small beginning; (2) shame over the loss of our spiritual reputation; (3) shame over our humble associates or companions.

As we humble ourself at the Feet of Jesus and diligently seek His Face, He will crucify this prideful shame within our heart. Then, He will give us His Gate of Pearl that will reign and rule by shutting out all prideful shame and by opening our heart to all of Christ’s Lowliness and Humility in the midst of all things.

Zebulun’s name is written on the third Gate of Pearl. The name *Zebulun* means a continuing city, to enclose, and to dwell with. Christ’s Humility is a continuing City. It is a secure enclosure against prideful shame. Those who dwell inside the Gate of Christ’s Humble, Reigning Power find the LORD’s Divine Delight and His Eternal Pleasure and Satisfaction. How well Zebulun’s name fits with the third Gate of Pearl. His name speaks of “shutting out,” and since it comes in place with the third gate, it speaks of shutting out shame. The Bride will have shut out carnal feelings of pride and shame, and she will have accepted Christ’s Way of Humility.

We now move to the south side of the New Jerusalem, the spiritual springtime of the Bride, in which she learns Truth that will form three more Pearly Gates in the Wall of her New City. The first Spiritual Principle the Bride learns on the south side is how to rule over rebellion through Christ’s Humility Reigning Power, which forms the fourth Gate of Pearl in her heart. This Gate is inscribed with the name of Reuben.

D. The Fourth Gate — Christ’s Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Rebellion (Reuben)

Jesus taught three Parables in order to reveal the mystery of ruling over rebellion: The Parable of the Woman Who Hid Leaven in Three Measures of Meal; The Parable of the Two Sons; and The Parable of the Good Shepherd.

The Parable of Leaven in the Three Measures of Meal reveals rebellion that believers have in their hearts against God’s Word.

Another parable spake he unto them; The kingdom of heaven is like unto leaven, which a woman took, and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened (Matthew 13:33).

Wisdom, Christ’s Humility, is personified as a woman who, in this instance, takes the Leaven of Christ’s Resurrection Power and hides it in *three* measures of meal — the Truth of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost — until the Word of Truth becomes quick and powerful in the heart.

God sends His quickened Leavened Word to cleanse and sanctify the heart of man. But man, in his proud heart, often rebels against God and His Humility Truth.

But this people hath a revolting and a rebellious heart; they are revolted and gone (Jeremiah 5:23).

God’s people revolted and rebelled in their hearts against God and His Words of Living Truth, spoken to them by His Prophets; therefore, they sided with Satan and gave their allegiance to him; and they took up arms against God.

Because they rebelled against the words of God, and contemned the counsel of the most High: (Psalm 107:11).

If we allow Christ's Humility Wisdom to hide His Leavened Resurrection Power of the Truth in our heart, and if we will not revolt and rebel against its Work of Humility in our proud heart, the Leavened Truth will break and grind our heart until it can become one with the Resurrected Bread or Meal of Life.

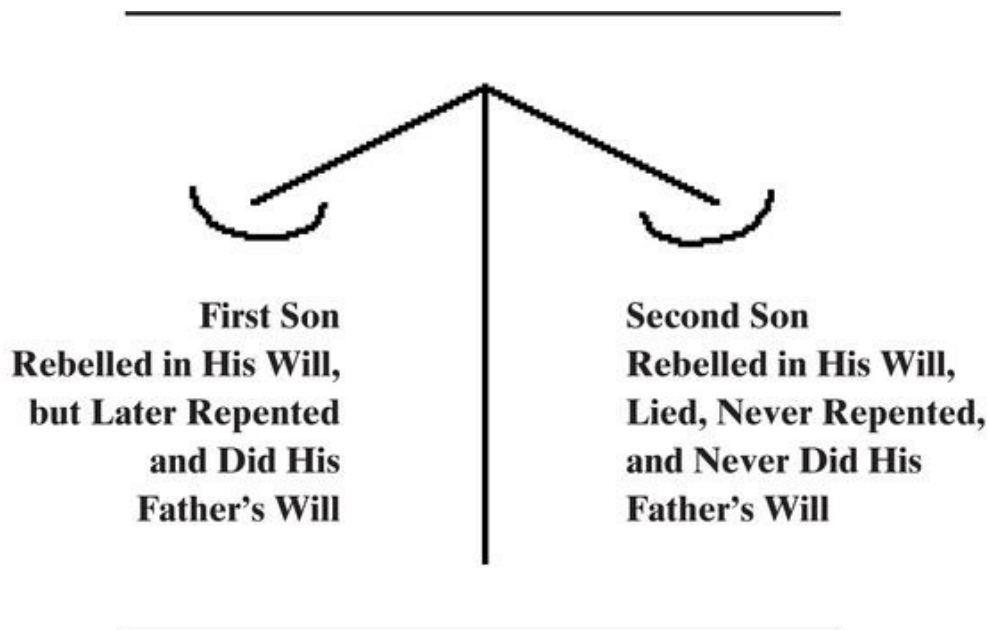
Remember, it is not someone else's rebellion that will keep us out of God's Kingdom and out of the New City; only our own rebellion can do that. We can humble ourself and surrender to God's Will regardless of what others choose to do.

It is the proud rebellion in our human will and heart that prevents us from eating Christ's Living, Resurrected Bread of Truth. Let us not rebel against God's precious Leavened Bread of Truth, which forms in us the fourth beautiful Gate of Pearl of Christ's Humility Reigning Power.

Christ's Humility Reigning Power will humble the pride in our heart that opposes God's Leavened, Resurrected Words of Truth. Once it is formed in our heart, this Gate of Pearl will refuse entrance to the proud, arrogant things of the world and the Devil, which revolt and rebel against God's quickened Resurrected Words of Truth. A humble heart, in which Christ's Humility Power reigns, always is open to God's Living Word. May we come to know the Humility Wisdom of Jesus Christ that will bring about the Leavening Work of His Resurrection Power and that will work throughout the entire three measures of Truth-Meal until we are brought into a hundredfold fruitfulness in our spiritual Marriage Relationship with the LORD.

Jesus' Parable of the Two Sons reveals rebellion in the human will that rises up against God's Purposive Will.

But what think ye? A certain man had two sons; and he came to the first, and said, Son, go work to day in my vineyard. He answered and said, I will not: but afterward he repented, and went. And he came to the second, and said likewise. And he answered and said, I go, sir; and went not. Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, The first. Jesus saith unto them, Verily I say unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of God before you. For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and ye believed him not: but the publicans and the harlots believed him: and ye, when ye had seen it, repented not afterward, that ye might believe him (Matthew 21:28-32).



The first son, from his proud, corrupt impudence in his will, outwardly rebelled and inwardly said, "I will not," to his father's will. However, afterward, he repented and went on to obey his father's will.

The second son promised outwardly that he would do his father's will, but he rebelled inwardly. Consequently, he never repented, nor did he obey his father's will.

Inward and outward rebellion prevent Christ's Humility Reigning Power, the fourth Gate of Pearl, from being formed in the heart.

Jesus' Parable of the Good Shepherd reveals those who rebel in their mind against God's Master Plan and the Door, Jesus Christ.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a

robber. But he that entereth in by the door is the shepherd of the sheep. To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice: and he calleth his own sheep by name, and leadeth them out. And when he putteth forth his own sheep, he goeth before them, and the sheep follow him: for they know his voice. And a stranger will they not follow, but will flee from him: for they know not the voice of strangers. This parable spake Jesus unto them: but they understood not what things they were which he spake unto them. *Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep* (John 10:1-7).

It is God's Master Plan for sinners to humble themselves, come to Jesus Christ, repent, and, therefore, enter into the sheepfold through Christ, the Door. This is God's Eternal Master Plan. However, there are thieves and robbers who rebel against God's Master Plan and His Door, Jesus Christ. Hence, through fallen Lucifer, they climb up another way into his stolen glory and his corrupt wisdom.

When we allow Christ Jesus to come into our heart, will, and mind with His Humility Reigning Power, He overthrows proud rebellion against God's Word, Will, and Master Plan, and He forms a Gate of Pearl that shuts out rebellion and always opens to Christ's Obedience and Humility.

The name *Reuben* means to behold a son, and it is written on the fourth Pearly Gate of the New City. This Gate of Pearl will be a witness of the Bride's death to proud rebellion against God's Word, Will, and Master Plan, and it is a witness to the unveiling of Christ's Humility Obedience — behold a Son!

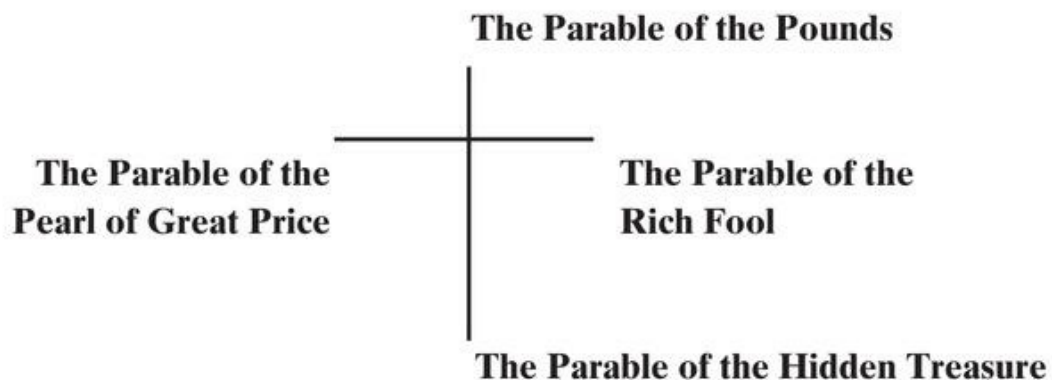
If we want to be in Christ's Bride, we will war against our rebellious flesh, and we will wait for the Heavenly Bridegroom to form within us the Pearly Gate of His Humility Reigning Power. Christ's Humility will reign over our rebellious flesh by crucifying it; then, He will resurrect it, and we will have a new nature of humble obedience to God's Word, Will, and Master Plan. Thus, we will rejoice that we have been counted worthy to suffer with Christ because the end result of our submitting to Christ's Humility Power will be His transforming change of our rebellion into obedience. The peaceful calmness of union with our Creator is worth the pain we have to endure in order to achieve it.

Christ's Espoused Bride must lay hold of His Humility Reigning Power in order to rule over these twelve specific areas of her fleshly, carnal nature, if she expects to be counted worthy of receiving the Eternal Prize of dwelling in the New City. When the Gates of Pearl are formed in Christ's Bride, they are subject to God's Purposive Will and Master Plan. Therefore, He determines the opening and the shutting of them.

The forming of the second Pearly Gate of Christ's Humility Reigning Power on the south side of the New City empowers the Bride to reign over possessions. This is the fifth Gate in the Wall.

E. The Fifth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Possessions (Simeon)

Jesus taught four Parables which show us how we need to deal with this area of our flesh in order to lay hold of His Truth that will bring His Transforming Power into action in our life. Thus, we will gain another Pearly Gate to open our way into the New City. These are the four Parables:



Before we can press on into spiritual maturity in the Stature of Jesus Christ, we must learn to reign over the

Spiritual Treasures God has given to us. If we permit the flesh, the Devil, or the world to steal God's Spiritual Gifts from us, instead of carefully guarding our precious Treasures, we never will grow in our spiritual education and moral development.

These four Parables teach us to value the LORD's spiritual Treasures of Truth so highly that we will be willing to "sell" whatever natural possessions we may have and leave nothing undone, in order to acquire His Treasures and *keep* them.

Some people collect natural treasures which they allow to be broken or which they esteem so little that they sell them for paltry sums. Later, they may come to realize what a real treasure they let slip through their fingers, and they suffer much regret. We must pray that we will never treat God's Treasures of Truth in such a manner, for our regret will be forever.

Jesus' first lesson about reigning over our possessions used The Parable of the Hidden Treasure as an example of where we should place true value.

Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field (Matthew 13:44).

The man who found a treasure hidden in a field realized its essential worth and its Eternal value; therefore, he went and sold all he had so that he could buy the field.

Jesus Christ is the True Treasure. In Christ is hidden:

- All Fullness (Colossians 1:19; John 1:16)
- All Treasures of Wisdom and Knowledge (Colossians 2:3)
- All Righteousness (I Corinthians 1:30)
- All Grace (John 1:14,17)

God's Word is the "field" wherein is hidden the Treasure of His Son, the Crucified Christ and the Resurrected Christ. It is a pleasurable, spiritual delight to discover this hidden Treasure and its Eternal, unspeakable worth. When the illuminated soul finds this unspeakable Treasure, he hides it in his heart and sells all his plans and purposes and buys the whole field of Truth of God's Word — from Genesis to Revelation.

Then, Jesus taught the Parable of the Pearl of Great Price. In this Parable, a Merchant found one pearl of great price, so he went and sold all he had so that he could buy it.

Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls: Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it (Matthew 13:45,46).

Jesus Christ is the Pearl of Great Price, a Jewel of Inestimable Worth. The true Christian is a spiritual merchant who seeks until he finds the Measure of the Stature of the Fullness of Christ.

Both men, the one who bought the field and the merchant who bought the Pearl, had to sell all they owned of the flesh, on one side of the scales. But on the other side of the scales, they gained Eternal wealth and riches in God's Treasures of Truth.

Unfortunately, in Jesus' Parable of the Rich Fool, the foolish man did not possess the Humility Wisdom he needed in order to look beyond this life and lay up Eternal Treasures. Jesus taught about him, too.

And he spake a parable unto them, saying, The ground of a certain rich man brought forth plentifully: And he thought within himself, saying, What shall I do, because I have no room where to bestow my fruits? And he said, This will I do: I will pull down my barns, and build greater; and there will I bestow all my fruits and my goods. And I will say to my soul, Soul, thou hast much goods laid up for many years; take thine ease, eat, drink, and be merry. But God said unto him, Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee: then whose shall those things be, which thou hast provided? So is he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God (Luke 12:16-21).

The rich fool was empty of Christ's Humility Reigning Power; therefore, he ruled over his possessions with proud covetousness and greed. In the midst of the great fruitfulness with which God was blessing him, the fool was making covetous plans to tear down his barns and build larger ones to hold his material possessions so that he greedily could consume them upon his own selfish desires. Therefore, God said, "Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee."

The rich fool refused to humble himself and allow Christ's Humility Reigning Power to overcome his

covetousness and greed, which would have helped him rule over his possessions according to God's Master Plan and Purposive Will and not according to his own greedy will. Because he refused God's Way, he lost his life, his soul, and his possessions.

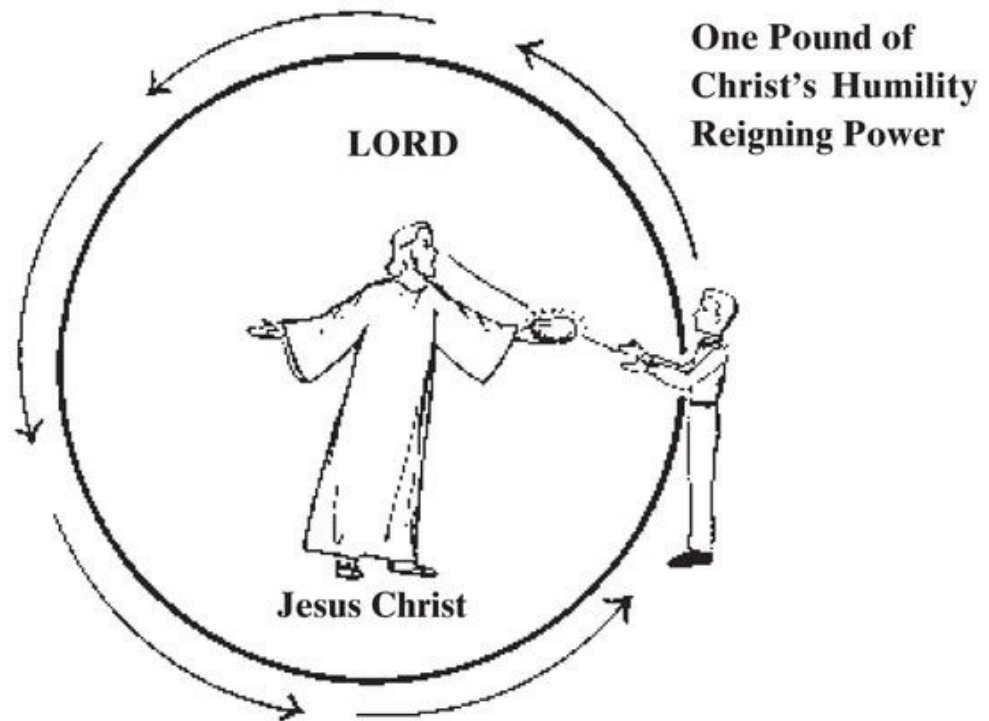
Jesus also gave The Parable of the Pounds to reveal His Humility Reigning Power over possessions.

And as they heard these things, *he added and spake a parable*, because he was nigh to Jerusalem, and because they thought that the kingdom of God should immediately appear. He said therefore, A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom, and to return. And he called his ten servants, and *delivered them ten pounds and said unto them, Occupy till I come*. But his citizens hated him, and sent a message after him, saying, We will not have this man to reign over us. And it came to pass, that when he was returned, having received the kingdom, then he commanded these servants to be called unto him, to whom he had given the money, that he might know how much every man had gained by trading. *Then came the first, saying, Lord, thy pound hath gained ten pounds*. And he said unto him, Well, thou good servant: because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over ten cities. And *the second came, saying, Lord, thy pound hath gained five pounds*. And he said likewise to him, Be thou also over five cities. And another came, saying, *Lord, behold, here is thy pound, which I have kept laid up in a napkin*: For I feared thee, because thou art an austere man: thou takest up that thou layedst not down, and reapest that thou didst not sow. And he saith unto him, Out of thine own mouth will I judge thee, thou wicked servant. Thou knewest that I was an austere man, taking up that I laid not down, and reaping that I did not sow: Wherefore then gavest not thou my money into the bank, that at my coming I might have required mine own with usury? And he said unto them that stood by, *Take from him the pound, and give it to him that hath ten pounds*. (And they said unto him, Lord, he hath ten pounds.) For I say unto you, That unto every one which hath shall be given; and from him that hath not, even that he hath shall be taken away from him. *But those mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay them before me* (Luke 19:11-27).

Jesus told of a nobleman who, before taking a journey into a far country, gave each of his ten subjects a pound and told them to occupy until he returned.

The Hebrew word for *occupy* is *saw-khar*, meaning to travel around as a peddler, to trade for profit and gain, to move about quickly with a palpitating heart, hence, to burn with feverish feelings.

The one word *occupy* teaches us a volume of Truth. Jesus Christ is the Nobleman. We are to move quickly around Him, making Him the Center of our life. He is to be our Governor and Guide as we daily trade our proud, inimical, fleshly headship for the Humility Reigning Power of His Holy Headship.



At the time of our Salvation, the LORD Jesus Christ freely gives us a “pound” of His Humility Reigning Power. But the growth and increase of His Humility Reigning Power in our life depends upon our submitting to His Humility Headship and trading our carnal, corrupt headship for His Holy, Divine Headship.

However, some of the Nobleman’s citizens, instead of being grateful for what they had received, hated him and sent a message after him, saying, “We will not have this man to reign over us.”

Nevertheless, in order to gain more of it, some wisely used the pound of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power they had received. One good servant traded and traded until his pound gained ten pounds of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power. Consequently, when Christ, his Master, returned, he was given ruling authority over ten cities because he had laid hold of a tenfold portion of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power. Another faithful servant traded his fleshly headship for Christ’s Humility Reigning Power and gained five pounds. For his gain, he was made ruler over five cities because he had laid hold of a fivefold portion of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power.

One wicked servant had such a mean opinion of his Master and such a contemptible disrespect for his pound of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power that he hid his pound in a napkin. So when the Nobleman asked him for an accounting of how he had used his pound, the wicked servant produced only the original, unused pound.

The Nobleman called this man a wicked servant. Therefore, He took away from him his unused pound and gave to the servant who had ten pounds, the one who had done the most trading. Thus, the wicked servant lost all because of his disesteem of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power.

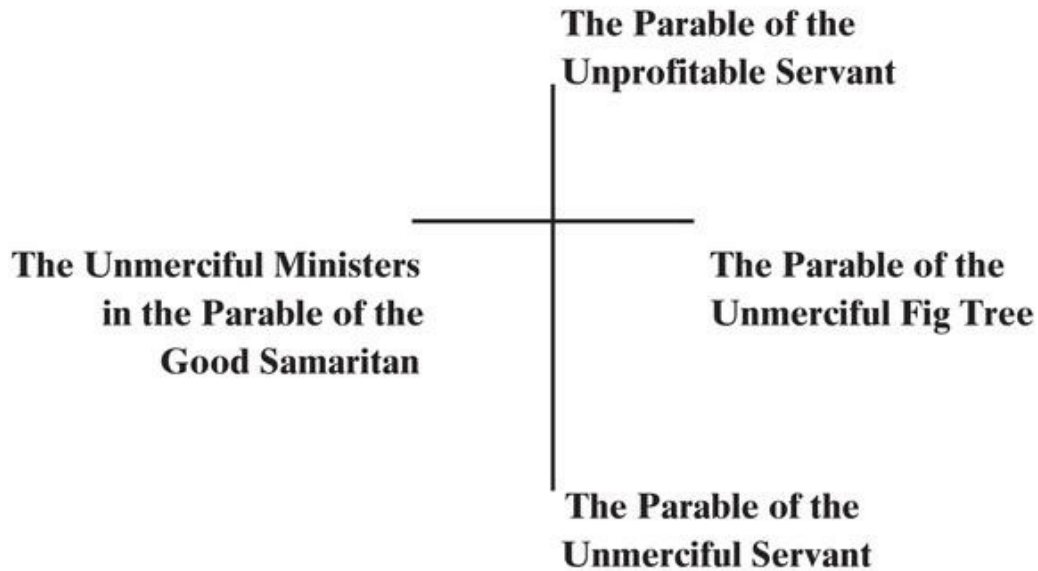
This second Pearly Gate on the south side of the New City will be a witness that Christ’s Bride, as she has walked through her earthly life, will have learned how to reign over both her natural and spiritual possessions through Christ’s Humility Reigning Power.

Simeon, which means he that hears and obeys, is written on the New City’s fifth Gate of Pearl. The name Simeon is an appropriate witness that the overcomers in Christ’s Bride have listened humbly and submissively and have considered the value of Christ’s Humility Reigning Power. Obediently, by faith, they have carried out the instructions and orders of His Holy Headship by giving up, for crucifixion on Christ’s Cross, the thoughts, opinions, and desires of their own headship.

The third and last Gate of Pearl on the south side of the New City is reigning over unmercifulness.

F. The Sixth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Unmercifulness (Gad)

When He taught the four Parables about reigning over unmercifulness, Jesus revealed the Truth about what it takes to have the sixth Gate of Pearl formed in our heart.



All these Parables reveal the different ways unmercifulness is manifested in our daily life. This first Parable deals with reigning over the unmercifulness of unforgiveness.

Then came Peter to him, and said, Lord, *how oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him?* till seven times? Jesus saith unto him, I say not unto thee, Until seven times: *but, Until seventy times seven.* Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants. And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents. But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made. The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all. Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt. But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellowservants, which owed him an hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took him by the throat, saying, Pay me that thou owest. And his fellowservant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all. And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt. So when his fellowservants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done. Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, O thou wicked servant, I forgave thee all that debt, because thou desiredst me: *Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on thee?* And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. *So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses* (Matthew 18:21-35).

Forgiveness presupposes an offense, a willingness to give up resentment against someone, and a willingness to give up our angry desire to punish the offender and to exact a penalty for his or her offense.

Contrariwise, unforgiveness means that we choose to hold on to our resentment, bitterness, anger, and demands for exacting punishment and penalties for both the offender and the offense.

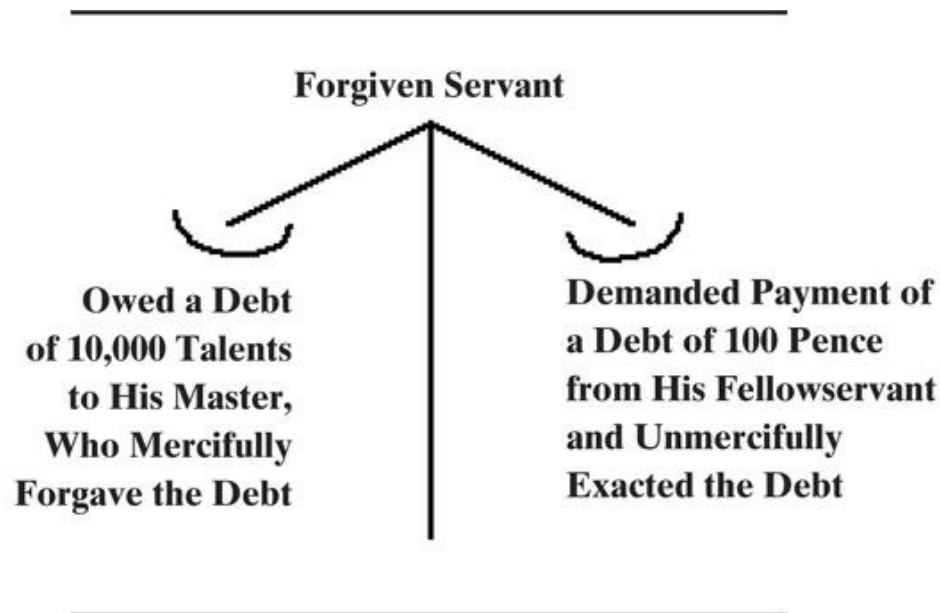
If there were no offenses, there would be no necessity for forgiveness. An offense is an injury, a grief, a hurt, a trespass, a fault, a guilt. When we experience a painful offense, unforgiveness rises within us until we allow Jesus Christ to help us overcome by circumcising and crucifying this unforgiveness from our heart as we submit to His Humility Reigning Power.

Forgiveness of injuries received is a must for us as Christians, both in the doctrine of our spiritual education and

in the fulfilling of our duties in our moral development.

In this Parable, the master exhibited wonderful forgiveness to his servant who was *greatly* indebted to him. The master, out of pure, merciful forgiveness, forgave his servant a huge debt of ten thousand talents.

However, this forgiven servant went out and found his fellowservant who owed him a *small* debt of one hundred pence, but he exhibited unreasonable, unmerciful severity toward him, forgetting the large debt of his own that the master had forgiven.

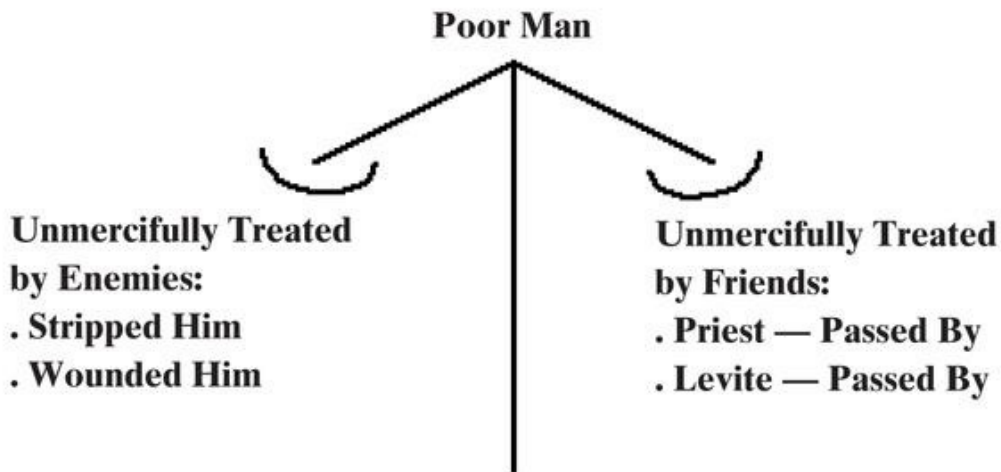


If Christ mercifully forgives our great debt of sinful injuries against His Spirit and His Word, we should seek His Humility Reigning Power to rule over unmercifulness, cruelty, and violence in exacting punishments and penalties for the small injuries we have received from our debtors.

Jesus revealed the second class of unmercifulness when He taught about Unmerciful Ministers in The Parable of the Good Samaritan.

And Jesus answering said, A certain man went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, which stripped him of his raiment, and wounded him, and departed, leaving him half dead. And by chance there came down a certain priest that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. And likewise a Levite, when he was at the place, came and looked on him, and passed by on the other side. But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came where he was: and when he saw him, he had compassion on him. And went to him, and bound up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine, and set him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. And on the morrow when he departed, he took out two pence, and gave them to the host, and said unto him, Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee. Which now of these three, thinkest thou, was neighbour unto him that fell among the thieves? And he said, He that shewed mercy on him. Then said Jesus unto him, Go, and do thou likewise (Luke 10:30-37).

Here was a poor man who was treated unmercifully, by both his enemies and his friends.



The thieves not only unmercifully stripped the poor man of his raiment, but they also unmercifully beat him until he was almost dead. Then God's Unmerciful Ministers, the Priest and the Levite, who lived by God's Merciful Gifts out of His Sanctuary, came by and beheld the poor man's painful, dying condition and passed by on the other side, with unconcern, disinterest, and supreme indifference.

The unmercifulness of their unconcern was exposed by the merciful concern and loving deeds of the Good Samaritan.

This class of unmercifulness, unconcern, and indifference exists within every human, fleshly heart. However, if we hope to be in Christ's Bride, we must allow the Humility Reigning Power of Jesus Christ to rule over our unmerciful unconcern toward our neighbour.

The Parable of the Unmerciful Fig Tree, which Jesus taught, points out our unmercifulness. The fig tree unmercifully withheld its fruit, being unwilling to share its life with others.

He spake also this parable; A certain man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard; and he came and sought fruit thereon, and found none. Then said he unto the dresser of his vineyard, Behold, these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree, and find none: cut it down; why cumbereth it the ground? And he answering said unto him, Lord, let it alone this year also, till I shall dig about it, and dung it: And if it bear fruit, well: and if not, then after that thou shalt cut it down (Luke 13:6-9).

In this Parable, Jesus taught His Disciples how to reign over the unmerciful waste of unfruitfulness. God's Divine Master Plan and Purposive Will is for every tree to bear fruit and mercifully share its life and fruit with others.

If a natural tree has refused to bear fruit, it unmercifully has wasted and squandered the Earth's humility treasures from below and the Sun's radiant gifts from above.

Likewise, in the spiritual realm, God intends for us to become fruitful Trees of Righteousness and, by Christ's Humility Reigning Power, to rule over unmerciful waste of the Humility Treasures of the Crucified Christ and the radiant, Exalted Gifts of Light from the Resurrected Christ.

The owner of the vineyard in this Parable had every right to expect fruit on his fig tree. Yet, when he went to gather fruit to satisfy his hunger, he found none. He was ready to cut down the tree, but the dresser of the vineyard pleaded with him to give the tree another opportunity to bear fruit.

We always are glad when the LORD extends Mercy to us and gives us another chance to be fruitful in our love to Him. However, we are not so happy to extend the same mercy to those who fail to show their fruit of love toward us. The LORD demands that His Bride be just as merciful toward others as He is toward her.

Jesus taught The Parable of the Unprofitable Servant, hoping to show us still another form of our unmercifulness.

But which of you, having a servant plowing or feeding cattle, will say unto him by and by, when he is come from the field, Go and sit down to meat? And will not rather say unto him, Make ready wherewith I may sup, and gird thyself, and serve me, till I have eaten and drunken; and afterward thou shalt eat and drink? Doth he thank that servant because he did the things that were commanded him? I trow not. So likewise ye,

when ye shall have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done that which was our duty to do (Luke 17:7-10).

God's servants must, after plowing and feeding in God's Field, employ their humble strength in spreading a table of praise and thanksgiving to Him for the privilege of working in His Field. After they dutifully have obeyed God, the Master and Owner, they must not begin to think, unmercifully, that they have made Him their debtor. They must not think, unmercifully, that what they have done merits any special favours from God or that He can be forced to prejudicial actions on anyone's behalf. They humbly must acknowledge that they are unprofitable servants as far as being able to add anything to God's Holiness, Glory, Divinity, Power, Nature, Truth, Name, or Knowledge.

However, people with an unmerciful and ungrateful attitude think that because they have worked for Christ that they have gained the power to force Christ to reward them according to their prideful plots, purposes, and plans.

The Humility Reigning Power of Christ will form, in the Bride's heart, the sixth Gate of Pearl, which will shut out unmerciful pride and rule over it. Thus, the heart can rest in humble submissiveness to Christ's Headship.

The name Gad is inscribed on the sixth Gate of Pearl. *Gad* means a troop or army, which tells us that the Humility Reigning Power of Christ manifested in this Pearly Gate is like a mighty army or troop to war against proud unmercifulness.

The sixth Gate of Pearl in the New City will be a witness that the Bride will have laid hold of the Governmental Power of the Bridegroom, Jesus Christ, and will have allowed it to rule over the proud unmercifulness in her heart.

Thus, this Pearly Gate teaches us how to reign over the unmercifulness we feel in our heart when we have been offended by others. It is better to rebuke a brother to his face, when he has offended us, than to harbour feelings of bitterness in our heart. Our brother may not have realized that he offended us. Even if the offense were deliberate, an open confrontation gives the offender an opportunity to defend and explain himself. We are to forgive our brother whether he repents or not. We must forgive, if we expect the LORD, in His great Mercy, to forgive us when we sin against Him.

Thus, we have seen how Christ, by these four Parables — The Unmerciful Servant; The Good Samaritan; The Unfruitful Fig Tree; and The Unprofitable Servant — teaches us how to rule over proud unmercifulness so that we can attain the Prize of being in Christ's Bride.

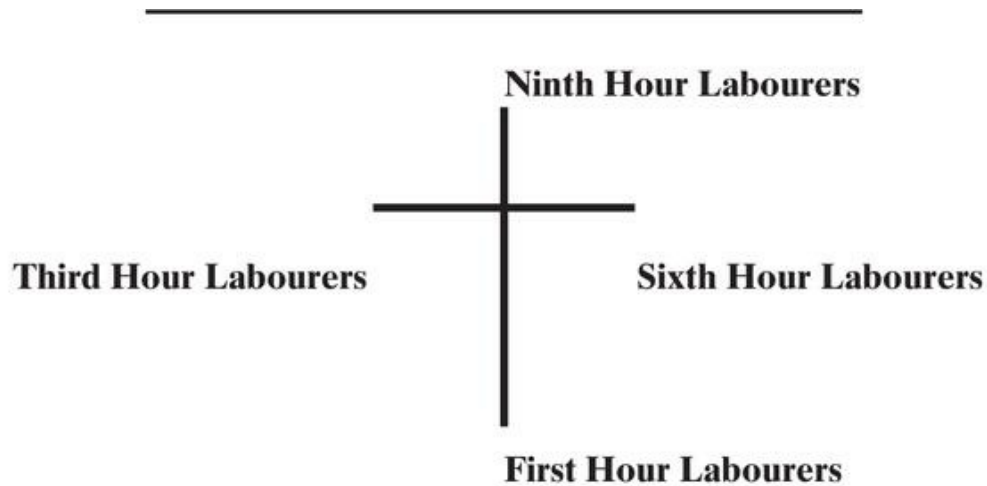
We now move to the cold, wintry north side of the New City, where we will study the seventh, eighth, and ninth Gates of Pearl, the first of which is reigning over murmuring.

G. The Seventh Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Murmuring (Dan)

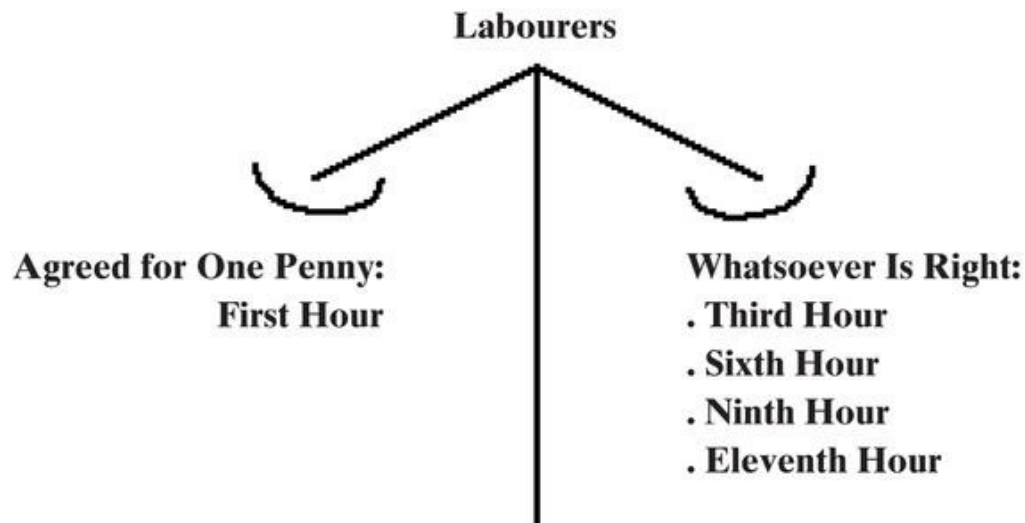
The first Pearly Gate on the north side of the New City's Wall relates to reigning over prideful murmuring. The LORD taught The Parable of the Labourers in the Vineyard to reveal His True Humility that we need in order to reign over murmuring against Divine Decisions.

For the kingdom of heaven is like unto a man that is an householder, which went out early in the morning to hire labourers into his vineyard. And when he had agreed with the labourers for a penny a day, he sent them into his vineyard. And he went out about the third hour, and saw others standing idle in the marketplace, And said unto them; Go ye also into the vineyard, and whatsoever is right I will give you. And they went their way. Again he went out about the sixth and ninth hour, and did likewise. And about the eleventh hour he went out, and found others standing idle, and saith unto them, Why stand ye here all the day idle? They say unto him, Because no man hath hired us. He saith unto them, Go ye also into the vineyard; and whatsoever is right, that shall ye receive. So when even was come, the lord of the vineyard saith unto his steward, Call the labourers, and give them their hire, beginning from the last unto the first. And when they came that were hired about the eleventh hour, they received every man a penny. But when the first came, they supposed that they should have received more; and they likewise received every man a penny. And when they had received it, they murmured against the goodman of the house, Saying, These last have wrought but one hour, and thou hast made them equal unto us, which have borne the burden and heat of the day. But he answered one of them, and said, Friend, I do thee no wrong: didst not thou agree with me for a penny? Take that thine is, and go thy way: I will give unto this last, even as unto thee. Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with mine own? Is thine eye evil, because I am good? So the last shall be first, and the first last: for many be called, but few chosen (Matthew 20:1-16).

The labourers in this Parable are divided into four classes, according to the hours they worked:



In addition, these labourers can be divided into *two* classes, according to their agreements with the Owner and Master of the of the vineyard. The first-hour labourers agreed from the beginning for a penny, and the third, sixth, ninth, and eleventh-hour labourers agreed to leave the Divine Decision about their reward to the LORD, the Owner and Master of the Vineyard.



In the beginning of the day, the Householder went out and hired labourers to work in His Vineyard. These first-hour labourers did not trust the Divine Decision of the LORD, the Householder, until they had obtained an agreement to work for a specific amount — a penny a day. However, the next four classes of labourers all trusted the Divine Decision of the LORD, the Householder, to give them whatever was right. Hence, they did not need to agree to any specified amount. So all the labourers of the third, the sixth, the ninth, and the eleventh hours were willing to trust in the Righteousness and the Justice of the LORD, the Householder, to remunerate them justly for their labours in His Vineyard.

At the end of the day, when the work was over, the Householder called the labourers in to pay them for their

services. He began with the eleventh-hour labourers, giving each of them a penny. Then, when He came to the first-hour labourers, He also gave them a penny, according to His agreement with them.

However, when they received the same pay as those who had worked one hour, they began to murmur against the Holy, Divine Decision of the LORD, the Householder. By their accusations and murmurings against the Goodness and the Justice of the Householder, they broke their original agreement. They made a proud, unjust decision that they were worthy of more; therefore, they murmured in angry discontent and uttered words of dissatisfaction, accusing the Goodman of the house of making the eleventh-hour labourers, who had worked only one hour, equal with them who had worked twelve hours. It is clear to see that, although they had spent twelve hours in the Master's Vineyard, they had grown neither in their spiritual education nor in their moral development. They did not understand that people will be rewarded in Eternity according to the amount of Christ's Spiritual Stature they have attained in this life, not according to how long they have worked in the Vineyard.

In the Day of the Judgment Seat of Christ, we will see empirically and know that it was not the great things we did in Christ's Vineyard that will count, but the amount of Christ's Spiritual Stature that we have laid hold of in our spiritual education and in our moral development.

We must ask the LORD to help us see the great necessity of laying hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power that rules over the sin of murmuring against His Divine Decisions in all things of our life, if we want to have the Seventh Gate of Pearl formed in our heart. Without this Gate of Pearl, which is a manifestation of Christ's Humility Reigning Power being formed in our heart, we cannot enter into a Spiritual Marriage Relationship with Jesus Christ.

We cannot love Jesus Christ and His Holy Headship and murmur in angry discontent at the same time.

The name Dan is inscribed on this seventh Gate of Pearl. Since Dan's name means to judge, this Gate of Pearl will be a witness that Christ's Bride will have left all decisions to Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom, and that she will have been cheerfully content and sufficiently satisfied with her Bridegroom's Divine Decisions, as she has lived under His Headship while on Earth.

The eighth Pearly Gate pertains to Christ's reigning Power over rejection. It is the second Gate on the north side of the New City.

H. The Eighth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Rejection (Asher)

Sooner or later, we *all* experience either the feelings or the acts of rejection. At some time, we all have felt that we have been discarded or thrown away as worthless, either by the Creator or the creation. There are times in all our lives when others have refused to agree with us or fellowship us and, therefore, have cast us away as useless.

Jesus also was despised and rejected, yet He did not respond with bitter retaliation. He is our Holy, Divine Example; therefore, we do well to follow Him.

Jesus' Parable of The Wicked Husbandmen presents the Truth about the subject of rejection.

Hear another parable: There was a certain householder, which planted a vineyard, and hedged it round about, and digged a winepress in it, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country: And when the time of the fruit drew near, he sent his servants to the husbandmen, that they might receive the fruits of it. And the husbandmen took his servants, and beat one, and killed another, and stoned another. Again, he sent other servants more than the first: and they did unto them likewise. But last of all he sent unto them his son, saying, They will reverence my son. But when the husbandmen saw the son, they said among themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance. And they caught him, and cast him out of the vineyard, and slew him. When the lord therefore of the vineyard cometh, what will he do unto those husbandmen? They say unto him, He will miserably destroy those wicked men, and will let out his vineyard unto other husbandmen, which shall render him the fruits in their seasons (Matthew 21:33-41).

In this Parable, the Householder Who planted a Vineyard represents God the Father. A vineyard in the natural realm pictures the Spiritual Vineyard God seeks to plant within the heart of every individual. No man can come to Jesus Christ, the True Vine, except the Father draw him (John 6:44). This Scripture teaches us that the Vineyard or Christ, the True Vine in a human heart, must be planted there by God the Father.

A natural vineyard is a fruitful place because it is planted with living seeds that carry the embryos of life which will grow into mature, fruitful vines, if properly guarded, fertilized, cultivated, and pruned. Likewise, when we accept, by faith, Jesus Christ as our Saviour, the Heavenly Father plants within us the Living Seed of His Word (I Peter 1:23). Then, as we trust the LORD to guard the Seed, to help us fertilize it with our tears, cultivate it with study and prayer, and allow Him to prune it, it will grow into a mature, fruitful Vine in the Image of Jesus Christ.

Jesus said, "I am the true vine, and my Father is the husbandman" (John 15:1).

Next, the Householder in the Parable placed a hedge about His Vineyard to protect the plants within and to keep out all intruders who would spoil the vines. Then, He built a Watchtower, which represents the LORD's Name and Will. Finally, before the Householder left to go into a far country, He let the Vineyard out to husbandmen.

The husbandmen to whom the Householder appointed the care and oversight of His Vineyard of Spiritual Truth was the Jewish nation. To His chosen people, Israel, God committed His Living *Torah*-Truth, the Mosaic Tabernacle, and Solomon's Temple, each with their Supernatural Glory, Supernatural Fire, Supernatural Water, and God's Covenants.

God committed the oversight of all these things to His appointed Priests, Prophets, and Kings. However, when these husbandmen persecuted, wounded, and killed God's servants, and finally His Son, the Heir to the Vineyard, He destroyed these wicked servants and gave His Vineyard to other husbandmen.

Because the Israelites, as a nation, rejected and crucified Jesus Christ, God sent Titus, the Roman, to destroy their City, their Temple, and the Old Testament shadows and types in the Ceremonial Law, which they had chosen to hold on to after rejecting the Blood of Jesus Christ as a Sacrifice for sin. Then, God gave His Vineyard over to new husbandmen or to the Gentiles.

In the present dispensation of Grace, God has given the oversight of His Vineyard of saints to Pastors, Teachers, Evangelists, Prophets, and Apostles (Ephesians 4:11-13). How wonderful it is to know that Christ has appointed these servants to care for us. Nevertheless, if there be no spiritual husbandmen to take the oversight of our spiritual welfare, Jesus Christ, the Householder, will do it Himself. He will be both the Householder and the Husbandman when the need arises.

As servants of Jesus Christ, we are husbandmen of His Living "Vineyard," which He has committed into our keeping. We have the precious Seed of God's Word of Truth planted within our heart. We have the springing forth of God's Choice Vine, Jesus Christ. We have the hedge of Christ's Living Blood to protect us from the world, the flesh, and fallen Lucifer. We have both the Winepress of the Crucified Christ and the Tower of the Resurrected Christ's Name and Purposive Will. However, with all these also comes the responsibility to bring forth great fruitfulness unto God the Father and God the Son.

In Jesus' Parable, when God sent His servants to see about His Vineyard and to gather its fruit for His Honour and Glory, all of them, including His Son, were terribly mistreated and rejected by the wicked husbandmen. Although they had rejected and killed God's servants, God hoped they would receive and respect His Son. The wicked husbandmen failed to realize that not only were they rejecting the servants the Householder had sent, but they also were rejecting their own responsibility as servants to God and His Householder.

Christ's Humility Reigning Power will help us to rule over the rejection we suffer in two ways: (1) it will help us rule over rejection from others that we suffer as true servants, and (2) it will help us rule over the guilt we suffer for our own rejection of the responsibility we have for the saints in God's Vineyard and the guilt we suffer for our own proud rejection of God's true servants who are sent to chasten and correct us.

It is our obligation to look diligently to see where our pride has rejected, by refusing to use, the spiritual advice and warnings of God's servants. We also must look diligently to see if we are rejecting any of God's Vines in His Vineyard by discarding them in our heart or counting them as worthless and useless in our mind. When Christ's Spiritual Vineyard has been committed into our care, we must lay hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power in order to look after it in the proper way so that it can grow into full maturity and fruitfulness for His Honour and His Glory.

If we reject our duty to help others, after God has sent His servants to help us, God will take the Vineyard away from us.

Fallen Lucifer is an example of one who rejected his God-given responsibility to guard the Heavenly Jerusalem; therefore, have both the Winepress of the Crucified Christ and the Tower of the Resurrected Christ's Name and Purposive Will. However, with all these also comes the responsibility to bring forth great fruitfulness unto God the Father and God the Son.

In Jesus' Parable, when God sent His servants to see about His Vineyard and to gather its fruit for His Honour and Glory, all of them, including His Son, were terribly mistreated and rejected by the wicked husbandmen. Although they had rejected and killed God's servants, God hoped they would receive and respect His Son. The wicked husbandmen failed to realize that not only were they rejecting the servants the Householder had sent, but they also were rejecting their own responsibility as servants to God and His Householder.

Christ's Humility Reigning Power will help us to rule over the rejection we suffer in two ways: (1) it will help us rule over rejection from others that we suffer as true servants, and (2) it will help us rule over the guilt we suffer for our own rejection of the responsibility we have for the saints in God's Vineyard and the guilt we suffer for our own

proud rejection of God's true servants who are sent to chasten and correct us.

It is our obligation to look diligently to see where our pride has rejected, by refusing to use, the spiritual advice and warnings of God's servants. We also must look diligently to see if we are rejecting any of God's Vines in His Vineyard by discarding them in our heart or counting them as worthless and useless in our mind. When Christ's Spiritual Vineyard has been committed into our care, we must lay hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power in order to look after it in the proper way so that it can grow into full maturity and fruitfulness for His Honour and His Glory.

If we reject our duty to help others, after God has sent His servants to help us, God will take the Vineyard away from us.

Fallen Lucifer is an example of one who rejected his God-given responsibility to guard the Heavenly Jerusalem; therefore, he lost his place as guardian over it. He rejected the responsibility of God's appointed guardianship; therefore, he lost all — his place, his power, and his privilege in Heaven.

The servants whom the Householder sent to the husbandmen were killed, stoned. In the nation of Israel, stoning was a shameful death reserved for heretics, adulterers, and persons guilty of gross crimes. Disgraceful suffering and death came to the servants whom the Householder Himself had sent to Israel. Nevertheless, the servants were true to their calling, and with Christ's Humility Power, they reigned over rejection, even unto death, as they did the Father's Will.

Again and again the nation of Israel, God's Vineyard, had rejected and mistreated the Prophets God had sent to minister to them because the Prophets told them of their sins and forewarned them of God's Judgments. Yet, they rebelled and rejected God's servants. As a result of their rejection, they failed to produce the fruitfulness that God expected from His Vineyard. Therefore, God, the Householder, sent His Son. Surely, they would reverence and accept Him. But the Son also was rejected. "He came unto his own, and his own received him not" (John 1:11).

As soon as the husbandmen saw the Son, they recognized He was the Heir. Therefore, they began plotting how they would do away with Him. Determined to destroy Him, they seized Him and had Him crucified. Thus, the husbandmen rejected the Son. They refused to receive Him, to agree with Him, or to believe in Him. They discarded Him as someone worthless and useless. This rejection finally ended in His death on the Cross. Likewise, the servants of the LORD also will suffer (Philippians 2:6-8), for they are not above their Master.

God the Father sent Jesus Christ, His only Begotten Son, Who encountered great suffering, rejection, and, ultimately, death on the cruel Cross. However, because of His suffering, He became a Humility Cornerstone.

The Son, Jesus, suffered to become the Foundational, Humility Cornerstone. Likewise, we also must suffer since He intends to make us humility cornerstones, too. "Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ" (I Peter 2:5). When our knees are bent before God in subjection and prayer, we become a humility cornerstone to receive new building blocks of Truth from the LORD.

This Gate of Pearl, which is formed by Christ's Humility Reigning Power over Rejection, will have been built in the heart of Christ's Bride. She will have learned to reign over her own proud rejections, and she will have reigned over the proud rejections she will have received at the hands of others. With Christ's Humility Reigning Power governing and guiding her, she continually will have ascended into higher heights of Truth in the Resurrected Christ, and she continually will have descended into deeper depths of Truth in the Crucified Christ. Thus, she will have increased continually in Christ's Stature and will have taken on His Humility Nature and Power of the Chief Cornerstone, elect and precious!

The name Asher is inscribed on the eighth Gate of Pearl, which is on the north side of the New City's Wall. *Asher* means blessedness. This Gate with its name of Asher will be a witness of the Bride's Eternal state of blissful happiness with God and the Lamb in the New City.

Because Christ's Bride will have overcome proud rejection in her human will and because she will have taken on the submissive acceptance of His Humble Will to do all that is in God's Master Plan and Purposive Will for her, she will live eternally in the New City, enjoying sacred, Holy happiness.

The ninth Gate of Pearl, which is the last or third Gate on the north side of the New City's Wall, is reigning over unfaithfulness.

I. The Ninth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Proud Unfaithfulness (Naphtali)

Jesus Christ told three Parables in teaching His Bride what must be formed within her in order for her to rule over unfaithfulness: The Parable of the Five Wise and Five Foolish Virgins; The Parable of the Talents; and The Parable

of the Unjust Steward. These three Parables teach us faithfulness in watching, in working, and in being a warden over the LORD's possessions.

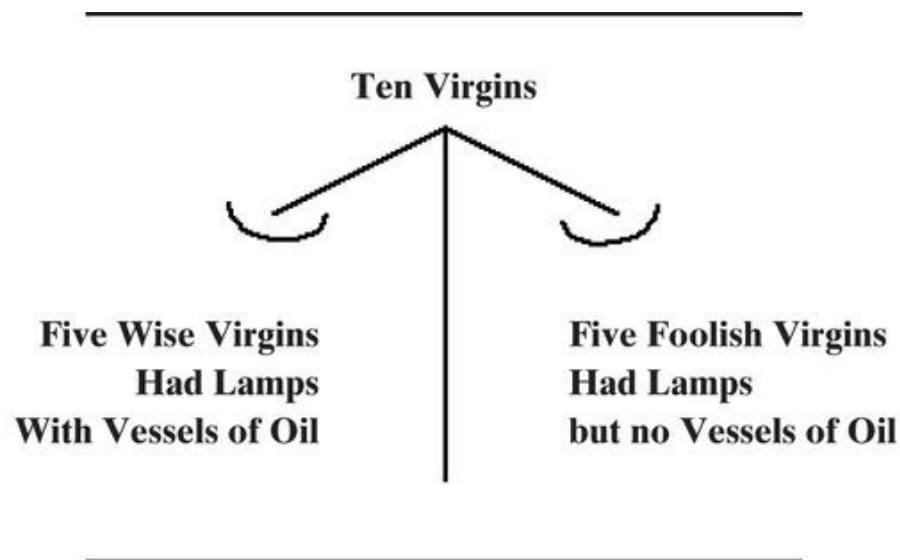
First, let us look at The Parable of the Five Wise and the Five Foolish Virgins.

Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. And five of them were wise, and five were foolish. They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps. And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out. But the wise answered, saying, Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves. And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut. Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh (Matthew 25:1-13).

This Parable's Truth should shake us into an awareness of how crucial it is for each of us to develop faithfulness in watching for our LORD's soon return. How sad if we are the one who will find the door forever shut against us, as the people in Noah's day found the Ark shut forever, after they had failed to heed Noah's message. The one whom the people thought was foolish turned out to be the one who was wise, while they foolishly drowned in their unbelief and rebellion. People today are facing the same last-hour warnings that the people in Noah's day faced. Some will be foolish like the virgins in Jesus' Parable.

This Parable of the Five Wise and Five Foolish Virgins does *not* refer to the Bride of Christ. Christ's Bride will not be asleep, as all these virgins will be when the midnight cry is made, "Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him." These *virgins* are attendants who accompany the Bride to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb. They are comparable to the bridesmaids of our Western custom.

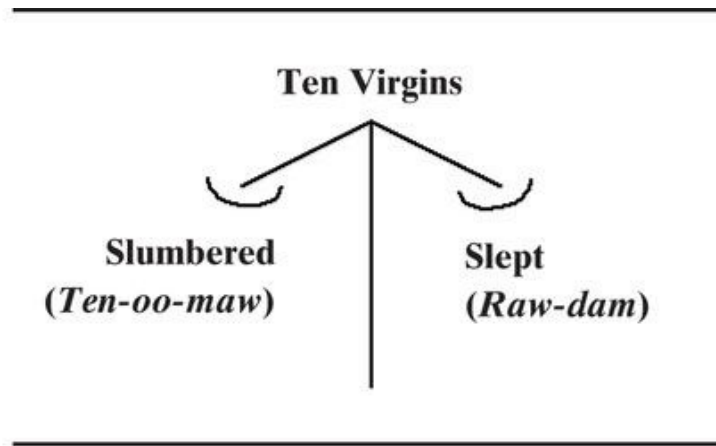
Jesus, in His story, revealed two categories of virgins — some were wise, and some were foolish.



In one way, the virgins were alike because they *all* had lamps. They all had God's Word, the Lamp.

Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path (Psalm 119:105).

They all had the True Word which was a Lamp unto their feet, lighting up the True Way of Life so that they could escape the false path of error. They *all* had the same intention, which was to go forth to meet the Bridegroom. *All* ten virgins slumbered and slept. They *all* failed to watch while the Bridegroom tarried.



The Hebrew word for *slumber* is *ten-oo-maw*, meaning to be drowsy and to be slothful. The wise man in the Book of Proverbs told us that a person comes to poverty by slumbering out of season.

How long wilt thou sleep, O sluggard? when wilt thou arise out of thy sleep? Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: So shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth, and thy want as an armed man (Proverbs 6:9-11).

When a person sleeps out of season, either naturally or spiritually, he comes to poverty because he prefers to sleep instead of watching for his good and the good of his family.

Isaiah spoke of those who failed to watch in his day.

His watchmen are blind: they are all ignorant, they are all dumb dogs, they cannot bark; sleeping, lying down, loving to slumber (Isaiah 56:10).

The people's spiritual guides were blind, unable to distinguish the difference between good and evil. They did not know the Truth, and they were afraid to "bark" against evildoers, which would have warned the people against the menacing dangers of death. They slumbered, through slothfulness, when they should have been watchfully alert.

Likewise, the virgins slumbered. They also *slept*, (*raw-dam*), meaning deep sleep or death, to sink down stupefied or senseless, sluggish, and inactive.

The wise man in the Book of Proverbs described the shame of a son who sleeps in the time of harvest.

He that gathereth in summer is a wise son: but he that sleepeth in harvest is a son that causeth shame (Proverbs 10:5).

A wise son gathers his fruits in harvest, saving them from the cold, heavy rains of autumn. The slothful, unwise son sleeps a deep sleep in harvest time, losing fruits he could have gained.

Likewise, all the virgins slept, losing the fruits of Christ's Word they could have gathered, which, if they would have eaten the fruits of the Word, they would have grown.

In another way, however, the five wise virgins were diametrically different from the five foolish virgins, in that they took oil in their vessels.

The Hebrew word for *vessel*, here, is *kil-yaw*, meaning a vessel in the body, reins, kidneys, the inward soul, the innermost part, as the kernel is the innermost part of wheat.

When these vessels, the reins in the inner self, are filled with God's Spirit, they instruct man in the night season.

I will bless the LORD, who hath given me counsel: my reins also instruct me in the night seasons (Psalm 16:7).

The reins are the balances of man's emotions. When man's reins are filled with God's Spirit, they instruct him in the night season, making him understand that the Righteous God is the Head of all things.

When God's Spirit fills men's reins, they rejoice when the Truth is spoken.

Yea, my reins shall rejoice, when thy lips speak right things (Proverbs 23:16).

Likewise, the five wise virgins had Oil, the Spirit of God, in their inner vessels, their reins. Hence, when Christ's Bride announced the arrival of the Bridegroom, they joyfully arose, pouring the Oil of the Spirit into their Lamps of

Truth, which made it possible for them to be ready, quickly, to go forth to meet the Bridegroom at the Rapture.

The wise virgins also were diametrically different from the foolish virgins in that they were *ready* to meet the Bridegroom. Since they were ready, the wise virgins were accepted by Jesus at the Rapture; whereas, the foolish ones were not ready, so they were not accepted.

The foolish ones were not overcomers. Therefore, they missed the Rapture of Christ's Wedding Party. Remember, those who are not living as overcomers when Jesus Christ comes to catch away His Bride will be left on Earth to suffer in the Tribulation.

Although the Church in the last days is a lukewarm, slumbering Church, there will be some wise virgins who will be ready for the Rapture. They will have redeemed the time earlier by giving themselves to prayer, intercession, travail, praise, and worship before the LORD. This is the extra Oil in their reins that they will need to carry them through the midnight hour and that will enable them to go into the Bridal Feast as attendants of Christ's Bride.

The wise virgins were faithful to remain spiritually awake, and they were alert to lay hold of the Holy Ghost in the inner vessels of their reins. In their inner emotions, they steadfastly adhered to their LORD. They were undeviatingly loyal in their allegiance to the Bridegroom and His Bride. When they heard the Bride's Voice at midnight, they arose with unwavering determination to make themselves ready.

This Parable is a great forewarning to us to lay hold of Christ's Humility Power in our inner vessels, our reins, so that we can reign over the unfaithfulness of our flesh that would prevent us from faithfully watching for the LORD's Coming. If we are watching in faithfulness, we will be looking after our spiritual Treasures, protecting them and guarding them lest we be found unprepared for the LORD's Coming.

If the wise virgins had remained awake and alert, continuing on their spiritual journey, they would have progressed further in growth in Christ's Spiritual Stature. And if the foolish virgins had been faithful to stay awake and alert to lay hold of the Spirit's supply of Oil in their inner vessels, they could have been bridesmaids at the great Marriage Supper of the Lamb.

Christ's Bride always stays awake and alert, feeding on Christ's Truth, growing up in His Spiritual Stature, and clothing herself with Christ's precious Pearls of Humility and Faithfulness.

Christ's Bride is called, chosen, and *faithful*.

These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful (Revelation 17:14).

The Bride is not called and chosen for the priceless Eternal Prize as Christ's Bride because she has been unfaithful; she is called and chosen because of her faithfulness!

Christ Jesus forms, in the heart of His Bride, the Pearly Gate of Faithfulness, which encloses and shuts in all the precious Pearls of Truth she has received from the Bridegroom and which excludes all the unfaithfulness of the flesh and the Devil.

Jesus' Parable of the Talents is the second warning that deals with the Coming of the LORD and our need for Christ's Humility Power to reign over unfaithfulness.

For the kingdom of heaven is as a man travelling into a far country, who called his own servants, and delivered unto them his goods. And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to every man according to his several ability; and straightway took his journey. Then he that had received the five talents went and traded with the same, and made them other five talents. And likewise he that had received two, he also gained other two. But he that had received one went and digged in the earth, and hid his lord's money. After a long time the lord of those servants cometh, and reckoneth with them. And so he that had received five talents came and brought other five talents, saying, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me five talents: behold, I have gained beside them five talents more. His lord said unto him, Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord. He also that had received two talents came and said, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me two talents: behold, I have gained two other talents beside them. His lord said unto him, Well done, good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord. Then he which had received the one talent came and said, Lord, I knew thee that thou art an hard man, reaping where thou hast not sown, and gathering where thou hast not strawed: And I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth: lo, there thou hast that is thine. His lord answered and said unto him, Thou wicked and slothful servant, thou knewest that I reap where I sowed not, and gather where I have not strawed: Thou oughtest therefore to have put my money to the exchangers, and then at my coming I should have received mine own with usury. Take therefore the talent from him, and give it unto him which hath ten talents. For unto every one that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance: but from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath. And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth (Matthew 25:14-30).

This Parable teaches that we are to be faithful in working with our LORD's Possessions. It shows the necessity of habitual preparation and skillful diligence in using the talents that have been given to us by the LORD in our present work and service for Him. Jesus' Parables are directed basically to those who already are believers and who have been given special possessions from the LORD.

The Master who went to take up His abode in a far country represents Jesus Christ Who has gone to a far, Heavenly Country. He now is seated at the Right Hand of God, His Father, having been made absolute Owner and Master of all persons, places, and things. All things have been delivered into His Hands; therefore, He has committed to us talents according to our abilities. Because He does not want any of us to be left idle, He has left us with Substance and Gifts of His Spirit, Grace, and Word with which to work. "As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God" (I Peter 4:10).

With the Master gone, it is easy to be careless and slothful in our responsibilities. Statistics prove that only five percent of the people are able to rule themselves. Naturally speaking, only five percent have enough leadership ability and self-control to work profitably without someone overseeing them.

As Christians, we have an advantage. Although we may not possess this needed ability in the natural realm, we have Christ Jesus, the Son of God, and the Holy Ghost living within our temple, our body, and we have the Heavenly Father to give good Gifts in answer to our prayers. They are our Divine Helpers! What we lack in the natural realm can be formed within us by their Divine Help in the spiritual realm.

The Holy Ghost helps us lay hold of the Truth of the Life and Nature of Jesus Christ, through Whom we can do all things (Philippians 4:13). Therefore, we can remain faithful to our Master, although He is in a far country.

We must trust in the Master's Good, Righteous Judgment in passing out His talents. Remember, everything we have, we have received from the LORD, whether it be one, two, or five talents. Therefore, since we have received all things from Him, we have no just reason for being proud of *His talents* or abilities He has placed within us.

God does not divide His talents according to our will, but according to His Infinite Understanding and His Holy Purposive Will. God's talents are divided according to our ability to use them and according to the Wise Judgment and Righteous Justice of His Master Plan.

How consoling and comforting it is to know that the LORD requires an accounting based only on what He has given us. Why, then, should we be enviously rebellious because God has divided unto one a fivefold ministry, to another a twofold ministry, and to another a onefold ministry? How much better to rest and trust in the Wise, Just Judgment of the Master and the Owner.

In the Parable, the servant who received five talents and the one who received two talents, both went out, and by skillful works and wise trading, doubled their talents. When their Master returned, He rewarded each of them according to their faithfulness in working with His talents.

The servant who received just one talent also worked, but he did it by digging in the ground to hide his talent. When asked to give an accounting, he presented his Master with the same talent, unused, just as he had received it. His Master called him "slothful," and gave his talent to the servant who had doubled his five talents, which gave him eleven talents; and He cast the slothful servant into outer darkness because he was an unfaithful worker.

The LORD Jesus taught this Parable about the unfaithful, unprofitable servant in order to show us our need to rule over the *unfaithful slothfulness* that resides in our fleshly nature. Unfaithful slothfulness always is disinclined to work, to study God's Word, to pray, or to crucify the flesh. It always is lazy and indolent when it comes to working for God. However, it will work hard by digging and hiding God's talent in order to keep out of faithfully working for the LORD.

In one degree or another, we all have a measure of unfaithful slothfulness that causes us to neglect the talents the LORD has entrusted to us. Only as we lay hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power can we crucify this old fleshly nature of unfaithful slothfulness.

The Bride, by making daily trips to the Cross of Christ, by daily humbling herself, and by daily dying to her natural inclinations of unfaithful slothfulness, will have laid hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power. Thus, this Gate of Pearl will be formed within her.

Jesus gave the Parable of the Unjust Steward also to teach us our need for faithfulness in handling the possessions entrusted into our keeping.

This Parable shows us the need for Christ's Humility Power in our heart so that, as God's warden, we can reign over unfaithfulness when we are dealing with unrighteous mammon. God intends for us to make a prisoner out of unrighteous mammon instead of allowing unrighteous mammon to take us captive.

And he said also unto his disciples, There was a certain rich man, which had a steward; and the same was accused unto him that he had wasted

his goods. And he called him, and said unto him, How is it that I hear this of thee? give an account of thy stewardship; for thou mayest be no longer steward. Then the steward said within himself, What shall I do? for my lord hath taken away from me the stewardship: I cannot dig; to beg I am ashamed. I am resolved what to do, that, when I am put out of the stewardship, they may receive me into their houses. So he called every one of his lord's debtors unto him, and said unto the first, How much owest thou unto my lord? And he said, An hundred measures of oil. And he said unto him, Take thy bill, and sit down quickly, and write fifty. Then said he to another, And how much owest thou? And he said, An hundred measures of wheat. And he said unto him, Take thy bill, and write fourscore. And the lord commended the unjust steward, because he had done wisely: for the children of this world are in their generation wiser than the children of light. And I say unto you, Make to yourselves friends of the mammon of unrighteousness; that, when ye fail, they may receive you into everlasting habitations. He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much: and he that is unjust in the least is unjust also in much. If therefore ye have not been faithful in the unrighteous mammon, who will commit to your trust the true riches? And if ye have not been faithful in that which is another man's, who shall give you that which is your own? No servant can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon (Luke 16:1-13).

Mammon is another word for riches. Therefore, it deals with unfaithfulness to God's Purposive Will in handling natural possessions and money.

This steward or warden in Jesus' Parable was chosen and selected to work for his master from among all the other workmen. The wealthy owner and master personally had chosen and had established this man as His steward and as warden over all his goods. The word for *steward* means householder, a governor, an overseer, a treasurer, a preacher, a chamberlain, or a warden.

However, being especially chosen by the master and being greatly blessed with a trusted position of responsibility did not keep this servant from failing in his position as an overseer or warden of his master's goods. Through carelessness and unfaithfulness to his duty, the steward allowed his master's goods to be lost, damaged, abused, and misused.

When the wealthy owner and master received the report that his steward had allowed his goods to be wasted, he told him, "Thou mayest be no longer steward."

By his careless negligence, the steward had permitted many of his master's debtors to slip by without paying their debts. But when he realized he was about to be faced with his lazy, careless, unfaithful ways, he contacted the various debtors and made them a proposition of easy settlement at a fraction of their total debt because he was too lazy to earn his living by digging, and he was too proud to beg.

The unfaithful steward or warden reasoned that should his master cast him out, these debtors whom he had befriended would take him in.

When the master discovered what his steward had done, he commended him for his worldly wisdom. The worldly judgment of this master appreciated the worldly wisdom of his steward. The master commended the unfaithful and unjust steward because he had done wisely according to worldly standards.

Actually, the rich man was greedy and would rather have had the fifty percent and eighty percent settlement than to insist on the honesty of his steward in securing the right settlement. The master realized that he might have lost it all, so he would rather have had his steward make an unjust settlement, which allowed the master to get something out of it for himself, rather than have the man be just and faithful and take the chance of getting no payment from his debtors.

Jesus said that the children of this world of darkness are wiser than the children of Light.

In order to measure up to God's moral requirements and standards of Holiness, we must reign over unfaithfulness in matters of money if we expect God to trust us with His Eternal Pearls of Truth. Each of us must choose whether we live to measure up to worldly judgment or whether we live to measure up to God's Moral Holy Judgment. Yes, we may measure up to man's expectations and receive a pat on the back, even a few words of commendation; but when life's journey is ended, we will face God and find ourselves poor for all Eternity because we failed to measure up to His Moral Holy Judgment as His Children of Light.

The Bride of Christ is called, chosen, and *faithful*. She will have overcome the world, the flesh, and the Devil. She will have attained a Oneness of Relationship with the LORD Jesus Christ. She will have come to know full union of her will with His Divine Will as she has walked under His Divine Headship. She is a *faithful steward* or warden who will have proven her faithfulness in dealing with the unrighteous mammon of this world because she will have possessed the LORD's Eternal Pearls of Truth.

If we cannot be faithful stewards over natural riches and treasures, how can we possibly be trusted with Christ's Spiritual and Eternal Riches? As believers, we all have some degree of God's riches committed unto us. But what are we doing with these riches? In the natural realm, we all have some earthly things for which we are answerable.

How faithful are we with these earthly, natural riches? We must lay hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power in order to rule over the unfaithfulness that would make us dishonest in handling another man's riches, and we also must prove our faithfulness with Christ's Spiritual Treasures of Truth.

Through Jesus Christ, His Humility Reigning Power is available to us all. As we learn to rule in faithfulness over the unrighteous mammon of this world, we will be entrusted with the True and Eternal Riches of God's Spiritual Kingdom.

This ninth Gate of Pearl, which is on the north side of the New City's Wall, is inscribed with the name *Naphtali*, meaning polishing, prevailing, one who contends, the fighting of the Enthroned One against His enemies.

This Pearly Gate bears witness that the Bride, through Christ's Humility Reigning Power, the great Naphtali, will have conquered the unrighteous mammon of this world as she has journeyed through this life and that she will have laid hold of Christ's Eternal Pearls of Truth.

As we have gone around from side to side of the New City studying its Gates, we have passed from the east side (summertime) to the south side (springtime) to the north side (winter), and now we have arrived at the west side, the time of harvest — the autumn.

The first Gate of Pearl on the west side of the New City's Wall is reigning over anxiety.

J. The Tenth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Anxiety (Benjamin)

The tenth Gate of Pearl in the Wall of the New City relates to the Head-realm of the Spiritual Stature of the LORD Jesus Christ. In having this Gate formed within our heart, we learn how to reign over anxiety through Christ's Humility Reigning Power.

Anxiety means a state of being uneasy, apprehensive or worried about what may happen; it means misgiving, an eager and often slightly worried desire to do well.

Anxiety takes many forms in our day-to-day living, and it also gives us many painful fears and stressful thoughts about our welfare in the spiritual realm. However, when Christ's Humility Reigning Power is formed in our heart, another Pearly Gate is established which will shut out painful anxieties that sorely press in on our heart and soul.

God has forbidden us to be anxious about anything. In Luke, chapter ten, verse forty-one, Jesus rebuked Martha for being careful or anxious and troubled about natural things instead of being like her sister, Mary, who was concerned about spiritual things.

The Holy Spirit, writing through the Apostle Paul, forbade us to be careful or anxious about anything.

Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God (Philippians 4:6).

There is a trustful, careful concern which helps us fulfill our spiritual duties as we lean upon Christ's Everlasting, Supporting Arms. But distrustful anxiety doubts God's Holy Nature and Omnipotent Power to Govern and to Guide us through life's overwhelming floods and fiery trials of life.

In the midst of perplexing, distressful affairs of life, we are to offer up to Christ trustful thanksgivings, prayers, and supplications.

The Book of Matthew records another time Jesus used this same forbidding Command about distrustful anxiety.

Therefore I say unto you, Take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment? (Matthew 6:25).

Jesus Christ, the Sovereign Lawgiver, forbade distrustful, anxious thoughts over our food, drink, and clothing. We are not to rend and tear in pieces the peace and rest of our heart by distrustful anxiety over our worldly needs. Distrustful anxiety is like a whirling wind, driving our sixteen minds hither and thither with disquieting, tormenting, and torturous thoughts and, therefore, robbing our soul of its trustful peace and its joyful hope.

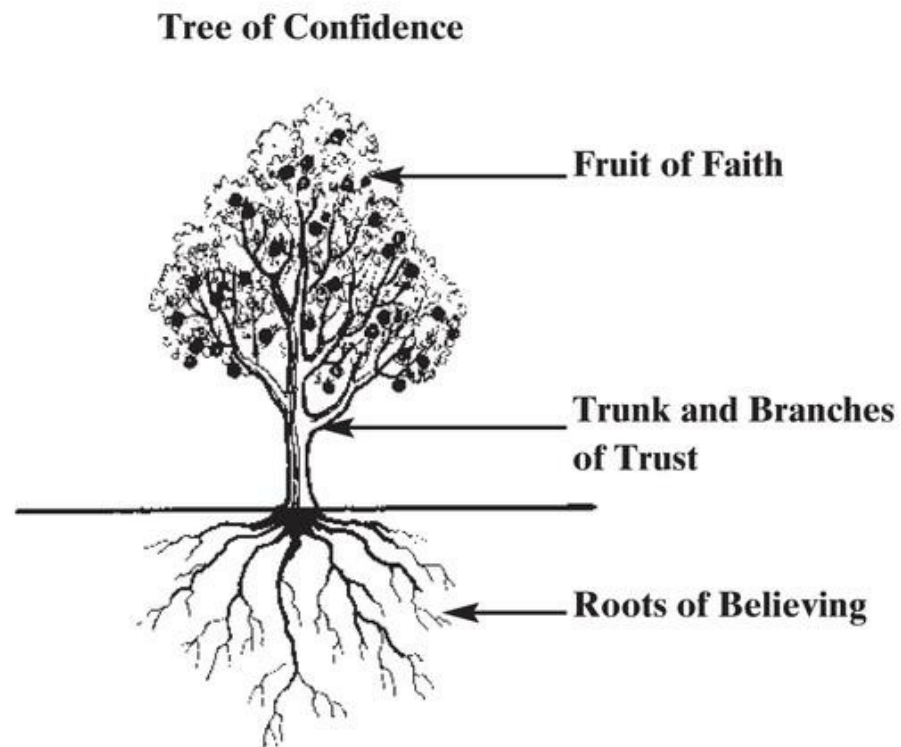
We see how helpless and hopeless we are in situations. We need to lean trustfully on Jesus, not take on distrustful anxiety. Distrustful anxiety can redeem neither us nor anyone else. Therefore, we are not to be distrustfully anxious about anything. We are not to be agitated, troubled, frustrated, or nervous about our natural, worldly needs because trustful thanksgiving and prayers will carry us through.

In order to show us how to reign over distrustful anxiety, Jesus taught two Parables: The Parable of the Grain of Mustard Seed and The Parable of the Fig Tree.

The Parable of the Mustard Seed relates to the Kingdom of God, which designates the Rule and Reign of the Bridegroom and His Bride during the Perfect Age — the Universal and Eternal Reign of God and the Lamb, Jesus Christ, and His Bride in the New City.

And he said, So is the kingdom of God, as if a man should cast seed into the ground; And should sleep, and rise night and day, and the seed should spring and grow up, he knoweth not how. For the earth bringeth forth fruit of herself; first the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear. But when the fruit is brought forth, immediately he putteth in the sickle, because the harvest is come. And he said, *Whereunto shall we liken the kingdom of God?* or with what comparison shall we compare it? *It is like a grain of mustard seed, which, when it is sown in the earth, is less than all the seeds that be in the earth:* But when it is sown, it growth up, and becometh greater than all herbs, and shooteth out great branches; so that the fowls of the air may lodge under the shadow of it (Mark 4:26-32).

The Truth contained within this little Parable is very needful for those who seek to be in Christ's Bride. If we are to lay hold of the Prize of the High Calling of God in Christ Jesus (being in the Bride of Christ), we must allow the tiny "Mustard Seeds" of Truth to be planted in our heart which will produce a mature "Tree of Confidence" ^{*} in the LORD's Holy Nature and Omnipotent Power.



When a farmer plants his tiny seeds under the dark, cold clods of earth, he trustfully sleeps and rises night and day, knowing that God's mysterious Law of Growth will cause the tiny seeds to take root downward and bear fruit upward.

Likewise, in the spiritual realm, the dark, cold clods of our flesh cannot prevent God's tiny "Mustard Seeds" of Truth from begetting downward roots of confidential, humility belief in God's Holy Nature and Omnipotent Power, nor prevent them from springing upward in blades, trunks and branches of trust, nor prevent them from developing into the ear and the full ear of faith.

Believing, trust, and faith must grow up to spiritual maturity in our heart if we expect to be in Christ's Bride. We must learn how to trust in the LORD Jesus Christ's Humility Headship over us and allow Him to reign over all aspects of our life. We must learn to commit ourself and our circumstances confidently to Him.

The Parable of the Mustard Seed teaches us the importance of having implicit faith in the LORD's Headship in every phase of our spiritual growth, both in our spiritual education and in our moral development so that we have no anxiety over our future.

So, like a tiny mustard seed that is planted in the natural earth, the tiny Spiritual Seed of Truth that begets belief, trust, and faith is planted in the soul of our heart and mind. In our night seasons of humiliation and in our day seasons of exaltation, the tiny Seed of Truth continues to grow until finally there is a visible manifestation of the growth of the inner life or nature of the tiny Seed of Truth.

This growth is manifested in our heart in the form of trust and faith. When the tiny Mustard Seed of Truth grows into a fruitful tree, it offers shelter and food to all the fowls of the air, both the clean, sincere birds and the unclean, insincere birds. All of God's created people — in the New Heavens, the New Earth, and the Lake of Fire — will find some degree of food and shelter through the ministry of the New Jerusalem, the Lamb's Wife.

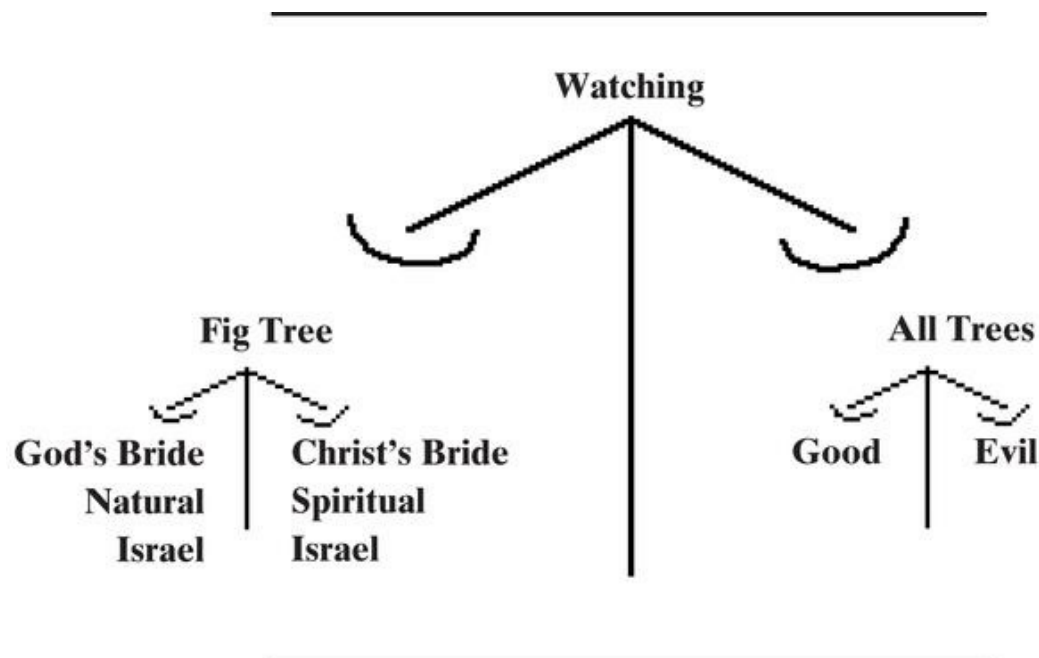
We all have been unclean, sinner "birds." We all have sinned and come short of the Glory of God. Just as we have found shelter and food in someone else's Tree of Truth, we surely should, in turn, plant the LORD's tiny Mustard Seeds of Truth so that we, too, can have a Tree of Truth and Confidence, and so that we, too, can share its shelter and food with others. Thus, we can stand with arms outstretched to all mankind, sharing with all alike the comforting shelter and the refreshing food of the trustful Tree of Truth. It is our Father's business to take care of all our needs, spiritually and naturally. Therefore, we do not have to be distrustfully anxious for anything!

Let us wait on our LORD to form the tenth Gate of Reigning Power in our heart so that we can gain the victory over distrustful anxiety. This class of Christ's Reigning Power comes as we increase in the Knowledge of the Goodness of Christ's Holy Nature and as our faith increases in the Power of His Headship.

The Parable of the Fig Tree is the second Parable Jesus taught to present the Principle of His Humility Reigning Power over Distrustful Anxiety.

And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh. And he spake to them a parable; Behold the fig tree, and all the trees; When they now shoot forth, ye see and know of your own selves that summer is now nigh at hand. So likewise ye, when ye see these things come to pass, know ye that the kingdom of God is nigh at hand. Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away, till all be fulfilled. Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away (Luke 21:28-33).

In The Parable of the Fig Tree, Christ exhorted His Disciples to observe the signs of the times by watching the growth and development of the Fig Tree and all the other trees.



The Fig Tree represents God's Bride, natural Israel, and Christ's Bride, Spiritual Israel. All the other trees represent all other people, both good and evil.

The “shooting forth” of the fig tree and all other trees indicates that the time or manifestation of summer is nigh at hand. In the winter season, the life or nature of the tree is hidden within itself because there are not leaves or fruits to manifest the inner nature of the tree. But when springtime comes, all the trees begin to shoot forth tiny, new leaves that reveal their inner nature, whether they be precious, sweet fruit trees or obnoxious thorn trees. The Sun who rules the world by day forces each tree to manifest its nature in springtime.

Although God’s Bride, natural Israel, will not be brought to a new spiritual birth as a nation until Christ’s Second Coming, Israel, as a fig tree, has put on new leaves of glory as a nation in the last few years.

Today, Christ’s Bride, as a “Fig Tree,” is seen putting forth new, tender leaves of fresh spiritual growth in preparation for meeting Christ Jesus in the air at the Rapture of the Wedding Party.

The “all trees” represent all other people outside the “Fig Tree” of God’s Bride, natural Israel, and Christ’s Bride in the spiritual realm. The good trees include the entire Wedding Party of overcoming believers — the guests, the friend of the Bridegroom, the virgins or bridesmaids, the queens, and the concubines (Song of Solomon 6:8,9; Matthew 22:9-11; John 3:29; Matthew 25:6,7). All these designated people will be in attendance at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb. Therefore, they are shooting forth new leaves that manifest their inner, living desire to be ready at Christ’s Coming. In these days, the wicked also are putting forth new leaves that manifest their inner wicked desire to be ready for the coming of the Antichrist.

“So likewise ye, when ye see these things come to pass, *know ye* that the kingdom of God is nigh at hand. Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away till all be fulfilled” (Luke 21:31,32). The Fig Tree, Christ’s Bride, is clothing herself with new, tender leaves of trustful confidence, allowing Christ’s Humility Reigning Power to rule over her distrustful anxieties of the times.

Although the life of this present generation is riddled with distrustful anxieties, painful distresses, and tormenting perplexities, the Bride of Jesus Christ continues to put her roots of believing confidence down deeper into the Foundation of Christ Jesus’ Blood, the Fire of the Holy Ghost, and the Waters of His Name, Death, and Life. Being nourished from Christ’s Foundation of Blood, Fire, and Water, the Bride shoots forth new, living growth, upward — her leaves and fruit which are a manifestation to the world of Christ’s Nature that dwells within her. She stands as a living “Tree” upon the High Holy Hill of Christ’s separation, bearing witness in the Earth of His Soon Coming.

The Gates of Pearl, both in the Wall of the New Jerusalem and in the Bride’s heart, are formed out of Christ’s Word and His Humility Reigning Power. We are told to put on Christ. “But *put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ*, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof”(Romans 13:14). Since these Gates of Pearl are made up of Christ’s Word and His Humility Reigning Power and since we are to put on Christ, then we can see why this City is called the “Bride.” The Bride of Jesus Christ will have put on Jesus Christ: His Foundation of Truth, His Wall of Truth, and His Gates of Truth. This places the Bride *inside* Christ the Word.

Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new (II Corinthians 5:17).

All the old, distrustful anxieties pass away; all things are ruled over by Christ’s Humility Reigning Power when, through belief, trust, and faith, we are hidden inside Christ’s Word of Truth.

Christ’s Eternal New City, the Bride, will wear her Humility Jasper Dress of White, Fine Linen which will have been formed as Christ’s Icy Breath has wooed her to partake of and to fellowship His Crucifixion and His Obedient Death. During the many times that the Espoused Bride has hidden away in fellowshiping the suffering of the Crucified Christ, she will have learned a Oneness of Spiritual Relationship with Him as she has been enclosed within His Humility Truth. Thus, the Bride now wears Christ the Word, and she will wear the Word throughout Eternity. Inside the New City’s Wall and Gates of Pearl, she will continue to minister as servants to God and the Lamb.

If we put on Christ here in this life, through the Truth of His Humiliation and Crucifixion and through His Exalted Resurrection Power, we will have the privilege of seeing God’s Face, and we will have the honour of ministering to Him as His servants throughout Eternity.

The Bride will have put on Christ, Who will have formed within her the Gates of Pearl that bear witness of His Humility Reigning Power. These Pearly Gates are governed by Christ the Word; therefore, they are opened and closed within her heart according to His Purposive Will. In Eternity, her Gates of Pearl will remain open. They never again will be closed, for all God’s enemies will be put away which previously have caused the closing of the Gates.

The tenth Gate of Pearl of Humility Reigning Power, formed within Christ’s Bride, will be a witness that she will have learned to rule over distrustful anxieties.

The tenth Gate in the Wall of the New City is inscribed with the name *Benjamin*, which means son of the right

hand.

Jesus Christ is the Son of God's Right Hand, which is represented by Benjamin's name. God the Father, by His Infinite, Divine Power and Authority, has exalted Jesus Christ, His Son, to His Right Hand, giving Him the highest Dignity and Dominion. Therefore, the Son of God's Right Hand is able to rule willingly over all distrustful anxiety.

The eleventh Gate of Pearl, which is the second Gate on the west side of the New City's Wall, is reigning over unjust judgment.

K. The Eleventh Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Unjust Judgment (Ephraim)

After Christ forms the eleventh Gate of Pearl within our heart, we are able to reign over unjust judgment.

In order to show us the difference between man's unjust judgment and God's Holy Just Judgment, Jesus taught five Parables: The Parable of the Two Debtors; The Parable of the Importunate Prayer; The Parable of the Lost Sheep; The Parable of the Lost Coin; and The Parable of the Prodigal Son.

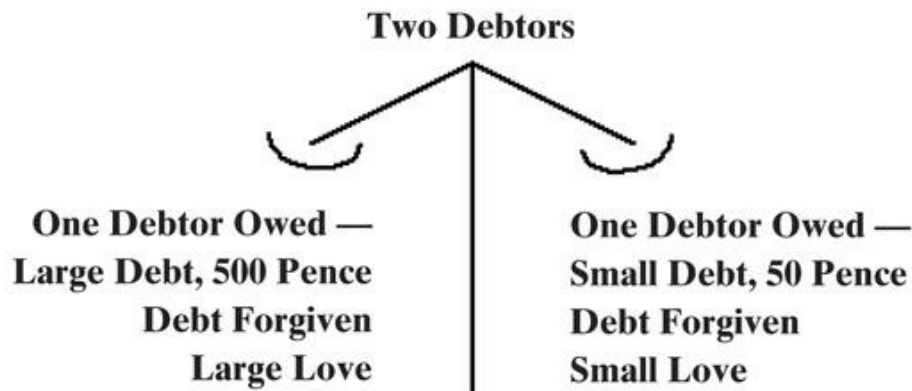
The Parable of the Two Debtors was taught to a Pharisee after he had pronounced his unjust judgment upon a woman's worship to Christ and upon Jesus Christ's Prophetic Ministry.

And one of the Pharisees desired him that he would eat with him. And he went into the Pharisee's house, and sat down to meat. And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment. And stood at his feet behind him weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe them with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed them with the ointment. Now when the Pharisee which had bidden him saw it, he spake within himself, saying, This man, if he were a prophet, would have known who and what manner of woman this is that toucheth him: for she is a sinner. And Jesus answering said unto him, Simon, I have somewhat to say unto thee. And he saith, Master, say on. *There was a certain creditor which had two debtors: the one owed five hundred pence, and the other fifty. And when they had nothing to pay, he frankly forgave them both. Tell me therefore, which of them will love him most?* Simon answered and said, I suppose that he, to whom he forgave most. And he said unto him, Thou hast rightly judged. And he turned to the woman, and said unto Simon, Seest thou this woman? I entered into thine house, thou gavest me no water for my feet: but she hath washed my feet with tears, and wiped them with the hairs of her head. Thou gavest me no kiss: but this woman since the time I came in hath not ceased to kiss my feet. My head with oil thou didst not anoint: but this woman hath anointed my feet with ointment. Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little. And he said unto her, Thy sins are forgiven. And they that sat at meat with him began to say within themselves, Who is this that forgiveth sins also? And he said to the woman, Thy faith hath saved thee; go in peace (Luke 7:36-50).

When a woman whom the Pharisee knew to be a sinner humbly began washing Jesus' Feet with her tears, wiping them with the hairs of her head, kissing them, and anointing them with the precious ointment out of her alabaster box, the Pharisee unjustly judged the woman to be yet a sinner, and he judged Jesus to be not a true Prophet, or else, in the Pharisee's judgment, He would have known the woman was a sinner.

Obviously, the Pharisee did not appreciate this great demonstration of the penitent woman's grateful love to Christ because she showed up the Pharisee's shallowness of love and gratitude to the LORD Jesus Christ. His unjust judgment proceeded to accuse the LORD of being blind and unlearned about the woman. Although he did not voice his thoughts of unjust judgment, the LORD heard them and told him He had something to say to him.

After Simon replied, "Say on," Jesus told him the Parable of the Two Debtors: one debtor owed the creditor 500 pence, and the other debtor owed him 50 pence.



These two debtors owed just debts; therefore, they had to be paid. However, both men were poverty-stricken and, therefore, unable to pay their debts. When the creditor saw the hopelessness and the helplessness of their situations, he graciously forgave both of them their indebtedness.

When Jesus interrogated Simon as to which of the forgiven debtors would love the most, Simon admitted that the one who had been forgiven the greatest debt would surely love the most. In other words, their love and appreciation equaled the amount of their forgiven debt.

Simon began to realize that this sinner woman, because she had been forgiven so much, had a very large degree of love for Jesus.

Jesus justly compared Simon's lack of loving devotion to the abundance of gratitude he was receiving from the penitent woman. Simon had not given Jesus even water to wash His Feet, much less had he bathed Jesus' Feet with his tears. Simon neither had kissed nor anointed Jesus' Feet, so Simon had to see the smallness of the love that he had expressed to Christ, compared to the degree of love which the woman had expressed. Thus, Simon had to reevaluate his unjust judgment of the penitent woman's demonstration of love and gratitude to Christ. Simon grudgingly had accused and had condemned the penitent woman with his unjust judgment, but Jesus commended her by His Just Judgment.

God does not differentiate between sins. Sin is sin, whether it be in the physical body, the soul, or the spirit realm. We are tempted to unjustly judge those who are guilty of outward sins because they are easily seen; while on the other hand, we also unjustly judge the apparently respectable man because we cannot see his hidden sins of pride, hatred, envy, anger, and strife that make him equally guilty before God.

A person with outward sins finds it much easier to humble himself and to confess his needs before God because he, too, can see his sins. Those who are afflicted with an inward, hidden pride in their hearts are blinded to its existence. Therefore, because their self-righteousness cannot see it, it is impossible for them to admit their need to confess and to repent of their sin.

If we learn the Truth of this Parable, we will pray like David, "Open thou mine eyes" (Psalm 119:18). We need to pray for God to unveil our eyes, to roll away the spiritual blindness that obscures our ability to discern the pride in our heart. Remember, all sin must be confessed and repented of, whether it is an inner sin of attitude or an outer sin of action against God's Laws. Then God forgives!

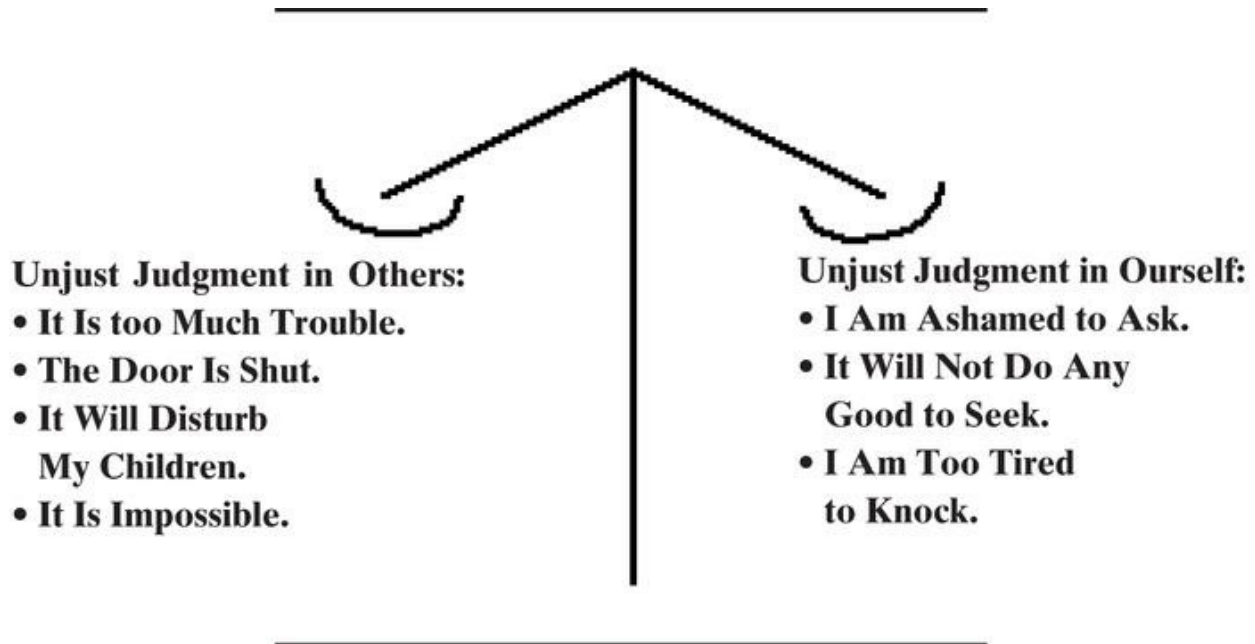
Each time we surrender an area of our proud, fleshly nature for crucifixion, Christ rewards us with a new layer of Truth of His Revealed Word. This is how we go on for God and how we grow up in the Stature, Likeness, and Image of Jesus Christ. As we stay on our face in prayer before God and remain faithful to live in Christ's Word of Truth, the Holy Ghost will form in us, by Christ's Humility Reigning Power, this Gate of Pearl that will rule over any unjust judgment. The LORD Jesus Christ is the Governor of this Gate. He will shut the Gate against unjust judgment, and He will open the Gate, releasing through us the Judgments of His Truth to all men.

Jesus taught The Parable of the Importunate Prayer in order to teach us how to pray and to show us how to overcome unjust judgment in relation to laying hold of God's Bread or Word.

And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples. And he said unto them, When ye pray, say, Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done, as in heaven, so in earth. Give us day by day our daily bread. And forgive us our sins; for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation; but deliver us from evil. And he said unto them, *Which of you shall have a friend, and shall go unto him at midnight, and say unto him, Friend, lend me three loaves; For a friend of mine in his journey is come to me, and I have nothing to set before him? And he from within shall answer and say, Trouble me not: the door is now shut, and my children are with me in bed; I cannot rise and give thee. I say unto you, Though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity he will rise and give him as many as he needeth.* And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened (Luke 11:1-10).

After having observed Jesus in prayer, one of His Disciples requested that He teach them how to pray. The LORD responded by giving them the pattern of what commonly is known as the LORD's prayer (Luke 11:2-4), which was followed by the Parable of the Importunate Prayer.

In this Parable, Jesus taught us how to overcome unjust judgment in others and in ourself.



The importunate man, because he was desperate to obtain bread from his one friend, in order to have some for his visiting friend, humbled himself and persisted in his troublesome, annoying knocking until he overcame his friend's unjust judgment and the excuses he gave. The one friend complained that getting up was too much trouble, that his door was shut, and that the disturbance would bother his children; therefore, it was impossible for him to respond to his friend's pleading. The man's desperation to find bread for his visiting friend caused him to overcome his neighbour-friend's unjust judgment.

Likewise, our desperation for Christ's Bread of Truth will make us humble ourself and continue asking, seeking, and knocking until the LORD's Pantry of Truth is opened to us. In this manner, we overcome our unjust, fleshly judgment that says we are too ashamed, that it will not do any good to seek, and that we are too tired to keep on knocking.

Many times believers try to excuse their failure to study and meditate on God's Word by hiding behind unjust, judgmental excuses that will not stand up under the LORD's Scrutinizing Gaze.

We cheat and defeat ourself from laying hold of Christ's Living Bread of Truth by not overcoming the unjust judgment of others and our own unjust judgments. We must allow Christ's Humility Reigning Power to rule over unjust judgments, if we hope to grow up unto Christ's Mature Spiritual Stature.

A man's desperate need drove him to his friend's house at midnight, where he begged to borrow three loaves of bread. The man did not send someone else. He himself went to plead for bread.

One of the greatest unjust judgments of which we are guilty is thinking that we are not capable of begging for

God's Bread of Truth as well as someone else can. Because of our lack of confidence, we feel we cannot find the Bread of Truth by ourself.

But this desperate man, overcoming his reluctance because of his need, found bread by himself. It was an inconvenient hour and a great trouble to his neighbour-friend; nevertheless, because he persistently and insistently pleaded that he needed bread, his friend arose and gave him some.

The begging man, through his persistence, overcame the unjust judgment of his friend who said it was too inconvenient and too late for him to get up to answer his plea.

God gauges our need by our persistence, too. How badly do we want the Truth, the Bread of Life? Do we care enough to beg?

We, like this friend, allow our selfish desire for our own comfort and our own personal opinions about the worthiness of others to cause us to make unjust judgments when we are faced with the need of others. When people desperately are seeking help, that is the time to give them help.

Jesus constantly was faced with having to deal with unjust judgments and opinions of those around Him, especially those of the Pharisees, who delighted in accusing Him of some infraction of the Law. Jesus preached to educated intellectuals and the spiritually elite of His day, plus the great multitudes of people in general. He also preached to publicans and sinners.

Antagonized by Christ's association with publicans and sinners, the Pharisees and the Scribes murmured, criticized, and accused Jesus. Therefore, in order to expose their unjust judgment, Jesus taught three Parables to show the importance of human souls.

The Parable of the Lost Sheep reveals the love *the Son of God* (the Word) has for lost souls.

And he spake this parable unto them, saying, What man of you, having an hundred sheep, if he lose one of them, doth not leave the ninety and nine in the wilderness, and go after that which is lost, until he find it? And when he hath found it, he layeth it on his shoulders, rejoicing. And when he cometh home, he calleth together his friends and neighbours, saying unto them, Rejoice with me; for I have found my sheep which was lost. I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, which need no repentance (Luke 15:3-7).

Multitudes of publicans and sinners drew near with modest fear to hear Christ's precious Words of Truth. The Scribes and Pharisees, by their proud, unjust judgments, esteemed these poor people as being unworthy of repentance and forgiveness. Moreover, with their proud, unjust judgments, they rebuked Jesus for eating and fellowshiping with these low-class souls.

Jesus gave this Parable to show the pleasure the Father takes in the conversion of sinners and to show the Son's Love that caused Him to go through painful sufferings in order to find the one lost sheep.

Jesus finds the one weary, worried, wandering sheep, places it upon His shoulders, and brings it home again. A great feast of joy and rejoicing is made in Heaven over one lost sheep that is found — over one lost sinner who repents and comes to Christ. The LORD's Humble, Just Judgment of the value of one sinful soul that is saved is diametrically different from that of the proud, unjust judgment of Pharisaical flesh.

In The Parable of the Lost Coin, Jesus revealed the love *the Holy Ghost* has for lost souls.

Either what woman having ten pieces of silver, if she lose one piece, doth not light a candle, and sweep the house, and seek diligently till she find it? And when she hath found it, she calleth her friends, and her neighbours together, saying, Rejoice with me; for I have found the piece which I had lost. Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth (Luke 15:8-10).

God's Holy Spirit is likened unto a woman who had lost a precious coin out of her treasure house. (Jesus personified a lost soul as a lost coin.) The woman lit a candle, which pictures the illumination of God's Word, and she swept through the entire house until she found the lost coin. Then, she called in her neighbours to rejoice with her.

God's Holy Spirit sweeps through God's House of Creation with His Broom of Illuminated Truth until the lost, penitent soul is found and great rejoicing is made. The Just Judgment of God's Holy Spirit, again, is diametrically different from the unjust judgment of the proud Scribes and Pharisees.

The Parable of the Prodigal Son reveals the love *God the Father* has for lost souls.

And he said, A certain man had two sons: And the younger of them said to his father, Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth to me. And he divided unto them his living. And not many days after the younger son gathered all together, and took his journey into a far country, and there wasted his substance with riotous living. And when he had spent all, there arose a mighty famine in that land; and he began to be in want. And he

went and joined himself to a citizen of that country; and he sent him into his fields to feed swine. And he would fain have filled his belly with the husks that the swine did eat: and no man gave unto him. And when he came to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger! *I will arise and go to my father, and will say unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee,* And am no more worthy to be called thy son: make me as one of thy hired servants. And he arose, and came to his father. But when he was yet a great way off, *his father saw him, and had compassion, and ran, and fell on his neck, and kissed him.* And the son said unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son. But the father said to his servants, Bring forth the best robe, and put it on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet: And bring hither the fatted calf, and kill it; and let us eat, and be merry: For this my son was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found. And they began to be merry. Now his elder son was in the field, and as he came and drew nigh to the house, he heard musick and dancing. And he called one of the servants, and asked what these things meant. And he said unto him, Thy brother is come; and thy father hath killed the fatted calf, because he hath received him safe and sound. And he was angry, and would not go in: therefore came his father out, and intreated him. And he answering said to his father, Lo, these many years do I serve thee, neither transgressed I at any time thy commandment: and yet thou never gavest me a kid, that I might make merry with my friends: But as soon as this thy son was come, which hath devoured thy living with harlots, thou hast killed for him the fatted calf. And he said unto him, Son, thou art ever with me, and all that I have is thine. *It was meet that we should make merry, and be glad: for this thy brother was dead, and is alive again; and was lost, and is found* (Luke 15:11-32).

Of the Father's two sons, the younger was the prodigal son, who defected from his Father's house. The prodigal son demanded his inheritance because he was distrustful and unsure that the Father's Reigning Power would govern it for his *best* interests. So, the prodigal son departed and put a great distance between himself and his Father. His sinful management of his inheritance was neither for his good nor for his Father's Glory. He wasted all his substance in riotous living. After he had spent it all and had become a slave, feeding on the husks that the swine ate, the prodigal repented, arose, and humbly returned to his Father's house.

The Father's Loving, Just Judgment about the value of his son's soul caused him to forgive him and to make a great feast of rejoicing because his lost son had come home.

But the elder brother's proud, unjust judgment made him angry and bitter because his brother, who had been a prodigal son, had come home and his father had forgiven him. But not only that — the Father had made a feast of joy and rejoicing over his homecoming!

What a need there is among God's people for Christ's Humility Reigning Power to rule over unjust judgment in their hearts and attitudes.

The Father's Just Judgment has been proven by His Love in giving His only Begotten Son for man's redemption. Likewise, Jesus, the Good Shepherd, has proven His Love for lost souls by leaving Heaven to come down to Earth to search for the one lost sheep called mankind. And the Holy Ghost has proven His Love for mankind by coming down to earth to sweep the world for the lost silver coin or the lost soul that has lost its Marriage Relationship with the LORD God. According to God's Just Judgment, human souls are important to Him!

Let us pray for this eleventh Gate of Pearl of Christ's Humility Reigning Power to be formed within our own heart. Then, when this Gate of Pearl rules in our heart, we can exercise righteous, just judgment toward every man.

The name *Ephraim* is inscribed on this eleventh Gate of Pearl. Ephraim's name means fruitfulness, which fits so well with the fruitfulness found in forgiveness, for there is no greater fruitfulness evidenced in any other way than in the loving forgiveness manifested toward a penitent soul and in the joyful rejoicing displayed when a penitent soul has been brought back into a Oneness of Relationship with its Heavenly Father.

The Humility Reigning Power of Jesus Christ, through this eleventh Gate of Pearl, is able to rule over all unjust judgment in others and in our own heart! Having this Gate formed in the Wall of the New City will be a witness that the Bride will have learned to rule over unjust judgment as she has surrendered to Christ's Ruling and Reigning Power during her walk of faith on this Earth.

The third Gate in the west side of the New City is the last Pearly Gate in its Wall, and on it is the name of the twelfth tribe of Israel — Manasseh.

The meaning of each name on each Gate relates to the type of Reigning Power we receive when we accept Christ's Humility Truth into our heart as we seek Him during the trying circumstances and situations in our life. When we do not humble ourself before the LORD's Face and ask Him to govern our life, we miss the opportunity to have the Pearly Gates of the New City formed in our heart, right now.

The Bride does not let her opportunities pass her by. She will have all twelve Gates formed within her heart so that she will be prepared to dwell with God and the Lamb in the New City.

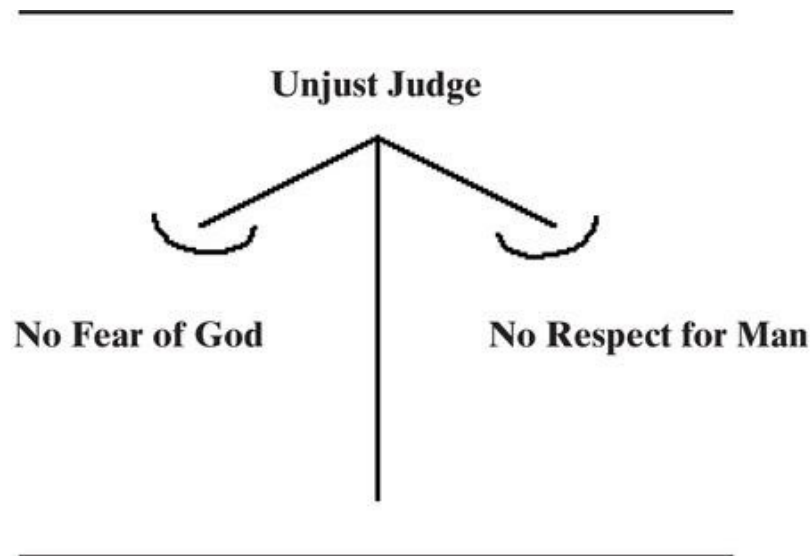
L. The Twelfth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prayerlessness (Manasseh)

The twelfth Gate of Pearl of Christ's Humility Reigning Power is formed in our heart as we learn to reign over prayerlessness. Jesus taught two Parables to show us how to rule over prayerlessness: The Parable of the Crying Widow and The Parable of the Pharisee and the Publican.

Jesus' Parable of the Crying Widow deals with ruling over the lack of determination to pray.

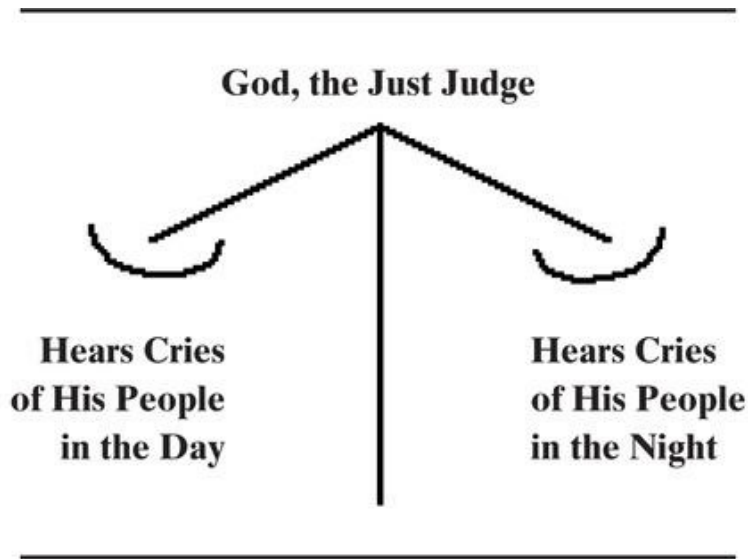
And he spake a parable unto them to this end, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint; Saying, There was in a city a judge, which feared not God, neither regarded man: And there was a widow in that city; and she came unto him, saying, Avenge me of mine adversary. And he would not for a while: but afterward he said within himself, Though I fear not God, nor regard man; Yet because this widow troubleth me, I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming she weary me. And the Lord said, Hear what the unjust judge saith. And shall not God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them? I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth? (Luke 18:1-8).

Jesus gave the key to this Parable before He gave the Parable: "Men ought always to pray, and not to faint." In this story, Christ showed the power that the widow's desperate crying had in ruling over an unjust judge, with his unjust judgments and thoughts about her and her adversary. Although he had neither fear for God nor respect for man, he avenged the widow in order to secure his own self-comfort. He did not want to be bothered constantly.



In spite of the unjust judgments of the unjust judge, he avenged the poor widow because of the determination in her will to keep crying until she was heard.

Christ gave this Parable to encourage His people to overcome their unjust judgments and thoughts about coming to God in prayer.



God's elected people meet with great oppositions, troubles, persecutions, and adversaries in this present world. His people can choose to allow these things to push them to tearful prayers before God, or they can choose to allow these things to push them to prayerlessness.

We need to cry day and night against our spiritual enemies — our corrupt, fleshly nature that must be mortified, Lucifer and his opposing forces that need to be rebuked, and the world that must be crucified to us and us to it.

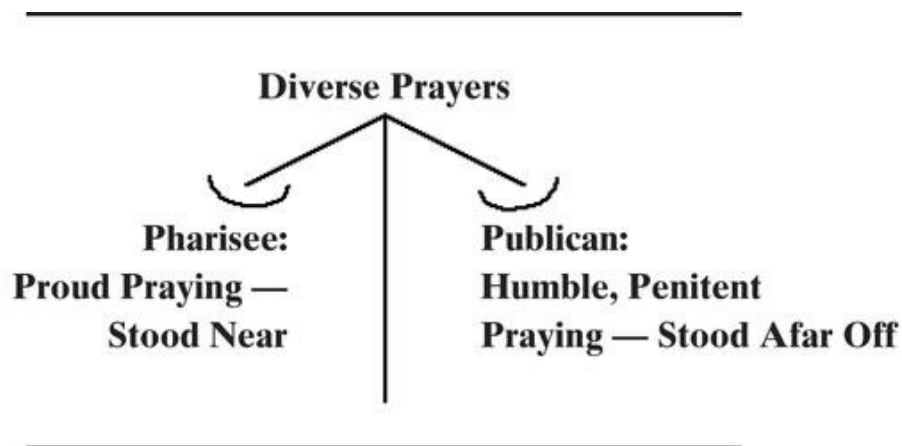
We need to plead our own cause before the LORD. We have Christ, the Intercessor, and the Holy Ghost, the Intercessor, both of Whom will take up our cries and plead them before the Father.

This lesson on praying is very needful because, in the beginning of our spiritual growth, our prayer life is the first thing to suffer as the cares of life compete for our affection and for our attention. Ruling over our prayer life is most difficult. Only through much perseverance in feeding on Christ's Humility Power do we reach a place of consistency in this area.

After we overcome the lack of determination to pray, we still have to learn how to rule over wrong attitudes that fill our heart when we pray. Our attitude, the way we approach God, whether in humility or in pride, makes the difference between an answered and an unanswered prayer. Many prayers go unanswered because the persons who prayed them has failed to have the right attitude toward God and toward their fellow man. If, when we pray, we surrender our will to God's Purposive Will, we will have the right attitude after we have finished praying, and we will untie God's Hands to work for us so that He can answer our prayer.

In Jesus' Parable of the Pharisee and the Publican, the Pharisee came with a proud, self-righteous attitude, and the Publican came with a humble attitude.

And he spake this parable unto certain which trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others: Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican. The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess. And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner. I tell you, this man went down to his house justified rather than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted (Luke 18:9-14).



Instead of approaching God softly and humbly, the proud Pharisee took advantage of His Jewish heritage to stand *near* in the court of the Temple. In his prayer, he eulogized himself, discredited others, extolled his own morality, and boasted of all his good works. The poor Publican, on the other hand, stood *afar off* with downcast eyes. And after smiting his breast in contrition, he humbly pleaded for God's Mercy.

The attitude each man exhibited when he approached God in prayer was the determining factor that caused God either to reject or to receive his prayers. God rejected the proud prayer of the arrogant Pharisee, but He received the poor Publican's humble prayer.

If we are wise, we will learn from this Parable how to lay hold of Christ's Humility Reigning Power, and we will let it rule over our wrong attitudes when we approach God in prayer. We will submit our will to His Perfect Purposive Will, knowing that He gives the best to those who leave the choice to Him.

This twelfth Gate of Pearl in the Wall of the New City will bear witness to the Bride's surrendered, submissive prayer life as she has journeyed through this world below. When the Bride has gone to prayer, she will have forgotten her own will and, like her Bridegroom, she will have cried in total abandonment to the Father, saying, "Not my will, but thine be done."

The name Manasseh, which means forgetfulness, is inscribed on this twelfth Gate of Pearl in the New City. This Pearly Gate will bear witness that the Bride will have forgotten her own plans and purposes in prayer and will have sought only God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

This completes our overview of the Twelve Gates of the New Jerusalem. The Bride of Jesus Christ will have all twelve Gates of Pearl of Christ's Humility Power and Truth Ruling and Reigning over the doors of her heart. During her earthly journey she will have learned to reign, through Christ's Humility Power, over the following things:

- The Word of God
- Evil
- Shame
- Rebellion
- Possessions
- Unmercifulness
- Murmuring
- Rejection
- Unfaithfulness
- Anxiety
- Unjust Judgment
- Prayerlessness

The important thing for us to remember is this: if, in Eternity, we want to shine with the brilliant luster of Christ's Pearls of Humility, we must pray for God to begin laying all twelve degrees of Christ's Humility Reigning Power and Truth in our heart, now, in this life.

* B. R. Hicks, [*The Tree of Confidence*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1977).

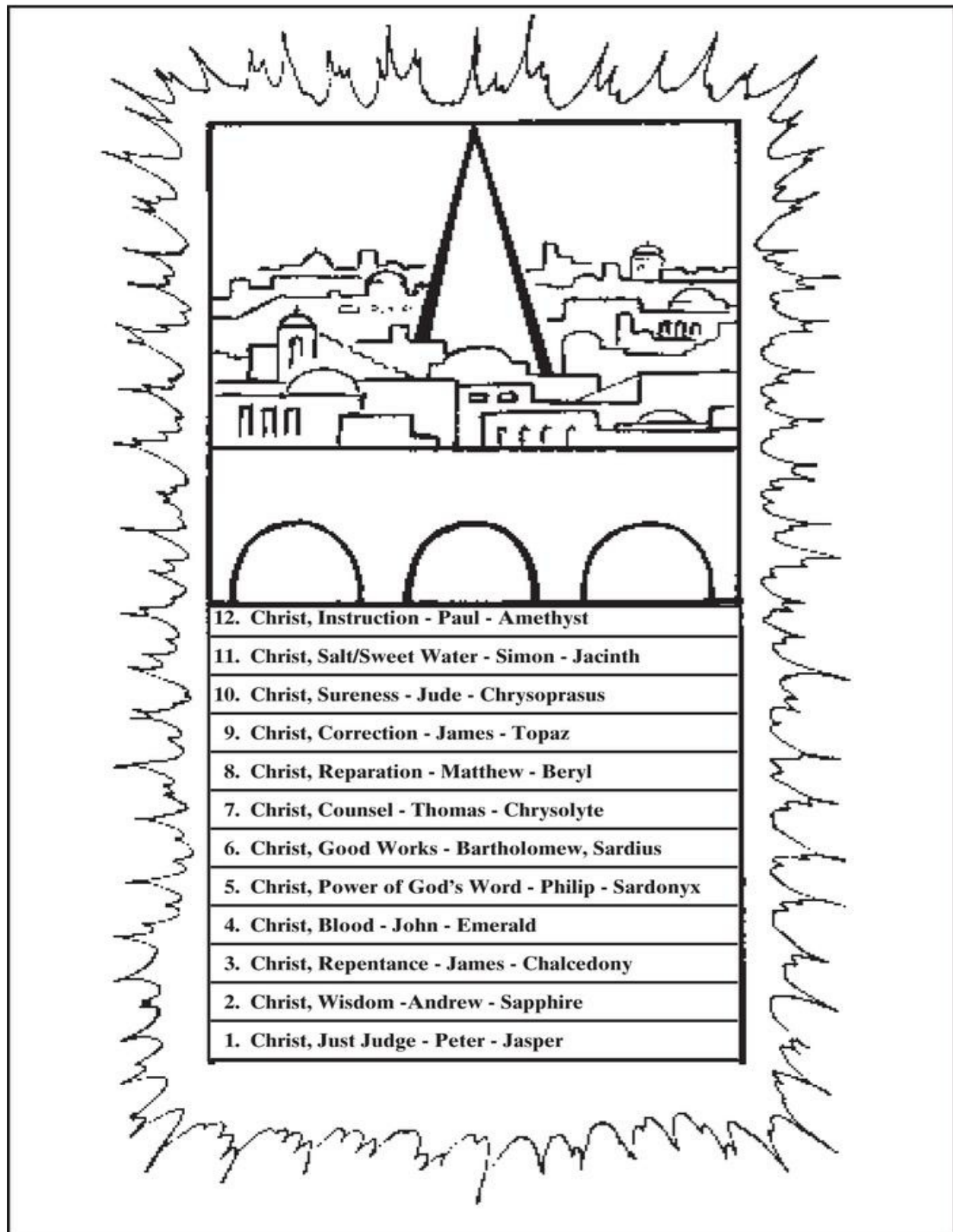
Chapter Fifteen

The Twelve Foundations of the Wall of the New City, the Twelve Names of the Apostles of the Lamb Inscribed in the Foundations, and the Twelve Precious Stones that Embellish the Foundations

Nothing on Earth compares to the glorious beauty of the New City that will come down from God, prepared as an Eternal Dwelling Place for the Lamb, the LORD Jesus Christ, and His Bride.

The Apostle John first described the City's Greatness and Holiness and its Glory and Light. Next, He told about its Great and High Wall with its Twelve Gates of Pearl, which had the names of the Twelve Tribes of Israel written on them, three on each side of the City. Then, John's attention focused on the Wall's Foundations that will be inscribed with the names of the Twelve Apostles of the Lamb and embellished with Twelve Precious Stones.

The New City's Foundational Mount



To understand how God fits together the Truth of Christ as the Twelfefold Foundation of the New City with the Twelve Apostles' Names and the Twelve Precious Stones, we, first of all, must find the Scriptures in which the Hebrew word *moh-sah-dohth* or its root word *yaw-sad* is found. The New Testament Scriptures use the words *foundation*, *ordained*, or *upholding* to reveal the Truth of the Upholding or Foundational Governmental Power of the LORD Jesus Christ.

The order in which the Names of the Apostles will appear in the Foundations of the New City's Wall is recorded in the Book of Matthew, chapter ten, verses one through four. The order of the appearance of the Precious Stones is recorded in the Book of Revelation, chapter twenty-one.

And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.... And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, a chalcedony; the fourth, an emerald; The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sarius; the seventh, chrysolyte; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, a chrysoprasus; the eleventh, a jacinth; the twelfth, an amethyst. (Revelation 21:14,19-20).

The Twelve Foundations, the Twelve Names of the Apostles, and the Twelve Precious Stones unite to form one beautiful revelation of Truth about the LORD Jesus Christ as the Supporting Structure of the New City. Christ's Bride will have laid all Twelve Foundations in her Spiritual Building, and she will possess all twelve degrees of Humility Gratitude, gained through her submissiveness to the LORD's Governance and Guidance of her life. When we have the exquisite pleasure of being directed and led by our precious LORD into paths of Righteousness and into the tremendous joy and delight of knowing Him in ever increasing dimensions, and when we willingly have submitted to the care and protection of His Headship, we are filled with Humility Gratitude for every Governing Foundation that He lays in our Spiritual Building.

The Hebrew feminine plural word for *foundation* is *moh-sah-dohth*, meaning an appointment, decree, decreed by God; *moh-sah-dohth* comes from the root word *yaw-sad*, meaning to found or lay the foundation, settle, establish, ordain, decree, consult, appoint, take counsel, instruct, lay, ordain, and to be sure.

Since the Twelve Foundations, the Twelve Names of the Apostles of the Lamb, and the Twelve Precious Stones all fit together, we will study these three aspects of the Wall of the New City at the same time. Remember, the number twelve tells us that God's Perfect Governmental Ruling Power has reigned in every aspect of building the New City.

God always has set foundations for everything:

- The Mountains (Deuteronomy 32:22)
- The World (II Samuel 22:16; Psalm 18:15)
- The Hills (Psalm 18:7)
- The Earth (Proverbs 8:29; Isaiah 24:18;40:21; Jeremiah 31:37)
- Generations (Isaiah 58:12)

The Heavenly Jerusalem rests upon the Foundations of Heavenly Mount Zion, but when the Heavenly Jerusalem becomes the New Jerusalem or the New City and descends from God, it will rest upon a new Twelfefold Governmental Foundation that will not have been defiled by fallen Lucifer's corrupt feet. Hence, the New City will rest upon a new Governmental Mountain that will consist of Twelve Foundations ordained by God in His Master Plan from the beginning to be what they are to be.

The first Foundation in God's Eternal Plan for the New City is the LORD Jesus Christ as the *Judge, the Divine Decider*.

I. The Foundation of Christ as a Judge Bears the Name of the Apostle Peter and Is Embellished with the Jasper Stone

The First Foundation

Jasper Stone - Polished, Prevailing

Peter - Rock

The LORD Jesus Christ — The Just Judge

God has founded (*moh-sah-dohth*) or ordained and set His Son as the Judge, the Decider, of what is good and what is evil — what is Life and what is death.

And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that *it is he which was ordained [moh-sah-dohth] of God to be the Judge of quick and dead* (Acts 10:42).

Christ, as the Just Judge, is the *beginning* Divine Foundation of the New City. It is the beginning support of *all* paradisiacal relationships with the Bridegroom.

When Adam-male and female rejected Christ, the Tree of Life, as the Divine Decider and the Just Judge of Good and Evil, they rejected Him as their first Foundation of the Bridal Relationship they could have had with Him as their Bridegroom; therefore, they were cast out of the Garden.

Christ is the Just Judge of Good and Evil by the Authority vested in Him by His Father because of His perfect theoretical and empirical expertness of Knowledge. Therefore, He is qualified to decide the relative merit of all things. As the Divine Decider, He brings to an end vacillating doubts and disputes, and He gives definite, unmistakable, clear-cut, unhesitating determination to a penitent soul so that it can stride forward in God's Purposive Will, according to His Master Plan.

Without this first Foundation in our heart, we cannot expect to dwell in the New City that rests upon this Foundation.

This Foundation has the name of the Apostle Peter inscribed on it, and it is garnished with the Jasper Stone, the polished and prominent Stone.

Peter's name signifies the spiritual nature or Rock-Strength and Firmness of Christ that we must have in order to defend the LORD's Divinely Ordained Position as the Just Judge.

The *Jasper* Stone, with its polished, prominent nature, teaches us that we are to adorn the first Foundation of the Just Judge with bright, shining gratitude, which makes His Decisions prominent and conspicuous before others.

God has purposed that the Rock-Truth of the Just Judge, the Divine Decider, embellished with the polished brightness of the Jasper Stone, will be the first Foundation of the Wall of the New City. All Grace or Gratitude has its conception out of this first Foundation. There is no fondness for God's Headship nor grateful appreciation for His Governance and Guidance in our life unless we accept Jesus Christ as our Just Judge.

God also has purposed that His *Wisdom* is to be the second Foundation of the Wall of the New City.

II. The Foundation of Christ's Wisdom Bears the Name of the Apostle Andrew and Is Embellished with the Sapphire Stone

The Second Foundation

Sapphire Stone - Scratching
Andrew - Manly, Strong
The LORD Jesus Christ — Wisdom

God begot His *Torah*-Truth, His Wisdom-Truth, in the beginning and set Her as the Moral Guide for all conduct.

The LORD by wisdom hath founded [moh-sah-dohth] the earth; by understanding hath he established the heavens (Proverbs 3:19).

Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom: and with all thy getting get understanding (Proverbs 4:7).

Unless people realize how necessary it is to have this second Foundation in their heart, they will be disinterested and disinclined to make the effort to obtain it.

Once souls are illuminated with the Light of Truth concerning the profound, essential place that Wisdom occupies in the Foundation of the New City's Wall, they will leave nothing undone to acquire it.

Wisdom's Ministry is present to reveal the "Truth that now is," confirming the Justice of the Just Judge, the Divine Decider.

The name of the Apostle Andrew is inscribed on the second Foundation of the Wall. His name means manly or strong. Andrew was manly, strong, virile, and resolute in protecting the Living *Torah*-Truth from obscurity and from remaining unknown. After he had found the Messiah for himself, he went out and found his brother, Simon, and brought him to the Messiah, the Christ.

The second Foundation is garnished with the second Precious Stone, the *Sapphire*. The word *sapphire* means to scratch, to mark, or to inscribe.

When Andrew found Christ, God's Wisdom Who had been made Flesh, he used his manly strength and his Sapphire Stone to adorn the Truth about Wisdom, which so greatly inscribed the Truth in his brother Simon's heart that he came to Christ.

In His Omniscience, God has determined that the third Foundation of the Wall of the New City is to be *Repentance*.

III. The Foundation of Truth's Provision of Repentance Bears the Name of the Apostle James, Son of Zebedee, and Is Embellished with the Chalcedony Stone

The Third Foundation

Chalcedony Stone - Hollowing Out
James, Son of Zebedee - Supplanter, Giving
The LORD Jesus Christ — The Truth of Repentance

How good God is to have set the provision of Repentance as the third Foundation, which means that it comes after the Just Judge (the Divine Decider) and also Wisdom (His *Torah*-Truth).

Paul mentioned the Repentance Foundation in the Book of Hebrews.

Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again *the foundation [moh-sah-dohth]* of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God, (Hebrews 6:1).

Repentance is a penitent state of feeling sorry for our wrong doing, to be conscience-stricken, regretful, and dissatisfied about some past action or intention that was wrong, so as to change our mind about it.

God put repentance from dead works in the third Foundation in order to give people a chance to repent about all the dead works they have done that have separated them from Jesus Christ as the Just Judge, the Divine Decider, and as Divine Wisdom.

Dead works are performed when we are separated from God's Life and when our carnal mind is deciding where, when, and how these works will be done. Our works may appear courageous, loving, daring, and magnificent before man. Nevertheless, if we have removed ourselves from under Christ's Headship and, thus, have separated ourselves from the Life of the Just Judge, the Divine Decider, and His Wisdom, our works are "dead works." All works, even the so-called good ones, that are alienated from Christ's Life are dead works. Works that are performed out of the direction of our carnal flesh always are dead works.

The name of the Apostle James, the son of Zebedee, is inscribed on this third Foundation because it fits with the Principle of Repentance.

The name James is the Greek form of the Hebrew name *Jacob* or *Yah-ak-obe*, from *aw-kab*, meaning to seize by the heel, to supplant, to circumvent as if tripping up the heels, to restrain as if holding by the heel.

The name Zebedee in Hebrew is *Zab-dee*, which means *giving*.

Jacob demonstrated the meaning of his name while he and his twin, Esau, were in their mother's womb. Before they were born, they fought and struggled over the birthright (Genesis 25:22,23) because, before the actual birth, Jacob had received the birthright prophetically from God. It was God's Plan that Jacob be born first (Romans 9:12,13), but Esau, the sinful rebeller, struggled until he overcame Jacob and, thereby, stole his birthright by pushing his way out of the womb, first. However, as Esau was being born, Jacob seized Esau's heel, demonstrating that, eventually, he would take him down and retrieve his God-given birthright.

Repentance could be called "James" or "Jacob" because it seizes hold of the "heel" of sin that prevents a believer from bringing forth the Living Good Works that are his birthright in Christ Jesus. True repentance is like Jacob in that it will not turn loose until it brings the robber, sin, to the ground and retrieves for the soul a true, living relationship with the LORD.

The *Chalcedony* Stone, which embellishes the third Foundation, also fits with repentance. It means to hollow out. When sin is cleaned out of the old heart through repentance, the heart is hollowed out so that there is room or a place for God's Master Plan and Purposive Will to abide.

For example, after Jacob had retrieved his birthright and the birthright-blessing, he had a "hollow place" in his time and life to find Rachel, his beloved bride.

When God, in His Wisdom, determined and planned the New City to be the Eternal Dwelling Place for His Son, Jesus Christ, and His Bride, He set in a Foundation of *Blood*, which is to be the fourth Foundation.

IV. The Foundation of Blood Bears the Name of the Apostle John and Is Embellished with the Emerald Stone

The Fourth Foundation

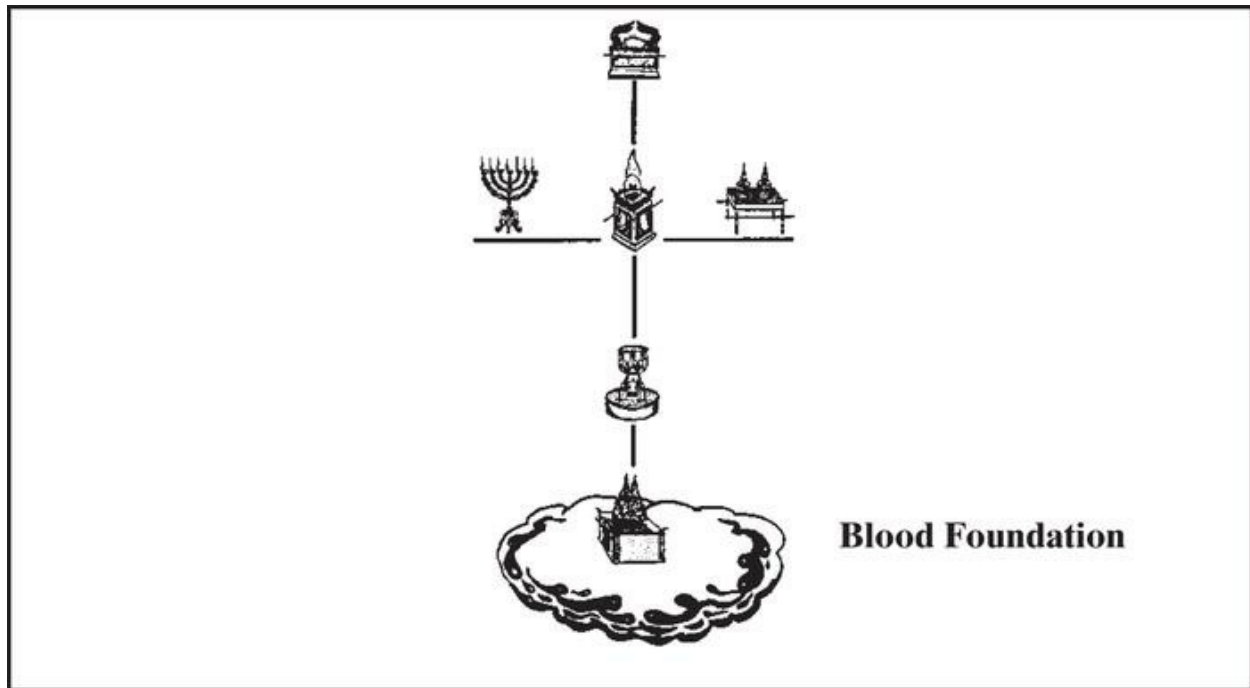
Emerald Stone - Glow, Glisten, Shine
John - Favour
The Blood of the LORD Jesus Christ

Christ's Blood always has been the LORD's Foundation for the Salvation of all things. Christ was slain in His Will from the foundation of the world in order to provide the Living Substance from which all things were created.

Afterward, at Calvary's Cross, Christ was slain in His physical Body in order to provide the Redemptive Substance which could reconcile all sinful creation to God. However, between the time man sinned in the Garden and the time Christ died on the Cross, the LORD permitted animal blood to be used as a covering for sin. The animal blood in the Old Testament dispensation served as a type and shadow of Christ's Blood until Christ could come in a Body of Flesh and die upon the Cross.

Before God cast sinful man out of the Garden of Eden, He mercifully made an animal sacrifice to obtain a covering for the naked pair.

Blood was the Foundation for the entire Mosaic Tabernacle, which was laid out in the form of a Cross and which was a picture of Christ's Spiritual Stature.*



And thou shalt take of the blood of the bullock, and put it upon the horns of the altar with thy finger, and pour all the blood beside the bottom [yaw-sad] of the altar (Exodus 29:12).

The Hebrew word for *bottom* is *yaw-sad*, which means foundation. The whole life of the Mosaic Sanctuary had its roots in the Foundation of the sin offering Blood, poured out at the bottom or foundation of the Brazen Altar.

Likewise, our whole spiritual stature in Christ Jesus has its roots in His Blood Sacrifice at Calvary's Cross. All our spiritual life must be founded in Christ's sin offering Blood that frees us from all sinful spots and blemishes.

How fitting it is that the name John and the Emerald Stone are in this Foundation of Blood.

The name John proceeds from the Hebrew name *Yeh-ho-khaw-nawn*, meaning Jehovah has favoured or the Favour of God, the Lovingkindness of God.

The LORD demonstrated His Favour toward mankind by stooping to bend in lovingkindness to inferior, sinful creatures and by giving His precious Son for a sin offering, which is represented in the New City's foundation by the Apostle John.

The Stone that embellishes this Foundation is the *Emerald*, the *no-fek*, meaning to glisten and shine. A true emerald is recognized by the breaks and fractures within it. The emerald, with its breaks and fractures and with its glistening and shining light, bears witness to the breaks, cracks, and splits Jesus Christ suffered on the Cross.

The Blood Foundation, with the name of the Apostle John and the Emerald Stone in it, is an Eternal witness of Christ's Sacrificial Support of the New City and the Bride within the City.

According to God's Master Plan, the fifth Foundation of the New City's Wall, is to be the *Power* of God's Word.

V. The Foundation of the Power of God's Word Bears the Name of the Apostle Philip and Is Embellished with the Sardonyx Stone

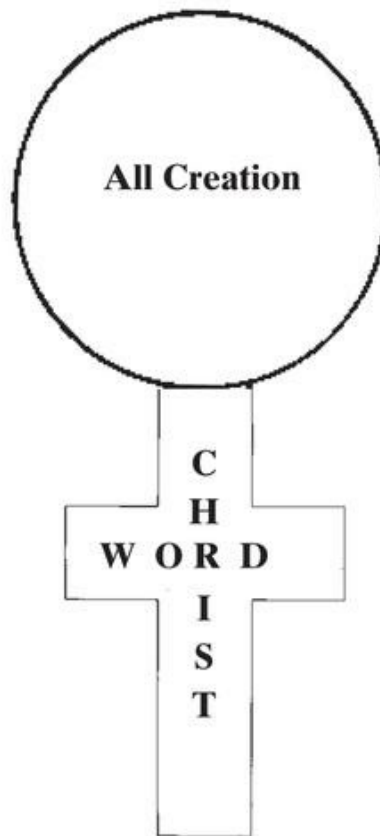
The Fifth Foundation

**Sardonyx Stone - Horns and Nails of Light
Philip - Beloved
The Power of the Word of the LORD Jesus Christ**

The LORD Jesus Christ, the Eternal Word, upholds or supports All Things, including the New City, by the Word of His Power.

Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and *upholding [naw-saw] all things by the word of his power*, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; (Hebrews 1:3).

All things rest upon Christ the Word for their support or Foundation. Christ, the Eternal Word, created all things through His Exalted, Glorious Union with the Father; then, He humbled Himself to take the low position as a Foundation to support all creation.

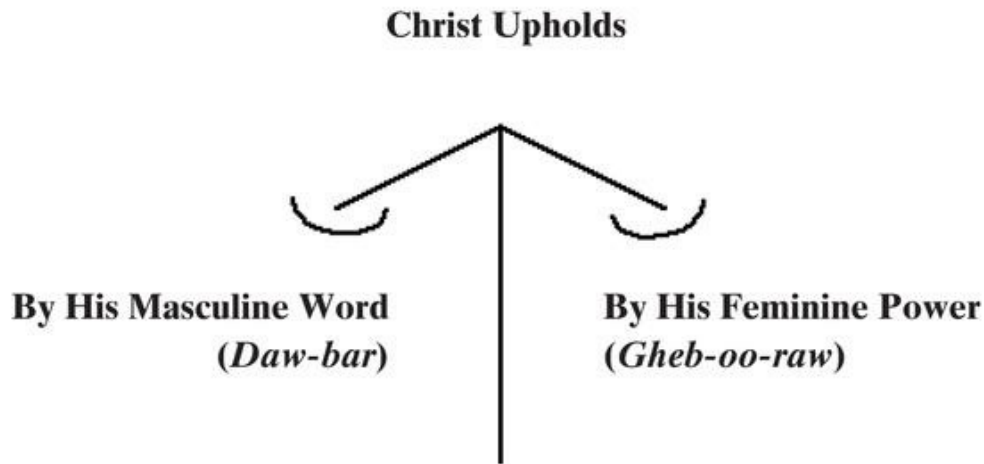


Without the sustaining support of Christ the Word, the whole creation would fall into rack and ruin.

The Hebrew word for *uphold* is *naw-saw*, meaning to lift up or raise up, giving liberty, setting one's affection on, to bear the guilt, to advance, to carry forward, to aid or assist.

In spite of the sinful guilt upon the creation, Christ, by the Word of His Power, supports all things, carrying them forward according to the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

Likewise, by the Word of His Power, Christ will uphold the New City. The Hebrew masculine word for Christ's upholding *Word* is *Daw-bar*, meaning a speech, manner, made, order, course, or reason that is beyond the understanding of the creation. The Hebrew feminine word for *power* is *gheb-oo-law*, meaning force, valour, victory, mastery, might, and strength.



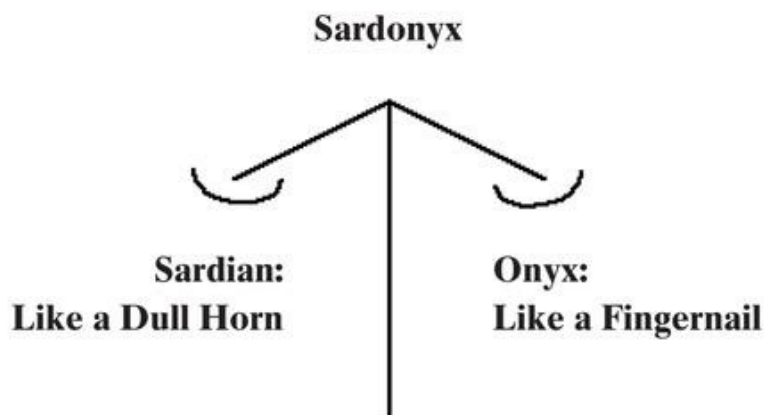
Through the Divine Union of Masculine Word of Authoritative, Commanding Might and Strength with the Feminine Power of the *Torah*-Truth, Christ supports all creation, including the New City.

The name of the Apostle Philip is on this fifth Foundation — the Power of God’s Word. The name Philip comes from the Greek root word *fee-los*, meaning dear, beloved, deep affection or love, friend, associate, or neighbour. Philip’s name fits so well, then, with the Love that is manifested by Christ Who continues to uphold a sinful creation, giving it a chance to accept Him, Whose Power as the Creator is manifested throughout the creation.

Jesus used the extension of the root word *fee-los* when He asked Simon Peter, “Lovest thou me?” (John 21:16). Hence, the name Philip represents Love or God-likeness, and it bears witness of God’s Love-likeness in Christ that is so dear and precious. It is Christ’s Likeness to His Father that makes Him take the low place in order to uphold or to be the Foundation for *all things*, including the New City.

The *Sardonyx* stone, the fifth Precious Stone, adorns this Foundation of the New City’s Foundational, Governmental Mountain.

The Sardonyx is made up of alternating layers of the Sardian Stone and the Onyx.



The appearance of the Sardian Stone is like that of a dull animal horn, and the appearance of the Onyx Stone is like that of a fingernail. These two Stones reveal the beauty and the luster of Christ’s Hands that uphold all things.

As He went by way of Teman and Paran to write the *Torah*-Truth on Mount Sinai, Christ's Mighty Hand had Horns of Power coming out of it, according to Habakkuk the Prophet's description of Him.

And his brightness was as the light; *he had horns coming out of his hand*: and there was the hiding of his power (Habakkuk 3:4).

The brilliant radiance of the LORD's Glory and the radiating rays of Light that proceeded from His Hand, like horns, were an awesome sight. These Horns of Light from Christ's Finger inscribed the Moral *Torah*-Truth in Stone.

The Sardonyx Stone, with its horns and nails, bears witness to Christ's Powerful Hands, with His Horns and Nails of Light, that support the New City and that, also, have written the Moral *Torah*-Truth in the heart of His Bride inside the City.

The building of the New City was planned by God with preciseness, and its sixth Foundation is to be *Good Works*.

VI. The Foundation of Good Works Bears the Name of the Apostle Bartholomew and Is Embellished with the Sardius Stone

The Sixth Foundation

**Sardius Stone - Rosy Red, Shows Blood in the Face
Bartholomew - Bar, Son, Bank, Terrace
The Good Works of the LORD Jesus Christ**

The LORD commands that Christians have good works in the Foundation of their spiritual building.

That they do good, that they be rich in good works, ready to distribute, willing to communicate; Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come, that they may lay hold on eternal life (I Timothy 6:18,19).

God considers works to be "good works" only if they are done in union with His Son's Life and only if they are done by willingly the Authority and Power of God's Glorious Headship.

The Hebrew word for *good* is *tobe*, meaning beautiful, best, bountiful, cheerful, gracious, joyful, favour, kindness, pleasant, prosperity, precious, sweet, wealth, or welfare.

Jesus is our Perfect Example, and in the days of His Flesh, He proved He possessed Good Works because He went about *doing good*.

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: *who went about doing good*, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him (Acts 10:38).

Jesus went about doing Good, bringing forgiveness, life, health, happiness, and prosperity to all. He brought *good cheer* to a man who was sick with palsy by forgiving his sins and by healing his disease (Matthew 9:2). Jesus brought *good comfort* to a hopeless, helpless woman who had a bloody issue that physicians could not heal (Matthew 9:22). On the Sabbath, Jesus did Good *by giving food* to His hungry Disciples and *by healing* a crippled man (Mark 2:23; 3:4,5).

Jesus is the Good Shepherd Who gives His Life for His sheep (John 10:11,14).

Jesus Christ commanded us to let our Light, which we have obtained from His Headship, shine so that men can see the good works we willingly have done in union with His Headship.

Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven (Matthew 5:16).

The only way that Christ's inward Light of Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge can shine through the works we do in our moral development is from the spiritual education we have received as we have grown up in Christ's

Spiritual Stature. By allowing the Light of Christ's Headship to govern and control our spiritual education, we willingly can do good works in our moral development.

Light shines for the purpose of revealing something. We either are warming a cold world with Christ's Light, or the cold world is freezing us. We must stay in union with the Sun of Righteousness while we are doing our good works, or the world will chill us after we have given it the warmth of our good works. For example, if a sunbeam of light is severed from the Sun, its source, it will have no power to continue shining.

The Son of God did *all* His Good Works in perfect Union with His Father. Therefore, He always turned His Shining Light on the Father, the Source of all His Good Works. By so doing, He always glorified His Father.

The presence of the Foundation of Good Works in the New City's Foundational Mount is an Eternal Witness and Glorification of the Father's willing Good Works, which He wrought through His Son.

The Apostle Bartholomew's name is written on the sixth Foundation, the Foundation of Good Works. The name Bartholomew is made up of two Hebrew words: *bar*, meaning son, and *tal-mai*, from an unused root word meaning to accumulate, a bank, a terrace, furrow, ridge. The meanings of Bartholomew's name make it an appropriate name for the Foundation of Good Works.

Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the "Bank" in Whom the Heavenly Father has placed all His Treasures of Wisdom and Knowledge and through Whom He has done all His Good Works of Creation and Redemption.

God also would have us work willingly so that we can accumulate a great collection of Good Works in the foundation of our moral development. We will have Treasures of Truth to withdraw from our "bank," which we can share with others, if we have worked in the Word and prayer to receive from the LORD the Treasures He wants to share with us.

The *Sardius* Stone beautifies this Foundation of Good Works. The Hebrew word for *sardius* is *aw-done*, meaning to be rosy red; it comes from the word *aw-dam*, meaning to show blood in the face, to be ruddy from being a husbandman, from cultivating the soil.

While Jesus hung upon the Cross, willingly performing the Good Work of Redemption, He showed Blood in His Face.

God's servants show blood in their faces as they willingly perform the Good Works of prayer, teaching, preaching God's Word, and many other related ministries. When Good Works, are performed willingly out of a union with the Headship of Jesus Christ, they always bring Glory to the Father.

If we anticipate being in the Bride and abiding in the New City that will rest upon the LORD's Foundation of Good Works, we must allow the LORD to form His Foundation of Good Works in our moral development, now, in this life.

Next, God ordained that the seventh Foundation is to be a Foundation of *Counsel*.

VII. The Foundation of Counsel Bears the Name of the Apostle Thomas and Is Embellished with the Chrysolite Stone

The Counsel of Jesus Christ and the Apostles and Prophets, as it is revealed in and through God's Word, forms this seventh Foundation.

Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God; *And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone*; In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord: In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit (Ephesians 2:19-22).

The Seventh Foundation

Chrysolite Stone - Millstone, Stumbling Stone
Thomas - Complete, Joined, Coupled Together
The Counsel of the LORD Jesus Christ

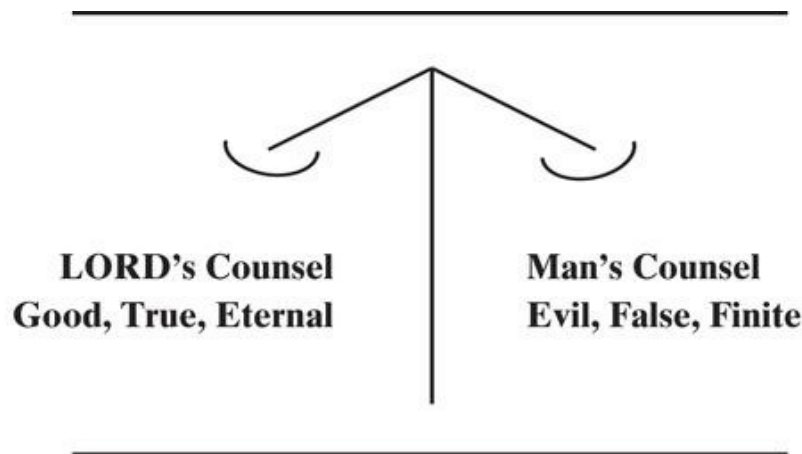
The seventh Foundation of the New City consists of God's faithful Counsels of Truth that have been laid by the Apostles and Prophets, Jesus Christ being the Chief Cornerstone. This also is the Foundation for each individual, for the Church, and for the New City. While the foundation of a natural building must be comparable to the superstructure that is to be built thereon, so also must all Spiritual Building be done according to God's Faithful Counsels of Truth, for only He has the Divine Blueprint for both the Eternal Foundation and the Eternal Superstructure of all buildings.

O LORD, thou art my God; I will exalt thee, I will praise thy name; for thou hast done wonderful things; *thy counsels of old are faithfulness and truth* (Isaiah 25:1).

In Eternity-Past, before the foundation of creation, God wrote His Faithful, True Counsels in His Master Plan and in His Purposive Will. Therefore, He has and always will continue with strong, steadfast adherence to them. He will maintain an undeviating allegiance to His Counsels, and He will be the Divine, Moral Support of them. Hence, His Counsels are Faithfulness and Truth.

The counsel of the LORD standeth for ever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations (Psalm 33:11).

The LORD's Faithful, True Counsels from the Apostles, from the Prophets, and from Jesus Christ, the Chief Cornerstone, stand against the disloyal, false counsels of the people. The Good Thoughts of the LORD's Heart stand in opposition to the evil thoughts of man's unregenerated heart.



The kings of the Earth, with their evil counsel, stand against the LORD and His King, the Chief Cornerstone, and His Counsel.

The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the LORD, and against his anointed, saying, Let us break their bands asunder, and cast away their cords from us (Psalm 2:2,3).

An attack against Jesus Christ and His Counsel is a revolt against God the Father, Who has willed His Son's Anointed Kingship.

Man's false, finite counsels cannot win over God's Immutable Counsel.

Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise *the immutability of his counsel*, confirmed it by an oath: (Hebrews 6:17).

God's, Eternal Counsel is immutable, changeless, never changing, and never varying. Therefore, since man's evil counsel is finite and is as changing as the shifting sands, it never can win over God's established Counsel.

God works *all things* after the Counsel of His Own Will.

In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated *according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will*: (Ephesians 1:11).

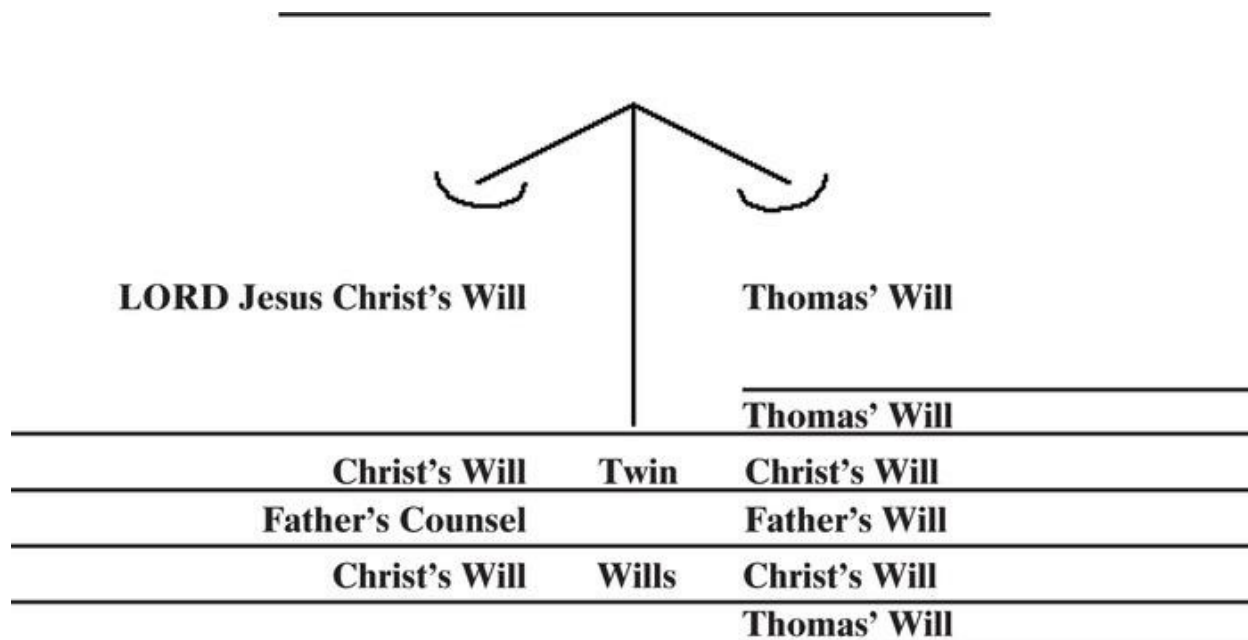
Jesus Christ, the Chief Cornerstone in all foursquare corners of the seventh Foundation, uses His Foursquare Countenance of a Lion, Man, Eagle, and Ox to project His Father's Counsels to the Apostles and Prophets.*

All submissive souls receive and accept these faithful, true Thoughts and Advice from the Son, Who has received them from the Father; therefore, they walk in the Light of Christ's Counsel.

Individual believers must allow Jesus Christ to lay His Foundation of Counsel in their hearts, if they desire to build the Superstructure of Christ's Spiritual Stature upon their Foundation.

The name of the Apostle Thomas is inscribed in this seventh Foundation. The Hebrew word for Thomas is *taw-ome*, meaning a twin. *Taw-ome* comes from the Hebrew root word *taw-am*, meaning to be complete, to be jointed, coupled together, and to bear twins.

The meaning of the name Thomas bears witness that, in his will, this Apostle possessed the Counsel of the Father's Will, which is a *twin* to the Counsel in Christ's Will.



The new Foundation or Mountain under the New City displays the "twin" union of the Father's Will with Christ's Will and the union of His Disciple's will with the twin Wills of the Father and the Christ. The Bride inside the City also will have this "twin" union of the Father's Will through Christ Jesus.

The embellishing Stone in the seventh Foundation is the *Chrysolyte*. The word *chrysolyte* is made up of two Greek words: *khroo-sos* and *lee-thos*, meaning a stone, millstone, or stumbling-stone.

The Crucified Christ was the Millstone, the Humility Stumblingstone with the Father's Counsel, the Stone at which many stumbled in the days of His Flesh. Jesus Christ is the Millstone that will grind and crush the false, finite counsels of our human will, thus making room for the Father's Divine Will.

How Infinite is God's Divine Wisdom that arranged to put His Counsel together with the Apostle Thomas' name and the Chrysolyte Stone.

God proposed, in the beginning, that the eighth Foundation of the Wall of the New City is to be a Foundation of *Reparation*.

VIII. The Foundation of Reparation Bears the Name of the Apostle Matthew and Is Embellished with the Beryl Stone

The Eighth Foundation

Beryl Stone - Demolish, Impoverish, Break in Pieces, Destroy
Matthew - Gift of God
The LORD Jesus Christ — The Reparation of the Moral *Torah*-Truth

When God gave His *Torah*-Truth, His Moral Law, it was broken outwardly on the Stones that Moses cast from his hands, and it was broken inwardly on the tables of human hearts when man sinned. After sin had broken the Law, God sent Jesus Christ, His Living *Torah* in Flesh, to give His Atoning Life's Blood for the Reparation or repairing of the Moral *Torah*-Truth in submissive, penitent hearts.

It is Christ's Blood that renews, restores, and revives the fleshly tables in man's old, penitent heart, upon which God can write His Moral Truth so that man can be a doer of God's Word.

The Hebrew word used in the repairing of God's natural Temple (which is the picture of Christ's restoration of our inward, spiritual temple) comes from the Hebrew root word *yaw-sad*, which means foundation.

Now concerning his sons, and the greatness of the burdens laid upon him, and the *repairing [yaw-sad] of the house of God*, behold, they are written in the story of the book of the kings. And Amaziah his son reigned in his stead (II Chronicles 24:27).

God's Temple had been neglected, brought to decay and ruin because of gross idolatry in Israel, so God raised up some faithful hearts to *repair* or "give foundation" to the Temple again.

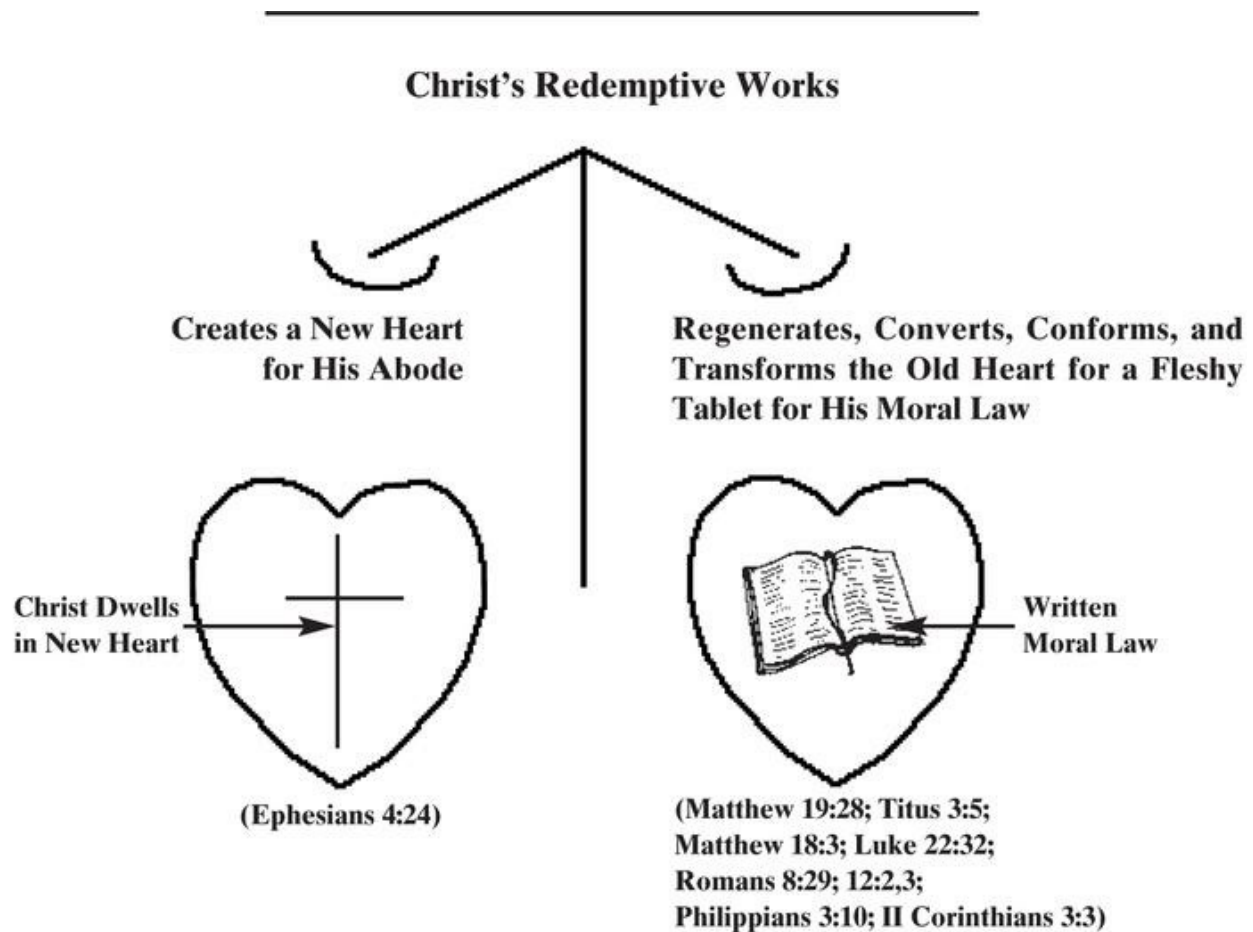
Likewise, Jesus Christ, God's faithful Son, repairs, restores, and renews our old heart so that it can become a temple for Christ's Temple.

Forasmuch as *ye are manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ* ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshly tables of the heart (II Corinthians 3:3).

God's Living Spirit wrote His Moral Law in the fleshly tables of the hearts of the Corinthian saints. Hence, they were able to become doers of the Righteousness of the Moral Law.

For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: *That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us*, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit (Romans 8:2-4).

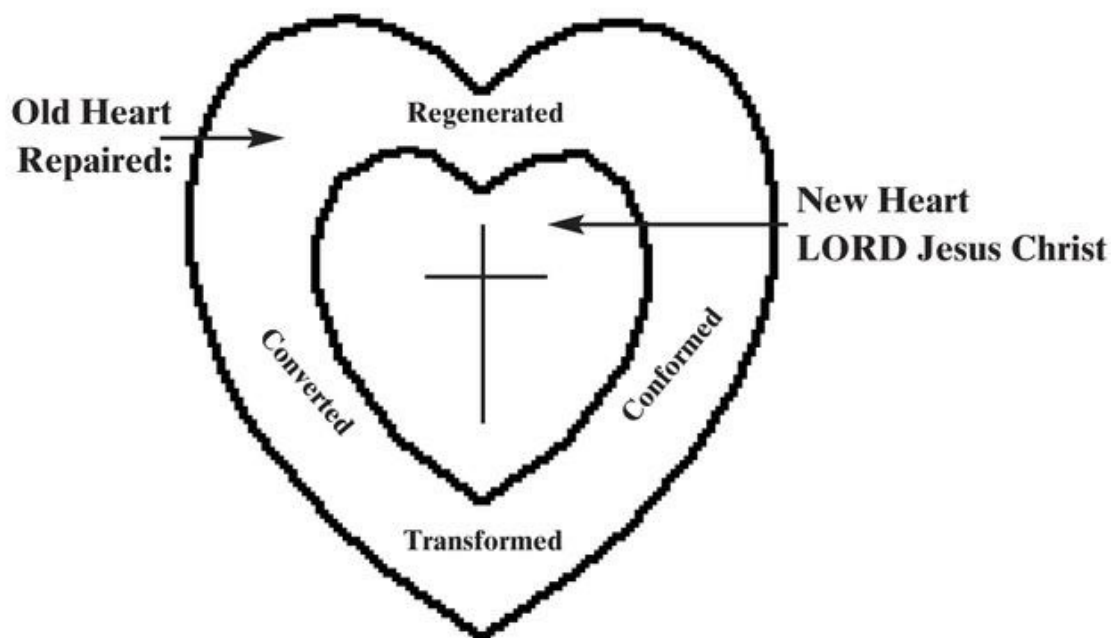
The Spirit of Life in Christ has freed us from the Law of Death, in both the Ceremonial Law and in the Moral Law. Apart from having the Spirit of Christ dwelling in him, man is unable to fulfill the Righteousness of the Law because of his sinful flesh. However, Christ came in Flesh and nailed the *Ceremonial* Law to His Cross; then, He arose from the dead to take up His abode in *penitent* man's newly created heart, thus, repairing man's old heart. By repenting and accepting Christ's Sacrifice for his sin, man is empowered to fulfill the Righteousness of God's Moral Law.



With Jesus Christ dwelling in the New Heart and with Christ's Moral *Torah*-Truth written in the regenerated, converted, conformed, and transformed old heart, man can be a doer of God's Holy Word (James 1:22). Thus, penitent man's whole being can become a Holy Sanctuary for the LORD, both in the New Heart and in the old heart.

The eighth Foundation of the New City bears witness of Christ's great Reparation of man's old heart, which He repairs by regenerating, converting, conforming, and transforming it.

The Apostle Matthew's name is inscribed in this Foundation. The name Matthew has its origin in the Hebrew word *Mat-tith-yaw*, meaning the gift of God. His name is a witnesses of the Gift of Christ's Repairing Work, which Christ accomplishes after He has created a New Heart within man's old heart, where He takes up His abode.



The Beryl, the eighth, embellishing Precious Stone, fits with the Foundation of Reparation. The Hebrew word for *beryl* is *tar-sheesh*; it comes from the Hebrew root word *raw-shash*, meaning to demolish, impoverish, to break in pieces, and to destroy.

By the Power of His Blood and His Cross, the LORD Jesus Christ demolishes and destroys the works of the flesh that issue out of the old heart. Then, Christ repairs the old heart by *regenerating* it, by *converting* it, by *conforming* it to His Image, and by *transforming* its old nature into a New Nature, like unto His own humble, submissive Nature. The Beryl Stone, then, is a proper embellishment for the eighth Foundation of the New Mount of the New City because, by its meaning, it bears witness to the LORD's Truth of Reparation, whereby He demolishes and destroys man's old, sinful nature.

The eighth Foundation, inscribed with the name of the Apostle Matthew and embellished with the Beryl Stone, bears witness outwardly to Christ's great Works of Reparation which He does within the penitent heart; and it bears witness to His great Changing and Repairing Work that will have taken place in the heart of His Bride who will dwell within the New City.

Lifting His Holy City higher and higher on His Foundational Truths, God planned that the ninth Foundation is to be *Correction*.

IX. The Foundation of Correction Bears the Name of the Apostle James, Son of Alphaeus, and Is Embellished with the Topaz Stone

The Ninth Foundation

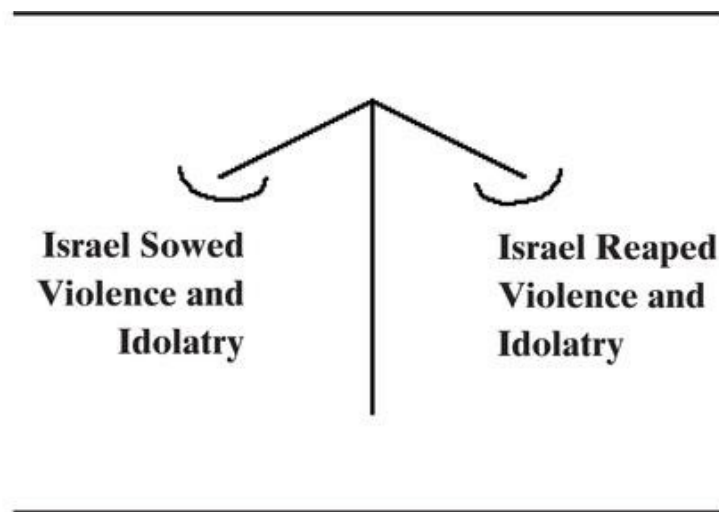
**Topaz Stone - Pasture, Pleasant Place, Dwelling Place
James, Son of Alphaeus, Restrain, Change, Exchange
The Correction of the LORD Jesus Christ**

The Prophet Habakkuk addressed the Foundation of Correction in his writings. At first, the Prophet's own heart was disturbed and agitated by the emotional workings of the flesh in his old heart as he pondered the dark, mysterious question, "Why do the innocent suffer while the guilty seemingly prosper?"

Then shall his mind change, and he shall pass over, and offend, imputing this his power unto his god. Art thou not from everlasting, O LORD my God, mine Holy One? we shall not die. O LORD, thou hast ordained them for judgment; and, *O mighty God, thou has established [yaw-sad] them for correction* (Habakkuk 1:11,12).

The fierce, swift Chaldeans passed over Israel so quickly it seemed as if they had swallowed up the whole nation. Their violent, terrible deeds provoked terror in the hearts of God's people, including the Prophet's.

Habakkuk was much grieved by the whole picture in Israel. If he looked back to the past, he saw the violence and sinful idolatry committed by Israel. When he looked in the present, he saw the wicked violence committed against Israel by the autocratic arrogance of the idolatrous Chaldeans.



Because of God's Just Measurement, Israel reaped according to what she had sown, which peeved the Prophet Habakkuk.

Although Habakkuk was upset with God for allowing the impudent, arrogant Chaldeans to wreak such a degree of violence in Israel, he fell on his knees to seek God, and there he found his answer. The Truth was that God had established (founded) the Chaldeans for the *correction* of Israel, not for her destruction.

Once individuals and nations have grown in their spiritual education and moral development, if they subsequently choose to return to their sinful ways, God will chasten them and subdue them greatly — not for their destruction, but for their correction and ultimate Salvation.

King David learned about God's Foundation of Correction.

I shall not die, but live, and declare the works of the LORD. *The LORD hath chastened me sore*; but he hath not given me over unto death (Psalm 118:17,18).

God did not kill David for his sin, but David was raised up as a living monument to God's Foundation of Correction.

Our whole purpose of existence is to live exclusively unto the LORD, declaring both His Salvation and His Efficacious, Efficient, and Effective Correction of our aberrations from Him.

The Apostle Paul also learned the mystery of Christ's Foundation of Correction — that it is for life and not for death.

As unknown, and yet well known; as dying, and, behold, we live; *as chastened, and not killed*; (II Corinthians 6:9).

Paul was unknown as far as having a famous, worldly reputation. In fact, he was counted as a foolish, worthless thing, but he was known to the Churches as God's precious Apostle. He was in a constant state of death, of dying to his flesh and dying physically, as it were, because of constant threats and attacks on his life. Nevertheless, he lived.

He constantly was chastened by his LORD; yet, he neither was killed nor destroyed.

If we expect to be in the New City, we, too, must have God's Foundation of Correction laid in our heart. We must understand that all the pains of our trials, tribulations, and troubles are for our chastening and correction. Hence, we must not become peeved and resentful over the "sandpapering" effects that life's circumstances and people have upon us. Neither must we enviously compare our pains with the pleasures of the wicked.

The name James, the son of Alphaeus, is inscribed on this Foundation. The name James, as we stated earlier, is the Greek form of the Hebrew name *Jacob* or *Yah-ak-obe*, which comes from *aw-kab*, meaning to supplant, to circumvent as if tripping up the heels, to restrain as if holding by the heel.

The name Alphaeus, is connected to the Hebrew word *kheh-lef*, meaning to change, exchange. The word *kheh-lef* comes from the word *khaw-laf*, meaning to hasten away, change, abolish, grow up, renew, and to sprout.

The name of James, the son of Alphaeus, bears witness to how we are to hold on to the heel of the flesh, the "Esau" in our life, until we have retrieved our spiritual birthright, which is to grow up in Christ's Stature.

God sends troubles and trials to expose our fleshly, unholy attitudes and carnal dispositions so that we can give them up to Christ for Crucifixion and let Him change them, through His Death, into His Holy Likeness and Image.

Christ sends all pain for correction of evil, not for destruction of good.

The *Topaz* Stone embellishes this ninth Foundation. The Hebrew word for *topaz* is *pit-daw*, which conveys the idea of a pasture, a pleasant place, satisfaction, or a dwelling place. The Topaz Stone represents Christ's Sincerity in the New Heart, which influences it to feed on the Resurrected Christ's Illuminating Truth. On the other hand, Christ's Sincerity influences the old heart, in the midst of its suffering, to feed on the Truth of the Crucified Christ's Humility and Obedience until it is corrected and changed.

The old heart experiences unspeakable rest and peace when Christ lays in His Foundation of Correction, which is inscribed with the name of the Apostle James, son of Alphaeus, and embellished with the Topaz Stone.

Before the Superstructure of the New City is placed on its new, clean Foundations, God has ordained that there is to be a tenth foundation — His *Sureness*.

X. The Foundation of Sureness Bears the Name of the Apostle Jude (Lebbaeus Thaddaeus) and Is Embellished with the Chrysoprasus Stone

The Tenth Foundation

**Chrysoprasus Stone - Usefulness, Pungent Smell
Jude (Lebbaeus Thaddaeus) - Enduring, Permanence, Praise
The Sureness of the LORD Jesus Christ**

The LORD's tenth Foundation is sure, firm, mighty, and strong.

Nevertheless *the foundation of God standeth sure*, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are his. And, Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity (II Timothy 2:19).

The Hebrew root word for *sure* is *ay-thawn*, meaning permanent, to be constant, stable, firm, strong, and mighty. This word *ay-thawn* is used to describe Joseph's bow. The LORD, through Jacob's prophecies, called it a bow of strength (*ay-thawn*).

But his bow abode in strength [ay-thawn], and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob; (from thence is the shepherd, the stone of Israel:) (Genesis 49:24).

Joseph's brothers, who had no just cause, begot an envious hostility toward him; they nursed secret resentments and deep hatred. Secretly, they carried their treacherous, poisonous arrows of revenge in their hearts, waiting for an

opportunity to catch Joseph and shoot him. When the occasion to hurt Joseph finally presented itself, they first cast him into a pit; then, they sold him as a slave to be taken down into Egypt.

Because Joseph's bow rested *firmly* in its strength upon his shoulder and because he did not take up his brothers' treacherous, poisonous arrows of jealous revenge to shoot back at them, God, in accordance with His Master Plan and Purposive Will, exalted Joseph to a position of great rulership in Egypt.

Later, Canaan's Land experienced a famine, but there was plenty of grain in Egypt because of Joseph's wise governance under God. Therefore, Joseph's brothers traveled to Egypt to buy grain from him, not knowing who he was.

Again, Joseph's bow remained in a permanent, firm position of rest upon his shoulders. He had the perfect opportunity for revenge since he was a mighty ruler and his brothers were now dependent on him; yet, Joseph did not take up treacherous, poisonous arrows of revenge to shoot back at his brothers because he had no wish to destroy them. Instead, he returned good for evil by feeding them with good grain.

Joseph's bow is a picture of the Bow of Christ's Sureness of Mercy and Grace that remains perpetually and permanently upon His Shoulder. He never joins His Bow of Mercy and Grace to man's treacherous, poisonous arrows of revenge in order to shoot back at him.

The Prophet Amos foretold Christ's Millennial Reign, at which time the LORD's Judgment shall run down like a Mighty (*Ay-thawn*) Stream.

But let judgment run down as waters, and righteousness as a mighty [ay-thawn] stream (Amos 5:24).

The LORD's Mighty Stream of Justice, which He will loose during His Millennial Reign, will be a permanent, perennial Stream; it will not run dry, as a natural stream does in the hot, summer season.

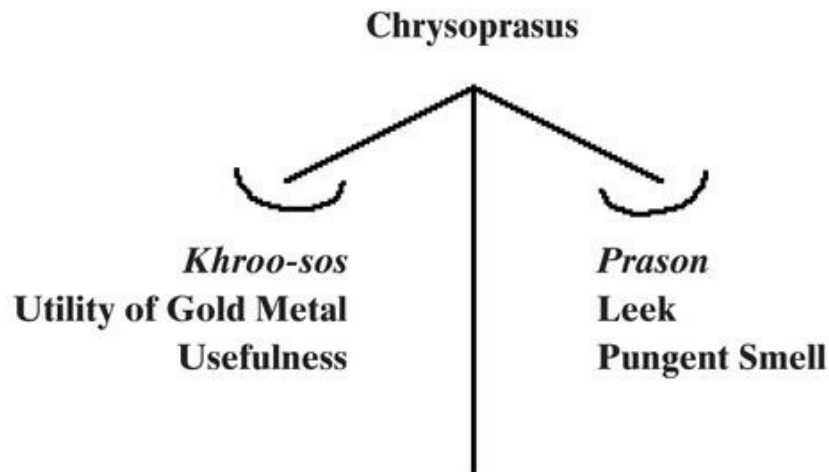
The LORD Jesus Christ desires to loose, daily, His permanent, perennial Stream of Judgment into our heart and life so that we might be governed by His Judgmental Decisions upon all things. Without the constant rule of His Judgment and Righteousness, our religion is a sham; consequently, it is abhorrent to God.

The *Sure* Foundation of the New Mount that supports the New City is a witness to Christ's Living, Perennial Cycle of Righteous Judgment that shall flow down eternally, like a mighty stream, always returning to its Source to begin its active course all over again.

This tenth Foundation is inscribed with the name of the Apostle Jude, who was also called Lebbaeus Thaddaeus. Lebbaeus is from the Hebrew root word *Lay-bawb*, meaning the heart, the vital Principle of thought, reasoning, understanding, will, judgment, and design. The closest Hebrew word to Thaddaeus is *Tid-hawr*, meaning enduring or permanence. The name Jude has its origin in the Hebrew word *Yeh-hoo-daw*, meaning celebration or praise.

Lebbaeus Thaddaeus Jude's name bears witness to and praise for the Sureness or Eternal, Perennial Permanence of the LORD's Judgments that flow down as Perennial Streams.

The *Chrysoprasus* Stone adorns this tenth Foundation. Chrysoprasus is formed from two Greek words: *khroo-sos* (through the idea of the utility of gold metal) and *prason* (meaning a leek).



Thus, the Chrysoprasus represents something of usefulness and of a strong, sharp, permanent smell. The leek belongs to the onion family; therefore, it carries a pungent smell.

The meanings in the name of the Stone teach us that the Sure Foundation of the LORD's Mighty Stream of Righteousness and Judgment is adorned with permanent usefulness and a lasting smell. This Stone eternally reminds the creation, through their olfactory sense, of the durability of the Sure Foundation of Christ's Righteousness and Judgments.

In God's Plan for the New City, the eleventh Foundation is to be the *Salty and Sweet Waters of Truth*.

XI. The Foundation of Salt and Sweet Waters of Truth Bears the Name of the Apostle Simon Zelotes and Is Embellished with the Jacinth Stone

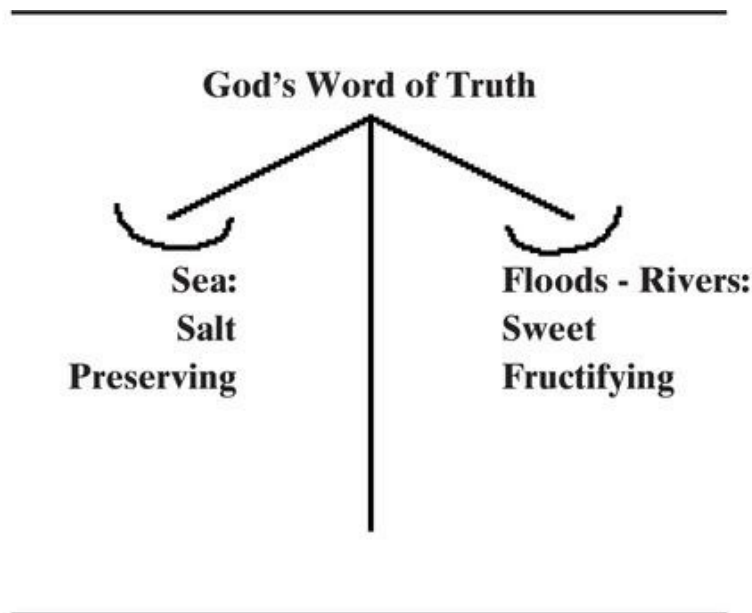
Jacinth Stone - Conspicuous
Simon Zelotes - Devoted
The LORD Jesus Christ — The Salt and Sweet Waters of Truth

The Eleventh Foundation

God upholds the world of Seed by the Salty and Sweet Waters of His Word of Truth.

The earth is the LORD's and the fulness thereof; the world [tay-bale], and they that dwell therein. For he hath founded [yaw-sad] it upon the seas [salt water], and established [koon] it upon the floods [sweet waters] (Psalm 24:1,2).

The Hebrew word for *world*, in this verse, is *tay-bale*, which reveals God's world of living Seed. The *tay-bale* world of Seeds is upheld by the preserving Salty Sea of Truth and the Sweet Rivers of Truth.



This Spiritual Principle works in both the natural and spiritual realms. In the natural realm, the world of inhabitants upon the Earth is dependent upon this Salt-Sweet Water Principle. It is a Foundation, a most basic element and a most essential prerequisite for life. Without salt water supplying moisture and precipitation, the survival of all seed is impossible. Likewise, without the basic Foundation of a sweet-water supply from rivers and lakes, the fructifying of all seed is impossible.

In the same manner, without Christ's Preserving, Salt-Water Truth, it is impossible for His Spiritual Seed to survive in our heart. A seed never can grow to maturity and become fruitful unless it is preserved. It is the ministry of salt, both in the natural and spiritual realms, to preserve.

Let your speech be alway with grace, *seasoned with salt*, that ye may know how ye ought to answer every man (Colossians 4:6).

If our words are filled with grace or gratitude and seasoned with Christ's Salty Sea-Waters of Truth, we can help preserve the faith and confidence of others by the Truth we give to them in our answers from the Holy Principles in God's Word.

Jesus commanded His Disciples to have the Salt Water within themselves.

Salt is good: but if the salt have lost his saltness, wherewith will ye season it? *Have salt in yourselves*, and have peace one with another (Mark 9:50).

Salt is both corrosive and preservative. The Spiritual, Corroding Works of Christ's Sea Salt Truth will preserve His Seeds of Truth until they can take root downward and bear fruit upward.

Jesus promised that those who believe on Him and who receive the Baptism of the Holy Ghost will have fresh, Sweet, Living Waters flowing out of their bellies.

He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, *out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water*. (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.) (John 7:38,39).

The Sweet Flood Waters of the Rivers of the Spirit will moisten the Seeds of Truth, causing them to take root downward and bear fruit upward.

David found the Sweet Flood Waters of Truth upholding his soul and bringing the Truth in it to fruition.

How sweet are thy words unto my taste! yea, sweeter than honey to my mouth! (Psalm 119:103).

The LORD's Flood Waters of Truth are sweet and smooth to the submissive soul.

The Apostle Simon Zelotes' name is inscribed in this Foundation of Salt/Sweet Waters of Truth. The Hebrew name for Simon is *Shim-one*, meaning to have excessive devotion to someone and to be ardently devoted to a

purpose.

Blessed are those who hear the joyful sound of the Salty Sea Waters of Truth and the Sweet River Waters of Truth.

The LORD gave this Foundation of Salt/Sweet Water Principle to the tiny nation of Israel at the Red Sea and, later, at the River Jordan.

Cause me to hear thy lovingkindness in the morning: for in thee do I trust: cause me to know the way wherein I should walk: for I lift up my soul unto thee (Psalm 143:8).

Israel heard the joyful sound of the LORD's Lovingkindness in the morning watch, through the roaring of the Red Sea's waves as they towered up into icy walls, to the right and to the left. And Israel heard the joyful sound of the LORD's Lovingkindness in the morning watch, when He melted the salty, icy walls and allowed them to come crashing down in a thunderous roar, covering the Egyptians and eating away at their flesh, corroding them and weighting them down until they sank into the depths of the sea.

Israel also heard the same joyful sound when the Sweet Waters of the River Jordan hastened to stand up in sweet icy walls, allowing them to pass over into Canaan's Land.

This Foundation and Simon Zelotes' name bear witness to the Salty Sea of Truth and the Sweet Rivers of Truth that must support the New City, collectively, and the Bride individually.

This Foundation will be embellished beautifully with the *Jacinth* Stone, which seems to be the same as the Ligure Stone or *leh-shem*, meaning conspicuous.

How conspicuous is this Foundation of the LORD's Salty Sea Waters of Truth and His Sweet River Waters of Truth! It will be noticeable and obvious for all creation to see, to perceive, and to observe.

As the final Foundation to the New City, God determined that the twelfth Foundation is to be *Instruction*.

XII. The Foundation of Instruction Bears the Name of the Apostle Paul and Is Embellished with the Amethyst Stone

The Twelfth Foundation

**Amethyst Stone - Dream, Make Strong, Restore to Health
Paul - Little, Least
The Instruction of the LORD Jesus Christ**

God revealed the last Foundation on which He builds when He *instructed* (*yaw-sad*) Solomon concerning the building of the Temple.

Now these are the things wherein Solomon was instructed [yaw-sad] for the building of the house of God. The length by cubits after the first measure was threescore cubits, and the breadth twenty cubits (II Chronicles 3:3).

The Hebrew word for *foundation*, *yaw-sad*, is translated here as *instruction*. This is proof to us that God considers Instruction as a Founding Principle for all building.

The word *instruct* means to pile upon, put in order, erect upon, arrange, and to build.

Instructing and building are for the purpose of communicating knowledge, teaching, educating, and giving directions, and order. The number twelve is the number of perfect government. The presence of the Twelfth Foundation bears witness that Instruction is part of the LORD's Perfect, Governmental Support that upholds the New City and the Bride.

The LORD's Governmental Headship always gives perfect Governance and Guidance to His people.

The Foundation of Instruction is inscribed with the name of the Apostle Paul, which means little. The word *little* means least, small, to bend or stoop; it also connotes something of insignificance and meanness.

The LORD chose the Apostle Paul to replace Judas Iscariot. Although the other Apostles thought Matthias a good choice, God's determination was different. So, in the New City, Paul's name will appear on the Twelfth Foundation.

Paul considered himself small, the least of the Apostles (I Corinthians 15:9) and the least of all saints (Ephesians 3:8). Paul, the little one, knew how to abase himself, taking the low place of humility.

I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed, both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need (Philippians 4:12).

Paul had learned to humble himself and to be content in the midst of hardships, sufferings, bonds, imprisonments, necessities, and afflictions. Paul also knew how to abound in prosperous conditions; he knew how to be full and exalted without being proud. Paul's contentment had its origin in Christ's Governance and Guidance of his life, according to the Father's Purposive Will.

In his Epistle, the Apostle Paul, the little one, established Christ's Perfect Headship or Governorship over:

- The Man - (I Corinthians 11:3)
- All Things - (Ephesians 1:22)
- Spiritual Growth - (Ephesians 4:15)
- All Principality and Power - Colossians 2:10)

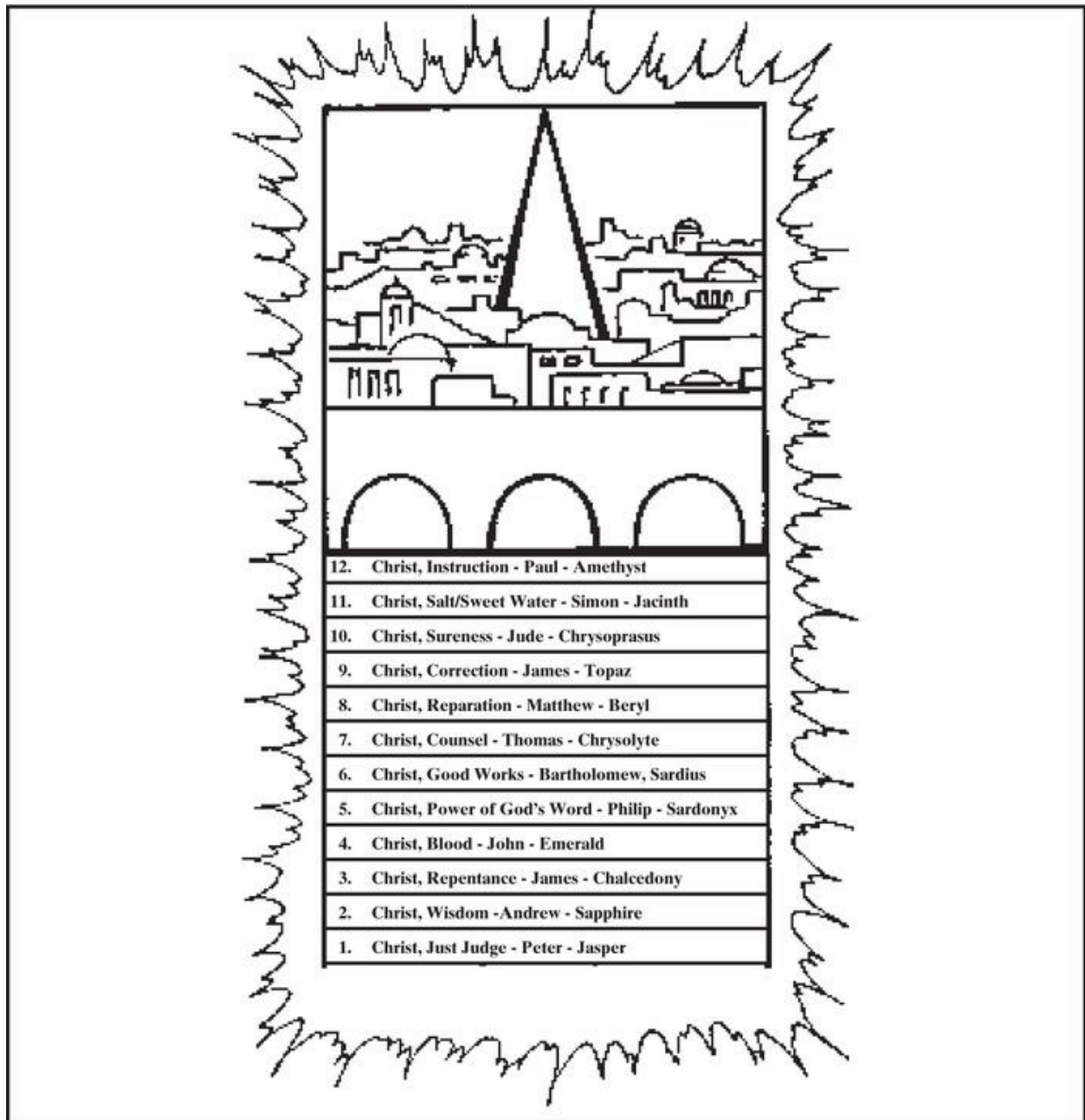
Paul displayed Christ's Perfect Government in his own life, and he also taught it to Christ's Body or the Churches and all believers. Consequently, his name will be honoured by being put in the Twelfth Foundation of the New Mount of the New City to bear witness eternally to the Perfect Government of the LORD Jesus Christ.

All spiritual building *begins* with Christ's Perfect Governance. He is the Head Cornerstone (I Peter 2:6,7). All building is *crowned* with Christ's Perfect Government of His Grace (Zechariah 4:7).

This Twelfth Governmental Foundation is adorned with the *Amethyst* Stone. The Hebrew word for *amethyst* is *akh-law-maw*, meaning to dream, to make strong, and to restore to health.

We will dream or have a true vision, and we will be made strong and be restored to perfect spiritual health when we give Christ His rightful privilege of being the Perfect Governor or Head of our life.

As we review the Twelve Foundations, the Names of the Twelve Apostles, and the Twelve Precious Stones that embellish the Foundations, we see the Foundations of the Wall of the New City as the Angel showed it to John from a Great and High Mountain:



We must have these Foundations laid in our heart if we are to be Christ's Bride and dwell eternally in the New City with God and the Lamb.

-
- * B. R. Hicks, [*Precious Gem in the Tabernacle*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1961).
 - * B. R. Hicks, [*Understanding God's Wheel of Time*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana, 1989).

Chapter Sixteen

The Measurement of the New City and Its Wall and the Jasper Substance from Which the Wall Is Made

Interjected between the details John recorded about the Foundations, he gave the measurements of the New City and its Wall, and he identified the material from which the Wall was made.

And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof. And the city lieth foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: *and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs, The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal. And he measured the wall thereof, an hundred and forty and four cubits, according to the measure of a man, that is, of the angel. And the building of the wall of it was of jasper: and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass* (Revelation 21:15-18).

Everything about the New City is built according to God's Perfect Measurement, including the Wall.

I. The Measurement of the New City and Its Wall

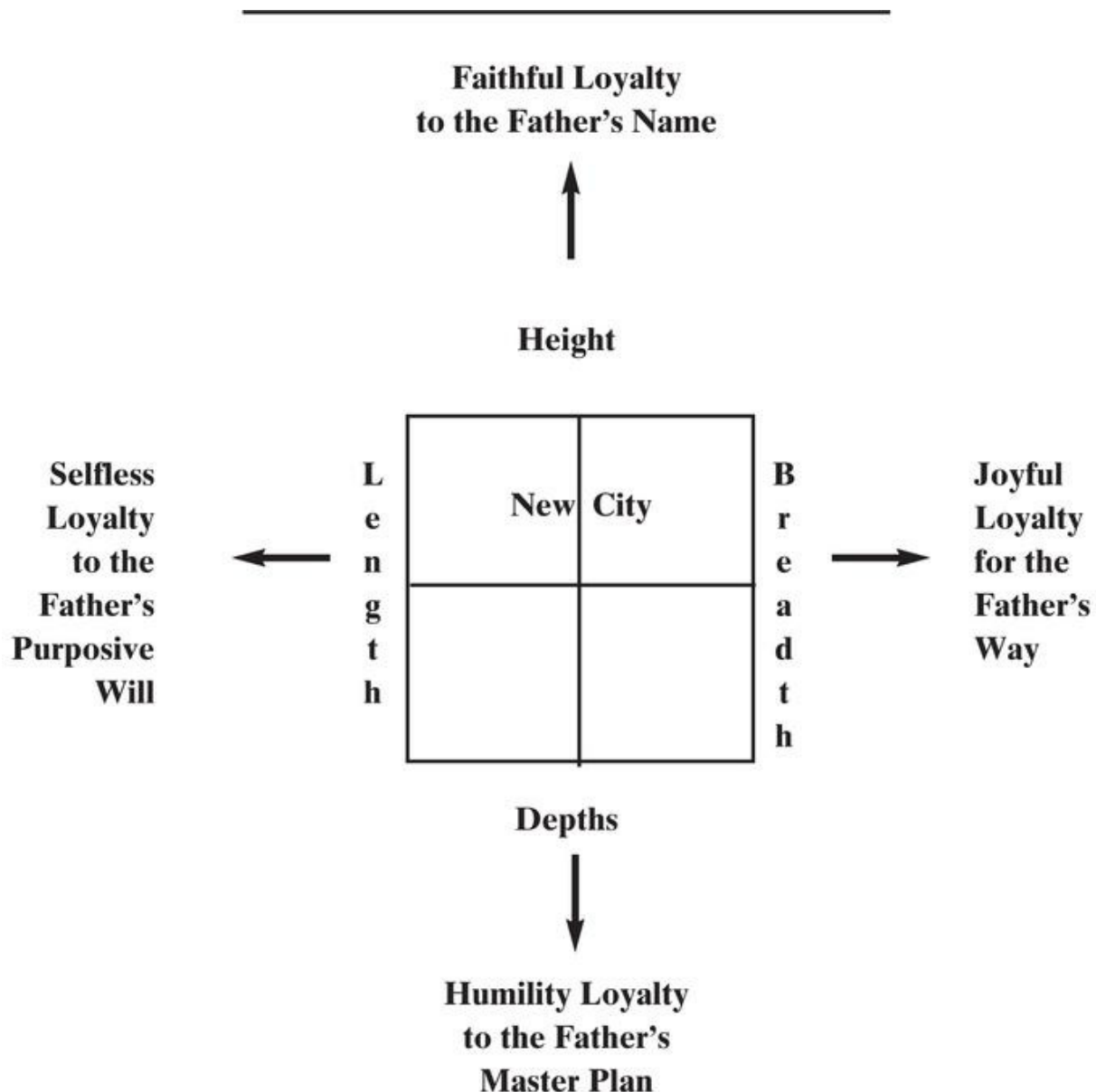
The New City will be equal in purity and perfection on all four sides; it will be Foursquare. In length, breadth, and in height, the New City will be 12,000 furlongs, which is approximately 1,500 miles in all directions. The New City's symmetry is perfect, bearing witness of the Bride's perfection on *all sides* of her life.

While many believers are great on one side of their life, on the other sides, they are small and stunted in their spiritual growth. This is not true of Christ's Bride. She will have grown up to the length, breadth, and height of Christ's Spiritual Stature in her spiritual education and in her moral development; therefore, she will be complete on every side of her life.

The depth, length, breadth, and height of all moral attainment is found in Christ's Efficacious Love. Jesus Christ demonstrated His Great Love as He hung on Calvary's Cross.

That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love, May be able to comprehend with all saints *what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; And to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God* (Ephesians 3:17-19).

The four sides of Christ's Cross present His Foursquare Love for His Father and for mankind.



The depths of Christ the Son's Loyalty and Love consists of His Humility Loyalty to His Father's Master Plan for Him and for mankind. Jesus possessed a Governmental Loyalty or a Steadfast Devotion of unswerving, unquestioning Allegiance to His Father's Master Plan. Jesus forms this same Humility Loyalty and Love in the hearts of those who are willing to feed on the Crucified Christ.

Jesus Christ was and is humble in Mind and Spirit. He had no pride of assertion that prompted Him to set up another plan in opposition to the Father's Master Plan. He teaches His Bride the same self-abasement and love for the Father's Master Plan.

One side of the New City's Governmental Measurement bears witness to the Bride's steadfast loyalty to and love for the Father's Master Plan, which is like that of her Bridegroom, Jesus Christ.

The next side of the Wall, which relates to the length of Christ's Love, is His Selfless Loyalty to the Father's Purposive Will.

The length of Christ's Selfless Loyalty and Love reaches the entire length of the Father's Purposive Will. Jesus possesses, within His Will, a strict adherence to the trust that His Father has placed within Him to do His Purposive

Will. Jesus' Heart and Will are without regard for His own interest. He lives for the sole reason of doing His Father's Purposive Will. Jesus also teaches His Bride to give herself up exclusively to the Father's Purposive Will. This side of the Measurement of the New City reveals that Christ's Bride possesses measurement of the Father's Purposive Will equal to that of His Master Plan.

The third side of the New City's Measurement reveals the breadth of Christ's joyful Loyalty for the Father's Way. Christ's joyful Loyalty, as the Way, the Truth, and the Life, causes Him to support both the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will. Christ not only theoretically accepts the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will, but He, with joyful Loyalty, supports them by implementing them in the heart and life of His Bride.

Christ's Cross is His Way, His Method, Mode, and Means of supporting His Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will. This "breadth" of the New City also reveals the Bride's joyful loyalty in supporting the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will through the Crucified Christ and by the Way of His Cross.

The fourth side of the New City's Measurement reveals the height of Christ's faithful Loyalty to His Father's Holy Name. Christ always has maintained a steadfast adherence to the Holy Nature of His Father's Name. He never has been faithless to the moral claims of His Father's Holy Name. Christ never has been treacherous or traitorous in His Love for His Father's Name. Christ also instills, in His Bride, His faithful Loyalty and Love for the Father's Holy Name. This side of the measured City is equal in purity and perfection with the other sides. This fourth side bears witness that Christ's Bride is *called, chosen, and faithful!*

Since the City is Foursquare, the Foundations or the New Mount of the New City also must be Foursquare. The Measurement of the Wall mentioned in Revelation 21:17 has to be talking about the *thickness* of the Wall, since the foursquare Measurement of the New City is twelve thousand furlongs.

The thickness of the Wall measures 144 cubits. This Measurement consists of the number twelve times twelve, and twelve is the number of Perfect Government.

Having a perfect Governmental Wall around the New City will protect the Lamb's Bride who will dwell inside the New City. She will be protected by being separated from all other Creation. The fact that this Wall is very thick — over 200 feet — teaches us what a wide separation God puts between His Bride and the rest of creation.

Since the Bride will have lived within Christ's thick Governmental Wall of Separation and since she will have been guided by His Holy Headship, according to the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will, she will have been separated and protected during her earthly journey, which means she will be rewarded by having the privilege of living eternally within this thick Wall of security, separation, and protection.

II. The Jasper Material from Which the Wall of the New City Is Made

The Wall that towers above the Twelve Foundational Supports is made of Jasper.

This Jasper quality is most precious because it pictures the Icy, Humility Nature of the Crucified Christ. Jasper is in the adornment of the beginning of the Foundations, and it is the Crown or Wall above the foundations.

All creation will be forced to look upon the Humility of the Crucified Christ and the Humility of the Exalted Christ since they appear both in the Foundations and in the Wall of the New City.

The Humility of Christ Crucified and Christ Resurrected forms the protective, separating Wall of security for the Bride, both now and eternally.

The Foursquare Structure of the New City will be a witness that Christ's Bride will have developed depths of humility loyalty to Christ's Master Plan for her; that the length of her selfless loyalty to the Father's Purposive Will has equaled the Son's; and that the breadth of her joyful loyalty for the Father's Way has caused her to support His Master Plan and Purposive Will through her adherence to Christ's Cross of Crucifixion. And, lastly, it will be a witness that her height of loyalty to the Father's Holy name has been equal to her loyalty to His Plan, His Will, and His Way.

A perfect Governmental Wall, 144 cubits thick, will protect the Lamb's Bride inside the City, keeping her separated from all others because she will have lived a life of separation while on Earth.

For Eternity, the Bride will be protected and secured by the Jasper Humility Nature of the LORD Jesus Christ. She will be secure on Christ's Humility Foundation of Jasper and protected by His Humility Jasper Wall.

Chapter Seventeen

The Gold of the City and the Gold of the Street and the River of the Street

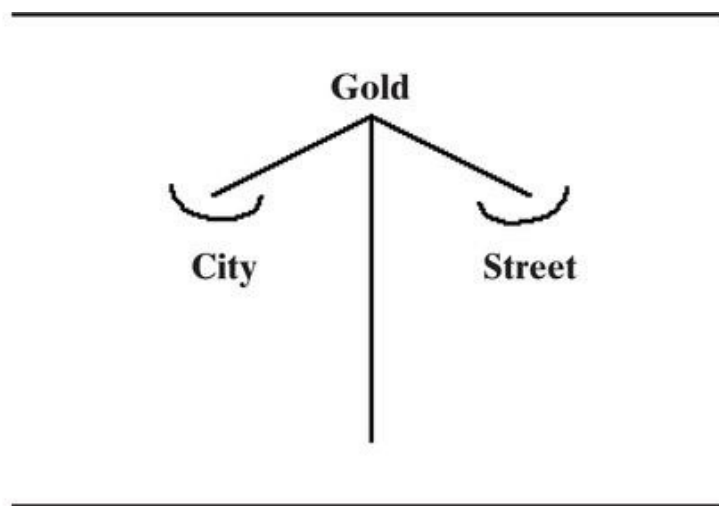
The New City with all its Greatness, Glory, and Splendour, shining with brilliant Light, glittering with Precious Stones, and glowing with its lustrous Pearly Gates, presented an awesome sight to the Apostle John. But there was more magnificence to view; he saw the shimmer of its Gold and its Street of Gold and a River of Life in the Midst of the Street.

...and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass (Revelation 21:18).

...and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass (Revelation 21:21).

And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and the Lamb (Revelation 22:1).

In this chapter, we will study about the Gold of the City and its Street of Gold, the Street's Name, and the Street's Water.



I. The Gold of Christ's Wisdom

The Hebrew word for *gold* is *zaw-hawb*, meaning to shimmer, to shine, glitter as gold, hence to be bright yellow, golden light or brilliance.

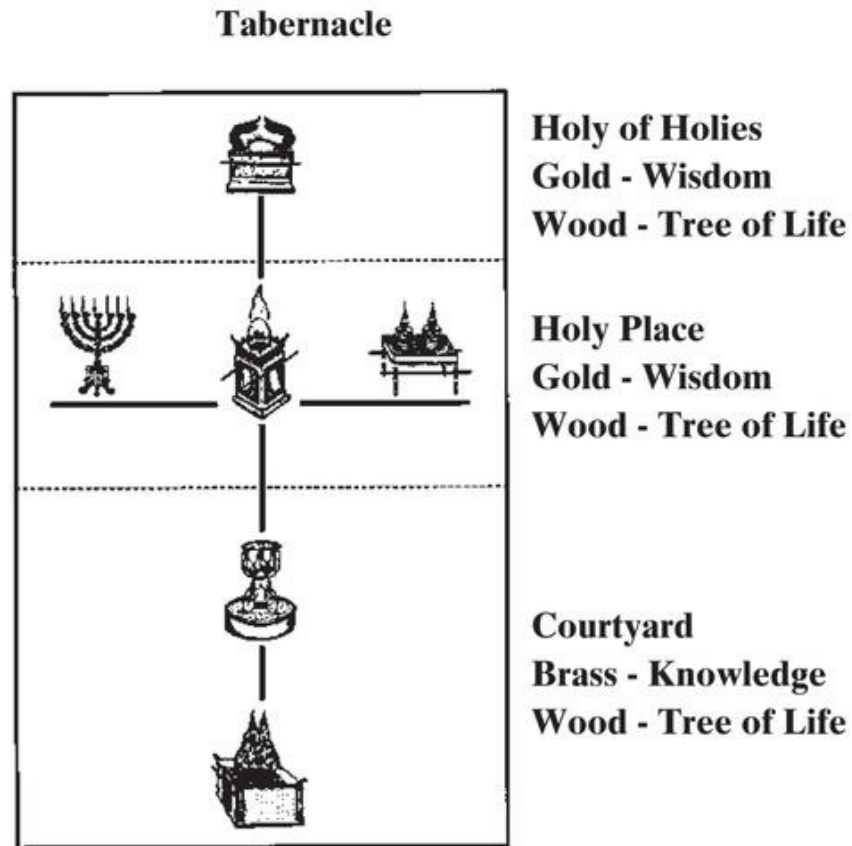
Since the New City is a Spiritual City for Spiritual Beings — God and the Lamb and Christ's Bride — the Gold of it has to be the counterpart for natural gold, not the metal itself. The precious metal we know on Earth as gold is only a picture, the natural counterpart of the shining brilliance and glittering splendour of Christ's Golden Wisdom of God.

A. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in the Mosaic Tabernacle

More gold than any other metal was used in the Mosaic Tabernacle and in Solomon's Temple, to overlay both their Furniture and their Structures.

Also, more gold was used in the making of the High Priest's Garments than any of the other garments. Threads of

gold were interwoven in the linen to adorn and beautify them.



The Holy Place and the Holy of Holies pictured the upper part of Christ's Stature. The wood, which pictured the Tree of Life in both the Holy Place and the Holy of Holies, was overlaid with gold, representing Christ's Wisdom.

The furniture in the Courtyard pictured the Loins, the Legs, and the Feet of Christ's Stature. The wood in the Courtyard, which also pictured the Tree of Life, was overlaid with brass, representing Christ's Knowledge of Truth, His Suffering, and His Obedience unto Death.

God begot His Golden Wisdom, His Word, before the beginning of all things.

The LORD possessed me [Wisdom] in the beginning of his way, before his works of old. *I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was. When there were no depths, I was brought forth; when there were no fountains abounding with water. Before the mountains were settled, before the hills was I brought forth:* While as yet he had not made the earth, nor the fields, nor the highest part of the dust of the world (Proverbs 8:22-26).

God's Word clearly establishes that God's Wisdom existed before the Creation.

B. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in the New Testament

The Apostle Paul reconfirmed Christ's possession of Wisdom and Knowledge.

For I would that ye knew what great conflict I have for you, and for them at Laodicea, and for as many as have not seen my face in the flesh; That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of

the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ; *In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge* (Colossians 2:1-3).

Before the New Testament dispensation, the mystery of the Father and the Christ was concealed. But now, God openly has declared Christ's possession of all Wisdom and Knowledge. Now the shadows of the brass and gold, which overlaid the wood in the Old Testament Tabernacle, have fled away before the bright, shining Stature of the unveiled Christ, the Sun of Righteousness.

Now, the treasures of Wisdom and Knowledge are not hidden *from* us, but *for* us in Christ Jesus, and we find these treasures of Wisdom and Knowledge as we grow in His Spiritual Stature.

C. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in the Person of Jesus Christ and Revealed, Prophetically, by the Bride in the Song of Solomon

Christ's own people, the Jews, marvelled at His Wisdom, not understanding the mystery of the Father and the Son.

And when he was come into his own country, he taught them in their synagogue, insomuch that they were astonished, and said, *Whence hath this man this wisdom, and these mighty works?* (Matthew 13:54).

The Jews understood neither the shining Gold of Christ's Divine Wisdom nor the Divine Power of His Works. The Bridegroom and the Bride in the Song of Solomon represent Christ and His Spiritual Bride. In chapter five, the Bride prophetically revealed that her Bridegroom's Head, the Seat of Wisdom, is like fine, shining Gold.

My beloved is white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand. *His head is as the most fine gold*, his locks are bushy, and black as a raven (Song of Solomon 5:10,11).

The Bride also pictured Christ's Hands as Gold rings or circles of unending Wisdom.

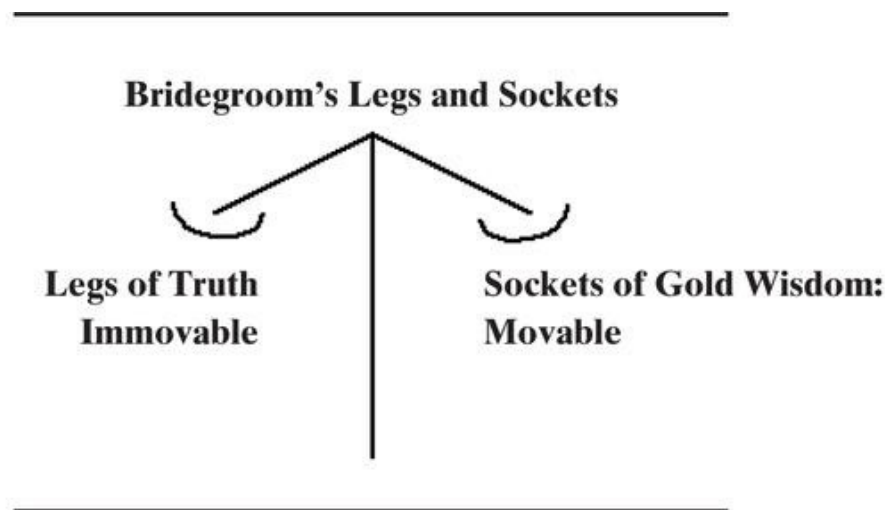
His hands are as gold rings set with the beryl: his belly is as bright ivory overlaid with sapphires (Song of Solomon 5:14).

Christ's Hands, fashioned out of His Father's unending Divine Wisdom, always are ready to fashion and form new things according to the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

Not only are Christ's Head and Hands of Gold, but the Sockets of the Bridegroom's Legs are set upon Sockets of the Fine Gold of God's Wisdom.

His legs are as pillars of marble, set upon sockets of fine gold: his countenance is as Lebanon, excellent as the cedars (Song of Solomon 5:15).

The Bridegroom's Legs are like pillars, stable and steadfast, which bear all the weight of the Government upon His Shoulder. Although His Legs are immovable, His Sockets of Gold or Wisdom are movable.



Christ's Legs of Truth are immovable from God's Master Plan and Purposive Will; they will not deviate from the Father's Will. But His Sockets of Golden Wisdom are movable, allowing His Loins to bow in travail, His Knees to bend in submissiveness and prayer, and His Ankles to move in obedience to God's Purposive Will.

D. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in His Chariot

The Chariot of Christ, the Bridegroom, is personified by the Chariot of King Solomon and is formed out of the Gold of Christ's Wisdom.

King Solomon made himself a chariot of the wood of Lebanon. *He made the pillars thereof of silver, the bottom thereof of gold, the covering of it of purple, the midst thereof being paved with love, for the daughters of Jerusalem* (Song of Solomon 3:9,10).

The very foundation of the Bridegroom's Chariot is laid with the Gold of His Humility Wisdom.

E. Christ's Golden Wisdom Is for the Tested and Tried Ones

God's Word reveals that Christ's Golden Wisdom is reserved for those who are willing to be tested and tried by the Crucified Christ.

Job knew that after God had tested and tried his faith that he would come forth with new Gold of Christ's Wisdom.

But he knoweth the way that I take: *when he hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold* (Job 23:10).

God's motive in testing and trying a believing soul is to lead that soul to new Brass and Gold, new Knowledge and Wisdom in Christ Jesus, His Treasure House.

God hid His Golden Wisdom in Christ so that those who seek to know Christ and His Wisdom and His Tree of Life will find them.

But of him are ye in *Christ Jesus, who of God, is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption*: (I Corinthians 1:30).

Christ is *made* Golden Wisdom, *now*, to all who seek to know Him. Christ's Golden Wisdom exists in plentifulness for those who are hungry to know Him.

Wherein *he hath abounded toward us in all wisdom and prudence*; (Ephesians 1:8).

Christ has a limitless supply of Golden Wisdom to share with those who desire to be in His Bride. His Golden Wisdom can be had by those who ask in immovable faith.

If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord (James 1:5-7).

Jesus Christ generously gives His Golden Wisdom to all who ask in immovable faith, and He does it without scolding or chiding anyone for his wrongdoings, errors, and offenses. Out of His Divine Mercy and Goodness, Christ gives us His Golden Humility Wisdom in order to lead us to repentance.

Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that *the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance*? (Romans 2:4).

God's Word commands His people to allow the Golden Word of Wisdom to dwell in them.

Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord (Colossians 3:16).

Christ's Golden Wisdom must dwell in us as a "Master" Who has the Divine Right to govern, guide, and instruct us richly in the Crucifying Power of the Crucified Christ and the Exalting Power of the Resurrected Christ.

F. The Bride Is Clothed with Christ's Golden Wisdom

Christ's Bride is richly clothed with Christ's Golden Wisdom.

The king's daughter is all glorious within: *her clothing is of wrought gold*. She shall be brought unto the king in raiment of needlework: the virgins her companions that follow her shall be brought unto thee (Psalm 45:13,14).

The Bride is dazzling in her shining, splendourous attire that is formed out of the Golden Wisdom of the Crucified Christ and the Resurrected Christ.

The Bride's inner adornment of Christ's Humility Wisdom is more glorious than her outward embroideries and adornments of Wisdom in the clothing of her moral development. This shows that the heart of Christ's Royal Bride will be free from all pride and vanity. The friends, the virgins, the guests, and the relatives will look on the outward splendour of the Royal Bride's White Linen, but only her Bridegroom will look on the royal splendour of His concealed, Golden Wisdom within.

G. The Bride's Ears Are Adorned with Christ's Golden Wisdom

Christ's Divine Golden Wisdom not only clothes His Bride, but it also adorns her ears.

We will make thee borders of gold with studs of silver (Song of Solomon 1:11).

Christ, the King of Humility and the Good Shepherd, works to pierce the ears of His Bride with His Divine Wisdom, eternally marking her as His servant.

The Old Testament Law concerning a servant's imminent release from his bondage was this: if the servant loved his master and his master's house and did not desire to be released, but desired to continue dwelling permanently with his master, he received a mark of ownership in his ear. He was taken to a door, and his ear was laid against the door and pierced through with an awl. In his pierced ear, the servant wore the jewel of his master's family and, thus, became his servant for life (Exodus 21:5,6).

Likewise, Christ's Bride will choose to lay her ear to Him Who is the Door, allowing Him to pierce her ear with a nail from His Cross and to place in her ear the border of His Divine Golden Wisdom with its Redemptive Stud of Silver. Thus, she will become His Eternal Servant in the New City.

The Bride's pierced ear always is ready to listen to Christ's reproof and rebuke.

As an earring of gold, and an ornament of fine gold, *so is a wise reprover upon an obedient ear* (Proverbs 25:12).

The Bride's ear that has been pierced with Christ's Golden Wisdom always is obedient and receptive to reproofs that reveal wrong things in her life which would hinder her heart from continually maintaining its Spiritual Marriage Relationship with Christ. If the Bride does allow the Relationship with her Bridegroom to falter, she will not win the Prize of dwelling eternally in the City of Gold.

H. Christ's Golden Wisdom Is More Desirable than Earthly Gold

The LORD's Wise Judgments from His Golden Wisdom are more desirable than natural gold.

The fear of the LORD is clean, enduring for ever: *the judgments of the LORD are true and righteous altogether. More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold*: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb (Psalm 19:9,10).

The spiritual riches of God's Divine Golden Wisdom are superior to natural gold because they are the cause of Christ's Bride obtaining true happiness and everlasting joy and satisfaction in the New City.

David found more joy and satisfaction in the Wisdom of God's *Torah* than others find in the acquisition of natural gold.

The law of thy mouth is better unto me than thousands of gold and silver.... Therefore I love thy commandments above gold; yea, above fine gold (Psalm 119:72,127).

Although some rendered God's *Torah* as worthless and without value, David loved the spiritual Gold of God's Wisdom and esteemed it above the finest natural gold.

Through his spiritual Understanding, David esteemed the Gold of God's Word, acquired in the midst of his afflictions, better than the things he had lost through his afflictions. God's Law is valuable because it is the Moral Truth from His Mouth, the revelation of His Purposive Will.

David set his heart upon God's Golden Treasures of Truth that generated better pleasure and better moral security in his life than the portion of the world's natural gold which he owned.

The fine Gold of God's Truth enriches the soul, preparing it to live in God's City of Gold — a greater Treasure by far than anything this Earth affords. The Word's of Truth from God's Word, when fitly spoken, are like apples of gold because they enrich the soul with Golden Wisdom and Understanding.

A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver (Proverbs 25:11).

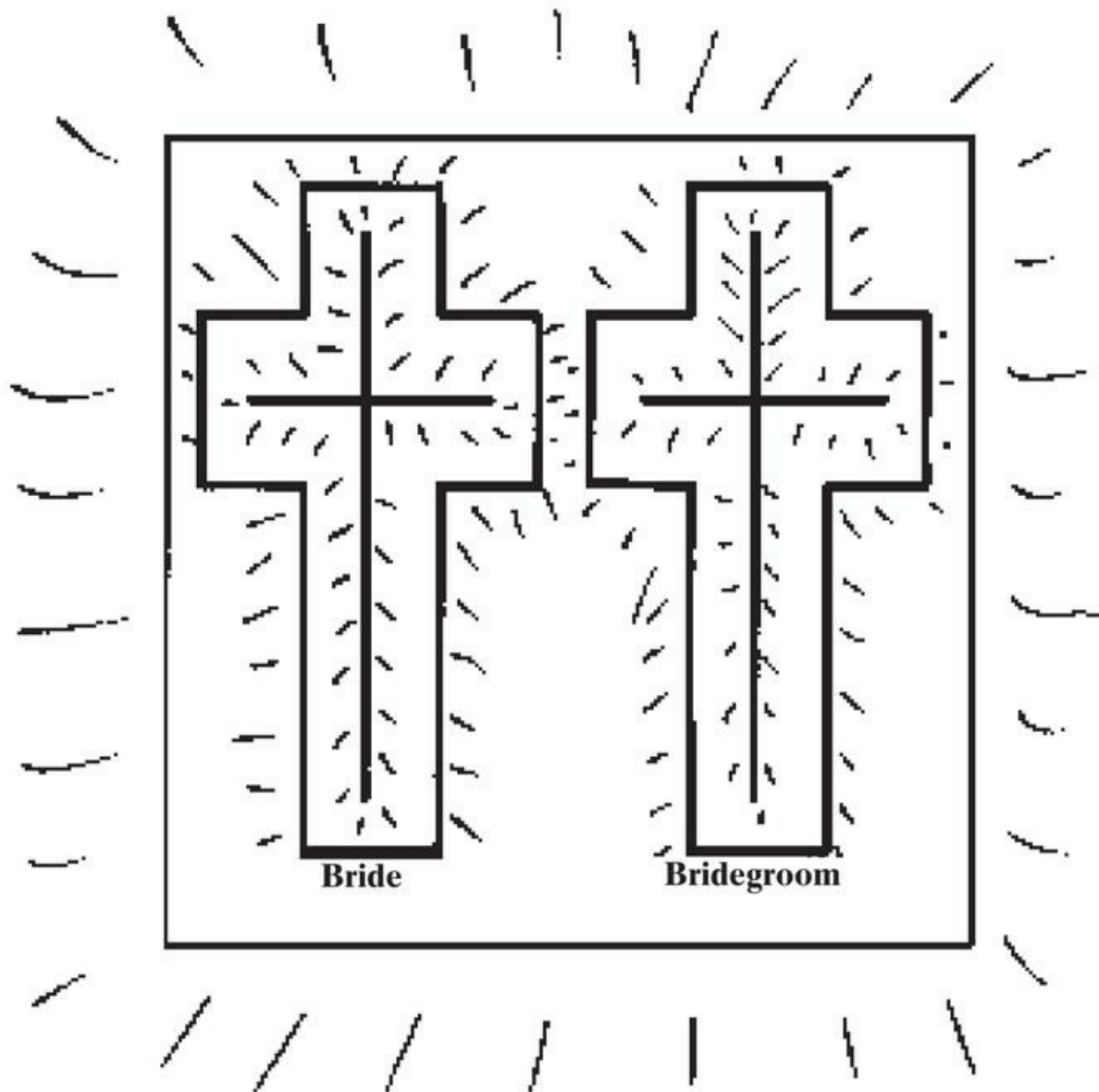
God's Golden Words of Wisdom that are spoken in season are like golden, delicious apples that minister life and strength to the hungry.

II. The New City Is Made of Gold, Clear (*Paw-zaz*) as Glass

The New City also is made of the pure Gold of God's Wisdom, making it a City fit for the Bridegroom, in Whom is hidden the fullness of God's Golden Wisdom, and for His Bride who is full of God's Golden Wisdom, like her Bridegroom. The New City's adornment within and without consists of God's Golden Wisdom.

...and the city was pure gold, like unto clear [paw-zaz] glass (Revelation 21:18)

New City - Gold
Wisdom Within — Wisdom Without



The City is pure Gold, like unto *clear* glass. The Hebrew root word for *clear* is *paw-zaz*, meaning to purify, refine, to be light, active, agile, and to leap.

We see this word used when referring to the strength of the “arms of Joseph’s hands,” to the strength of King David’s leaping and dancing before the Ark as he brought it back to God’s chosen City, and in reference to King Solomon’s Throne. In all three examples, we see that Christ’s Bride is clothed in the same way as Joseph, David, and Solomon’s Throne.

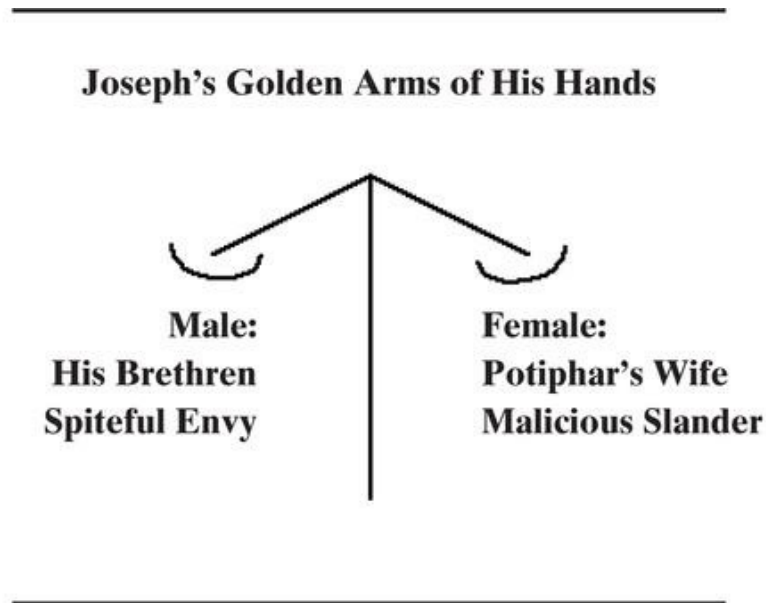
A. The Strength (*Paw-zaz*) of Christ's Golden Wisdom Clothed Joseph's Arms and the Bride's in All Phases of Their Lives

God, through His Golden Wisdom, clothed the arms of Joseph's hands so that he could overcome the spiteful envy of both sexes: the males — his brethren — and the malicious slander of the female — Potiphar's wife.

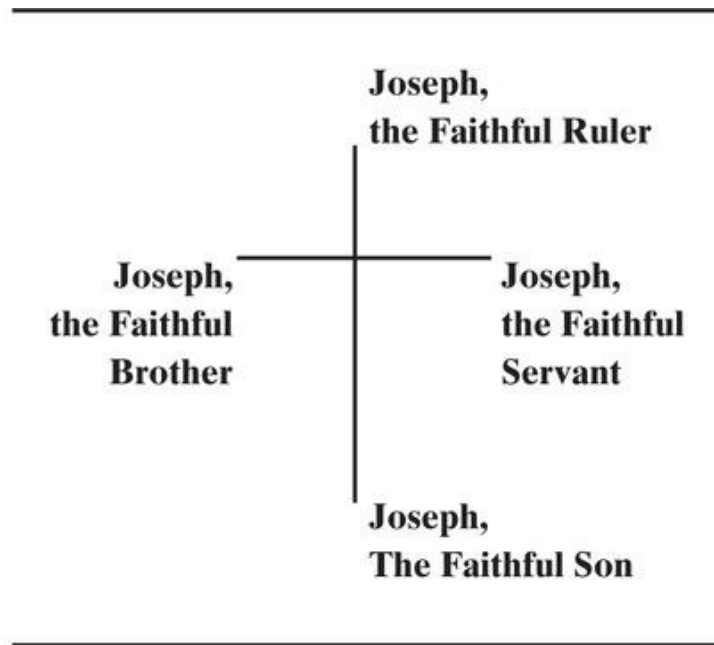
Joseph's arms of his hands were made strong or agile and Golden by the Hands of the Mighty God.

But his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong [paw-zaz] by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob; (from thence is the shepherd, the stone of Israel:) (Genesis 49:24).

The arms of Joseph's hands were clothed with the shining, Golden Strength of Christ's Wisdom so that he always could beget bright, shining works that glorified God. Joseph's Golden Wisdom-Works overcame the evil works of both male and female enemies.



God's Golden Wisdom strengthened Joseph to be faithful in all four phases of his life — as a son, as a brother, as a servant, and as a ruler.



God's Golden Wisdom strengthened Joseph to be a *faithful son* so that he could obey his father's voice when he told Joseph to go see about his brothers, even though Joseph was aware of their intense spite and envy against him.

God's Golden Wisdom strengthened Joseph to be a *faithful brother*; therefore, he did not hold a grudge or ill will in his heart toward his brothers when they sold him into Egypt.

God's Golden Wisdom strengthened Joseph to be a *faithful servant* in Potiphar's house. He was a faithful overseer of his master's house, and he refused to touch his master's wicked wife.

In the last phase of his life, God's Golden Wisdom strengthened Joseph to be a *faithful ruler* who did not revengefully withhold bread when his brethren came to him in hunger and desperation.

Just as Joseph was faithful during his lifetime, so will the Bride be faithful in each stage of her spiritual life. The beautiful New City of Pure Gold of God's Wisdom that God gives as the place in which Christ's Bride shall live is a witness that, in Eternity, the Bride will reap what she has sown. She, too, in her earthly journey will have allowed God to strengthen the arms of her hands so that she will have been a *faithful daughter* to obey her Heavenly Father in going out to see about her spiteful brethren who have had a bad attitude against her.

The Bride also will have been a *faithful sister*, for she does not hold a grudge or ill will against those who have used their spiteful envy against her.

Like Joseph, the Bride also will have been a *faithful servant* to the Crucified Christ because she will have refused to join her soul to the strange woman of pride.

Lastly, the Bride will have been a *faithful ruler*, living under the Headship of the Resurrected Christ in order to feed those who spitefully have used her and committed great sins against her.

Because Christ's Bride will have clung in unfaltering fidelity to Christ's Golden Wisdom that clothed the arms of her hands with overcoming strength, God will reward her with a whole New City made of the Gold of Christ's Wisdom, which will be a witness of her fourfold faithfulness.

B. The Strength (*Paw-zaz*) of Christ's Golden Wisdom Clothed King David's Feet and the Bride's Feet

The Hebrew word *paw-zaz*, meaning fine, pure, clear gold, also was used in Scripture when referring to King David's leaping and dancing before the LORD.

And as the ark of the LORD came into the city of David, Michal Saul's daughter looked through a window, and saw king David leaping [*paw-zaz*] and dancing before the LORD; and she despised him in her heart (II Samuel 6:16).

When King David was bringing the Ark up to Jerusalem, his feet were clothed with Christ's Humble Golden Wisdom which strengthened him to leap and dance with all his might in worship and praise before the Ark, which

represented Christ's Exalted Headship.

Christ's Bride also will experience having her feet clothed with Christ's Humble Golden Wisdom so that she will be strengthened to praise and worship the LORD for His Glorious Headship in all things.

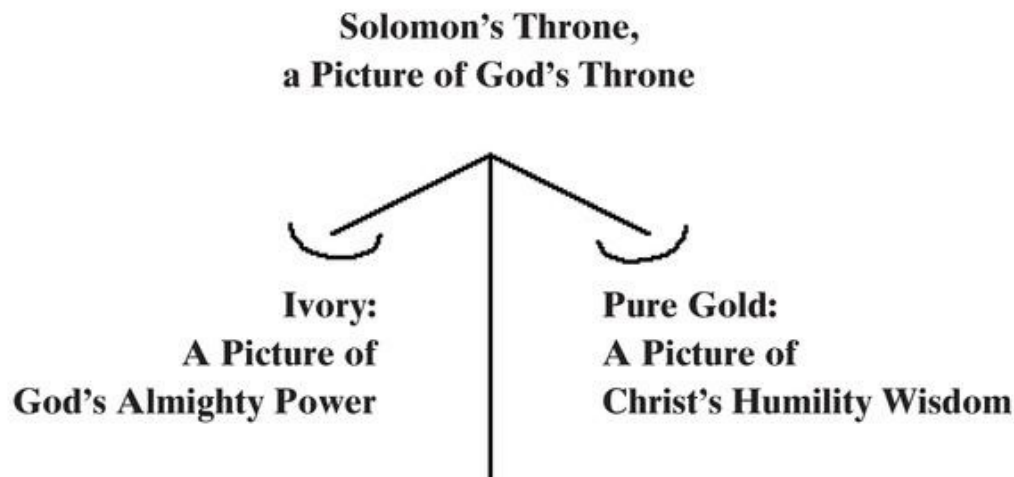
C. The Strength (*Paw-zaz*) of Christ's Golden Wisdom Clothed King Solomon's Throne of Ivory

Paw-zaz, also was used to describe the Gold of Solomon's Throne.

Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with the best [paw-zaz] gold (I Kings 10:18).

Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with pure gold (II Chronicles 9:17).

Solomon used the purest gold in the natural realm to overlay the ivory of his throne, which was a picture of God's Throne in the spiritual realm. The ivory horns of power and the pure gold on Solomon's Throne picture Christ's Humility Wisdom, which graphically teaches us that God's Almighty Power is governed by Christ's Humility Wisdom.



God has placed ALL Power *within* the Person of the Crucified Christ and the Resurrected Christ! God *gave* all Power to be placed within Jesus Christ because Jesus proved His Great Humility Wisdom by humbling Himself to walk obediently down the Seven Steps of Humility unto the Death of the Cross (Philippians 2:5-8; Matthew 28:18).*

When Solomon had his throne built, he first made the throne of ivory; then, he had it overlaid it with gold. Contrariwise, God *first* begot Wisdom, His Son, the Purest of Gold, Who proved the purity of His Golden Wisdom by going to the Cross; then, second, when He raised Christ from the dead, God filled His Wisdom or Gold with His Almighty, Unbegotten Resurrection Power or the Ivory.

Likewise, Christ's Bride first will have allowed Him to form His Humility Wisdom of the Crucified Christ in her, as she has followed Him whithersoever He goeth, which will have included going down His Seven Steps of Humility. Then, having humbled herself, completely, Christ's Bride will be ready to know the Almighty, Ivory Power of the Resurrected Christ.

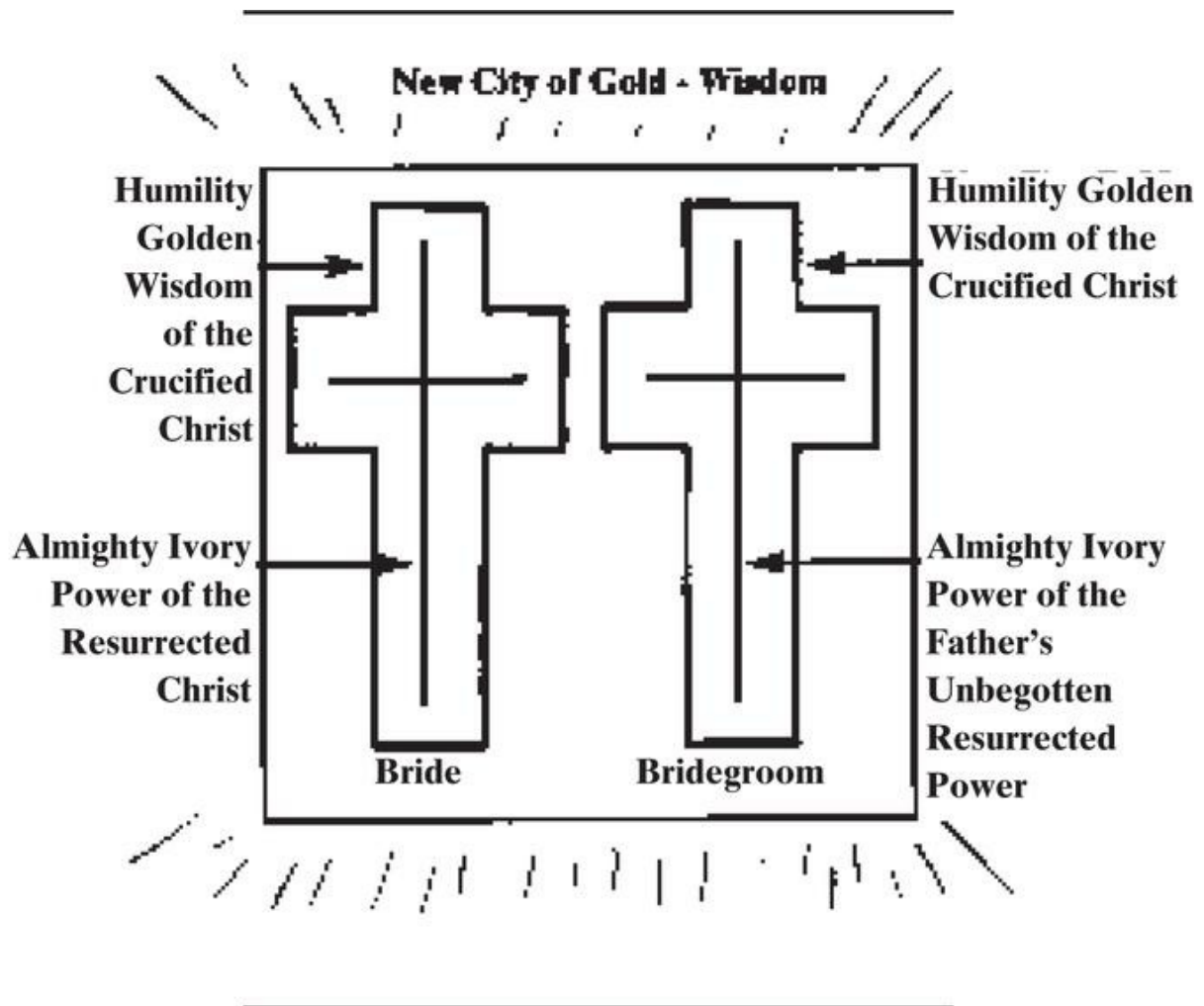
The Apostle Paul desired to know the fellowship of Christ's sufferings so that he could mortify the sins issuing from within the fleshly power of his will.

That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death; (Philippians 3:10).

Paul experienced having Christ crucify the power of his old nature by putting it to death by degrees, just as Jesus

slowly laid down His Life upon the Cross (Romans 6:5,6; Galatians 2:20; 5:24).

We become like Christ by taking on the Stature of the Golden Humility Wisdom of the Crucified Christ and by being filled with the Almighty Ivory Power of the Resurrected Christ. Thus, we will be prepared to live in a City of Clear, Pure (*Paw-zaz*) Gold.



III. The New City Will Be the Eternal Dwelling Place of Christ and His Bride

Because Christ and His Bride will have been faithful and will have held unwavering allegiance to the Father's Humility Golden Wisdom and Almighty Ivory Power, the Father will reveal new depths, length, breadth, and height of His precious Humility Wisdom through the spiritual, shimmering Gold of the New City — the Eternal Dwelling Place of Christ and His Bride. What a privilege to be called and chosen to go to this unspeakable New City of Gold!

The Hebrew word for *city* is *eer*, meaning a place guarded by waking and watching. The word *eer* is from the Hebrew root word *oor*, meaning to awake, to lift up self, master, raise up, stir up self; it is related to the other primary root word *oor*, which means to be naked or bare.

The New City is a Golden City of the *wakefulness* of Divine Wisdom. The City itself is made of God's Divine, Wakeful Wisdom. God and the Lamb will be there with their Omniscient Eyesight, beholding all things, stripping all things down to bare, naked reality (Hebrews 4:13).

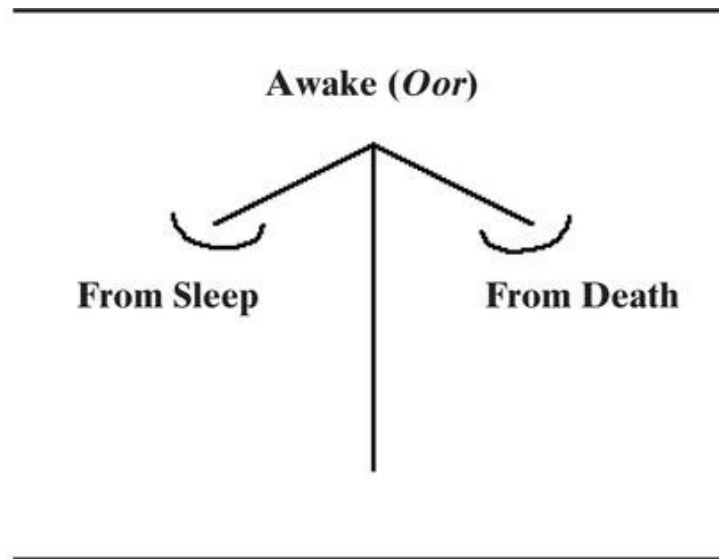
The Bride also will be there with her mature eyesight, gained in her spiritual education and in her moral development. The City will be guarded by the Governmental Eyesight or Wakefulness of the Twelve Cherubims who watch over each of the Twelve Gates of the City's Wall. This is the reason there will be no night in the New City; it will be a City of Perfect Light and Perfect Wakefulness.

The name for a city in the natural realm is also *eer*, from the root word *oor* because a city is a “watcher” both day and night. At night, the city has its lights and the eyes of its policemen and firemen who watch in the night, as well as in the day.

Christ’s Bride must become a faithful *watcher* in this present, evil world in order to be counted worthy to dwell in the New “Watcher” City.

Wherefore he saith, *Awake thou that sleepest*, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light (Ephesians 5:14).

The flesh and the world cause the heart and mind to become sleepy and dead.



Unless we stay awake, our flesh will overcome our heart and mind, bringing them into a state of drowsiness, lethargy, heaviness, and an absence of activity in God’s Word and in the Spirit of prayer in our personal, spiritual life; and our sleepy state will extend to make us dull of hearing when we are being given God’s Word in His House.

If believers allow the sleepy condition of their hearts and minds to continue, the world soon leads them into the lifeless condition of death, where they are paralyzed and void of feelings for God’s Word and Spirit.

God’s Word is for piercing our sleepy, dead heart and mind with His prophetic warning Light of Truth so that we can awaken and see our great lack of moral intelligence and wisdom in allowing ourself to become dull and idle in our spiritual education and moral development. His Word is to awaken us from the deceitful security of our deadly condition which renders us insensible to our paralyzed spiritual emotions, thoughts, and actions.

We need to allow the LORD to pierce our heart and mind with His Resurrected Thorns of Light so that we can break off our sins of sleepiness and death by repentance; thus, we can rise up to fresh, new, Holy Obedience to His Holy Purposive Will. In this manner we can become a miniature City set on a hill.

Ye are the light of the world. *A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.* Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house. Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven (Matthew 5:14-16).

When Christ’s Humility Awakening Light of Wisdom pierces and penetrates the heart of a penitent soul, filling it with His Foursquare Awakening Light, that heart and soul becomes a Foursquare “City” set on a hill to lead and guide others to Christ’s Awakening Light.

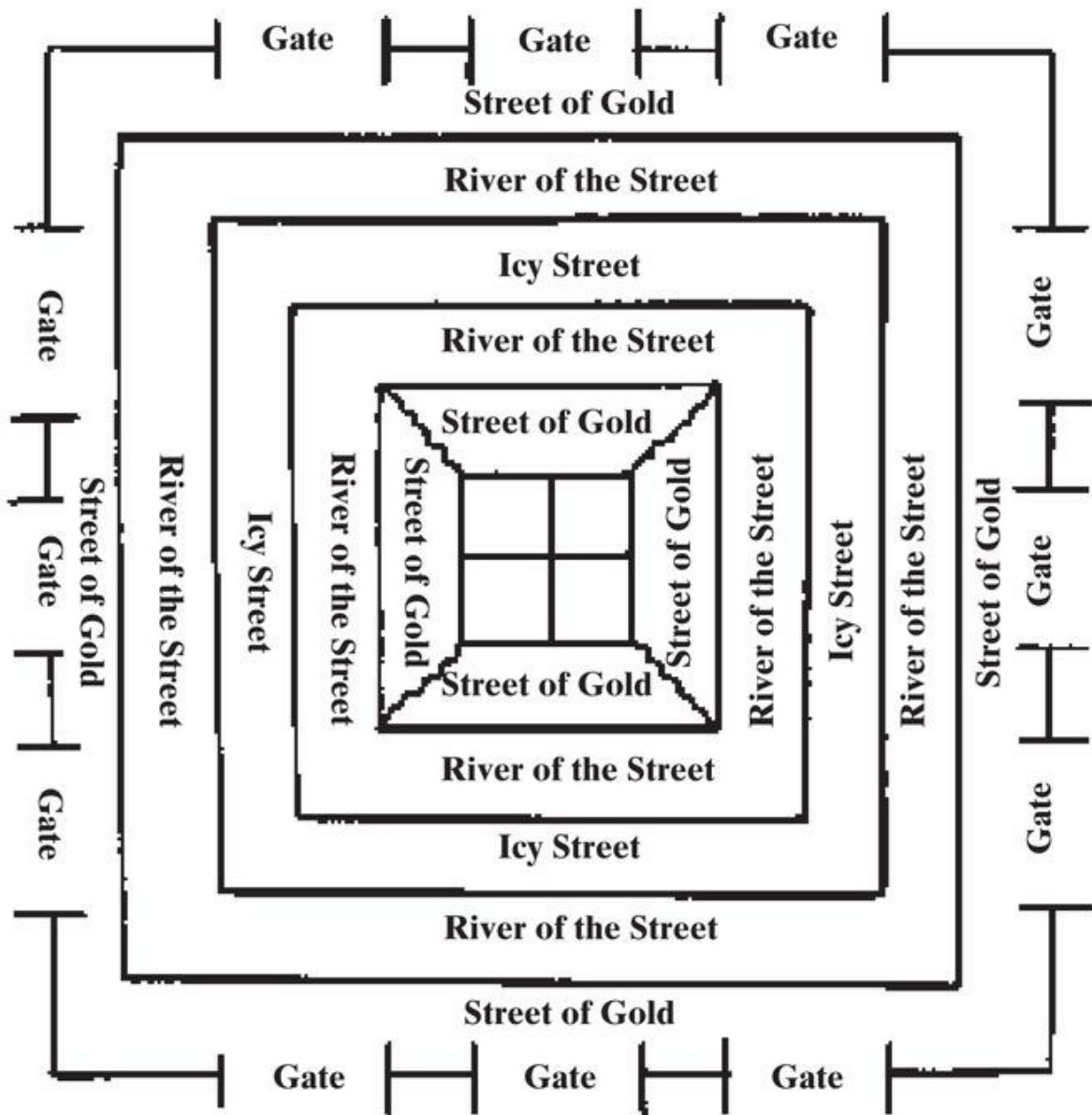
The New City is made of the Awakening Light of Christ’s Wisdom, and it will be filled with the Light from a host of miniature Cities of Awakening Light that are in the hearts and souls of the overcomers who will make up the number of Christ’s Bride. The Infinite Awakening Light of God and the Lamb also will fill the New City of Gold.

Man is not deserving of all the glorious, magnificent Treasures God offers to him. Man does not deserve God’s Mercy and Grace that save him from being doomed and damned forever. Then, to think that beyond Salvation, God has rewards for those believers who overcome through the free *Gifts* of the LORD’s Blood, the Waters of His Name, Death, and Life, and the Gift of the Holy Ghost. Overcomers have the present rewards of the Treasures of Wisdom,

Understanding, and Knowledge, then, in Eternity, they will have the rewards of God's City of Gold and all its Treasures. What a greater reward than earthly riches we can have, if we are willing to go on extensive Treasure hunts in God's Word to find all the Precious Stones, the Jasper, the Gold, and the Crystal that are hidden in Christ Jesus. May God give us the vision of True Riches and the willingness and determination to pursue that vision!

IV. The New City's Street of Gold

Within the Wall of the New City there is *one* Foursquare Street.



The Hebrew feminine word for *street* is *rekh-obe*, meaning large, liberty, broad, breadth, and street. This Golden, Foursquare Street is Wisdom's (*Khok-maw*) Bridal Street upon which the Bride will walk in the New City.

Let us look at the usage of the Hebrew feminine word *rekh-obe* and its general connections in God's Word in order to gain a synoptic view of the ministry of Wisdom's Bridal Street in the New City.

A. The Street of the New City Will Have the Power to Enlarge (*Rekh-obe*) the Soul of the Bride

This Foursquare Bridal Street will enlarge the soul of the Bride continually so that she can offer new praises and thanksgivings to God and the Lamb.

Hear me when I call, O God of my righteousness: *thou hast enlarged [rekh-obe] me* when I was in distress; have mercy upon me, and hear my prayer (Psalm 4:1)

God is the Author of our righteous disposition and attitude. When David went through distressful afflictions in his earthly journey, God enlarged David's heart with His delightful Joy and His pleasant Consolation.

This also happens in the Bride's experiences. Because Christ's Bride will have allowed God to give her a righteous attitude and a grateful disposition in the midst of her afflictions, persecutions, and trials — at which times she will have experienced the LORD's Enlarging Power — she will reap the privilege of abiding in the New City, where she will walk on the Foursquare Street. With each step she takes, she will experience an enlargement of Christ's Delightful Joy and His Pleasant Consolation.

Because Solomon desired the Spiritual Gold of God's Wisdom and Knowledge, God gave him largeness of heart to receive it.

And God gave Solomon wisdom and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that is on the sea shore. And Solomon's wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east country, and all the wisdom of Egypt. For he was wiser than all men; than Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Chalcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol: and his fame was in all nations round about. And he spake three thousand proverbs: and his songs were a thousand and five (I Kings 4:29-32).

God gave Solomon increase of mind and understanding, innumerable as the grains of sand on the sea shore, which was just a foreshadowing of the extent to which the Bride's mind and understanding will be enlarged as she takes each step on Wisdom's Bridal Street.

David knew he would run in the way of the LORD's Commandments when God enlarged his heart.

I will run the way of thy commandments, when thou shalt enlarge [rekh-obe] my heart (Psalm 119:32).

Likewise, in her earthly journey, Christ's Bride will have experienced the LORD's Enlargement Principle in her heart so that she will have been able to grow up to Christ's Mature Spiritual Stature. Therefore, she will reap the privilege of being in the New City and of walking on Wisdom's Foursquare Bridal Street, where each step she takes will bring an enlargement of mind and an increase in power to run obediently in the way of the Commandments of God and the Lamb.

B. The Street of the New City Will Be a Pathway of Liberty (*Rekh-obe*) for the Bride

The feminine Hebrew word *rekh-obe* also is related to liberty, which is evident from the way it has been translated in one of David's Psalms.

And I will walk at liberty [rekh-obe]: for I seek thy precepts (Psalm 119:45).

David testified that he would walk in a broad pathway or way of liberty because he had sought the Precepts of God's *Torah*-Truth.

Because he constantly guarded the *Torah*-Truth by laying it up in his heart, David knew that God would visit him with Divine Illumination. Then he knew, from that time on, he could walk freely with liberty in the broad pathway of Truth.

Likewise, Christ's Bride will walk freely, with liberty, through Wisdom's Infinite Treasures of Truth hidden in the Foursquare Street.

What a glorious day that will be when the Bride can abide eternally with the Bridegroom and walk on His Street of Gold with freedom and liberty and see, clear as crystal, all His hidden Truth and difficult Concepts.

C. The Street of the New City Will Be a Broad (*Rekh-obe*) Place

God's creation has a fixed limit; even with the tremendous vastness of Heaven and Earth, there is an end to the creation. However, Almighty God's *Torah-Truth* has no limit (Job 11:7-9).

I have seen an end of all perfection: *but thy commandment is exceeding broad* (Psalm 119:96).

David discovered for himself that God's Commandment is exceedingly *broad*. Thus, we see the word broad used as another meaning of the word *rekh-obe*, when David used it to describe the limitlessness of God's Word.

Likewise, as the Bride walks on Wisdom's broad Foursquare Street in the New City, she will find herself immersed in an infinite pool of endless spiritual pleasure and mental delight.

D. The Street of the New City Describes the Breadth (*Rekh-obe*) of Christ's Love

The breadth of Christ's Love is as limitless as His Word. No one on Earth can understand the extent of the Creator's Love for His creation.

That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love, May be able to comprehend with all saints what is *the breadth [rekh-obe], and length, and depth, and height; And to know the love of Christ*, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God (Ephesians 3:17-19).

As the Bride walks on this wide Foursquare Street, Christ, by allowing her to feel the breadth of His precious, satisfying Love, will recompense her for all the persecutions, pains, injuries, and insults she will have suffered for His Word, His Name, and His Kingdom.

E. The Street of the New City Expresses the Fruitfulness God Allowed Natural Israel

This *rekh-obe* street also has been used in the Bible to express God's great fruitfulness to Israel, His natural Bride.

That our garners may be full, affording all manner of store: that our sheep may bring forth thousands and ten thousands in our streets: That our oxen may be strong to labour; that there be no breaking in, nor going out; that there be no complaining in our streets (Psalm 144:13,14).

When Israel maintained her Spiritual Marriage Relationship with the LORD, the Heavenly Bridegroom, her natural streets were filled with fruitfulness. Her oxen were laden in proportion to the abundance of her crops. There was no moral defection or fleshly dissension among the people who were God's natural Bride. Their city was safe and secure, and no enemies penetrated their borders as long as Christ was their Head, their Husband.

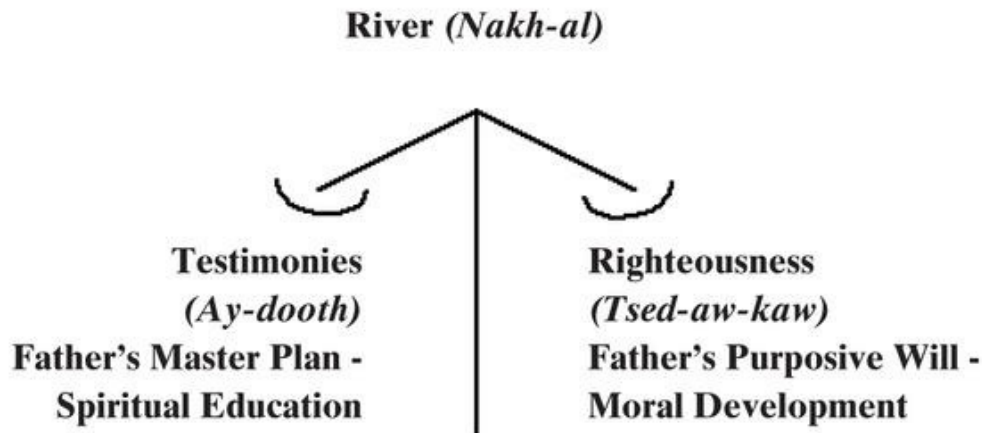
Likewise, since God has made the New City to be the Eternal Dwelling Place for the Bride (who will have maintained her Marriage Relationship with her Husband), God has placed Wisdom's Foursquare Street, with a pure River of Life running through it that produces fruitfulness, in the New City.

V. The Street's River of Life

The Hebrew word for the Street's *river* is *nakh-al*, meaning a stream, narrow valley, shaft, brook, or river. This River of Wisdom's Golden Street consists of the Waters of Life (Lives) — the Lives of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. This pure River is a River of Grace or Gratitude that flows forth with the *Testimonies* and *Righteousness* of the *Torah-Truth*.

And he shewed me *a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb*. In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations (Revelation 22:1,2).

The River of Wisdom's Street is a River of Living, Unified Governmental Gratitude and Infinite Love.



This pure River is a Living, Unified River of perfect harmony, agreement, and the concord of the Divine Name of the Godhead. It is an Eternal Governmental River of Power for directing, controlling, and ruling, which supports the Governmental Tree of Life or Lives.

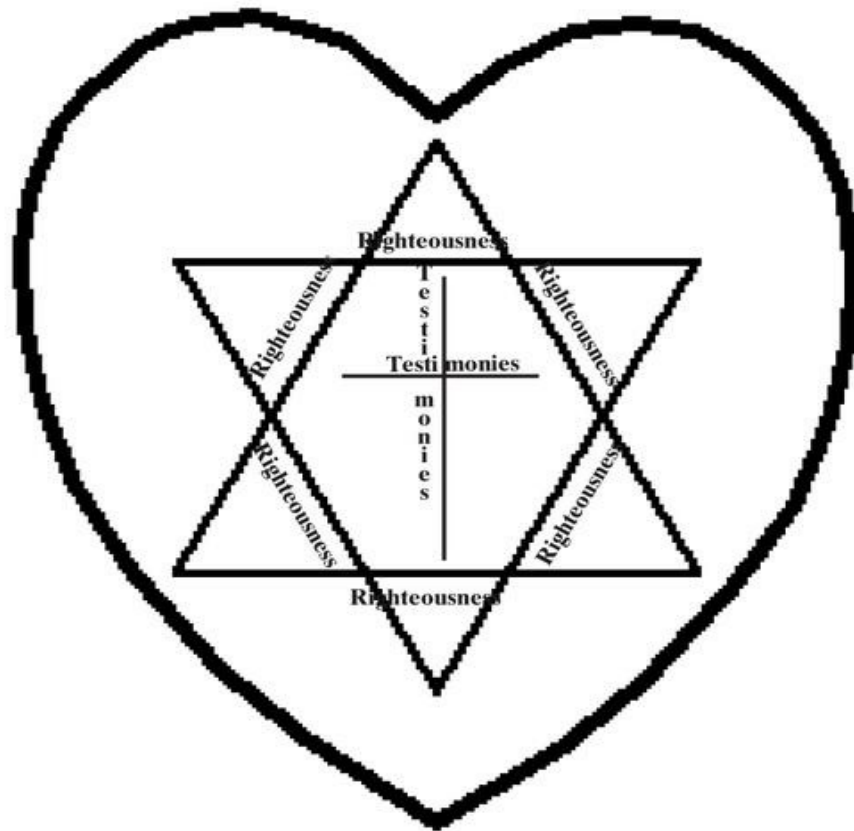
This pure River of God's Infinite Grace or Gratitude flows from the Eyes of the Lamb, freely granting to His Bride the favour and good will of the Testimonies and Righteousness of His *Torah*-Truth.

First, the Heavenly Father spoke the *Torah*-Truth from Heaven (Deuteronomy 4:36); then, Christ the Son wrote the *Torah*-Truth twice in stone on Mount Sinai (Exodus 34:1; Deuteronomy 10:2). Next, in time, God sent His Son, the *Torah*-Truth in Flesh (John 1:4). In Eternity-Future in the New City, God will release the pure River of Gracious *Torah*-Truth in the midst of Wisdom's Golden Street. The Gracious, Grateful Tears of the Godhead will flow forth through the Lamb's Eyes, giving the pleasing waters of appreciation of the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will — His Righteousness of His Testimonies — to the Bride to drink.

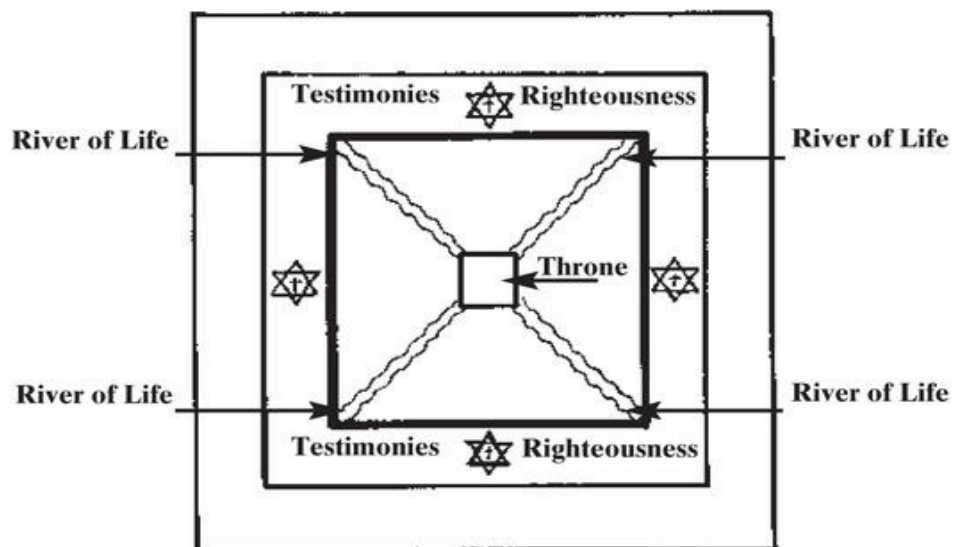
This pure Water of Lives reveals the Stature of the Testimony of the Father's Master Plan and the Seal of the Righteousness of the Father's Purposive Will.

Because Christ's Bride, in the days of her flesh, will have loved the Father's Testimony or Headship in Christ Jesus and will have grown up in her spiritual education until she has reached maturity or Christ's Head (His Governmental Testimony), and because she will have put on the Seal of the Righteousness of the Father's Purposive Will through Christ Jesus, the Bride will have the Eternal reward of the Holy Privilege of drinking of the Infinite *Torah*-Truth of Christ's Testimonies and His Righteousness.

The Bride's Heart in Her Earthly Journey



The Bride's Privilege in the Eternal New City



Let us examine the LORD's Testimonies in order to understand a small portion of God's Eternal, Pure River of Truth.

A. The Pure River of the Waters of Life Contains the LORD's Testimonies of Truth

The Ark in the Mosaic Tabernacle was called the *Ark of the Testimony* because it contained the two Tables of Testimony of the *Torah*-Truth that revealed God's Moral Master Plan and Purposive Will (Exodus 25:21,22; Exodus 31:18).

Then, in the Book of Proverbs, the wise man called the "wellspring of Wisdom," a flowing brook, or *nakh-al* river.

The words of a man's mouth are as deep waters, and the wellspring of wisdom as a flowing brook [*nakh-al*] (Proverbs 18:4).

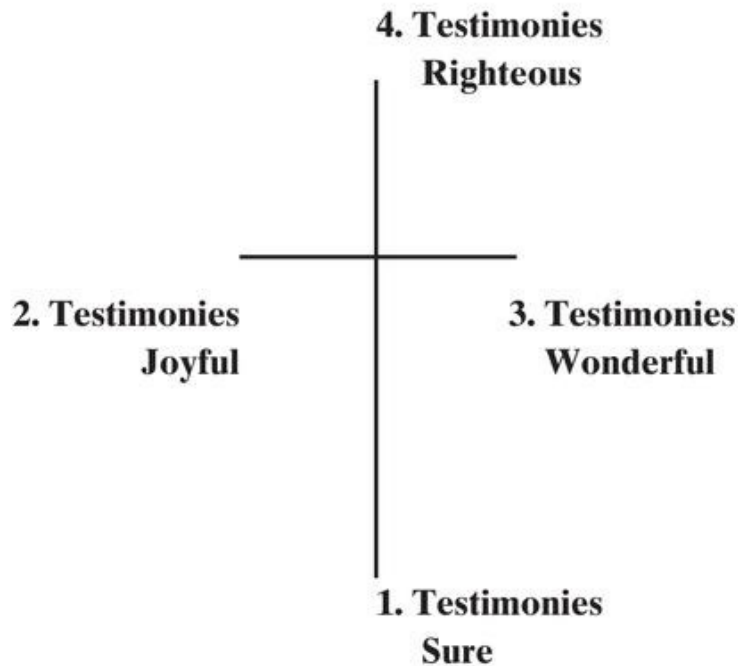
At first, the waters of the *Nakh-al* Pure River of Life are hidden deep in a well; therefore, Christ's Bride will have had to prove her love and appreciation for these Waters by expending much effort labouring in the Spirit of prayer and in the study of God's Word, during the days of her flesh, in order to draw the Truth from God's deep Well. But in the New City, in the midst of Wisdom's Street, the River of Wisdom will make its pure, productive Waters easily attainable. Thus, the Godhead of God, the Lamb, and the Holy Ghost will be a *flowing* River of the Testimonies of His Moral Governance.

The Hebrew root letters are the same in the Hebrew word for *inheritance* as the ones in the Hebrew word for *river*. Therefore, David claimed the River of the *Torah*-Truth with its Testimonies as the River of his inheritance.

Thy testimonies have I taken as an heritage for ever, for they are the rejoicing of my heart (Psalm 119:111).

The pure River of the LORD's Testimonies of Truth is Sure, Joyful, Wonderful, and Righteous.

The Pure River of the Testimonies of Truth



1. Testimonies Sure

The Testimony of God's Purposive Will, through His Moral *Torah*-Truth, is reliable and profitable for instruction and discipline. The flowing, gracious River of Truth from God's Governing Throne will fill Christ's Bride with the Wisdom of God's Eternal Purposive Will as she drinks freely from its Waters.

God's River of Truth is perfectly free from all evil corruption and perfectly full of all the Goodness of God's Wise Testimonies.

The LORD's Pure River of Testimony is incontestably and inviolably sure. It is a *sure discovery* of God's Purposive Will and a *sure direction* for the duties of the Bride.

It flows from a *Sure Fountainhead* of Living, Comforting Gratitude and Love. It is a *Sure Source* of increase in Divine Wisdom.

2. Testimonies Joyful

The River of God's Testimonies is filled also with Divine Joy.

I have rejoiced in the way of thy testimonies, as much as in all riches (Psalm 119:14).

The Bride's Joyful Satisfaction in Christ will be maintained as she drinks from the *Torah*-Truth with its Joyful Testimonies.

3. Testimonies Wonderful

The LORD's Testimonies are wonderful in their marvelous Power of Holiness and their Divine Origin out of God's Throne.

Thy testimonies are wonderful: therefore doth my soul keep them (Psalm 119:129).

Apart from having Divine Assistance in understanding them, the wonders of God's Testimonies are beyond the creature's comprehension. The depths of the designs of God's Master Plan are mind-boggling and unfathomable!

What a glorious privilege Christ's Bride will have to drink from God's Governmental River of His wondrous Wisdom, which controls the scheme of the Universes and supplies the River of Grace with Understanding of God's Gratitude and Appreciation for the tiniest things in His Universal Kingdom.

4. Testimonies Righteous

David prophesied about the Righteousness of this River of Life.

Thy righteousness is like the great mountains; thy judgments are a great deep: O LORD, thou preservest man and beast (Psalm 36:6).

The Pure River of Life flows with the Righteousness of the LORD's Testimonies.

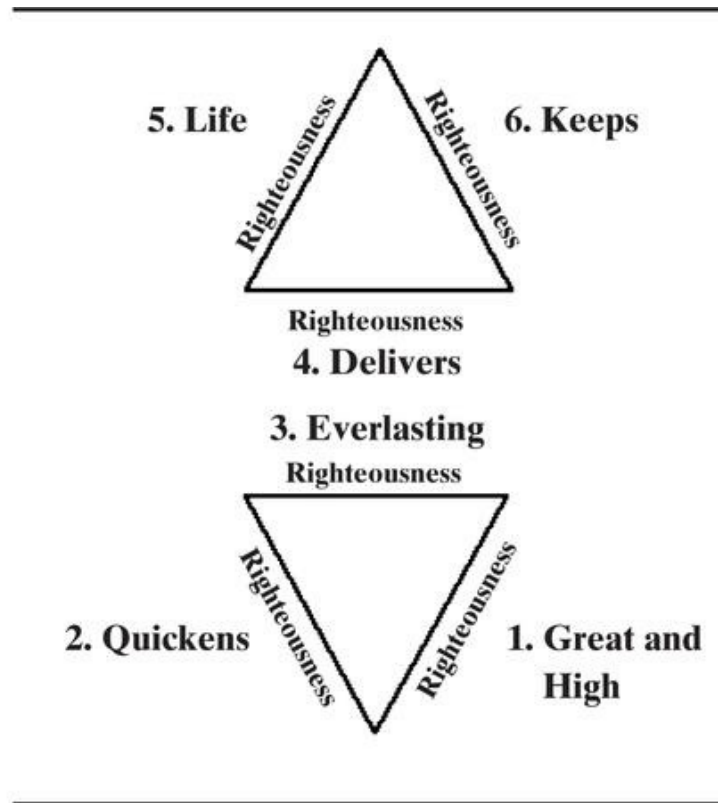
The righteousness of thy testimonies is everlasting: give me understanding, and I shall live (Psalm 119:144).

God's River of *Torah*-Truth with its Moral Righteousness will live on eternally, sustaining and satisfying Christ's Bride, after sin, wickedness, and death have been annihilated.

Christ's Bride will have loved the *Torah*-Truth and will have fed on its Sureness, Joyfulness, Wonderfulness, and Righteousness during the days of her flesh on Earth. She will have guarded it and kept it in her heart; therefore, she will be rewarded by being able to drink and feed on it throughout Eternity in the Golden New City.

B. The Pure River of the Waters of Life Contains the Seal of Righteousness

By studying each of the six sides of the Seal of Righteousness, we can gain a better understanding of the Righteousness of Christ's Testimonies of Truth.



The Hebrew feminine word for *righteousness* is *tsed-aw-kaw*, meaning rightness, rectitude, justice, virtue, and prosperity. This word refers to the feminine Righteousness of feminine Wisdom and the feminine *Torah-Truth*. Christ's Righteousness is great and high like a mountain.

1. Righteousness — Great and High

The Righteousness of the *Torah-Truth* is like a high Mountain — Immovable and Eternal.

Thy righteousness is like the great mountains; thy judgments are a great deep: O LORD, thou preservest man and beast (Psalm 36:6).

Thy righteousness also, O God, is very high, who hast done great things: O God, who is like unto thee! (Psalm 71:19).

As the Bride drinks of the Greatness or Highness of the incomprehensible Righteousness of God's *Torah-Truth*, she will be inspired to extol the Righteous Virtues of the Testimonies of the LORD's *Torah-Truth*.

2. Righteousness Quickens

The Righteousness of the LORD's *Torah-Truth* arouses, stimulates, and stirs the Bride's heart to fresh obedience as a servant to God and the Lamb.

Behold, I have longed after thy precepts: quicken me in thy righteousness (Psalm 119:40).

Since God and the Testimonies of His *Torah-Truth* are Righteous, He will support His loyal servants by continually quickening them with His Pure River of His Gracious Testimonies and Righteousness.

Although the Bride will be in the New City, she will be constantly aware that the existence and survival of all God's creation is maintained by the Pure River of Life.

3. The LORD's Righteousness Is Everlasting

The LORD is *Unchanging* and Eternal; therefore, His Righteousness is Eternal. It is Everlasting in all its aspects.

- Its Greatness and Highness
- Its Quickening Power
- Its Delivering Power
- Its Life-giving Power
- Its Keeping Power.

Thy righteousness is an everlasting righteousness, and thy law is the truth (Psalm 119:142).

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my *righteousness shall be for ever*, and my salvation from generation to generation (Isaiah 51:8).

Christ's Bride, in her earthly journey, will have been uninterested in the temporal, fleeting, vain things of this world. Her heart constantly will have sought God's perpetual, permanent Truth with its Everlasting Righteousness. Hence, she will be rewarded by continuing to drink of the Everlasting Liquid Life of Truth and Righteousness, by whose Virtue and Life she will continue to exist in the New City.

Christ's Bride will have endured the taunts of men and their revilings during her earthly journey, but after these enemies have been destroyed, Christ's Righteousness will live on forever in her heart and will.

4. Righteousness Delivers

The gains of lawlessness that man has attained through Adam the First are worthless because they bring death. But the Righteousness that the Bride will attain through Christ Jesus, the Second Adam, delivers from death and brings Christ's Life.

Treasures of wickedness profit nothing: but *righteousness delivereth from death* (Proverbs 10:2).

Riches profit not in the day of wrath: but *righteousness delivereth from death* (Proverbs 11:4).

Riches cannot profit a man's soul in the day of his death. But the Righteousness of Christ's Bride will exalt and honour her, and she will reap the sweet Waters of Wisdom's Pure River of Life and Righteousness.

5. God's Righteousness Is Life

The soul that is steadfast in Christ's Righteousness prolongs its life.

As righteousness tendeth to life: so he that pursueth evil pursueth it to his own death (Proverbs 11:19).

In the way of righteousness is life; and in the pathway thereof there is no death (Proverbs 12:28).

Christ's Righteousness will have prolonged His Bride's life upon Earth, and it will prolong her life throughout Eternity.

The Bride's Life of Righteousness, which she will have lived on Earth through Christ Jesus, will cause her to inherit the Way or Foursquare Street with its Foursquare River of Life. The Seal of Righteousness that is in this River of Life in the New City will be the Bride's reward for gaining the Seal of Righteousness in her earthly walk.

The Testimonies of Wisdom teach us about the Righteousness Christ has for us now and about the Righteousness He has in store for all who will inherit the Prize of being in Christ's Bride.

Righteousness is a safeguard for Christ's Bride in her earthly journey. It prevents her from departing from the LORD's Perfect Way of Truth in Christ Jesus.

6. Righteousness Keeps the Upright

Christ's Righteousness is a breastplate to protect the heart of His Bride so that it will be kept separated unto Himself.

Righteousness keepeth him that is upright in the way; but wickedness overthroweth the sinner (Proverbs 13:6).

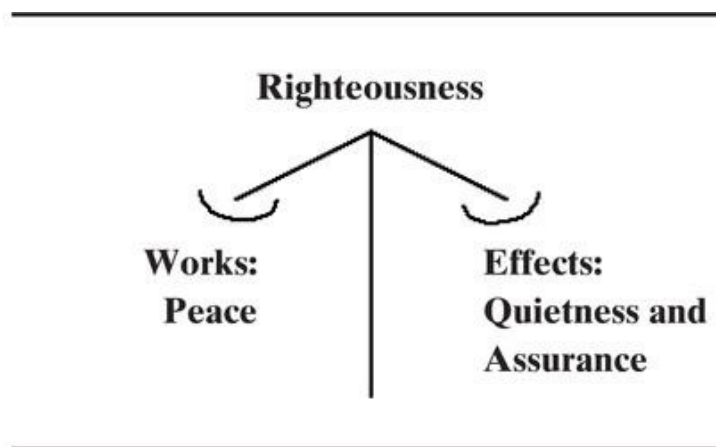
For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and an helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloke (Isaiah 59:17).

And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever (Isaiah 32:17).

As a Warrior, God the Deliverer has on a Breastplate of Righteousness, a Helmet of Salvation, a Garment of Vengeance, and a Cloke of Zeal for the deliverance of the godly and for the punishment of the wicked. God covers His own Heart with His Breastplate of Righteousness

C. The Works and Effects of the Seal of Righteousness in the Bride's Heart

The Works and Effects of the LORD's Righteousness, both now and in the New City, are peace, quietness, and assurance.



1. The Works — Peace

Christ works Righteousness in the heart of His Bride, producing a Holy, inward serenity and security of mind and heart concerning His Righteous, Just Headship in all things. Through her inward security and peace of mind, the Bride enjoys a Holy, delightful communion with Christ, her Bridegroom, which she maintains through all the sufferings, sorrows, and calamities of this present, evil world.

It is not in the power of the world, nor is it in the power of the flesh to disturb this joyful, inward peace that is wrought by Christ Jesus in the heart of His Bride.

Christ's Works of Righteousness assure the heart of pleasure and satisfaction in this present life. They also inspire the soul with sureness, confidence, and certainty concerning the Everlasting Joy and Eternal Satisfaction Christ has in store for those who have remained faithful to Him and who, therefore, are counted worthy to be in His Bride and drink from the Paradisiacal River of Life in the New City.

2. The Effects — Quietness and Assurance

The Effect of Righteousness and Peace is quietness and everlasting assurance. Quietness is the calmness and stillness in a will that is surrendered and submissive to the Bridegroom's Holy Will; it is a restful, Holy Trust in His

Righteousness and Purity as the Divine Decider, Who makes Just Decisions in His Bride's life.

Because, in her earthly journey, Christ's Bride will have been willing to take on the Seal of Christ's Righteousness, which is Great and High, which Quickens, which is Everlasting, which Delivers, which has Life, and which Keeps, she will be rewarded by being in the New City, where she will drink of His Liquid Testimonies of Truth and Righteousness from the Pure River of Life.

D. The River of Life Fills All the Desires and Needs of the Bride

The LORD's River of Gracious Truth satisfies all the longings of the Bride's heart. It also supplies all the needs of her spirit. It gratifies all the desires of her soul, and it will fill all the capacities of her glorified body.

The Bridegroom in the Song of Solomon went down to this River, which supports the Tree of Life in the heart and will of His Bride, in order to inspect the fruitfulness of her Tree of Life.

I went down into the garden of *nuts* to see the fruits of the valley, and to see whether the *vine* flourished, and the *pomegranates* budded (Song of Solomon 6:11).

The Bridegroom found, in the valley or *Nakh-al* River of His Bride's heart and will, the nuts of sharing, the vine of surrender, and the pomegranates of love.

1. The Bride's Nuts of Sharing

The word *nuts* means to give, divide, share. The Bridegroom found within His Espoused Bride, from the beginning, the desire, the "nuts" to share her whole being with Him. He found within her heart the desire to give all her love to Him. She was not like the man who had spent twelve hours in the vineyard and who wanted only a penny's wages in the beginning, but who, later on, became angry when he realized there was more to be had than the small reward he had chosen.

From the beginning of her Knowledge of the Bridegroom, the Bride had the "nuts of sharing and dividing" in the garden of her heart.

We also must have the "nuts of desire" to share our whole being with the Bridegroom, if we expect to be part of that Choice One who will abide eternally in the Golden City.

As He inspected the garden in her heart and will, the Bridegroom found the Bride was unselfish in giving herself to Him. She was willing to give and share of her life, her will, and her heart. In her submissive humility, she accepted and received Christ's Golden Redemptive Will and His River of *Torah*-Truth.

Before anyone can follow Christ in His Crucified Way, they must pray: "LORD, I want to know You; I want to go on with You and grow up in Your Stature of Truth in my spiritual education and in my moral development. I want to share my life with You; I want to give myself to You."

Be sure, if you are not willing to share your life with Jesus Christ, first, that you certainly never will be willing to share it with others. The "nuts of sharing" begin with the sharing of our will and life with Jesus Christ. When this comes first, the Espoused Bridegroom takes note and begins to open unto us His *Torah*-Truth of His Crucified Way.

2. The Bride's Vine of Surrender

Secondly, the Bridegroom found the vine of surrender flourishing in the valley or the *nakh-al* river in the Bride's heart and will. He found the vine of surrender and obedience to Him flourishing even in the "River Valley," in the low place of humiliation and crucifixion. The vine pictures the precious Blood of Jesus Christ and His Surrender and Obedience on the Cross.

3. The Bride's Pomegranates of Love

Thirdly, the Bridegroom found the pomegranates budding in the heart, the garden of the Bride. The pomegranate speaks of that special love in our heart for God's Word. "But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him" (1 John 2:5). In the beginning of the Espoused Bride's

experience with the Bridegroom, she had a love for God's Word. Christ, the Bridegroom, will not spend time in training believers to be His Bride if they do not have a special love for His Word. The Bridegroom explained to the Daughters of Jerusalem why He had chosen the Bride as His *Choice One*; He had found in her heart, from the beginning, the *pomegranate love*.

Searching for the fruits she bore in the "River Valley," the Bridegroom found her willing in her heart and will to share her life and to give of herself to Him. He saw her *vine of surrender* and obedience flourishing; He found her love that longed to know him in a deeper and fuller measure. Therefore, He picked her up and patiently led her onward and forward in her spiritual and moral development, taking her first to the chambers of His Humility so that she could learn to know him as the King of Humility. Then, He became her Shepherd, leading her to His green pastures and down beside His still waters. As the Roe, He took her to Mount Bether in order to work in her the necessary separation from the lowly creatures that were in her heart. This is why Christ chose His Bride!

Likewise, if we want to be in Christ's Bride, we must allow Him to form the "nuts of sharing" in our heart and will, and we must let His vine of obedience and surrender flourish within us. We also must allow the pomegranates of love for the Bridegroom to bud and develop in our heart.

Jesus Christ is not a respecter of persons. He will feed and fill any hungry heart that comes to Him.

This chapter has covered still more aspects of the New City. It will be a *Golden City* of Christ's Wisdom, and the Bride, living in it, will be *clothed* with Christ's *Golden Wisdom*, which will have been her strength to help her overcome all her enemies on Earth, thus, making her a fit resident for God's Eternal Golden City.

The New City's Street will be a *Golden Street*, which will enlarge the Wisdom of the Bride as she walks on it. It also will be a pathway of liberty for the Bride — liberty to understand all hitherto hidden concepts of Truth.

The New City's Golden Street will be a way to *endless* mental delight as the Bride revels in the pleasures of knowing the Infinity of the Truth and of experiencing the LORD's measureless Love and Fruitfulness.

In the middle of the Golden Street will be a River of Life that will support the Tree of Life. It will be a River of the Unified, Governmental Gratitude and Infinite Love found in the Divine Name of the Godhead.

This Living River of Gratitude will contain the LORD's Testimonies of Truth and His Seal of Righteousness.

The Bride will have Eternal access to the LORD's Testimonies of Truth, and she will have His Seal of Righteousness in her heart. As a result, she will experience quietness and assurance within, and she will have all her needs and desires fulfilled. Fed by the River of Truth, the Bride's heart will be filled with the desire to share all her being with the Bridegroom, and she will be filled with total surrender to and love for His Governmental Headship.

* B. R. Hicks, [*How to Overcome the Basic Fears of Man*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l, Inc., 1985).

Chapter Eighteen

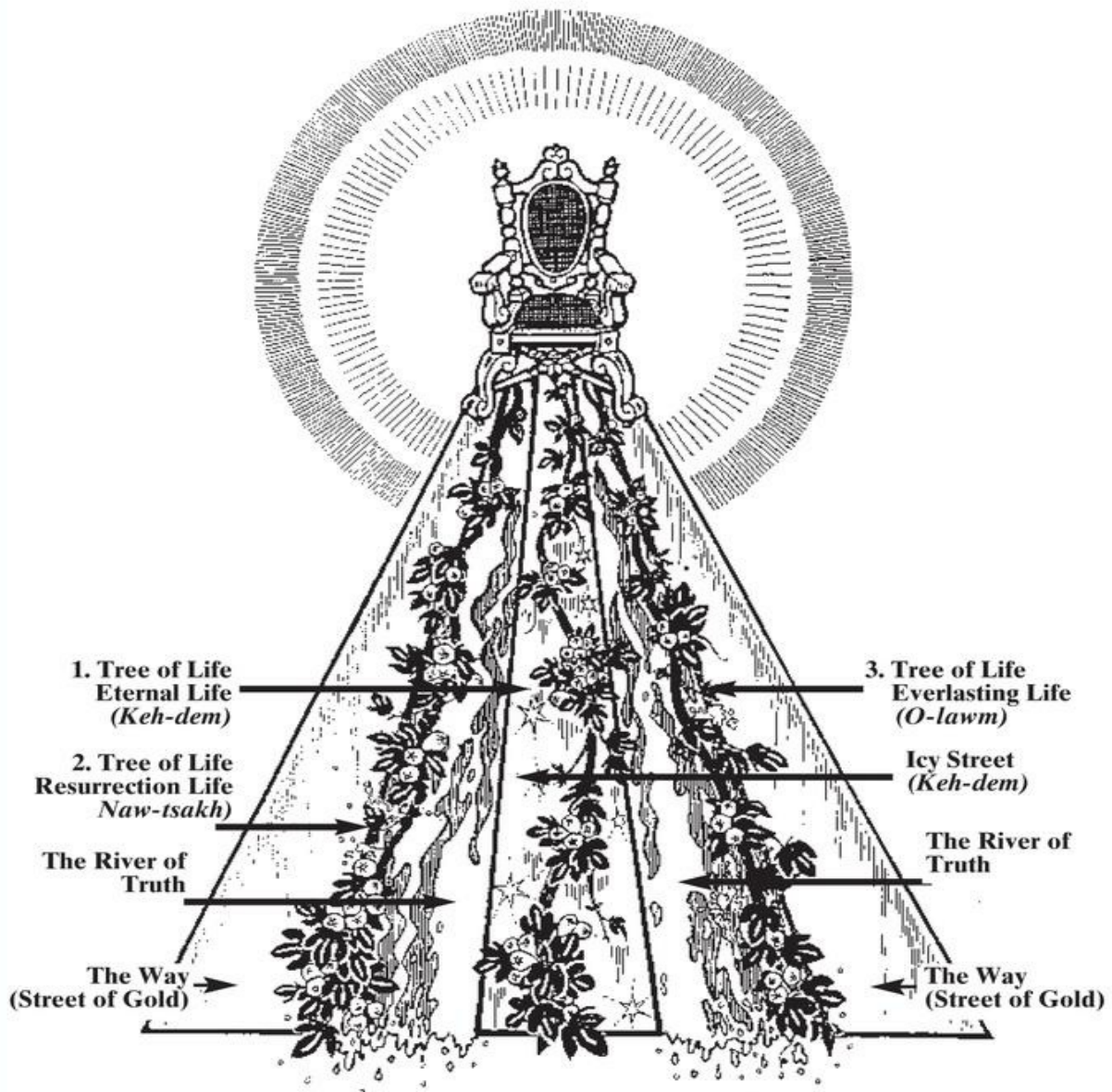
The Tree of Life in the Midst of the Street and on Either Side of the River

An Icy Street runs down the middle of the Pure River of *Torah*-Truth in the New City. The Tree of Life grows in the middle of the Street of the River and on each of its sides, which reveals three aspects of the Tree of Life: the kind of Life represented by the portion of the Tree that grows in the Icy Street and the two kinds of Life that grow on the sides of the River. Every kind of Life of the Father is manifested through His Son, the Tree of Life.

In the midst of the street [ice] of it [river] and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations (Revelation 22:2).

The Tree of Life that fills the *center* of the Icy Street is God's *Eternal Life* (*Keh-dem* in Hebrew), the Eternal Source of all existence. The Tree of Life on the *right side* of the River is *Resurrection Life* — victorious, swelling Life or *Naw-tsakh* in Hebrew. The Tree of Life on the *left side* of the River is *Everlasting Life* or *O-lawm*, in Hebrew.

God's Throne



Fruits Produced by the Tree of Life

Sincerity
Surrender and Obedience
Love
Joy
Peace
Long-suffering

Gentleness
Goodness
Faith
Meekness
Temperance
Mercy

These three major Hebrew words — *keh-dem*, *naw-tsakh*, and *o-lawm* — describe God's Life and are translated interchangeably as *eternal*, *everlasting*, *forever*, and *evermore* to express the perpetuity and permanence of God's Life.

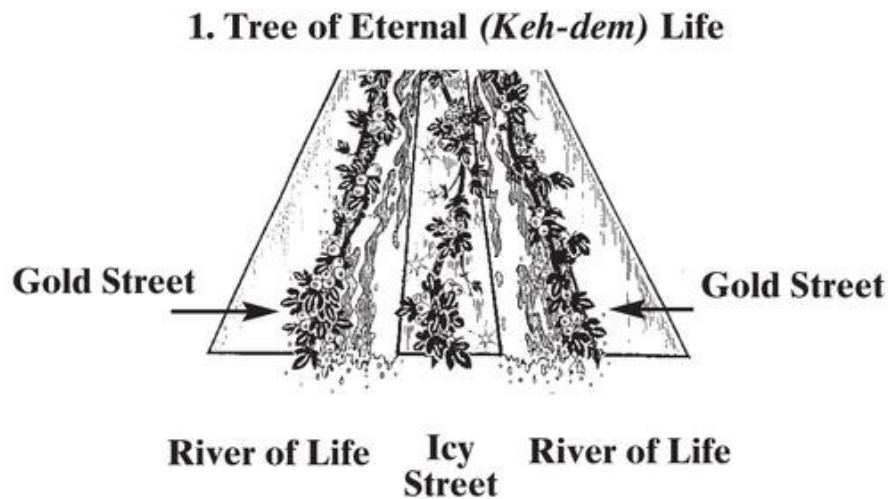
Nevertheless, these names are understood only as we examine their consecutive usage in the Hebrew.

I. The Eternal (*Keh-dem*) Life – The Source of All Existence

The Eternal (*Keh-dem*) God is He Who is the God of all Eternity. He bears all creation of past time, present time, and future time.

The eternal [keh-dem] God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them (Deuteronomy 33:27).

The Eternal (*Keh-dem*) God is above, and He is the Eternal Arms, beneath, which support the existence of all creation and all time.



The refuge and support of all existing creation is the Eternal God and His Eternal Life. His Life is a refuge from all death and destruction.

Keh-dem means in front, aforesaid, ancient time, eternal, everlasting.

The Son, the Word, was begotten in Eternity-Past, when only God existed.

The LORD possessed me in the beginning of his way, before [keh-dem] his works of old (Proverbs 8:22).

The LORD possessed His Begotten Wisdom-Word *before (keh-dem)* His Works of old. The Wisdom-Word enjoyed God's Eternal Life before any of His Works of old existed.

Many writers of the Scriptures bore witness to the Eternal existence of Christ.

A. The Prophet Habakkuk Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence

The Prophet Habakkuk bore record of Christ, the Word's, existence in Eternity-Past.

Art thou not from everlasting [keh-dem], O LORD my God, mine Holy One? we shall not die. O LORD, thou hast ordained them for judgment; and, O mighty God, thou hast established them for correction (Habakkuk 1:12).

Christ, the LORD God, the Father's Holy One, is not a mortal that He should die. He lives by His Father, the Source of all Eternal Life.

The Father's Tree of Life extends into His Son Who exists by the Eternal Life of the Father.

As the living Father hath sent me, and *I live by the Father*: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me (John 6:57).

B. The Psalmist Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence

The Psalmist bore record of God's Eternal Antiquity and His Eternal Rulership.

God shall hear, and afflict them, even he that abideth of old [keh-dem]. Selah. Because they have no changes, therefore they fear not God (Psalm 55:19).

For God is my King of old [keh-dem], working salvation in the midst of the earth (Psalm 74:12).

In Eternity-Past, the Father enthroned His Son as King and Judge of the world. Therefore, the Psalmist had supreme confidence and restful security in His Eternal Existence and Reigning Power. He knew that His Eternal King had not abdicated His Eternal Throne; therefore, all things had to work together for good.

C. John the Baptist Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence

John bore witness of the antiquity of the Word, the Christ, Who existed in Eternity-Past with the Eternal God, the Living Source of all things.

John bare witness of him, and cried, saying, This was he of whom I spake, *He that cometh after me is preferred before me: for he was before [keh-dem] me* This is he of whom I said, After me cometh a man which is preferred before me: for *he was before me* (John 1:15,30).

John the Baptist was a doorkeeper for the LORD Jesus Christ. He pulled back the cloudy veils, exposing the LORD Jesus Christ as the Eternal Mediator Who was preferred before him and Who was eternally before (*keh-dem*) him. John was a minister of time, but Christ was the Mediator from Eternity.

D. The Apostle Paul Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence

The Apostle Paul bore witness of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will that existed in Eternity-Past.

For we are his workmanship, *created in Christ Jesus unto good works which God hath before [keh-dem] ordained* that we should walk in them (Ephesians 2:10).

In Eternity-Past, God formed His Eternal Master Plan and Purpose in His own Mind and Will. Afterward, He begot His Wisdom-Word, His Son, and He fed Him His Eternal Master Plan and Purposive Will. Thus, He brought His Son, His Word, to maturity in His Master Plan and Purposive Will. In His Eternal Master Plan, God decreed Christ the Saviour and Mediator, and He decreed the creation of our new man in Christ Jesus. In Eternity (*Keh-dem*), He also ordained the Good Works that should be done by our new man, Christ Jesus, within us.

These few Scriptures from both the Old and New Testaments give us a brief, synoptic view of God's Eternal, Living Existence as the Eternal (*Keh-dem*) Tree of Life.

Let us study, now, the second part of the Tree of Life, which is the Resurrection Life that is victorious over death. Resurrection Life is known as *Naw-tsakh* Life in Hebrew.

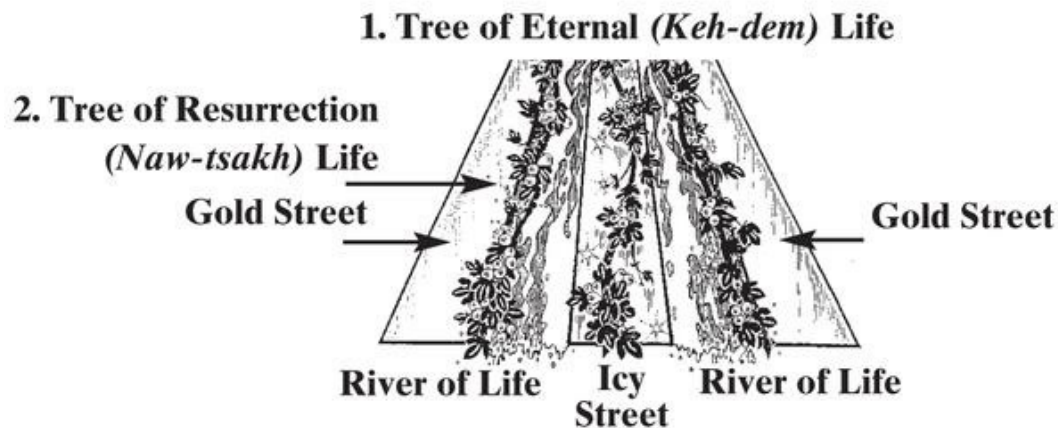
II. The Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life of Christ — His Victorious Life that Swallows up All Death

The Hebrew root word for *Resurrection Life* is *naw-tsakh*, meaning to glitter from afar, to be eminent as a superintendent, permanent, overseer, to be pure, innocent, faithful, to conquer, to be entire, complete, perfect, truth, uprightness, perpetuity, for ever and ever, excellency, and glory.

Jesus taught that if we would not love our mortal life in this world, that is, if we would not allow it to rule over us, we could keep it because, by following Christ's Headship and not our own, we would be led to the Crucifixion of our self-life; then, our dead flesh would be swallowed up by Christ's Resurrection Life or *Naw-tsakh* Life, which would make us live again in new immortality.

He that loveth his life shall lose it; and he that hateth his life in this world shall keep it unto life eternal [*naw-tsakh*] (John 12:25).

If we love our mortal life more than we love Christ, we shall lose it. But if we hate it, in the sense of not allowing it to rule over us, we will keep it because Christ's Eternal, Overcoming, Resurrection Life will change it to immortality.



If we love our animal, fleshly life in this world and give our life and time to please self, we will lose both our mortal life and Christ's Resurrection Life.

However, if we go by the Way of the Cross, following the Crucified Christ and dying daily to our fleshly appetites and desires, we will find the Power and Godliness of the Resurrected Christ swallowing up our selfish desires to live for self. Instead, we will live for Christ and make His Prize, the Bride, to be the goal of our life.

A. The Prophet Samuel Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life

Christ's Victorious Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life neither lies nor deceives those who take on its strength.

Samuel the Prophet bore witness to God's *Strength* or *Naw-tsakh* Victorious Resurrection Power. In this instance, the Hebrew word *naw-tsakh* has been translated as *strength*.

And also the *Strength* [*naw-tsakh*] of Israel will not lie nor repent: for he is not a man, that he should repent (I Samuel 15:29).

The LORD will not lie, repent, nor conceal His decree concerning the Victorious Ruling Power of His Resurrection Life.

B. David Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life

David bore witness of the LORD's Victorious Resurrection Life and Power.

Thine, O LORD, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory [*naw-tsakh*], and the majesty: for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is thine; thine is the kingdom, O LORD, and thou art exalted as head above all (I Chronicles 29:11).

The LORD possesses within Himself the Greatness, the Power, the Glory, the Majesty, and the Victory of His Resurrection Life. Through the Almighty Power of His Unbegotten Resurrection Life, He is able to conquer and to subdue all things to Himself. All the victories of His Resurrection Life are incontestable and uncontrollable!

C. Paul Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life

When Paul wrote about this Resurrected Life, it was translated as "victory" in First Corinthians.

So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, *Death is swallowed up in victory [naw-tsakh]*. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But *thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory* through our Lord Jesus Christ (1 Corinthians 15:54-57).

Death is swallowed up, now, in our soul and spirit and will, as we go by the way of the Cross with the Crucified Christ and to the Right Hand of God with the Resurrected Christ. The mortality of death is and will be swallowed up by Christ's Victorious Resurrection Life.

Christ's Bride will have overcome the mortal appetites of the flesh by Christ's Victorious Resurrection Life as she has journeyed through the world below, singing triumphant praises and victorious thanksgivings to the LORD for His Death and His Resurrection Life that has purchased her Redemption and brought her His Overcoming Life.

D. The Apostle John Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life

The Apostle John bore witness of Christ's Victorious, Overcoming, Resurrection Life and Power. The Hebrew word for *resurrection* also is translated as overcome.

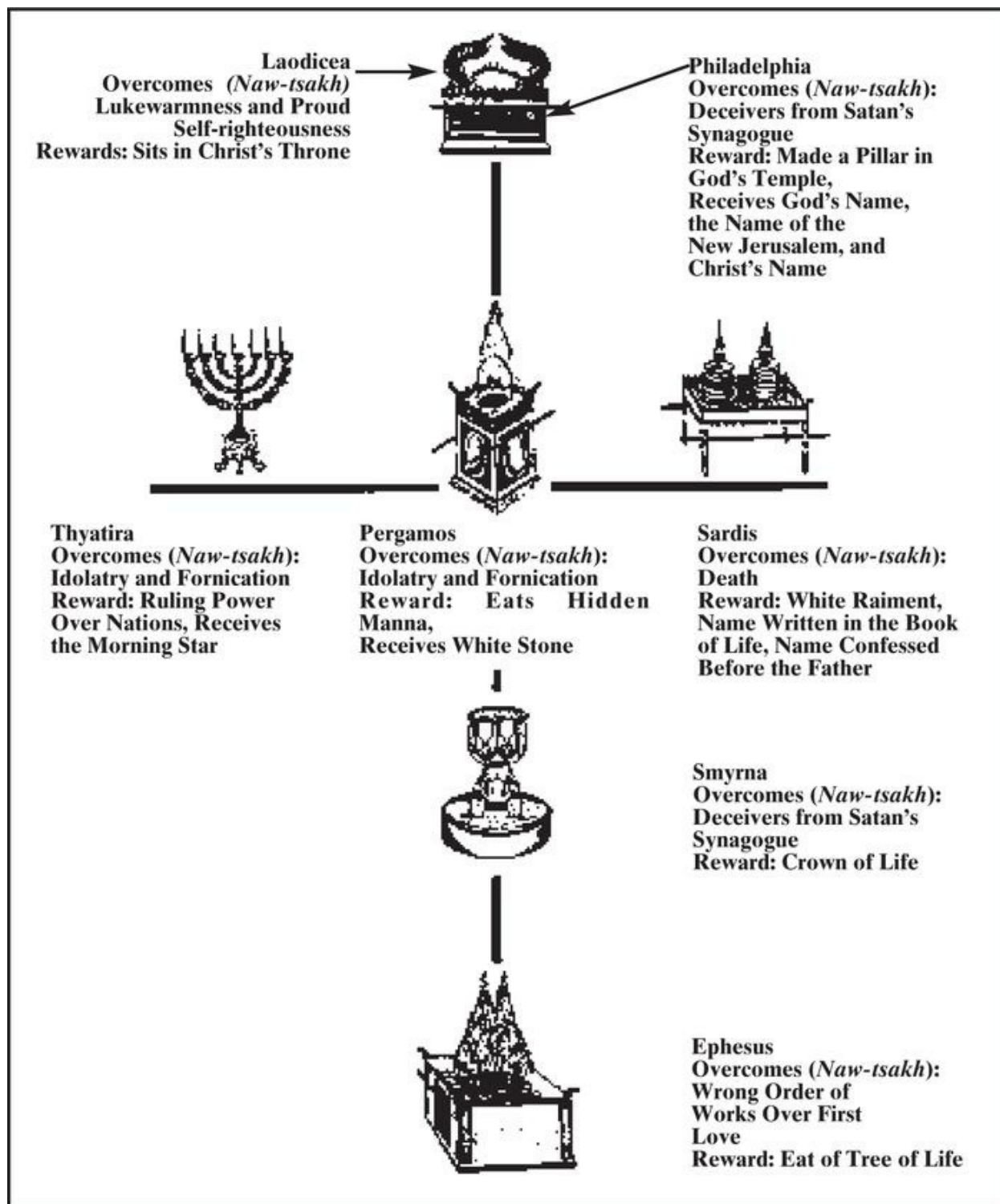
Ye are of God, little children, *and have overcome [naw-tsakh] them*: because *greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world* (1 John 4:4).

Our born again experience (which is a result of the Working of God's Resurrection Power in Christ Jesus) and our faith (which is a result of the Resurrected Christ's quickening of the Word of Truth to our heart) empower us to swallow up the world instead of the world swallowing us.

E. The Seven Early Churches Portray the Resurrection Life that Will Be Attained by the Bride

Jesus promised each of the seven, early churches, which picture Christ's Spiritual Stature, that He would specially reward those who were overcomers, meaning those who will have laid hold of His *Naw-tsakh* Resurrection Life (Revelation 2:7,11,17,26; Revelation 3:5,12,21).

The following is a diagram showing Christ's exhortation to each Church to lay hold of Christ's *Naw-tsakh* Resurrection Life so that it would be able to overcome the flesh, Satan, and the world and, therefore, receive its particular reward.

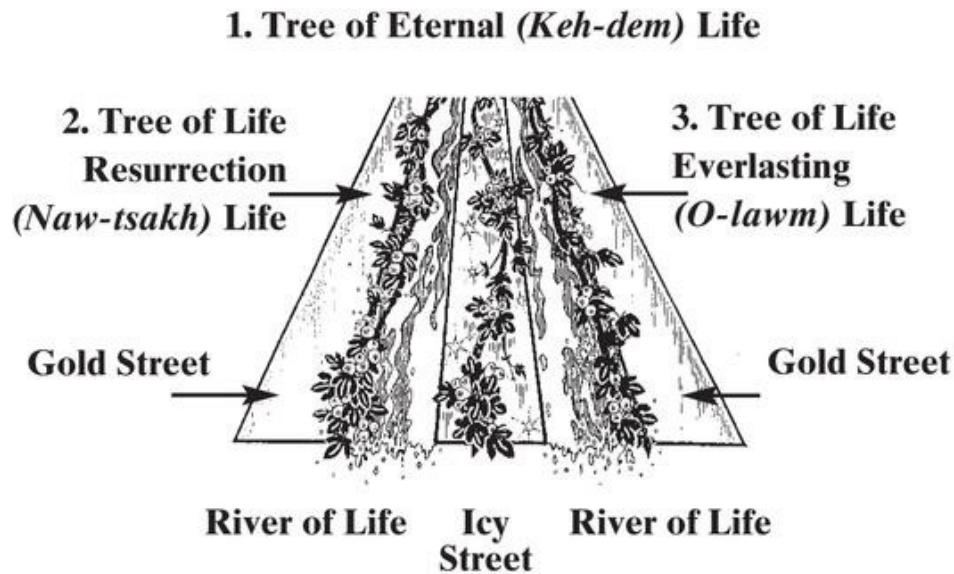


Christ's Bride will lay hold of Christ's full Resurrection Life, portrayed by all seven churches. Hence, she will feed on the fullness of the Tree of Life in the New City.

These are a few examples from both the Old and New Testaments of the LORD's Victorious, Overcoming, Resurrection Life.

III. The Everlasting (*O-lawm*) Life of Christ — The Everlasting Cycles of the LORD's Holy Name

Let us look, now, at the third portion of the Tree of Life, the portion on the left side of the River, the Everlasting Life that is known as *O-lawm* Life in Hebrew.



The word for *Everlasting* Life in Hebrew is *o-lawm*, meaning concealed, a wrapping up or hiding, the vanishing point, beginning, world without end, antiquity, perpetuity, endless ages. *O-lawm* is from the word *aw-lam*, meaning to veil from sight, conceal, hide self, secret, forever, remote time, past and future.

The LORD's Everlasting Life or *O-lawm* Life means "I am the Everlasting, Living One, living not only in Myself and for Myself, but I am also Life for everything mortal. Let the dead partake of My Everlasting Life and awaken from the dead to fresh existence and fresh Life."

For I lift up my hand to heaven, and say, *I live for ever* (Deuteronomy 32:40).

The LORD lifts His Hand to Heaven, the place of His Holy Throne, and swears by His Everlasting Life, which is in Himself, to do according to His Purposive Will.

The LORD is permanent because of His Everlasting Life.

But the LORD shall endure for ever: he hath prepared his throne for judgment (Psalm 9:7).

God is enthroned eternally. His Judgments are not impetuous outbursts of emotions, but they are everlasting in dimension and scope.

The LORD is of perpetual existence.

But thou, O LORD, shalt endure for ever; and thy remembrance unto all generations (Psalm 102:12).

Because the LORD possesses Everlasting Life, His Memory endures to all generations.

The LORD's Name is from Everlasting (*O-lawm*) to Everlasting (*O-lawm*).

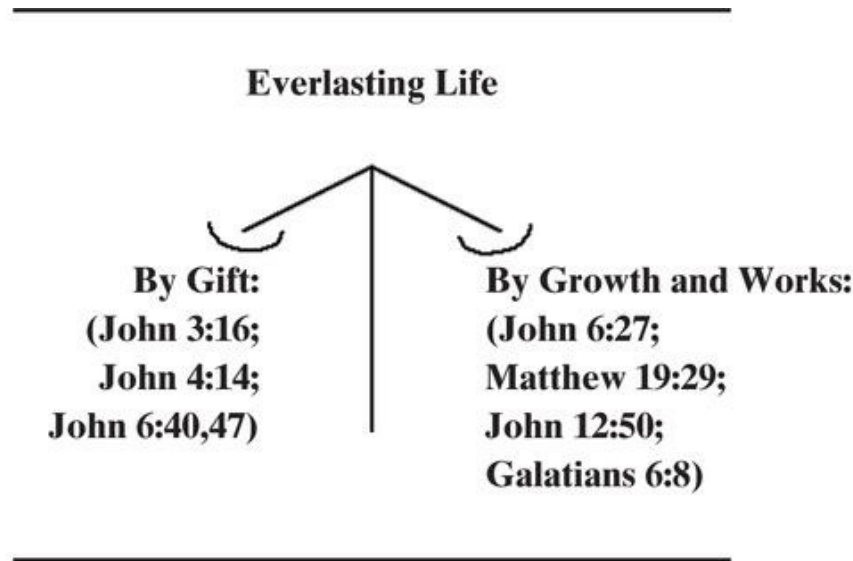
But the mercy of the LORD is from everlasting [o-lawm] to everlasting [o-lawm] upon them that fear him, and his righteousness unto children's children; (Psalm 103:17).

The LORD's Name is Everlasting. It turns in perpetual motion, controlling all events — past, present, and future. In our darkest moments of painful distresses and calamities, we can trust in the Everlasting, Controlling Life of

the LORD's Holy Name.

A. Two Ways to Gain the Everlasting (O-lawm) Life of the LORD's Holy Name

There are two ways to lay hold of the Everlasting Life of Christ's Holy Name: one is by gift and one is by growth in deeds of righteousness.



1. The Everlasting Life of the LORD Jesus Christ's Holy Name Is Attained by Gift

Everlasting Life is received, first, by Gift. A gift is something given or bestowed as a present, not as a reward for growth or works.

For *God* so loved the world, that he *gave* his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have *everlasting [o-lawm] life* (John 3:16).

God loved His lost creation. Therefore, He gave His only Begotten Son and His Gift of Everlasting Life through His Name to all who believe and receive Christ Jesus, the Redeemer.

Salvation is a Gift or present to penitent man from the LORD Jesus Christ, the Saviour. Jesus Christ gives the Waters of Everlasting Life from His Well of Salvation to all who believe, repent, and receive.

And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have *everlasting [o-lawm] life*: and I will raise him up at the last day.... Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath *everlasting [o-lawm] life* (John 6:40,47).

As an expression of His Divine Love, Affection, and Esteem for lost mankind, Jesus Christ gives His Gift of Everlasting Life to all who believe.

2. The Everlasting Life of the LORD Jesus Christ's Holy Name Is Attained by Growth and Works

Jesus exhorted man to *labour* for the Meat of Truth that leads to Everlasting Life in the New City.

Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto *everlasting [o-lawm] life*, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for him hath God the Father sealed (John 6:27).

If we labour for the Spiritual Meat of Truth, we must work hard, toil, and exert ourself in studying God's Word. In order to lay hold of the depth, length, breadth, and height of Christ's full Stature of Truth, which leads to the Tree

of Life and its Everlasting Life in the New City, we must move slowly through the four different levels of study: elementary, exploratory, analytical, and “syn-topical.”

When we truly realize the importance of Christ’s Wisdom and Truth that lead to Everlasting Life by growth and works, we are willing to forsake all in order to obtain it, and we will leave nothing undone to acquire it.

Jesus taught that the Father’s Word is a Commandment of Life Everlasting.

For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak. And I know that *his commandment is life everlasting [o-lawm]*: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak (John 12:49,50).

What a privilege we have to believe and receive Christ’s Gift of Everlasting (*O-lawm*) Life, then to feed on Christ’s Wisdom and Truth, and, at last, go to the New City where we can feed on the Everlasting Life of the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost through Christ Jesus, the Tree of Life.

And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name’s sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit *everlasting [o-lawm] life* (Matthew 19:29).

Jesus clearly taught that there is a degree of Everlasting Life to be attained by deeds of righteousness. If a sincere heart is faced with a choice between Christ’s Wisdom and Name versus houses, loved ones, and lands, he must choose the Wisdom and the Name of the LORD Jesus Christ, if he desires to receive a hundredfold reward and inherit the reward of Everlasting Life in the New City because of his righteous works.

If we sow good deeds — by studying God’s Word and praying in God’s Spirit and by choosing to put the Truth above all other relationships in our present mortal life — we will grow in the Spiritual Stature of Jesus Christ; therefore, we will reap Life Everlasting in the New City.

Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; *but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting [o-lawm]* (Galatians 6:7,8).

To sow precious seed requires work and growth, both in the natural and the spiritual realms.

If we labour to sow the LORD’s precious Seeds of Truth in our own heart and in the hearts of others, we will reap Life Everlasting from the LORD’s Holy Name in the Tree of Life in the New City.

Thus, we have seen the three divisions of Life that are in the Tree of Life: Eternal Life, Resurrection Life, and Everlasting Life.

The Hebrew word for *life* is *khah-eem*, a masculine plural word, meaning to live, living, alive, lively, or vigorous. Hence, the Tree of Life is the Unified Life of the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost in the LORD Jesus Christ.

IV. The Tree of Life Produces Twelve Governmental Fruits Which Are the Twelve Fruits of the Spirit

Together, the three parts of the Tree of Lives, the Eternal, the Resurrection, and the Everlasting Lives, bear Twelve Govern-mental Fruits each spiritual month. The Hebrew word for *month* is *kho-desh*, which relates to Israel’s natural new Moon. A new Moon signifies a fresh, new beginning, a new rejuvenation.

In the New City, the Bride will experience Everlasting, fresh, new beginnings each new, spiritual month, as she feeds on the Governmental Fruits of Christ’s Eternal Life, His Resurrection Life, and His Everlasting Life.

By searching the Scriptures, we find twelve manner of Governmental Fruit produced by the Tree of Life or Lives. The revelation of this Fruit is found in the Song of Solomon and in Paul’s Epistle to the Galatians.

The Scripture itself is the best commentary on God’s Word, for what God says in one place in His Word, He explains in another. Therefore, the Word must be discerned spiritually as God’s Spirit unites His Truth. Without our Teacher, the Holy Ghost, we cannot rightly divide God’s Word nor lay hold of the explanations of Truth hidden therein. Only as we humble ourself, resting patiently upon His Divine Bosom by faith, can we know the revelation of His Truth, for “...thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes” (Luke 10:21).

The twelve Governmental Fruits of the New City, the Wife of the Lamb, are portrayed in the Song of Solomon through twelve classes of trees and plants found in the Bride’s possession. The first two are mentioned in the Song of Solomon, chapter two, verse thirteen: “The *fig tree* putteth forth her *green figs*, and the *vines* with the *tender*

grape give a good smell. Arise, my love, my fair one, and come away.”

Since all spiritual fruitfulness is built on the Fruits of *Sincerity* and *Surrender*, we see that the first Fruit indicates Sincerity and that the second plant and fruit speak of Surrender.

The next nine Fruits, which are revealed in the Song of Solomon, chapter four, verses twelve through fourteen, fit together with the Fruits of the Spirit mentioned in Galatians, chapter five, verses twenty-two and twenty-three. As we examine the characteristics of both, we clearly see the union between these two portions of God’s Word.

A garden inclosed is my sister, my spouse; a spring shut up, a fountain sealed. Thy plants are an orchard of *pomegranates*, with pleasant fruits; *camphire*, with *spikenard*, Spikenard and *saffron*; *calamus* and *cinnamon*, with all trees of *frankincense*; *myrrh* and *aloes*, with all the chief spices: (Song of Solomon 4:12-14).

But the fruit of the Spirit is *love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, Meekness, temperance*: against such there is no law (Galatians 5:22,23).

The twelfth Fruit is revealed in the Song of Solomon, chapter six, verse eleven: “I went down into the *garden of nuts* to see the fruits of the valley, and to see whether the vine flourished, and the pomegranates budded.” “Nuts” in her garden speak of the Bride’s willingness to share.

Thus, when we list the natural trees and plants in the Song of Solomon with the fruits of the Spirit which Paul gave in Galatians, we see the Old Testament type and shadow fulfilled in the spiritual qualities which the Bride will have in her heart.

- Fig Tree - Green Figs - Sincerity
- Vines - Tender Grapes - Surrender
- Pomegranate - Love
- Camphire - Joy
- Spikenard - Peace
- Saffron - Long-suffering
- Calamus - Gentleness
- Cinnamon - Goodness
- Frankincense - Faith
- Myrrh - Meekness and Humility
- Aloes - Temperance
- Nuts - Merciful Sharing.

There are *Twelve* Governmental Fruits on the Tree of Life in the New City. However, here in Galatians, the Spirit tells us about only nine. We find the other three Fruits are pictured by the Fig Tree, the Vine, and the Nut tree in the Song of Solomon, which completes the Twelve Governmental Fruits that are found on the Tree of Life in the New City, the Bride of Christ. Since there are Twelve Fruits on the Tree of Life in the New City, the Bride had to have developed these Fruits in her heart and will while she was on Earth.

V. The Twelve Fruits of the Spirit Come out of the Three Portions of God’s Will

Even as the fruits or the works of the flesh fit together with the three portions of Satan’s Will — his Pride of Revelation, Pride of Redemption, and Pride of Satisfaction — so the Fruits of the Word and the Spirit come out of the three portions of God’s Will: His Will of Redemption, His Will of Revelation, and His Will of Satisfaction. As we study the Will of the Bride, we shall see what happens to a human will when it has been possessed by Jesus Christ and joined to the Divine Will of God.

Remember, in the midst of the Golden Street (God’s Will) flows the River of Truth, the Procreative Life of God. God’s Golden Street of Wisdom is divided into three blocks, as it were. The first block is known as God’s Redemptive Will.

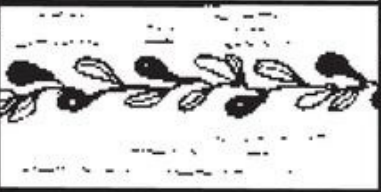
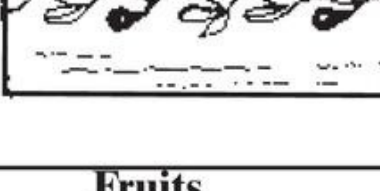
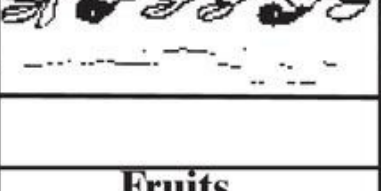
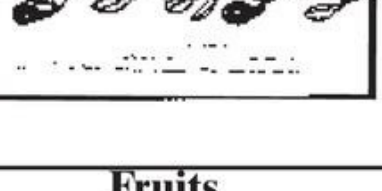
When God begins to introduce His Will to us, He first offers us His Redemptive Will.* From His Redemptive Will, we experience a portion of His Golden Street of Wisdom, the River of Truth, and the Tree of Life.

As we obey Christ’s Redemptive Will by surrendering to His Cross, our own Pride of Redemption (which

consists of hatred, wrath, strife, envy, and murder) is crucified, little by little, by faith, each time we offer it. Then, next, God brings us to His Will of Revelation, and we experience a greater portion of Truth and Life from Wisdom's Street of Gold in the River of Truth, and from the Tree of Life.

After we find God's Will of Redemption and Revelation, He brings us to His Will of Satisfaction, which includes a greater experience of Truth from Wisdom's Golden Street in the River of Truth and more Life from the Tree of Life.

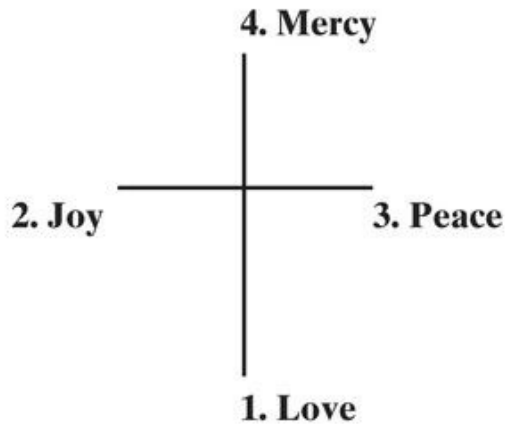
We need to take the Redemption, Revelation, and Satisfaction from God's Will; then, our works will be born out of a union with His Governmental Will and will be as Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, and our spiritual life will be fruitful. We need all portions of God's Will in order to produce all Twelve Fruits of the Spirit in our heart and will.

Block 1 Redemptive Will	Block 2 Revelation Will	Block 3 Satisfaction Will
		
		
		
Fruits	Fruits	Fruits
1. Love - Pomegranate 2. Joy - Camphire 3. Peace - Spikenard 4. Mercy Sharing - Nuts	1. Sincerity - Figs 2. Surrender/Obedience - Vine 3. Gentleness - Calamus 4. Faith - Frankincense	1. Long-suffering, Saffron 2. Goodness - Cinnamon 3. Meekness/Humility - Myrrh 4. Temperance - Aloes

A. God's Will of Redemption Produces Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy or Sharing

The Fruits of God's Redemptive Will are *Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy or Sharing*.

Christ's Redemptive Will



1. Love

The first class of Fruit of God's Redemptive Will is Love. Lucifer's River of Deceit begets hatred, but Christ's River of Truth produces the Governmental Fruit of Love. We often are deceived in our human will by thinking that, if we can have our own will and way, we will find success and happiness. But this is not true, for God's Will is the Way of Life and, therefore, the route to true success, happiness, and satisfaction.

In the garden of the Bride's heart, Love is represented by the pomegranate. There is an expression in Eastern countries — "Eat the pomegranate, for it purges the system of envy and hatred." This makes the pomegranate a fitting picture of Love, for nothing can better cleanse the heart of Lucifer's envy and hatred than Christ's Love. When we fall in love with Christ's Will and are ruled and guided by the fruit of His Governmental Love, we no longer are subject to being guided by the pleasure or pain of our own will.

Love is given to us through God's Word. "But *whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected*: hereby know we that we are in him" (I John 2:5). Then, Christ's Love is shed abroad by the Holy Ghost, which is given unto us. "And hope maketh not ashamed; because *the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost, which is given unto us*" (Romans 5:5).

The pomegranate, which contains a mass of juicy seeds, is like the quickened Seeds of Truth from God's Word. Christ's Spiritual Seeds of Truth are developed one Seed at a time until the whole Fruit of the Spiritual Pomegranate is formed. As we continue feeding on Christ's Word of Love, our heart will be like an orchard of pomegranates, bursting with love for Jesus Christ, our Heavenly Bridegroom.

Love is the first Fruit of Christ's Redemptive Will, and by sharing our Divine Pomegranates of Love, we can redeem many hearts and minds from hatred and strife.

2. Joy

The second class of Fruit of God's Redemptive Will is Joy. Lucifer's River of Deceit in the human will begets sadness, but Christ's River of Truth begets Joy.

The Angels sang for joy when they saw God's visible Redemptive Will manifested in Jesus at His birth in the manger. Because Christ's Joy is a beautifying and fragrant emotion, it has influential, drawing power.

The camphire plant is a type of Christ's Joy. Camphire is a shrub found in Eastern countries. Its leaves, when dried and pulverized, are used to make an orange or reddish dye with which women beautify themselves by staining

their hands and feet. The Eastern woman is fond of decorating herself with the flowers of the henna plant or the camphire. She also makes sachet bags to carry in her bosom so that her whole being might be perfumed with the sweet fragrance of camphire.

How fitting that the camphire plant, the symbol of Joy, should be found fully grown in the garden of the Bride's heart. Christ's Joy is not like the worldly, temporal joy begotten by the human will which soon passes away. But the Joy of Christ's Redemptive Will never passes away, either now or forevermore.

The Fruit of Christ's Governmental Joy eternally rules the Bride's emotions, and it will feed and thrill her heart with His Bridegroom Pleasure throughout Eternity. This spiritual Joy comes only through the Work of God's Spirit and Word and is found only on the Tree of Life, which is fed by the River of Truth.

God's Redemptive Will redeems us from the sadness and sorrow that are produced by our will, and His Will begets in us His Joy — Joy during our earthly journey and Joy for all Eternity in the New City. Christ's Joy redeems us from all sadness, despondency, and discouragement; therefore, with Christ's wonderful Joy, we, too, can help to redeem others from their miserable, unhappy emotions by feeding them the Truth of God's Word.

3. Peace

The third class of Fruit of God's Redemptive Will is Peace, which is another fruit from the Tree of Life. In direct contrast, the restlessness of insecurity, agitation, disturbance, and hostility is the evil fruit from Lucifer's Tree of Death in the human will, which is fed by his River of Deceit.

Jesus Christ is the Prince of Peace; therefore, as we allow the Governmental Peace of His Redemptive Will to govern our life, redeeming us from all Lucifer's unrest in our human will, we enjoy Christ's delightful, perfect Peace.

We live in such a turbulent, restless day of hostility on every side that it takes a miracle of Christ's deep, settled Peace from His Redemptive Will to give our heart restful quietness.

This Peace can be experienced by God's children who will obey His Redemptive Will. But many reject God's River of Truth, preferring to be filled with the fruits of Lucifer's hatred, sadness, and restlessness.

Spikenard is a type of Christ's Peace. Used as a sedative by people in the East, spikenard was also one of the most durable aromatic ingredients in costly perfumes. Unquestionably, peace is the best nerve medicine a person can find.

Peace in this life is obtained from *acknowledging* that we will have pain and suffering while we are in mortal bodies. Peace does *not* lie in being *exempted* from our trials.

God has Peace for us all, but since His Peace comes from the River of Truth in the midst of God's Golden Street of Wisdom, we must take Christ's Redemptive Will, now, in order to obtain it. The Peace of God redeems us from the restlessness of anxiety, disquiet, anger, discontentment, and all troubled and disturbed states. Peace dwells within the soul, not in outward, material circumstances.

4. Mercy or Sharing

The fourth class of Fruit from God's Redemptive Will is Mercy, which is another one of the Twelve Governmental Fruits on the Tree of Life. People are selfish because they drink from Lucifer's River of Deceit which produces death. God's Word declares that withholding tends to poverty, but liberality tends to riches. God's Mercy from His Tree of Life makes us share with others whether they deserve it or not.

This Fruit of Mercy or Sharing is portrayed in the Song of Solomon through the garden of nuts. In the sixth chapter of the Song of Solomon, the daughters of Jerusalem asked the Bridegroom why He had chosen His Bride above all others. In answer, the Bridegroom said, "I went down into the garden of nuts to see the fruits of the valley [*nakh-al, the River*], and to see whether the vine flourished, and the pomegranates budded" (verse eleven). Since God is not a respecter of persons, the Bride had to prepare herself specially in order to constrain the Bridegroom to choose her above all others.

In the beginning of His courtship experience with her, the Bridegroom found three classes of things in the heart of the Bride which made Him take a special interest in leading and guiding her into Spiritual Marriage Relationship with Himself. First, He found her heart to be like a Garden of Nuts.

The Hebrew word for *nuts* is *eg-oze*, meaning to bind; it is from the root word *aw-gaze*, meaning to cluster, which is a picture of Christ's giving, dividing, and sharing of His Inner Blood Life on the Cross.

So in the beginning, the Bridegroom found, in the Espoused Bride, a desire to share her inner life not only with

Him, but also with others. She was willing and desirous of giving her whole being to serve either as an humble tent on the lonely hillside or as a lowly servant in the vineyard or as an exalted curtain in Solomon's Temple; where or how she served did not matter, as long as she pleased the LORD of her life.

Jesus Christ is the greatest example of One Who was and is willing to share His Life, even to going to the painful place of the Cross and paying the awful cost of going through Death and Hell.

From the "nuts" of Christ's Mercy that were growing in the Garden of her heart, from the beginning of the Bride's Knowledge of Jesus Christ, the Bride possessed the "nuts" of selflessly sharing her life with the Bridegroom and the "nuts" of dividing her life among others. Through inspection, the Bridegroom found that the Bride had humbled herself and had accepted His Redemptive Will, which leads to the Tree of Life with its Fruit of Mercy or Nuts of Sharing.

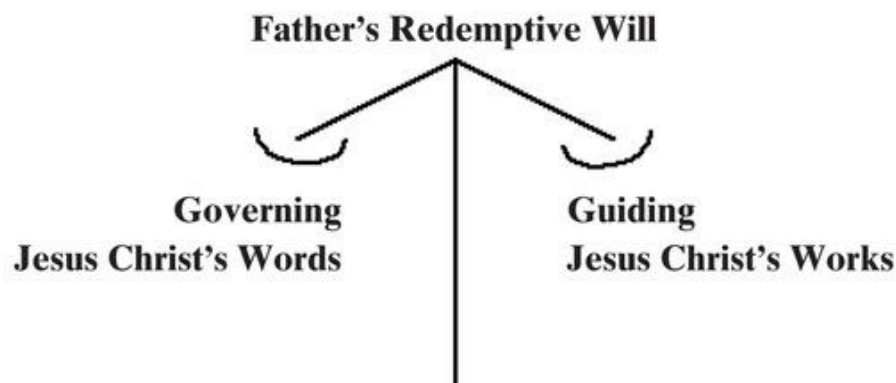
The pomegranate, camphire, spikenard, and nuts are types of the four Spiritual Fruits of *Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy*, which are just some of the Fruits upon the Tree of Life growing in the midst of the Icy Street in the middle of the River and on either side of the River in the New City. Because the Bride will have attained a mature Spiritual Stature or a Spiritual Marriage Union between her will and Christ's Redemptive Will in the days of her flesh, she will be rewarded by feeding on His Redemptive Fruits of Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy forever and ever in the New City.

Beloved, what wonderful Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy are produced by Christ's River of Truth! As we receive Christ's Redemptive Will in our will, now, and allow His Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy to push out the fleshy nature of hatred, wrath, strife, envy, and murder that is in our human will, we experience a foretaste of a portion of that Golden Street of Wisdom, a portion of the River of Life or Truth, and a portion of the Tree of Life with its Fruits of Love, Joy, Peace, and Merciful Sharing.

Accepting the Redemptive Will of Jesus Christ means that He becomes the Governor and Guide of our life; He becomes the Ruler and Restrainer to control, by changing our circumstances and situations according to His Purposive Will; thereby, He causes us to learn His Submissiveness, Surrender, and Obedience in all things. This does not mean that we sit passively and idly by, waiting for Christ to do all the Work of changing us without our helping by spending time studying God's Word and praying in the Spirit. It means that we cooperate with Christ by surrendering to Him so that He can Work through us with His Redemptive Fruits of Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy, and that we give up our Pride of Redemption, with its hatred, wrath, strife, envy, and murder, to Christ's Cross for mortification and crucifixion.

Christ's Bride must learn that she can no longer redeem herself from people, places, and things with her hatred, wrath, strife, envy, and murder. Christ's Bride must learn that it is He Who Works His Redemption for her through His Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy.

Jesus Christ was governed and guided completely, both inside and outside, by His Father's Redemptive Will. Consider Jesus' Words: "Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works" (John 14:10). Christ's Words and Works were the result of the Truth and the Life of His Father's Redemptive Will that was in Him and around Him.



The Father's Redemptive Will always was guiding, directing, working, speaking, and redeeming through the

Words and Works of His Son, Jesus Christ.

Similarly, if we want our building to be constructed of the Eternal Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones of Christ's Truth and Life and not of temporal wood, hay, and stubble, we must build in God's Redemptive Will.

Jesus Christ confessed His total dependence on His Father's Redemptive Will.

...The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise. For the Father loveth the Son, and sheweth him all things that himself doeth: and he will shew him greater works than these, that ye may marvel. For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth them; even so the Son quickeneth whom he will (John 5:19-21).

Jesus Christ, Who lived in the Bosom of the Father, is the Only One Who is acquainted intimately with the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will for Himself and for all the creation.

Therefore, notice how dependent, submissive, and obedient the Son was to His Father's Will. Jesus Christ would not redeem anything by Himself, but whatever He saw His Father redeeming, that He redeemed also.

All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and he to whom the Son will reveal him (Luke 10:22).

The precious, secret relationship between the Father and the Son is beyond human comprehension. The Father puts His Infinite, Divine Confidence in His Son by pouring into Him all His Wisdom, Knowledge, Power, and Authority. And from the Son, these things must be derived; He is the Divine Trustee of God's Kingdom.

The River of Truth, which produces the Fruits of Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy on the Tree of Life, is hidden in Jesus Christ.

There also are four Fruits in God's Will of Revelation, which the Bride has allowed Christ to produce in her life.

B. God's Will of Revelation Produces Sincerity, Surrender and Obedience, Gentleness, and Faith

The second block, as it were, of the Golden Street of Wisdom is known as God's Revelation Will. After we have received God's Will of Redemption in Christ Jesus, we can receive the next portion of His Will, which is Revelation.

The three portions of God's Will parallel the three portions or divisions in the Mosaic Tabernacle, which is a picture of the full Spiritual Stature of the LORD Jesus Christ from His Feet up to His Head. Thus, God's Will of Redemption corresponds to the Courtyard, where the Blood, Fire, and Water or the Feet, Legs, and Loins of Christ's Spiritual Stature are found. God's Will of Revelation corresponds to the Holy Place, where the Incense, Light, and Bread or the Heart, Shoulders, Arms and Hands of Christ's Spiritual Stature are located. Then, God's Will of Satisfaction corresponds to the Holy of Holies, where the *Torah*-Truth, the LORD's Holy Name, and the *Kabode* and *Shekinah* Glory or the Head of Christ's Spiritual Stature is.

In the Holy Place was the Golden Candlestick, which pictures Jesus, the *Light* of the world, and Light pertains to Revelation. After we, by faith, have applied the Blood, Fire, and Water of Christ's Redemptive Will in the Courtyard, which delivers us from the penalty of Death and Hell and the power of indwelling sins in the flesh, we then are ready for Christ's Will of Revelation in the Holy Place, where the fragrant Incense of Jesus' Name, the Light of Christ's Divine Mind of Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge, and Christ's Bread of Faith and Strength are found.

Christ's Divine Light of Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge (the Candlestick), revealed the place of prayer (the Golden Altar of Incense) and the place of the Strength of God's Word (the Golden Table of Shewbread).

The Holy Place fits together with the second block, as it were, of the Golden Street of Wisdom, God's Revelation Will, with its portion of the River of Truth and its portion of the Tree of Life, which produces four Fruits: Sincerity, Surrender, Gentleness, and Faith.

1. Sincerity

The first class of Fruit produced by Christ's Will of Revelation is Sincerity. Insincerity comes from Lucifer's River of Deceit in the human will, but the River of Truth brings forth Sincerity.

Sincerity means clearness, purity, genuineness, good faith, and Truth. Sincerity is an absence of deceit, pretense

or hypocrisy. On the other hand, it is an adherence to the simple, unembellished Truth and a freedom from artificial behaviour. If we want Christ's True Sincerity, we must come to His Light of Revelation since it takes God's Revealed Light of the Word to expose our insincerity.

"If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself" (John 7:17). If any man be willing to do God's Will, having his will melted by Christ's Surrender, and having his will joined to Christ's Will of Redemption, he will receive Christ's Will of Revelation to know the mysteries of God's Doctrine. If we are sincerely impartial in our search for Christ's Redemptive Will, we surely will find His Will of Revelation.

Because people are so deceitfully afraid of getting involved with something false, they do not seek sincerely for Christ's real, genuine Redemptive Will or His Will of Revelation. We do not have to entertain deceitful fear in our mind, if we humbly seek God out of a sincere desire in our heart. Christ will not allow us to be deceived. He will not give a stone to us when we sincerely are asking for bread, nor will He give us a serpent when we sincerely are asking for meat.

It is impossible to wait before God in all honesty and sincerity and, then, to be misled by God since He is more eager to give us His Will of Redemption and His Will of Revelation than we are to receive it. As we surrender in our will and obey the Light we already have received, God will give us more Light.

For with thee is the fountain of life: in thy light shall we see light (Psalm 36:9).

Only by the means of Light, which emanates from Christ Jesus, are we able to perceive God's exalted Purposes in His Revealed Will. If God's Word is closed up to us, we are not walking in all the Light that God already has given us.

The Fruit of Sincerity is pictured by the fig tree as seen in the Song of Solomon 2:13: "The fig tree putteth forth her green figs, and the vines with the tender grape give a good smell. Arise, my love, my fair one, and come away." As soon as the Bridegroom saw tender Figs of Sincerity developing in His Espoused Bride, He called her to follow Him to a new place of growth or a new place of separation unto Himself on Mount Bethel. The Bridegroom put away some things that the Bride previously had been joined and united to in her heart.

Christ's Espoused Bride is pictured as a fig tree putting forth new, tender, green Figs. Although, when He found it, the Bride's Fruit was immature, it was valuable and highly esteemed by the Bridegroom. Therefore, He desired to separate her more unto Himself so that he could protect her fresh, new Fruit of Sincerity and bring it to maturity.

It was the new Figs of Sincerity in her heart that prepared the way for Christ's Espoused Bride to enter into new heights and depths of His Revelation of Himself as her Bridegroom, which brought her into a Spiritual Union with Him as Her Spouse.

When Jesus told Nathanael that He had seen him sitting under the Fig Tree of Sincerity, it caused Nathanael to believe on Jesus as the Messiah. Jesus spoke of Nathanael as "...an Israelite indeed, in whom is no guile!" (no insincerity).

Jesus could not have been talking about a natural fig tree since anyone could have seen Nathanael sitting there. But Jesus saw Nathanael in a place only God could have seen, a place of sincerity. Because Nathanael believed on Jesus, Jesus promised him *greater revelation* (John 1:45-51).

As God's Will of Revelation, His Light of Truth, fills our heart, the tender Figs of Sincerity are made visible to the LORD Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom, just as the Bride's Figs were made visible to him in the Song of Solomon and in Nathanael's heart.

2. Surrender and Obedience

The second class of Fruit from God's Revelation Will is Surrender and Obedience. *Surrender* means voluntarily to give up the possession of our own power over ourself and yield it up to Christ's rightful demands; to abandon completely the ruler-ship of our will, resigning it to Christ's Redemptive and Revealed Will. *Obedience* means being submissive to Christ's Authority, Control, and Instructions.

This Fruit is pictured in the Song of Solomon as the vine. The Bridegroom found the vine flourishing in the Valley (The Song of Solomon 6:11). The Valley speaks of the River of Truth that flows through the low place, the place of humiliation, testings, and trials. The Bridegroom found the fruitfulness of the Bride's vine of Surrender and Obedience growing in her valley experiences.

The Vine pictures the Surrender and Obedience of Jesus Christ on the Cross. The Fruit of the Vine pictures Christ's Surrendered, Efficacious Blood. A vine never stands up by itself since its nature is to cling in a gentle manner to another object or to rely trustingly on something else for support. Thus, it is a true type of the Surrender and Obedience of Jesus Christ upon the Cross.

Christ's Surrender and Obedience are strangers to man's carnal mind and heart since Lucifer's River of Deceit in the human will produces only obstinate rebellion and defiant disobedience. Therefore, we cannot surrender to Christ nor obey His rightful demands upon our life until we have fed sufficiently on God's Word, the River of Truth, which produces Christ's Surrender and Obedience in us.

In the early days of the Bride's espousal period in the Song of Solomon, she began to grow the Fruits of Christ's Sincerity, Mercy, Surrender, and Obedience in her will so that she could continue in her spiritual growth and become Christ's Bride.

Likewise, we, also, must feed on Christ's River of Truth, which is filled with God's Revelation Will, if we want our will to be filled and controlled by Christ's Surrender and Obedience. As we feed on the Truth, our vine with its Fruits of Surrender and Obedience will cling to the Cross of Jesus, growing as a living, fruitful vine into every nook and corner of our heart and will.

We must experience the humiliation of mortifying our proud human will, if we are going to *know* Christ Jesus in the Power of His Resurrection and in the Fellowship of His Sufferings, being made conformable to His Surrendered, Obedient Death. Without the development of these Fruits of Christ Jesus that are to grow in our will, we cannot mature in Christ's Spiritual Stature in our spiritual education and in our moral development.

We need the Love, Joy, Peace, and the merciful nuts of Sharing from Christ's Redemptive Will in order to move upward in Christ's Will of Revelation, where we lay hold of the fig tree of Sincerity and the vine with its Fruits of Surrender and Obedience. With the Fruits of Surrender and Obedience of Christ's Will comes more Light of God's Will of Revelation.

3. Gentleness

The third class of Fruit of God's Will of Revelation is Gentleness. Christ's Gentleness consists of His Generousness and Kindness to His creation; His serene, patient Disposition causes Him to suffer long with His disobedient children. Christ's Gentleness always is mild and moderate — never violent, harsh, or rough. Christ's Gentleness also is a product of the River of Truth, whereas Lucifer's unkindness and cruelty are products of his River of Deceit in the human will.

True Gentleness is consideration; it is tenderness of feeling; it is promptness of sympathy; and it is love in all its depths and delicacy. It is everything included in the Matchless Grace of the Heavenly Bridegroom; it is the Gentleness of the Christ. True Gentleness is kind, serene, and patient.

The calamus plant in the Bride's garden is a picture of Christ's Gentleness. Calamus is a reed-like cane used for food and for making music. How sweet is Gentleness to the taste, and how pleasant is its sound to the ear! The world is hungry for the sweet food and for the pleasant sound of Christ's Gentleness from a surrendered and obedient heart.

In contrast, the unkindness and cruelty that issue from man's depraved human nature are so harsh and so repulsive. Beloved, when Christ's Pure, Crystal River of Truth flows in the midst of our new heart and new will, it produces His sweet Fruit of Gentleness, which brings us into a greater Oneness of Relationship with our Heavenly Bridegroom, Jesus Christ, and with those we serve in His Kingdom.

4. Faith

The fourth class of Fruit of Christ's Will of Revelation is *Faith*. The true Faith of Jesus is produced by Christ's River of Truth. Christ's Faith is His complete, Divine Confidence in His Father's Holy Nature; His Divine Belief in His Father's Master Plan; His Divine Trust in His Father's Purposive Will; and His unquestioning Loyalty and Allegiance to His Father's Sovereign Rule and Reign.

However, unbelief is a product of Lucifer's River of Deceit, which feeds the Tree of Death in the human will. Lucifer's River of Deceit begets distrustful questioning of God's Master Plan and doubtful accusations against His Purposive Will, and it generates slanderous suspicion about God's Headship and God's Nature. False, distrustful accusations against God are products of Lucifer's disobedient death. Therefore, they separate the heart and mind

from God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

God's Word promises, "And ye shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free." Hence, Christ's River of Truth will liberate one's natural channel of faith in his spirit, setting it free from Lucifer's unbelief and distrust.

There are many degrees of Faith's fruitfulness. God desires for us to grow in this fruitfulness of Faith. As we drink from the River of Truth in God's Word, His Revealed Will, we will increase in the Faith of Jesus Christ.

The frankincense in the Bride's garden in the Song of Solomon is a picture of Faith. Frankincense burns for a long time with a clear, steady, and very odoriferous flame, sanctifying and purifying the atmosphere round about it. Therefore, frankincense is a beautiful picture of Faith's Power to sanctify and cleanse our natural channel of Faith from fearful doubts and overwhelming distrust.

Frankincense was used for a twofold purpose in fumigating. First, it disinfected or killed destructive germs, and, second, it sweetened the air with fragrant perfume.

As we drink of the River of Truth from the Word of God, the Faith of Jesus Christ will kill not only the destructive germs of doubts, distrusts, and unbeliefs, but also will perfume us, causing us to manifest the sweet fragrance of Christ's Trustful Confidence in God's Master Plan and Purposive Will in all circumstances and situations.

Frankincense also was used as a medicine. Likewise, Christ's Faith is a Divine Medicine that will heal us of our many diseases of uncertainties, insecurities, and doubts, both in the spiritual realm and in the natural realm.

We have seen the four kinds of Fruit that come out of God's Will of Revelation. As we drink of the River of Truth, allowing Christ's Will of Revelation to find union with our will, His Fruits of Sincerity, Surrender and Obedience, Gentleness, and Faith will be formed in our heart and made visible in our life. Now, let us discover what Fruits of the Spirit are produced from God's Will of Satisfaction.

C. God's Will of Satisfaction Produces Long-Suffering, Goodness, Humility or Meekness, and Temperance

The third block, as it were, of Christ's Golden Street of Wisdom is God's Will of Satisfaction. Christ's Satisfying Will fulfilled God's desire for atonement for sin; it sufficed God's demand for sinful man's reformation because of man's injury and insult to God's Word; it discharged sinful man's obligation to the Law by paying man's debt for him. Thus, Christ's Satisfying Will brings pleasurable contentment and gratification, both to God and to penitent man.

The "blocks" of God's Will must be received in proper order. His Redemptive Will must be received, first, not only in the beginning of our experience of Salvation, but also first in every circumstance and situation thereafter. Second, God's Revelation Will always follows His Redemptive Will. We are not prepared to receive God's Revelation until we have been redeemed by His Redemptive Will in Christ Jesus. The result of having each measure of God's Redemptive Will and Revelation Will joined to our crucified and cleansed will is to receive a portion of His Satisfaction Will.

True Spiritual Satisfaction is found in our Relationship with God in the Head-realm or in the Holy of Holies. We cannot know complete Spiritual Satisfaction in Christ Jesus until our Spiritual Marriage Union is complete with Him.

In the Satisfaction portion of God's Will, we find the remaining four Fruits: Long-suffering, Goodness, Humility or Meekness, and Temperance.

1. Long-suffering

The first class of Fruit of Christ's Will of Satisfaction is Long-suffering. The antonym for long-suffering is impatience. Our impatience shows itself when annoyances, such as delays or oppositions, contrary our human plans and purposes. When we, in restless eagerness, desire to go somewhere or want to do something, and, then, our plans are thwarted, we suffer angry impatience until we allow the LORD Jesus Christ to become the Head over all things in our life.

After our idolatrous Pride of Revelation has established how worthy we are to create our own plans and how deserving we are to have our own will implemented in situations and circumstances, our Pride of Redemption presents us with its wooden cudgel of hatred, wrath, strife, envy, or murder in a vain effort to help us redeem every situation according to our proud worthiness. But remember, our Pride of Revelation and our Pride of Redemption

will lead us to our Pride of Satisfaction, which ultimately will lead us to death and destruction.

How much better it is to allow Christ Jesus to crucify our fleshly, proud will and to humble ourself before the LORD by acknowledging our unworthiness to have Christ Jesus as our Sacrificial Substitute and by seeking to know a greater *union* with Him, as we yield our will to His Will, which is the consummation of true Satisfaction. When we drink of Christ's River of Truth, His Tree of Life will be fed within us; therefore, it will produce the Fruit of *Long-suffering*.

Long-suffering patiently bears injuries, insults, and troubles for a long time. There is special Satisfaction found in Christ Jesus when we patiently suffer long in our personal troubles or with the troubles of others. There is a special reward of Christ's Satisfaction for those who patiently persevere by drinking from the River of Truth.

Lucifer's River of Deceit produces angry impatience, but Christ's River of Truth produces Long-suffering.

Long-suffering or Patience is neither ignorant nor apathetic; it is willing to suffer to help others. Long-suffering or Patience is not stubborn or ostentatious; rather, it is like the fire from flint, which is best seen when the flint is stricken with heavy blows. Long-suffering does not suffer the same as impatience in a situation of illness, trial, or tribulation. Long-suffering patiently thanks Christ for being the Head; it desires to show forth Christ's Trustful Nature in the midst of the trial; it seeks to learn new lessons of Truth; and it is not anxious to be delivered from the trial out of season. But impatience ungratefully murmurs and complains during the whole space of the trial; it continually displays distrust of the LORD's Holy Headship in the midst of the trial; it is concerned only about the cessation of the trial; and it has no thought to learn a lesson of Christ's Truth in the midst of the trial.

However, Long-suffering is like a miner; it draws pure gold from coarse, earthly trials. Long-suffering is a true Peacemaker; it brings Peace to its own heart and to other suffering hearts. Since it protects against all impatience, Long-suffering is a strong armour to the heart. Long-suffering provides patience for all seasons and for all kinds of weather. Impatience only increases and prolongs our misery in testings and trials, but Christ's Long-suffering brings His satisfying Pleasure and Delight while we patiently bear, as long as necessary, the injuries, insults, and troubles that are allotted to us.

The saffron in the Bride's garden in the Song of Solomon is a picture of Long-suffering. The saffron is a plant with purplish flowers that is employed in making medicines. The pistils of its blossoms, when gathered, dried, ground, and pressed into powder, are used as an orange dye. Its pungent, perfumed odours also are valued to add flavour and aroma to food and drink.

The complex and varied uses of the fragrance of the saffron plant make it a beautiful picture of Long-suffering. How pleasant and how satisfying to smell spiritually the perfumed fragrance of Long-suffering as it permeates a person's trials and tribulations, rather than having the unpleasant odours of murmuring, complaining, and self-pity permeating one's trials.

Christ's powerful, spiritual Saffron of Long-suffering also changes the colours of our proud attitudes and dispositions in the midst of our trials, transforming them into feelings of gratitude. Therefore, with fresh, new Gratitude and Long-suffering from Christ Jesus, we are able to transform persecutions, trials, and tribulations into blessings instead of leaving them as misfortunes.

The Long-suffering of Christ's Humility always changes the colour of our attitudes and dispositions and situations when we allow His Will of Redemption, Revelation, and Satisfaction to be our Governor and Guide. When the Saffron of Long-suffering flavours, as it were, our painful seasons, our dark nights of suffering, and our days of burning trials with His Infinite Hope and His Divine Expectations, we patiently wait and joyfully look for a new day.

Christ's Long-suffering is a beautiful quality, for it enables us to bear, without complaint, all the weaknesses, ignorances, errors, and infirmities of the children of this present, evil world. Christ's Long-suffering gave Him an Obedient Mind and Disposition to endure all trials and difficulties to the end, according to the Father's Purposive Will.

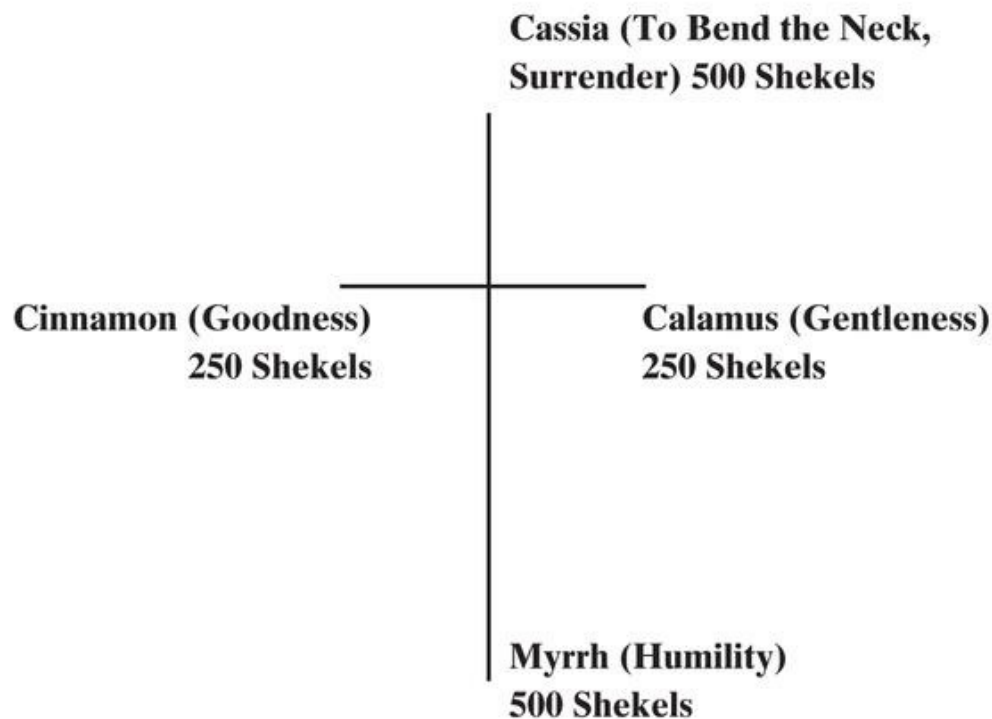
We can find Christ's Saffron of Long-suffering only by drinking of His River of Truth, which feeds the Tree of Life within us. As we feed on Truth and Life, they will enable us to reject our own River of Deceit and Tree of Death that we have inherited from fallen Lucifer through Adam the First. How glorious is Christ's Satisfaction that fills our heart after He has grown His Fruit of Long-suffering in our will. It indeed helps us to bear suffering, provocation, delay, and tediousness with Christ-calmness and Christ-control.

2. Goodness

On Christ's Tree of Life, the second class of Fruit found in God's Will of Satisfaction is Goodness, which is produced by Christ's River of Truth. If we have Christ's Fruit of Goodness, we always will do Good to others, not because they deserve it nor because they have a need, but because it is the Fruit of God's Will to do Good to them who hate us (Matthew 5:44).

But Lucifer's River of Deceit produces the fruit of evil selfishness which leads us to misery, woe, and dissatisfaction. The River of Deceit in our carnal will makes us feel miserable and wretched when it is God's Master Plan and Purposive Will ruling and reigning in our life and not our carnal will. When our "self" is not in control, we are miserable and wretched until we confess our miserableness and wretchedness and allow Jesus Christ to crucify our self-will. Our sorrowful woe over situations and circumstances we cannot control comes from the Tree of Death in our will, making us angry with God and with others. Our dissatisfaction over Christ's Headship or Rulership in our life leads us into a state of total, angry discontentment until we surrender our corrupt will to His Holy Will. But the Goodness of God's Holy Name teaches us that He makes all things to work together for our *good* (Romans 8:28).

The Fruit of Goodness in the Bride's garden is pictured by the cinnamon in the Song of Solomon. Cinnamon, a fragrant perfume, was used in the Holy Ointment referred to in Exodus 30:23,24. Notice the stature of spices mentioned in these verses:



Twice as much of the myrrh and cassia (Humility and Surrender) was needed as cinnamon and calamus (Goodness and Gentleness) to form the ingredients of the Holy Ointment which was applied to all the pieces of furniture in the Tabernacle and to all those who ministered in the Priest's office.

In the furniture of the Mosaic Tabernacle, two materials were united: wood and metal. This pictures the Union of Christ, the Divine Son of God (metal) and Jesus, the Human Son of Man (wood). And upon this Union of Jesus (Man and Wood) with Christ (God and Metal and Word) came the fragrance of the Holy Anointing Oil, the fragrance of myrrh (Humility), cinnamon (Goodness), calamus (Gentleness), and cassia (Surrender).

The twofold Nature of Jesus Christ was dependable, reliable, right, adequate, ample, sufficient, satisfying,

virtuous, pious, kind, benevolent, generous, and sympathetic. The twofold Union of Jesus the Man and Christ the Divine Word of God was anointed with cinnamon or *Goodness*. The Word of God says that Jesus was anointed with the Spirit and went about doing *Good* (Acts 10:38).

Goodness means that which is suitable, effective, efficient, beneficial, fresh, unspoiled, uncontaminated, healthy, strong, vigorous, sound, honourable, enjoyable, agreeable, and happy. How precious is Christ's Fruit of "Cinnamon Goodness," which is produced by His River of Truth flowing through the garden of our heart. What deep, pleasurable contentment fills our heart when Christ's Will of Satisfaction, with its Fruit of Goodness, abides in our will. Then, we can go about doing Good as Jesus did; and we will be motivated by the Goodness of His Will and not by our desires for prideful exaltation, nor by people's needy situations.

3. Humility or Meekness

The third class of Fruit from God's Will of Satisfaction is Humility or Meekness. Christ's River of Truth produces Humility or Meekness in contrast to Lucifer's River of Deceit, which produces prideful arrogance.

Humility is Christ's hidden quality of lowliness in the heart, which is known only by God; while Meekness is the outward demonstration of Christ's Lowliness toward man, working from the presence of His inward Humility in the heart. In other words, Meekness is our patient attitude toward our brother and sister. Humility is our attitude of submission and surrender to God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.

Our carnal man inherited his proud, arrogant nature from Lucifer through Adam the First. Therefore, he is a stranger to Christ's Humility and Meekness. Basically, the carnal heart and will are forward, unyielding, and immodest. They are haughty, snobbish, conceited, pretentious, and discourteous. They are selfish and know not Christ's Spirit of Humility and Meekness. Hence, we are neither humble nor meek in our innate human nature. Only Christ's River of Truth can produce His Fruit of Humility and Meekness in our will, heart, and life.

There is Everlasting Satisfaction in Christ's Humility and Meekness. The Devil makes us think that, if we take the low place of Humility and Meekness before God and man, we will find no satisfaction — only oppression, misery, and woeful frustration — but this is not the Truth. Only pride feels miserable and unhappy in the low place. However, if we allow Jesus Christ to crucify our pride, He will bring us to His Banqueting Table and feed us with the Fruit of His Humility and Meekness, which brings us His Satisfying Will.

In the low place of humility, we find Christ's Throne of Humility and Grace from which He ruled and reigned in His earthly Ministry. From Christ's Throne of Humility and Grace, He ruled over the pride of this world, delighting in doing His Father's Will during all the painful days of His earthly journey in His Human Body. In solitude, in silence, in poverty, in sufferings, in persecutions, in reproach and cruel mockings on the Cross, in Death, and in Hell, Jesus Christ, from His Throne of Humility and Grace, delighted in doing His Father's Will.

When we are seated with Christ on His Throne of Grace and Humility, we, too, can rule and reign over the pride of this world, the pride of our flesh, and Lucifer's pride of rebellion against God's Holy Plan and Will.

Christ's Humility is like a fan that separates the proud chaff of our flesh, causing the cool breath of His delightful Satisfaction to breathe upon our weary soul.

Christ's Humility is like a harp. Its music fills and soothes our heart with Christ's Grace or Gratitude when we are in a valley or a low place.

Christ's Humility also is like a hammock, bringing restful satisfaction in the lowly place, as we praise and thank Him in grateful appreciation for His Master Plan and Purposive Will that will take us through the valleys and over the mountains, to the New City.

Jesus had a Perfect, Gracious Attitude toward His Heavenly Father whose Master Plan and Purposive Will took His Son through the low valleys of this world. Therefore, Jesus said to His Disciples, "I have meat to eat that ye know not of" (John 4:32).

It is in the low place, fellowshiping Christ's Humility, that we are set free from all our prideful fear, our resentment of suffering, and our horror of rejection. Here we experience the Cold Breath of Christ's Humility, which brings peace, rest, and joyful satisfaction to our soul. Here we have the precious privilege of laying hold of Christ's Humility Jasper Light, with which the Bride, the New Jerusalem, will be clothed throughout Eternity (Revelation 21:11,18). The Bride's outer Garment of Light will appear as Jasper, Clear as Crystal. The word *crystal* pertains to God's Icy, Cold Breath of Humility.

God's Living Breath has two sides: Hot and Cold (Psalm 18:13). God's Hot Breath is His Exalted *Kabode* Glory. God's Cold Breath is His Humility *Shekinah* Glory. Through Jesus Christ, God works in the heart and will of His

Bride, both the Hot, Exalted *Kabode* Glory and the Cold, Humility *Shekinah* Glory which are seen outwardly in her Exalted Linen Dress and her Humility Jasper Light. The Bride first is seen clothed in her Glorious, White Linen Dress of Exaltation (Revelation 19:7,8); then, she appears in her Humility, Jasper Dress of Light (Revelation 21:11).

Let us not permit fallen Lucifer with his River of Deceit to cheat us out of either Christ's Humility Cold Breath, with its Jasper Light that is found in the low place, or His Exalted Hot Breath, with its Linen Dress that is found in the high place of His Word and prayer.

The most satisfying place in all God's creation is the place of His Perfect Will, whether low or high. There are many satisfying songs of delightful praise and thanksgiving that can be learned and sung only to Christ's tune of Humility when we are in the low place with Him. This is why *only* Christ's Bride will be able to sing a New Song, which no one else has learned (Revelation 14:3), because she will have learned the Humility Tune from the Humble, Crucified Christ in the days of her flesh.

In the Song of Solomon, the Bridegroom found the lovely, humility plant of myrrh growing in the garden of His Bride's heart. Myrrh pictures the beautiful quality of Christ's Humility before God and His Meekness before men.

Myrrh means to be bitter. Christ, through the Power of His Humility, drank the bitter cup of Suffering, Death, and Hell for us. And although Christ's Humility and Meekness are a bitter cup to our prideful human heart, we should be willing to drink His humility cup for our good and for His Glory.

Myrrh was used as an anesthetic to deaden pain. It was a substance in embalming fluid and an ingredient of the Holy Ointment (Exodus 30:23). The Myrrh of Christ's Humility will quickly deaden and numb the painful pride in our heart that cares more about what others think than about what God thinks.

Christ's Humility embalms, as it were, or preserves Christ's Treasures of Truth in our heart, in spite of the fact that His Treasures are rejected, scorned, and despised by some.

Christ's Humility anoints the soul to minister before God as a King and Priest.

Adam-female thought she would better herself by taking Lucifer's proud will and way, which were contrary to God's Will and Way. But she found, too late, that the Serpent's proud will and way produced destruction, dissatisfaction, and death. Satan's proud will is a River of Deceit that always brings forth destruction and death. Hence, his arrogance and pride are the basic reasons for the miseries and sufferings of the human family. All wretchedness has its origin in Lucifer's pride, selfishness, and arrogance.

However, Christ's Humility is diametrically different. It is fragrant, pleasant, restful, and refreshing to the penitent soul. God's Will of Satisfaction bears the Fruit of Humility or Meekness on the Tree of Life for Christ's Bride.

4. Temperance

The fourth class of Fruit from God's Will of Satisfaction on the Tree of Life is Temperance. Temperance implies self-control, moderation, sobriety, self-restraint in conduct, expression, and appetites.

There is satisfaction only in moderation, not in excess. But Lucifer's River of Deceit feeds the human heart with deceitful lies, telling us the more we get, the more we will be satisfied. However, the naked Truth is that the more the flesh gets, the more the flesh wants.

A person's lack of control does not become a mature tree all at once; it grows little by little. The seed of it begins with dishonesty and insincerity which comes out of our Pride of Revelation, which refuses to face the Truth and which is fed by rebellion, disobedience, and unbelief. Finally, the tree of intemperance reaches maturity.

As Lucifer's River of Deceit possesses our will, it brings forth its fruits of death. Drinking of the River of Deceit leads our will into an uncontrollable, lawless state. If the River of Deceit is allowed to flood our human will continually, it will sweep away our determination to serve God, and it will sweep away all our control over the world, the flesh, and the Devil. We must choose whether Christ's River of Truth or Lucifer's River of Deceit will be the Governor of our will. We can have Christ's restraining Temperance or Lucifer's unrestrained intemperance.

Christ's restraining Temperance is pictured in the Bride's garden as aloes. Aloes were used for perfume, as medicine, and as a preservative. Aloes was a picture of all that is lovely, fragrant, flourishing, and incorruptible (Numbers 24:6). Likewise, Temperance preserves from moral corruption. There is preservation of life in Temperance, in moderation, and in self-control, both in the natural and spiritual realms. Christ's Temperance prevents excessive indulgence, which ultimately will bring destruction to the body and to the soul.

How many have reaped a bitter harvest of death and destruction because of intemperance? The lying deceitfulness of fallen Lucifer tells the human mind there is satisfaction in his lawless will, that one will find satisfaction when all

controls are removed from the will, freeing it to follow its proud, corrupt way. This is a lie! True, moral, life-giving freedom is found in Temperance from Christ's Tree of Life.

There is fragrance and healing found in the Aloes of Temperance, Moderation, and Self-control. It is God's universal medicine. Christ's Temperance from the Tree of Life is the source of spiritual health, strength, and peace. We need always to remember — in God's Will of Satisfaction is found Long-suffering, Goodness, Humility-Meekness, and Temperance from the Tree of Life. These Fruits of the Spirit are our Satisfaction, both now and forever more.

In this chapter, we have seen the paradisiacal conditions of the New City with its Golden Street of Wisdom in God's River of Truth, whose qualities of purity and clearness are like crystal. This River of Truth has its origin in the Fountainhead, the Throne of God and the Lamb. Its Life-giving Waters give everlasting pleasure and delight to Christ's Bride as she drinks of them.

We also have seen the Tree of Life with its Twelfefold Governmental Fruits that continually will satisfy the Bride's taste because she will have allowed the Crucified Christ, in the days of her flesh, to form within her a spiritual palate that has a taste for His Governmental Fruits.

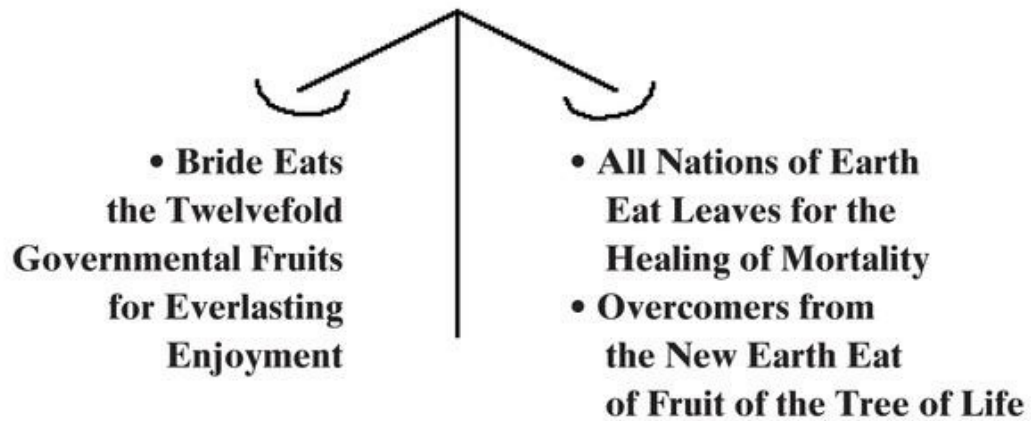
These Governmental Fruits of the Tree of Life are:

- Love
- Joy
- Peace
- Merciful Sharing
- Sincerity
- Surrender and Obedience
- Gentleness
- Faith
- Long-suffering
- Goodness
- Humility or Meekness
- Temperance

We have also seen how the Leaves of the Tree of Life will be carried forth from the New City by the glorified Kings of the Earth who have brought their glory and honour and the glory and honour of the Earth's nations into the New City. They will carry forth Leaves from the Tree of Life and give them to the people on Earth who have not died and who, therefore, have not received the Resurrection Life of Christ, but who still are in their mortal bodies. These leaves from the Tree of Life are for the healing of the *mortality* of the nations.

Thus, man, at last, will enter into the state of perfection in his human body that God had planned for him from the beginning. The overcomers on the New Earth also will be granted to eat of the Fruits of the Tree of Life.

Christ's Tree of Life in the New City will be shared with His Bride and with the nations of the earth.



Christ's Tree of Life

We need to feed on Christ's Tree of Life, *now*, while we have the privilege of growing up into Christ's Spiritual Stature and laying hold of the Prize of being in His Bride because, by making it into the Bride, we can feed *eternally* and *continually* on the Twelfold Governmental Fruits from His Tree of Life. Being able to feed in the New City for all Eternity will be greater than being relegated to just having the leaves from the Tree of Life or being able to have the Fruits of the Tree from Life brought to us only on occasion.

* B. R. Hicks, [*The Threefold Nature of Man*](#) (Jeffersonville, Indiana: Christ Gospel Churches Int'l., Inc., 1969).

Chapter Nineteen

God, the Lamb, and the Bride Will Rule and Reign Eternally in Perfect Unity and Happiness in the New City

The Bride will share in Christ's Reign and in the Reign of the Father's Unbegotten *Kabode* Glory. Each person who has received the Prize of being in Christ's Bride will reign jointly and harmoniously together with the Father and the Son, as one governing Body. The Bride's reign will be one of quietness and peace, without any disturbance, since all God's enemies will have been put away. Her reign will be a happy one of Love and Joy; moreover, it will be a balanced reign of Justice and Righteousness. Endlessly, since it will be forever and ever, the Bride will reign in the New City, a paradisiacal place prepared especially by God for His Son and His Bride.

The Prince of Glory will be forever in His Kingdom of Eternal Happiness with His Bride, whom He has loved with an incomprehensible, Self-sacrificing Love and who has loved Him above everything on Earth.

The story of the Heavenly Bridegroom and His Bride is truly the greatest Love Story ever told or lived!

I. The Freedom from Evil in the New City

The New City and God's Kingdom will be free from all the opposers who have attacked His Person, His Son, His natural Bride, and Christ's Spiritual Bride. Therefore, there will be freedom from God's curse of death and utter destruction in God's Perfect Age.

And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: (Revelation 22:3).

The Hebrew word for *curse* is *khaw-ram*, meaning to shut in, enclose in a net, to consign to ruin, to devote to a curse, to lay waste, and to destroy utterly. *Khaw-ram* literally means to put into a net so that one is taken out of contact completely with all other existence, as if cut off by death.

Let us look at the Scriptures which tell us how God used the *khaw-ram* curse in times past; then, we can understand better what the Spirit has said in the Book of Revelation.

First, God pronounced the *khaw-ram* curse of death on all idolaters who sacrificed to other gods instead of to the One and only True God. Idolaters were to be segregated from the congregation of Israel by being utterly destroyed for their pernicious, inimical effect upon her, God's natural Bride.

Idolatry denies God's Divine Will as the Sovereign Governor and Guide of all things. Idolatry deceives the human heart into believing it can paralyze the Force of God's Will. Hence, the crime of idolatry deserves God's curse of death (Exodus 22:20).

Next, God pronounced the *khaw-ram* curse of death against all enemies of His natural Bride, Israel. King Arad, the wild, reckless Canaanite, endeavoured to prevent Israel from possessing the Promised Land. Hence, God gave Israel power to take the Canaanites into God's net of cursing and death (Numbers 21:1-3).

Through King Arad and the Canaanites, God proved His Master Plan for the utter destruction of all enemies who opposed His natural Wife, Israel. When the Canaanites tried to stop Israel's possession of Canaan's Land, God let them be caught in His net of death.

God again spread out His net of cursing and death over Sihon and Og, two kings of the Amorites (Deuteronomy 3:2-8).

God promised Joshua that He would spread His net of cursing and death upon the Hittites, Girgashites, the Amorites, Canaanites, and Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites, bringing them to utter destruction (Deuteronomy 7:1,2).

God will not tolerate those enemies who try to prevent either His natural Bride or Christ's Spiritual Bride from performing His Purposive Will in obtaining their inheritance.

When Saul interfered with God's Master Plan and Purposive Will to spread His net of cursing and death in bringing utter destruction upon the Amalekites, Israel's enemy from the days of old, Saul lost his kingdom and went to a premature grave (I Samuel 15:3,9,21,23; 31:5).

God appointed the wicked King Benhadad, the Syrian, to utter destruction in His net of cursing and death; however, Ahab, the Israelite King, failed to obey God's Master Plan to carry out God's Purposive Will in destroying Benhadad. Therefore, Ahab finally was forced to give his life because he had spared Benhadad's life (I Kings 20:42).

The LORD also has delivered all nations and their armies who have risen and who will rise up against His Son, the LORD Jesus Christ, into the net of His curse of death and utter destruction (Isaiah 34:2,5).

Another time, God, in His Righteous Judgment, gave the traitors in Israel over to His net of cursing, death, and utter destruction (Isaiah 43:28). However, there will be no more curse in the New City.

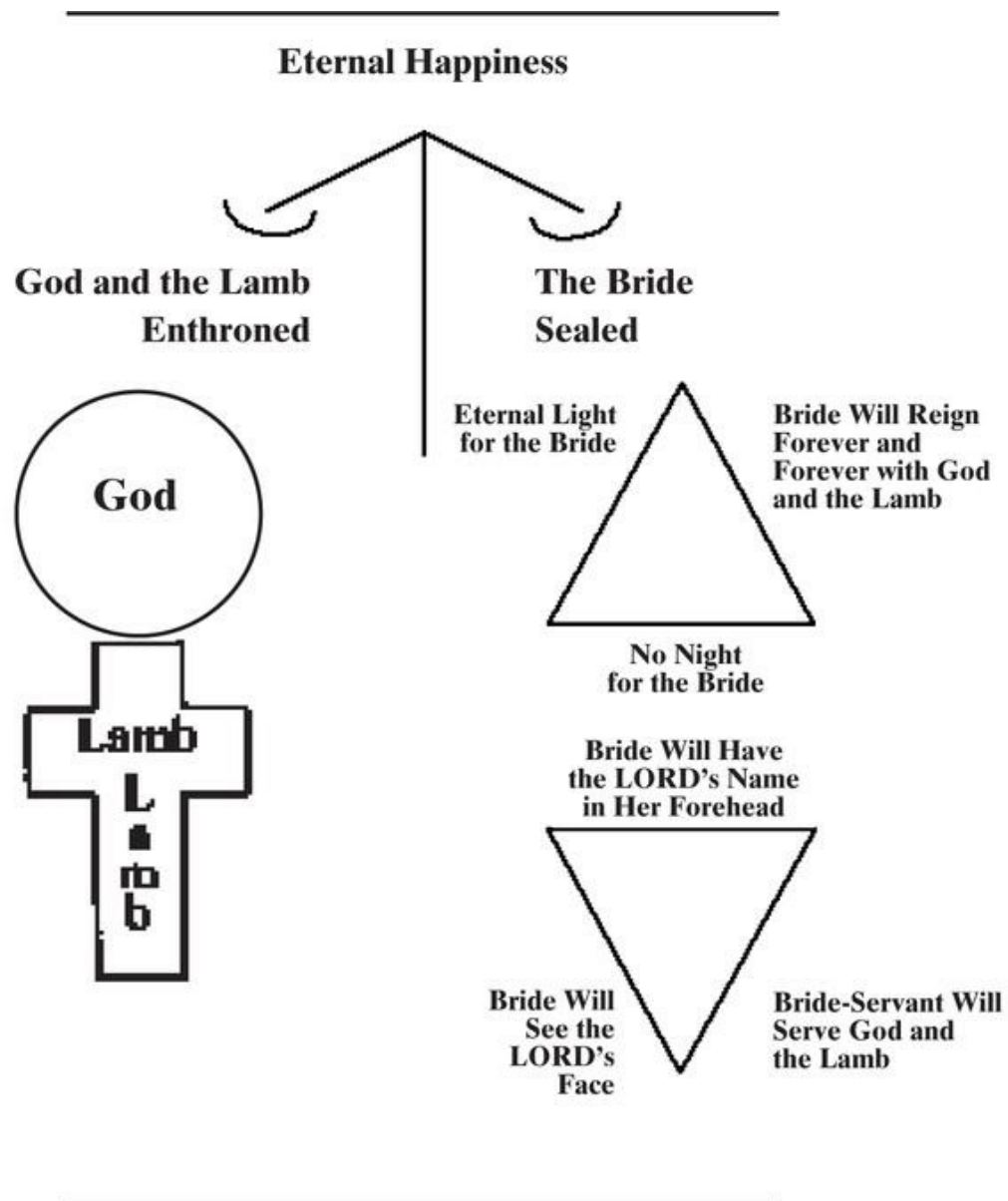
How great is the excellency of God's Eternal Paradise in the New City. Lucifer, the Serpent, will not be there to deceive and to lead God's creation astray; therefore, God will never again be forced to take His creation captive in His net of death and utter destruction.

II. The Eternal Happiness of God and the Lamb and His Bride in the New City

Joy will exist eternally in every heart when God and the Lamb sit enthroned in their Supreme, Sovereign Power!

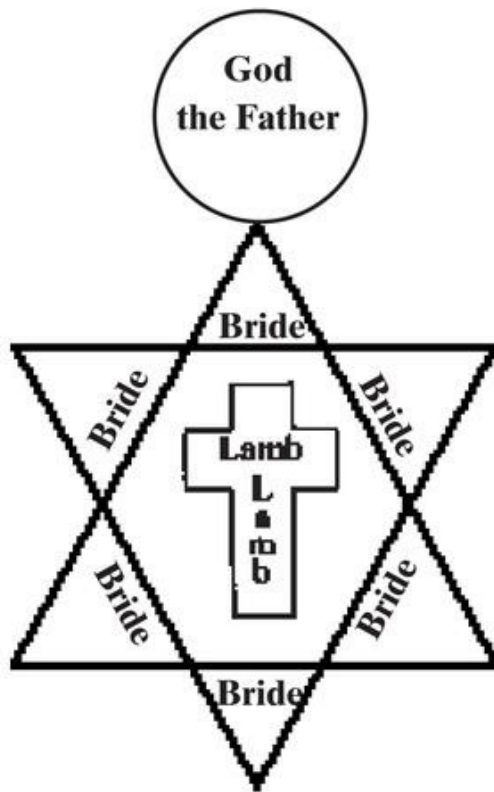
And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the LORD God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever (Revelation 22:3-5).

After all God's enemies have been destroyed, and when God and the Lamb sit enthroned in all their Glorious, Sovereign Majesty, God and the Lamb will loose their Eternal, Unified Feelings of Happiness, Pleasure, and Joyful Contentment, and the Bride will share all these wonderful feelings through her relationship with her Bridegroom. What a happy day it will be when the Bride will be joined in an Eternal Seal with God and the Lamb.

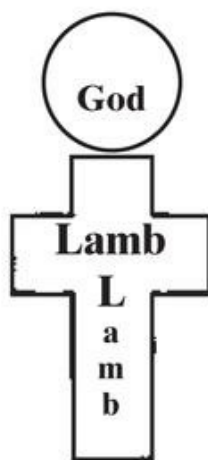


Although the diagram separates the Union of the Father and the Lamb from the Sealed Bride, it is the Eternal Union of God, the Lamb, and the Bride that makes for Eternal Happiness.

The diagram can be put together thusly:



God, as the Head of Christ, the Lamb (I Corinthians 11:3), appears above the Union of the Lamb and His Bride. For the sake of understanding the points revealed by the diagram, let us study each part separately.



A. The Union of God and the Lamb in the New City

All of Christ's earthly Testimony bears witness to His Joyful, Happy Delight over His Holy Union with His Father's Headship and Rulership. Since the Father and the Son are united, there will be *one Throne* of God and the Lamb in the New City, revealing the Spiritual Marriage Union, as it were, or Spiritual Partnership of the Divine Infinity of All Power — the Exalted Power of God the Father and the Humility, Sacrificial Power of the Lamb. God and the Lamb are qualified, by means of their Almighty, Divine, Omnipotent Power, to rule over the heights, breadth, length, and depths of their Kingdom.

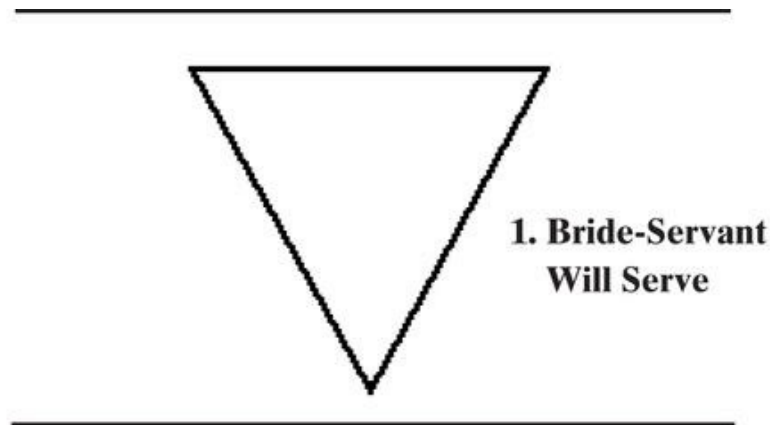
B. The Seal of the Bride Which Unifies Her with the Son, the Bridegroom, and the Father

Now, let us examine the Seal of Christ's Bride in the New City. First, she will serve God and the Lamb.

1. The Bride-Servant Will Serve God and the Lamb

Christ's Bride is a servant; therefore, she will serve God and the Lamb in the New City.

...and his servants [ab-ad] shall serve him: (Revelation 22:3).



The Hebrew word for *servant* is *ab-ad*, from the root word *aw-bad*, meaning to work, to labour, to till the ground, to cultivate a vineyard, and to dress it.

A true servant does God's Will as a true worshipper. A true servant makes himself a mere instrument in executing God's Purposive Will. An *ab-ad* servant to the LORD places his services at his LORD's disposal, whether they are services for His Person, His Property, or His Purposes, and he labours under his Master's orders.

Christ's Bride will have learned to be a servant of God during her earthly journey. She will have laboured to till the soil of her own sixteen minds, as well as working to prepare the minds of others. She will have cultivated the tender vines of Surrender in her own vineyard and in the vineyards of others. As a true worshipper, she will have dressed her vineyard; and, then, she will have taken its Fruit and poured it out to the LORD. In the face of all Luciferic opposition, she also will have executed the LORD's Purposive Will in her life.

The Hebrew word for *serve* is *shaw-rath*, meaning to wait upon, to minister, to perform the service of the Sanctuary, to worship. *Shaw-rath* means to serve in such a way as to see that the personal requirements of God and the Lamb are satisfied efficiently and effectively.

Christ's Bride will wait, attend, and always be in readiness to serve God and the Lamb. The Bride's service, which will express the collective devotion of each heart, will be a service of Love and Devotion to the LORD.

The word *shaw-rath* also was used by the Psalmist to express serving the LORD.

Bless ye the LORD, all ye his hosts; ye ministers [shaw-rath] of his, that do his pleasure (Psalm 103:21).

David called upon the Hosts of Heaven to praise the LORD Who was and is and always will be worthy of their adorations.

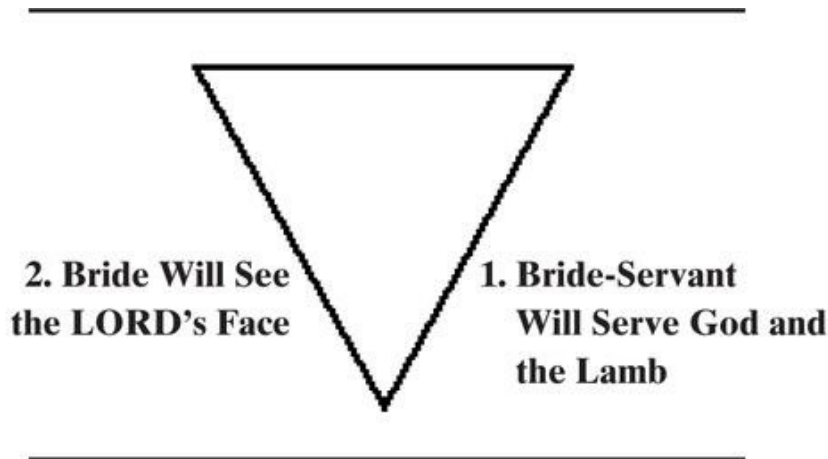
Ministers in this Scripture are called "female servants" who serve the LORD in all places of His Dominion. God's true servants willingly do His Commandments and His Good Pleasure.

The LORD has made His ministers for Himself. Therefore, He uses them for His Honour and Glory. He is their Creator, Master, and Owner. Hence, He is worthy of their adoration.

2. The Bride Will See the LORD's Face

As the Bride serves God and the Lamb, she will see His Ineffable Face that radiates His Glory, Goodness, Light, Joy, Cheerfulness, Righteousness, Rejoicing, Help, Shining, and Gladness. What an unspeakable privilege is the Bride's in the New City!

And they shall see his face;... (Revelation 22:4).



Israel, the LORD's natural Bride, was given a special prayer of blessing to be pronounced continually upon the nation. This prayer included a plea for the LORD's Face to shine upon her.

The LORD bless thee, and keep thee: *The LORD make his face shine upon thee*, and be gracious unto thee: The LORD lift up his countenance upon thee, and give thee peace (Numbers 6:24-26).

When Israel was a servant of God, God's Face shined upon her. The Light from God's Face enlightened her with a comprehensiveness of God's Will and empowered her with His Intimate Strength to implement His Will in the Earth.

David testified of the blessing and gladness that he received from the LORD's Face or Countenance.

For thou hast made him most blessed for ever: thou hast made him exceeding glad with thy countenance (Psalm 21:6).

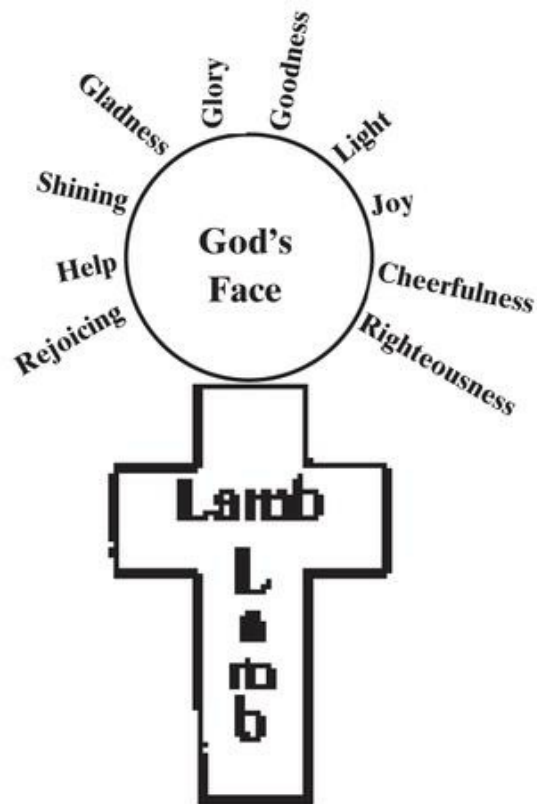
David's concept of true success was to have the LORD's Joy, Gladness, and Satisfaction shining upon him from the LORD's Face or Countenance.

God exhorted His natural Bride to come before His Presence or Face with singing.

Serve the LORD with gladness: come before his presence with singing (Psalm 100:2).

Israel was to come before the LORD's Face with gladness and joyous songs of praise and thanksgiving.

If Israel were happy and glad as she felt the Power and Light of the LORD's *Invisible* Face, then how much greater will be the joy and gladness of Christ's Bride who will see, visibly, the LORD's Ineffable Face in the New City?

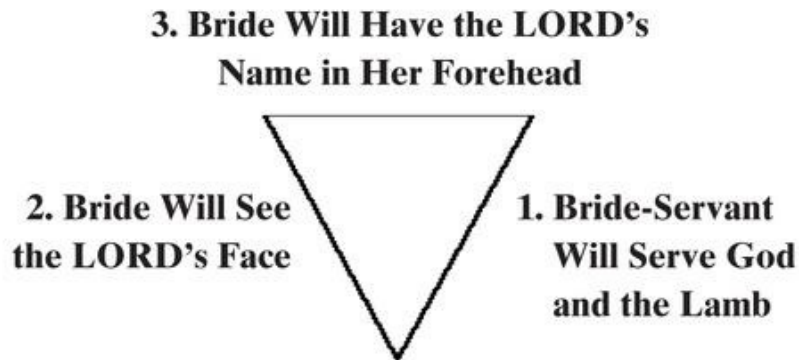


What feelings of pleasure and contentment will fill the Bride's soul as she bursts forth with new, joyous songs of praise and thanksgiving to God and the Lamb.

3. The Bride Will Have the LORD's Name in Her Forehead

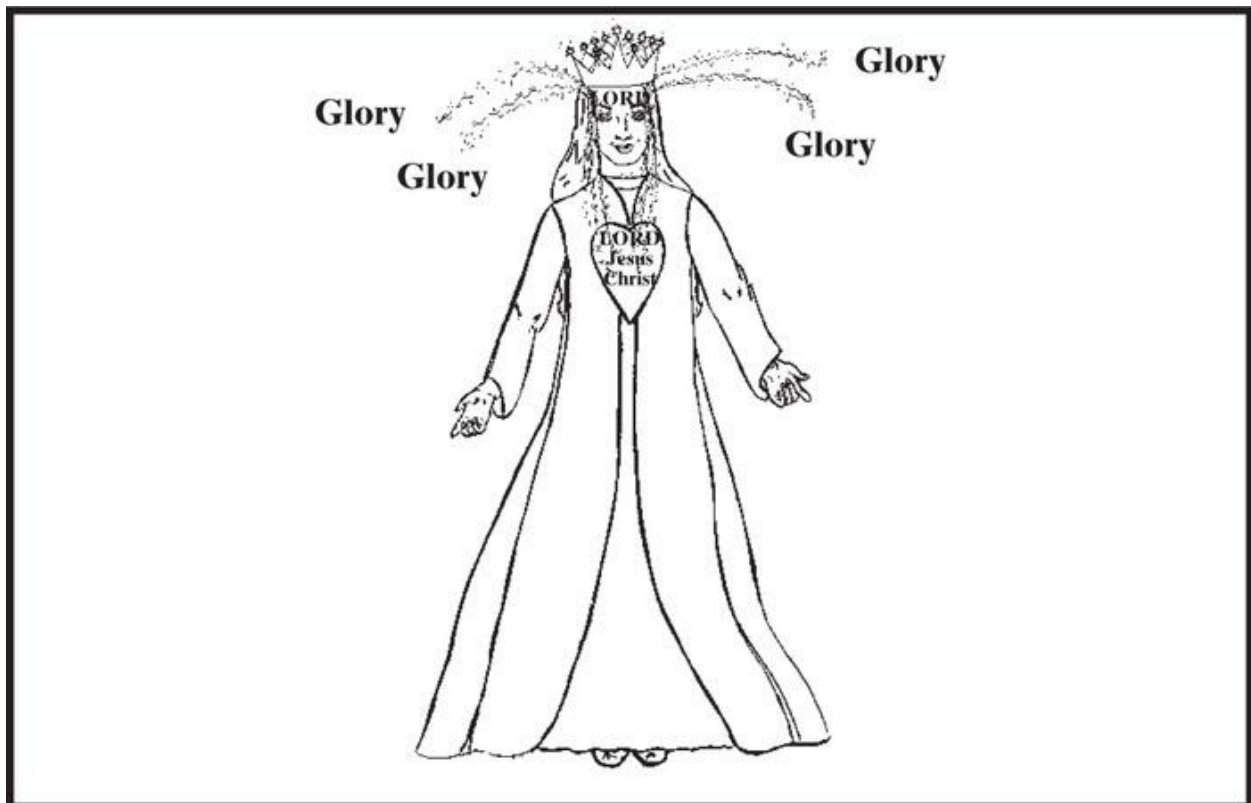
The Eternal Happiness of God and the Lamb and His Bride will consist of His Name being written in their foreheads.

...and his name shall be in their foreheads (Revelation 22:4).



The inscription of the LORD's Name upon the forehead of the Bride is the LORD's acknowledgement that He is the Owner of Christ's Nature inside the Bride. Therefore, He will put His Name upon the Bride's forehead as a mark of His possession.

Here, in this present world, the Bride will have taken on the Grace and Glory of Christ's Name or Nature, inwardly, or invisibly. But in the New City, the Bride's inward possession of the LORD Jesus Christ's Glory and Grace will flow out through the inscription of the LORD's Name in her forehead.



The Hebrew word for *forehead* is *tsakh*, meaning clear, conspicuous, open, and prominent. The LORD chooses the most prominent place in the Bride, her forehead, to inscribe His Ineffable Name.

Because the Bride will have been willing to bear up the LORD's Name in her heart, allowing Christ to crucify her old nature in the days of her flesh, she will be counted worthy to bear His Holy Name eternally in her forehead.

In the Millennial Reign of Christ, the Bride's White Horses of Faith also will bear the Seal of Holiness unto the

LORD.

In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD; and the pots in the LORD's house shall be like the bowls before the altar (Zechariah 14:20).

Holiness unto the LORD means to be separated completely and set apart exclusively for the LORD. Because the Bride will have separated herself exclusively for her Bridegroom, the LORD Jesus Christ, by her choice totally to surrender herself to the LORD —her will, her heart, and her sixteen minds — she also will give her Horses of Faith completely over to the LORD during His Millennial Reign. The LORD will inscribe upon the Horses' bells, "HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD," since they will be used as the LORD's miraculous vehicles to transport the people from the Earth up to the Heavenly Jerusalem to worship the LORD in His Holy Temple, during Christ's and the Bride's Millennial Reign. The bells of the Horses of Faith will jingle praises and thanksgiving of "Holiness unto the LORD" as they transport worshippers up to the Temple in the Heavenly Jerusalem.

The White Horses of Faith will no longer be used to transport the warring Bridegroom and Bride, but, now, they will be used to transport only *worshippers* of the LORD.

The Old Testament High Priest, who was a picture, a shadow and type of the LORD Jesus Christ, also had "HOLINESS TO THE LORD" inscribed upon the Priestly Mitre upon his forehead (Exodus 28:36).

The LORD's Name upon the Priestly Mitre was a conspicuous reminder to Israel, God's Bride, that she was to give herself exclusively to the LORD for Him to form righteousness, purity, and moral perfection in her heart and life.

Likewise, Christ's Bride, in the days of her flesh, will have given herself completely unto Christ Jesus for Him to form in her the moral character of His Holy Name. Consequently, she will be rewarded in Eternity with having His Name written in her forehead.

In that day, the Bride's personal relationship with God and the Lamb will be declared openly by His Written Name in her forehead. The LORD's Name in her forehead, publicly and prominently, will declare that she has been conformed into Christ's Image and Likeness. Christ's Grace and Glory in the Bride's heart will shine conspicuously, in all of its excellency and majesty, in her forehead in the New City.

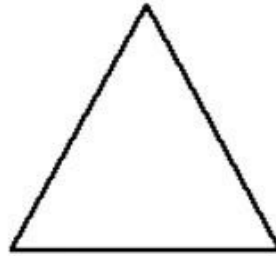
Because Jesus was faithful in His earthly journey, the Father raised Him from the dead and made Him both LORD and Christ (Acts 2:36). Likewise, the Bride will have followed the Lamb "whithersoever He goeth," and she, too, will be rewarded by having the LORD's Name inscribed in her forehead.

4. No Night for the Bride

In the New City, there shall be no more darkness. The Bride no longer will gaze through a veil darkly.

And there shall be no night there;... (Revelation 22:5).

For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known (I Corinthians 13:12).



**4. No Night
for the Bride**

Now, we discern things at a great distance, through great clouds of obscurity. But, in the New City, the glorified Bride will not need the clouds of obscurity to hide the Glory and Splendour of the Divine Majesty and the Brilliance of God's *Torah*-Truth. Christ's Bride will be free from all obscurity and error in her Knowledge of the Truth. Consequently, she, without a veil of darkness, will be able to gaze upon the Bridegroom and His illuminated Universes. All the Bride's faculties will be adapted to an Everlasting, Eternal Day.

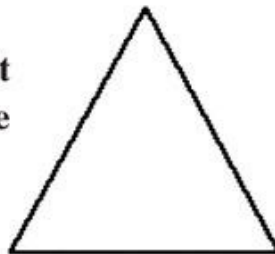
The darkness of conjectures and controversies will be ended. The darkness of difficulties will be solved. The darkness that veils prophecies will be torn away. The clouds of darkness that have concealed Christ's Parables will be fully swept away. The dark clouds of sorrow and grief that have filled hearts with their cold, painful drops will be dissipated. All the dark clouds of mourning, death, ignorance, and error will be banished!

The Bride will have been guided by her Bridegroom during her earthly journey through dark seasons of gloom, dreariness, temptations, doubts, and fears; however, in the New City all of these dark clouds shall flee away in the midst of the Brilliance, Glory, and Splendour of God's Revealed Face!

5. Eternal Light for the Bride

The Bride will not need the artificial light of a candle in the New City, nor will she need the natural light of the creation, the Sun, because the Creator, the LORD God, will shed forth His Infinite, Divine Light.

...and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for *the Lord God giveth them light*:... (Revelation 22:5).



**5. Eternal Light
for the Bride**

**4. No Night
for the Bride**

The Bride, in her Eternal, happy state, will receive uninterrupted Light, which will proceed immediately from God. Darkness never again will interrupt the LORD's sweet Ministry of Light.

The Light that comes directly from the LORD God will communicate joy, happiness, and satisfaction to the Bride. The Light of the LORD God, going out to His Bride, shall be Everlasting and Endless. The Light in the New City will be *perfect* illumination, *individual* illumination, *collective* illumination, and *spiritual* illumination.

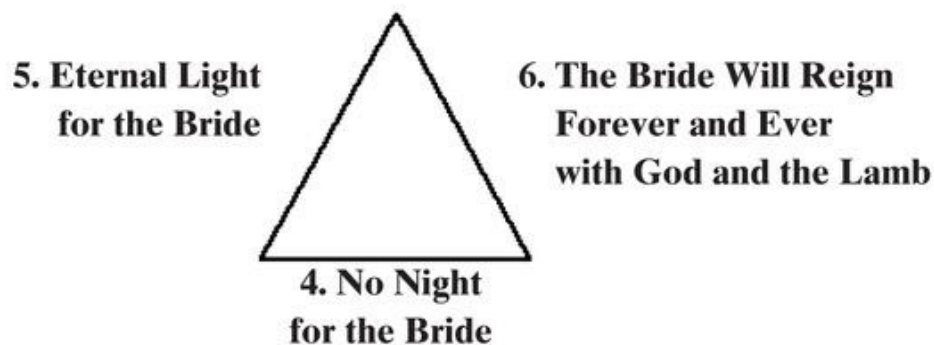
The Bride will love the LORD's Eternal Light because she will have become acquainted with it during her earthly journey; and, as she has gazed upon this Holy Light through a darkened glass in the days of her flesh, she will have learned to love Christ's Light.

The Radiant Rays from the Sunbeams of God's Holy Face will be the Bride's unspeakable joy and delight throughout the ceaseless ages.

6. The Bride Will Reign Forever and Ever with God and the Lamb

Christ's faithful Bridal Servants shall reign throughout the ceaseless revolutions of the LORD's Holy Name.

...and they shall reign for ever and ever (Revelation 22:5).



Because Christ's Bride will have suffered with Him, she will be granted the privilege of reigning with Him. She will experience His Royal Power, His Regal Authority, and His Supreme, Sovereign Rule over all His Kingdom.

If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us: (II Timothy 2:12).

If a believer is ashamed to fellowship the Sufferings of the Crucified Christ, the Resurrected Christ will be ashamed to share His Royal Reigning Power with him.

However, in her earthly days, Christ's Bride will have learned to surrender to the Crucified Christ and to be submissive to His Humble Purposive Will. Therefore, she will share in the Royal, Reigning Power of the Resurrected Christ in the New City.

In reviewing this chapter, we see we have learned something about the freedom from evil which the Bride will experience in the New City. God no longer will have to "curse" His enemies because His Master Plan and Purposive Will for His natural Bride, Israel, and for His Spiritual Bride will have been fulfilled, and their archenemy Lucifer, in all his forms, will be a defeated, subdued foe for all Eternity. Never again will he be able to interfere with God's Plan and Will for His creation.

God and the Lamb and the Bride will reign, then, in total Peace and Happiness and in total Unity in the New City. This means she will be an instrument in God's Hands to do His Will because she will adore Him and love to do His

bidding. It means she will be able to see the LORD's Face. She will have the LORD's Name written in her forehead, through which Christ's Glory and Grace will flow out to all other creation.

There will be no night in the New City for the Bride. Her Seal of Unity means that she will be able to dwell in the Brilliance of the *Torah*-Truth, never needing a veil between herself and its Glory. She will have no areas of ignorance or error in her heart and mind — only Light. God's Light will communicate an everlasting happiness and satisfaction to the Bride, and she will reign with God and the Lamb for ever and ever and ever!

Chapter Twenty

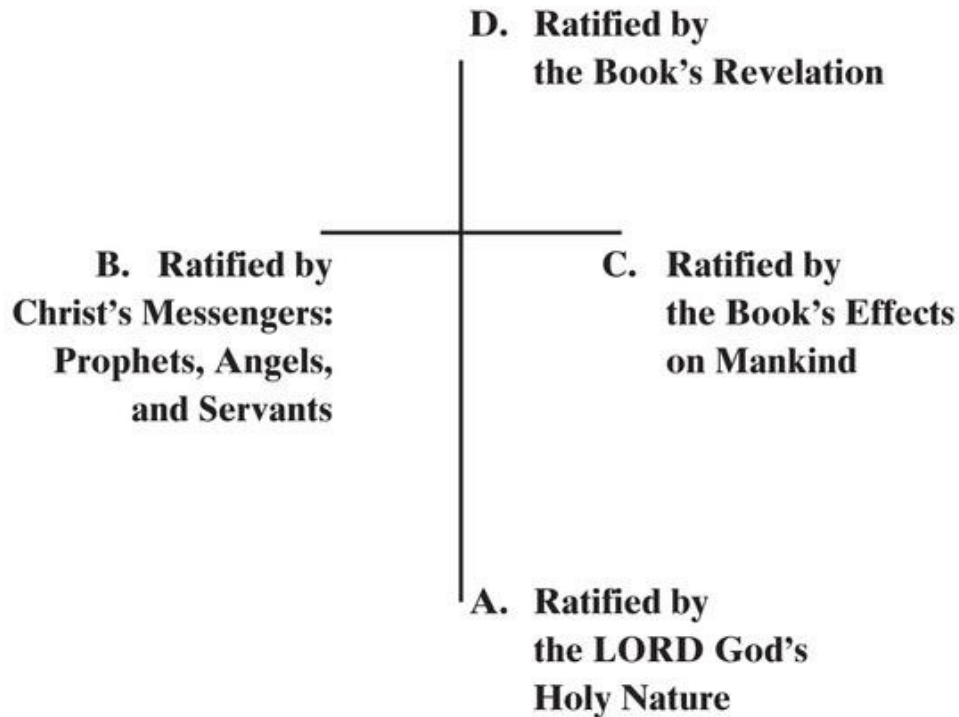
The Ratification of the Book of Revelation and Its Conclusion

And now we come to the end of the Book —the greatest prophetic Book in the Bible — which was written by the Apostle John as it was shown to him in a vision from God. And we come to the end of the series of books written about the revelation John received from God, with the hope that readers will have a better understanding of the mysteries in the Book of Revelation, and that they will have a greater love and appreciation for the LORD Jesus Christ, about Whom the Book is written. It is also our hope that those who have not yet caught a vision of the Prize of being in the Bride of Christ will see and understand what an unparalleled opportunity God has offered man in calling him to experience a Oneness of Relationship with Jesus Christ as the Heavenly Bridegroom, our soon coming KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS!

Nothing remains, as John closes the Book, but to have the LORD ratify what he has written.

I. The Four Ways God Ratifies the Truth of the Book of Revelation

There are four ways God confirmed the Truth in the Book of Revelation: (1) by the LORD God's Holy Nature; (2) by Christ's Messengers, Prophets, Angels, and Servants; (3) by the Book's Effects on Mankind; and (4) by the Book's Revelation.

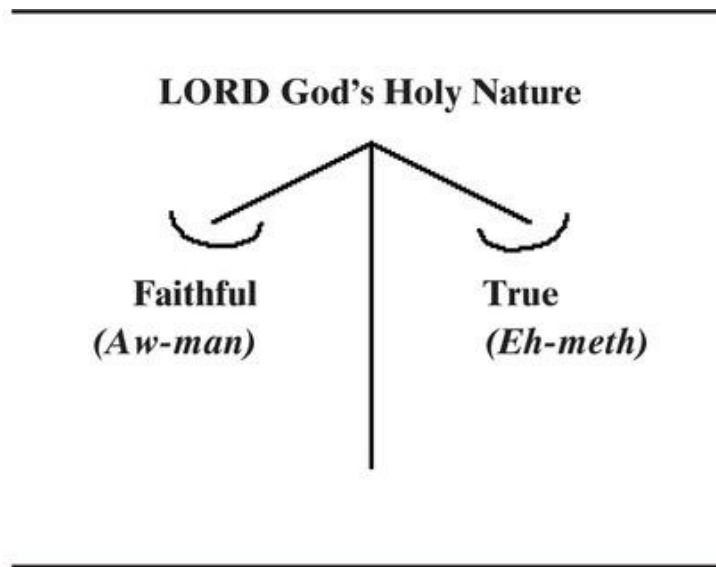


A. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by the LORD God's Holy Nature

The Faithful and True Nature of the LORD God ratifies or confirms the Truth in the Book of Revelation.

And he said unto me, *These sayings are faithful and true:...* (Revelation 22:6).

By studying the Hebrew words for faithful and true, we gain more insight into the Nature of the LORD and why God used this means to ratify the Book. This was God's way of giving His approval, His sanction, and confirmation of the Truth that John had written. The Angel stated that the "sayings" in the Book were Faithful and True. In other words, they were a display of the LORD's Holy Nature.



1. The LORD God's Nature Is Faithful (Aw-man)

Although the words *faithful* and *true* are used interchangeably in describing the Hebrew words *aw-man* and *eh-meth*, *aw-man* is used basically to describe God's Faithfulness. *Eh-meth* is used to describe God's Nature of Truth.

There is nothing higher on Earth to ratify the Truth than God's Word; therefore, when the Bible says the LORD God is a Faithful God, then we know the LORD God is a Faithful God!

Know therefore that *the LORD thy God, he is God, the faithful God*, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations; (Deuteronomy 7:9).

The Faithful (*Aw-man*) God is a Support, a Stay, a Nurse to train up His children. He is firm, true, and eternally established so that all His creation can rely upon Him and confide in Him.

He is the One and Only Divine Power in which man can trust and upon which he can rely. Because of the immutability of His Righteous, Just Being, man can trust unequivocally in the Faithful God and rely upon Him, without any fear that God's Nature will change the absolute firmness of His Master Plan and Purposive Will. He is Faithful and Just in establishing right goals for us, and He is Faithful and Just in helping us attain and achieve the goals He has established for us in His Master Plan.

God's Word also is Faithful and Sure.

The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul: *the testimony of the LORD is sure*, making wise the simple (Psalm 19:7).

God's Word is Sure or Faithful to instruct and to direct the believing soul, restoring it, refreshing it, and strengthening it. The LORD's Testimonies are Sure or Faithful to reveal God's Holy, Purposive Will to man.

David relied upon the LORD's Faithful Nature in his affliction.

I know, O LORD, that thy judgments are right, and that *thou in faithfulness hast afflicted me* (Psalm 119:75).

David knew that the LORD's Judgments were Righteous or founded upon Right; therefore, when the LORD brought suffering and afflictions into David's Life, he knew the LORD was acting out of His Faithful Nature to punish evil.

David also knew that God, in His Faithful Nature, would deliver him from those who set aside God's Commandments and pursued falsehoods.

All thy commandments are faithful: they persecute me wrongfully; help thou me (Psalm 119:86).

David knew that God's Commandments rested upon His Faithful Nature; therefore, they would prevail.

God's Faithfulness governs his creatures in the Universes and also His relationship with man.

Thy faithfulness is unto all generations: thou hast established the earth, and it abideth (Psalm 119:90).

Generations come and go upon the Earth; people, places, and things change. But God's Faithfulness in governing the Universe causes Nature to remain the same, day and night, and seasons to remain in their ordained cycles.

Again, the Psalmist established the Truth of God's Faithful Nature. He said that God's Testimonies are Righteous and Faithful.

Thy testimonies that thou hast commanded are righteous and very faithful (Psalm 119:138).

God is Faithful to punish or to reward according to the worthiness of the person. God is Faithful to keep the Promise He gave about His Son, which was that, if Jesus Christ be lifted up, He *will* draw all men unto Him.

God is faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord (I Corinthians 1:9).

God said that if His Son were lifted up on the Cross that He would draw all men unto Him. Paul reminded the Corinthian believers that it was God's Faithfulness that had drawn them into fellowship with Christ Jesus.

God is Faithful to His children, not allowing more suffering and temptations than they can bear.

There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man; but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it (I Corinthians 10:13).

The Faithful God Who sends suffering and temptations to test and try His children is the same Faithful God Who makes a way of escape after His children have been proven and tried.

God is Faithful to call His children, and He is Faithful to accomplish in them what He has called them to be and to do.

Faithful is he that calleth you, who also will do it (I Thessalonians 5:24).

It is God's Faithfulness that has and will continue to ratify or confirm all the Prophecies in the Book of Revelation. The LORD God also is True (*Eh-meth*).

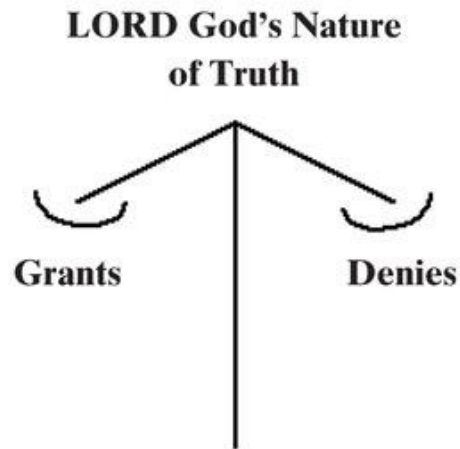
2. The LORD God Is True (*Eh-meth*)

The Hebrew root word for *true* is *eh-meth*, meaning stability, trustworthiness, assuredly, faithful, right, sure, and verity. The LORD's Holy Name possesses the Nature of Truth (*Eh-meth*).

And the LORD passed by before him, and proclaimed, The LORD, The LORD God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, (Exodus 34:6).

God's wonderful Nature of Truth knows when to refuse the carnal wishes and desires which would endanger our way to our true Goal of life — growth unto the Measure of the Stature of the Fullness of Jesus Christ. The denials of the God of Truth are what further our way to our true Goal in life and to the everlasting happiness of being in Christ's Bride.

The God of Truth knows how to mix, perfectly, the granting of our wishes and the denying of our wishes in order to accomplish our spiritual education and our moral development.



The LORD God of Truth grants and denies in order to implement His Master Plan and to accomplish His Purposive Will in our life.

David understood the Nature of the God of Truth. Therefore, he besought His Guidance — His Granting (Mercy) and His Denying (Truth) — because David wanted his life to go according to God's Purposive Will.

Lead me in thy truth, and teach me: for thou art the God of my salvation; on thee do I wait all the day.... All the paths of the LORD are mercy and truth unto such as keep his covenant and his testimonies (Psalm 25:5,10).

David desired to be guided through life according to God's True Grants and Denials. All God's Paths of Grants and Denials are His Mercy and Truth.

When we commit our spirit into God's Hands of Truth, He will redeem us.

Into thine hand I commit my spirit: thou hast redeemed me, O LORD God of truth (Psalm 31:5).

The LORD redeems by His Grants and Denials of Truth. When we learn this Truth, we can praise and thank Him in all things.

It is the God of Truth Who preserves us by His Truthful Grants and Denials.

Withhold not thou thy tender mercies from me, O LORD: let thy lovingkindness and thy truth continually preserve me (Psalm 40:11).

David had not withheld from others the Truth of the LORD's Nature; therefore, he believed the LORD would not refrain from continuing to display His Nature of Truth to him.

The Psalmist knew that only the God of Truth, through the leading of His Grants and Denials, could bring him to the LORD's Holy Hill and the Tabernacles of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.

O send out thy light and thy truth: let them lead me; let them bring me unto thy holy hill, and to thy tabernacles (Psalm 43:3).

God's Light of Truth and His Nature of Truth grant us the things that will further us in our spiritual education and moral development, and they deny us those things which would hinder and thwart our advancement toward our Spiritual Goal. Only God's Light and Truth will lead us to Spiritual Mount Zion and to the New City.

God's Nature of Truth has ratified and will ratify and confirm the words of the Book of Revelation by granting the complete fulfillment of its prophecies and by denying all things that would thwart any of them from being fulfilled.

B. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by Christ's Messengers: the Prophets, Angels,

and His Servants

The LORD confirmed the Scriptures, not only in the Book of Revelation, but in the entire Bible, by His Divinely Appointed Messengers: the Prophets, Angels, and Servants.

And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and *the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done*. Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book. And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, *I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things*. Then saith he unto me, *See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant*, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God (Revelation 22:6-9).

God's Word always has originated from His own Mind and Heart, although He has used different instruments to reveal His Word to His people and to His world.

All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works (II Timothy 3:16,17).

The excellency of the Scriptures lies in their origination by the inspiration of God. Hence, they are God's Word. The Scriptures are a Divine Revelation; therefore, we may depend upon them as *Infallible Truth*.

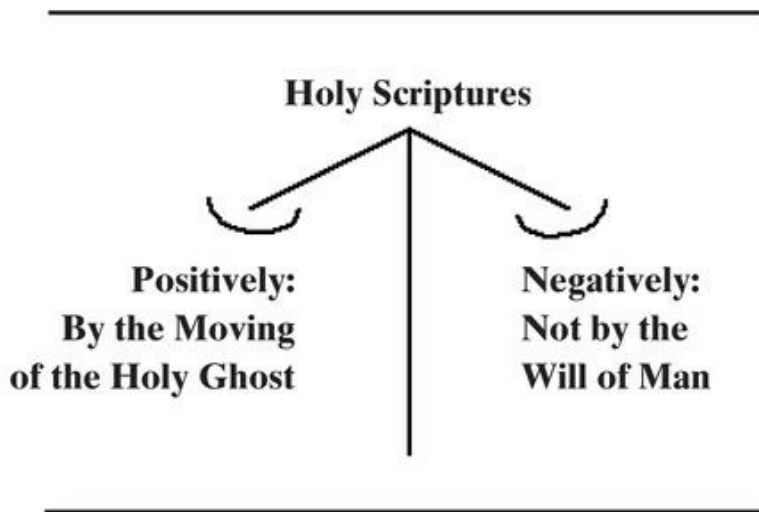
The same Divine Breath that breathed the *Spirit of Life* into us has chosen to maintain our Spirit of Life by breathing His *Words of Life* into us.

God's Word is ratified by its Infallible Truth, its Divine Purity, the Inspiring Grandeur of its Sublimity, and the Doctrine of its Moral High Calling.

The Scriptures were given by the Working of the Holy Ghost and the Spirit of Christ.

For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: *but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost* (II Peter 1:21).

The Scriptures are ratified by their Divine Origin. The Scriptures came not by the will, mind, or opinions of carnal man.



The Scriptures came through Holy Men of God as the Holy Ghost moved and dictated with Power, Virtue, and Simplicity. Holy Men were the instruments, but the Holy Ghost was the Supreme, Sovereign Agent, along with the Spirit of Christ, that worked through the Holy Prophets to give man the Word of Truth.

Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you: Searching what, or what manner of time *the Spirit of Christ which was in them* did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow (I Peter 1:10,11).

Christ is the theme of the Old Testament as well as the New Testament. The Prophets of old had the Spirit of

Christ in them, and it inspired them to inquire and to search for the time of the event of Christ's incarnation in Flesh and of the time of His suffering on the Cross and His resurrection from the dead by the Father's Unbegotten Glory. Many Scriptures written by the Prophets of old, under the Inspiration of Christ's Spirit, have been ratified or confirmed by Christ's fulfillment of Old Testament Prophecies.

From the beginning in the Old Testament, God has used Angels to carry His Words of Truth to His people. Some examples of this happening was on the occasions when Angels brought God's Word to Hagar, Abraham, Jacob, Joseph, Moses, Israel, Baalim, Gideon, and Elijah.

In the New Testament, an Angel announced the birth of the LORD Jesus Christ. Then, the LORD's Angel guided Jesus' mother Mary and Joseph her spouse to safety in and out of Israel. An Angel ministered to Jesus in the Garden of Gethsemane; brought healing to the waters at Bethesda at a certain season; opened the prison doors for Peter; guided Philip to the Ethiopian eunuch; and told Cornelius to send for the Apostle Peter so that he could hear the Gospel of Christ.

The LORD sent an Angel to deliver Simon Peter out of the hand of King Herod; then, He sent an Angel to smite wicked King Herod so that he gave up the ghost. And, an Angel of the LORD spoke to the Apostle Paul, saving him from destruction, as well as all who were with him on the storm-tossed ship.

According to the Book of Revelation, Angels also will be employed in carrying out God's Master Plan and Purposive Will for the end of the Age.

Holy Angels are employed to show things to Holy Men of God. The Faithful, True God does not use His Holy Angels and His Holy Men to deceive the world, but He uses them to ratify and to confirm His Master Plan and Purposive Will, which shortly will be confirmed by their accomplishments in the world and upon the Earth.

The LORD Jesus Christ will come quickly and separate those who wisely have believed the messages from His Holy Prophets, Angels, and Servants, from those who have doubted to their own destruction.

An Angel was the one to show the Apostle John his vision, and John was so overcome with the Truth given to him by the Angel that he foolishly fell down to worship him. Yet, John, in his faithful humility, left a perpetual record of his foolish actions as a warning to others.

The Angel, the Apostle's faithful guide and interpreter of the Truth, not only refused to accept John's adoration to him, but he reproved John for his foolishness, showing him that he, too, was only a creature and that God, the Creator, alone is worthy to receive Praise, Power, Honour, and Glory.

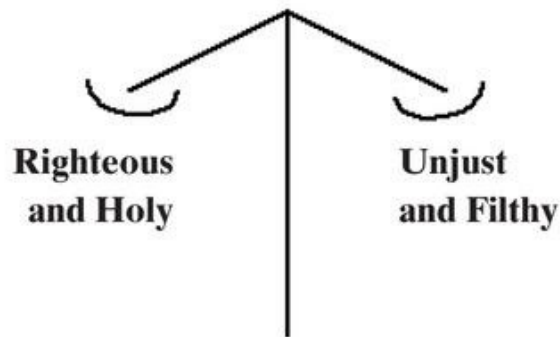
C. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by Its Effects upon Mankind

The Book of Revelation makes a lasting imprint and impression upon the Righteous and Holy and also upon the unjust and filthy.

And he saith unto me, Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand. He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous, let him be righteous still: and he that is holy, let him be holy still (Revelation 22:10,11).

Man is affected by the Word of God whether he believes what it says or not. Man's attitude toward God does not affect His Plans and Purposes; however, man is affected by Truth, either positively or negatively.

The Book of Revelation Affects:



The Truth in the Book of Revelation affects the Righteous who are living in a just, upright manner, doing what is morally right and virtuous, by strengthening their resolution and purpose to continue in the morally right way.

The Truth in the Book of Revelation also has influential Power and a cathartic Effect upon those who are Holy — those who are sanctified and sacredly consecrated exclusively unto the LORD — by continually sanctifying them from all thoughts, feelings, and deeds that would taint their purity and defile their separations unto the LORD.

The Book of Revelation also has an Effect upon those who are unjust, dishonest, unfaithful, and those who have a contrary mind toward God's Justice. God's Word of Truth brings a horrible fright to the contumacious ones, those who obstinately resist the Authority of God's Truth, those who are insubordinate to God's Master Plan, and those who are disobedient to His Purposive Will.

God's Truth in the Book of Revelation causes the unjust to harden their hearts and wills all the more, as Pharaoh did.

The Truth in the Book of Revelation also affects the filthy, those who are morally corrupt, foul, obscene, and lewd. The Light of God's Truth in the Book of Revelation causes morally corrupt people to flee deeper into Lucifer's darkness so that they will not be constrained by the Light of Truth to separate themselves from their dirty, filthy thoughts, feelings, and deeds.

The person with a filthy mind and heart continues his disgustingly dirty, offensive, loathsome deeds of corruption, which are done under Lucifer's cloud of darkness, in preference to committing himself to God's Pure, Holy Mind and Heart and the clean, agreeable, lovable deeds of incorruption which are done in Christ's Resurrected Glory Light.

In this world, God leaves man to his own choice. Therefore, He says, in so many words, "Let those who are Righteous and Holy follow their choice, and let those who are unjust and filthy also follow their choice."

The Effects of the Book of Revelation on the clean and the unclean are a confirmation of its validity as God's Word of Truth.

D. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by Its Revelation of the LORD Jesus Christ and the Things He Will Do

All the Scriptures are a revelation of the LORD Jesus Christ, God's Son. The fact that the Book of Revelation also is a revelation of the LORD Jesus Christ ratifies it and confirms it as God's Word.

In these last verses of the Book, we first see the LORD Jesus Christ revealed as the Rewarder.

1. The LORD Jesus Christ, the Rewarder

There is no doubt we are living very near the time of the Second Coming of the LORD to this Earth. And when

He comes, John said, He will come as a Rewarder to give to each person what he deserves.

And, behold, I come quickly: *and my reward is with me*, to give every man according as his work shall be (Revelation 22:12).

The LORD's Coming will be ushered in with a "Behold!" — meaning Look! See! Grasp the Truth! Hold it in view and give attention to it! Hence, beholding His Coming will help us to live a Holy life before the LORD.

As a Rewarder, the LORD Jesus Christ will give every man according to his works, whether they are good or evil. The LORD will recompense the Righteous and Holy according to the merits of their good deeds and services for Him. Likewise, He will reward the unjust and filthy according to the merits of their evil deeds and services done against Him.

Each person is responsible to Christ alone; therefore, he, alone, must keep his appointment with Christ to receive his reward from Christ alone.

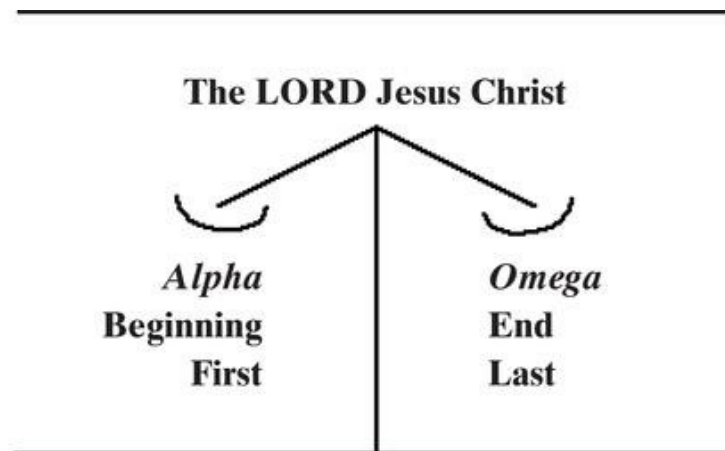
Every man must meet the works of his thoughts, feelings, and deeds that have his name stamped upon them. In this world, we can project our works off on to others, if we dishonestly choose to do so. However, when we stand before Christ, we must pick up all our works that have our name upon them and receive Christ's reward according to our works, whether they are good or evil.

He will return as a Rewarder, and he will return as the *Alpha* and *Omega*.

2. The LORD Jesus Christ, the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and the End, the First and the Last

The LORD Jesus Christ is the *Alpha*, the Beginning, the First of God's Word. God begot Him in His own Bosom before anything was made. He also is the *Omega*, the End, the Last of God's Word.

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last (Revelation 22:13).



God placed *all* the Wisdom and Knowledge of His Master Plan and Purposive Will in Christ. Hence, Christ is the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and End, the First and Last of all *God's Word*.

The LORD Jesus Christ is the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and End, the First and Last of all *creation*. He was before all things, and He comes after all things as the Governor and Guide of all creation.

The LORD Jesus Christ is the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and End, the First and Last of God's *Salvation*. Christ was God's first Sacrifice before the foundation of the world, and He was God's last Sacrifice at Calvary's Cross for man's Salvation. He fulfilled all the Old Testament types. After Christ's Sacrifice, there was need of no other.

Christ is the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and End, the First and Last of the *Church*. He is the Beginning or Originator, and He is the End and Last as the Head over all things to the Church.

The LORD Jesus Christ is the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and End, the First and Last of His *Bride*.

In the beginning of their Relationship, Christ unveiled Himself to His Bride as the Lamb, Who began to lead her in all His Humility Ways and Righteous Paths (Revelation 14:1-4). The Bride followed the *Alpha*, the Beginning, the First Lamb, whithersoever He went. The Bride is married to the *Omega*, the End, the Last Lamb, Who will be

her Governing, Guiding Husbandman and Bridegroom in the New City throughout Eternity.

The next thing that was revealed to John about the LORD Jesus Christ is that He will have guests from the New Earth visit Him in the New City. This is another way the Book of Revelation will be ratified.

3. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Ratify the Book of Revelation When He Receives Guests from the New Earth

The Book of Revelation will be ratified for Eternity by Christ's reception of guests from the New Earth. These guests will be healed of their mortality by eating of the leaves from the Tree of Life that will be brought to them by the resurrected kings of the Earth.

Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may *enter in through the gates into the city* (Revelation 22:14).

These healed people, who are doers of God's Commandments, will be blessed by being carried by the Bride's White Horses of Faith through the Gates of the New City to worship God and the Lamb. These White Horses are the ones that have HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD inscribed upon their bells.

4. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Ratify the Book of Revelation When He Excludes the Wicked from the New City by Confining Them in the Lake of Fire

While some people on the New Earth will be allowed to come into the New City, the people in the Lake of Fire will be excluded forever.

For without [the Holy City] are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie (Revelation 22:15).

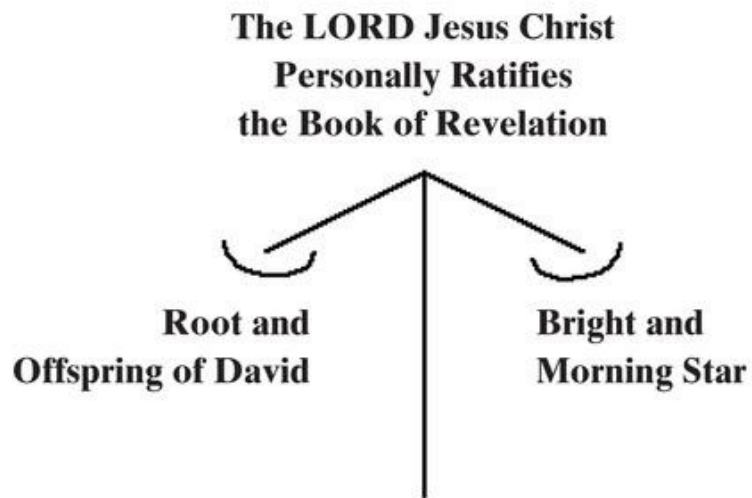
Christ never will allow certain classes of people to enter the New City: namely, the people who are confined in the Lake of Fire — dogs, unrepentant persons of headstrong, intractable spirits and persons of low, mean, contemptible souls; or sorcerers, unrepentant persons who have used evil, supernatural powers of witchcraft over people and affairs in the days of their flesh; or whoremongers, unrepentant persons who have fornicated with whores in promiscuous sexual intercourse; or murderers, unrepentant persons who have killed another human being, unlawfully, maliciously, and premeditatedly; or idolaters, unrepentant persons who have given their devotions and admiration to the worshipping and serving of idols or false gods; or unrepentant persons who love and make a lie, those who love to deceive by giving false impressions and who deliberately make false statements with the intent to deceive.

The LORD Jesus Christ will ratify and confirm the Book of Revelation all over again when He excludes this evil, wicked brood of unrepentant souls from the New Holy City.

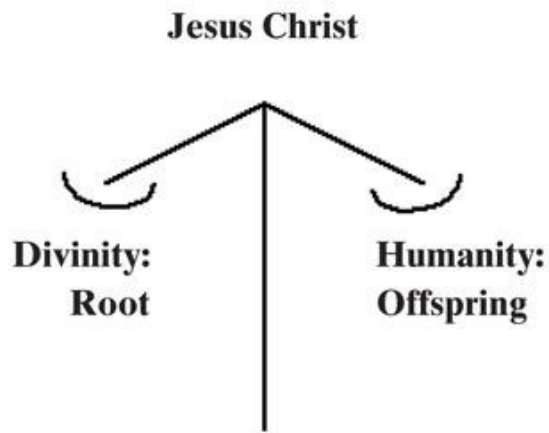
5. The LORD Jesus Christ Has Ratified and Will Ratify the Book of Revelation by His Spirit of Prophecy

As the Root and Offspring of David and as the Bright and Morning Star, Jesus Christ has ratified and confirmed the Book of Revelation.

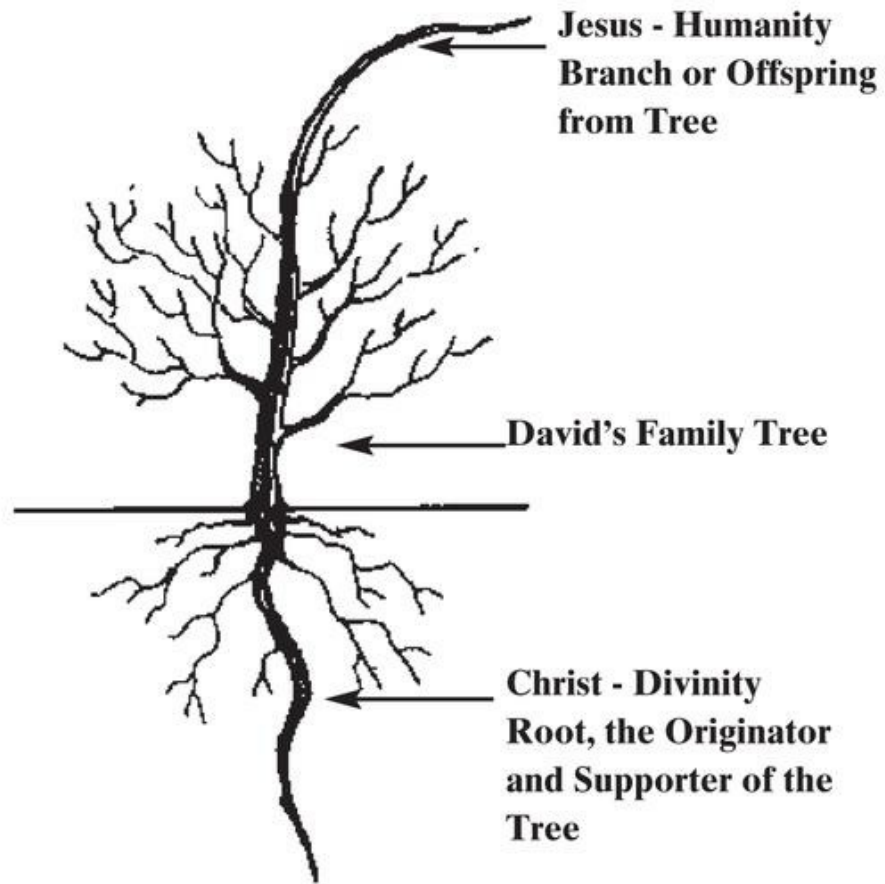
I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. *I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star* (Revelation 22:16).



Jesus Christ is both the Root and the Offspring of David. The Root speaks of the Christ and His Divinity; the Offspring speaks of Jesus' Humanity and His descent from the House of David.



Christ, as the Divine Root, is the Origin and the Upholder of David's family tree. And as David's descendent according to the flesh, Jesus is the Branch of the tree.



And in that day there shall be *a root of Jesse*, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious (Isaiah 11:10).

This Scripture speaks of the time that Christ the Word should be made Flesh and die on the Cross; and it speaks of the increase of His Kingdom when both Jew and Gentile were made one through the Blood of His Cross.

Isaiah also spoke of when Christ the Divine Word would be uprooted from Heaven's soil and sent to Earth as a "Root out of a dry ground."

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and *as a root out of a dry ground*: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him (Isaiah 53:2).

Christ, the Divine Root, was clothed with such Humility of the Flesh that few truly recognized Him.

The Hebrew word for *root* is *sho-resh*, meaning a binding and fastening, to send out roots, increase, strike deeper and wider, the lowest part as a base or support. Christ is the Divine Root in which God binds all creation together as one.

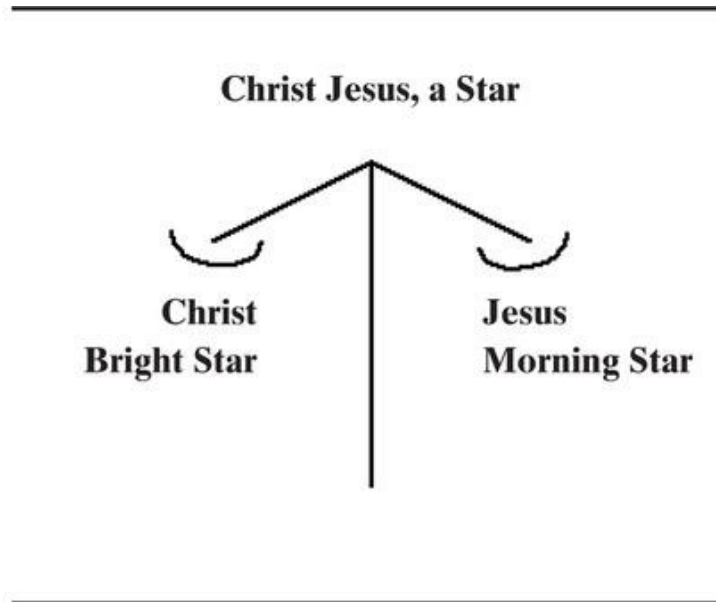
Jesus is the Offspring or Branch from the House of David, according to the flesh.

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a *Branch shall grow out of his roots*: (Isaiah 11:1).

Jesus is the Branch or Offspring from Christ, the Root. From Jesus and His Efficacious Sacrifice at Calvary's Cross, new *Resurrection Life* has sprung forth for the whole human race. As the Root and Branch, Christ Jesus provides Creative, *Supporting Life*, as well as Fresh Resurrection Life, for all mankind.

Christ, as the Bright Star, provides *Governing Light* to lead penitent souls through the darkness of this world; and He is the *Guiding Light* to help believers separate the Light of Truth from Lucifer's darkness of error and falsehoods.

Jesus, as the Morning Star, is a faithful Doorkeeper, unveiling the Father's Master Plan and Purposive Will and unveiling His Bride.



The Hebrew word for *bright* is *no-gah*, meaning brightness, the shining light of the natural Sun, Moon, and Stars, and morning light.

When Israel returns to the LORD Jesus Christ, the Messiah, at His Second Coming, the *No-gah* Brightness of Christ's Righteousness will be seen around the world.

For Zion's sake will I not hold my peace, and for Jerusalem's sake I will not rest, until the *righteousness thereof go forth as brightness*, and the salvation thereof as a lamp that burneth (Isaiah 62:1).

Zion's Salvation will be seen as a bright (*no-gah*) burning torch, far and wide, in Christ's Millennial Reign.

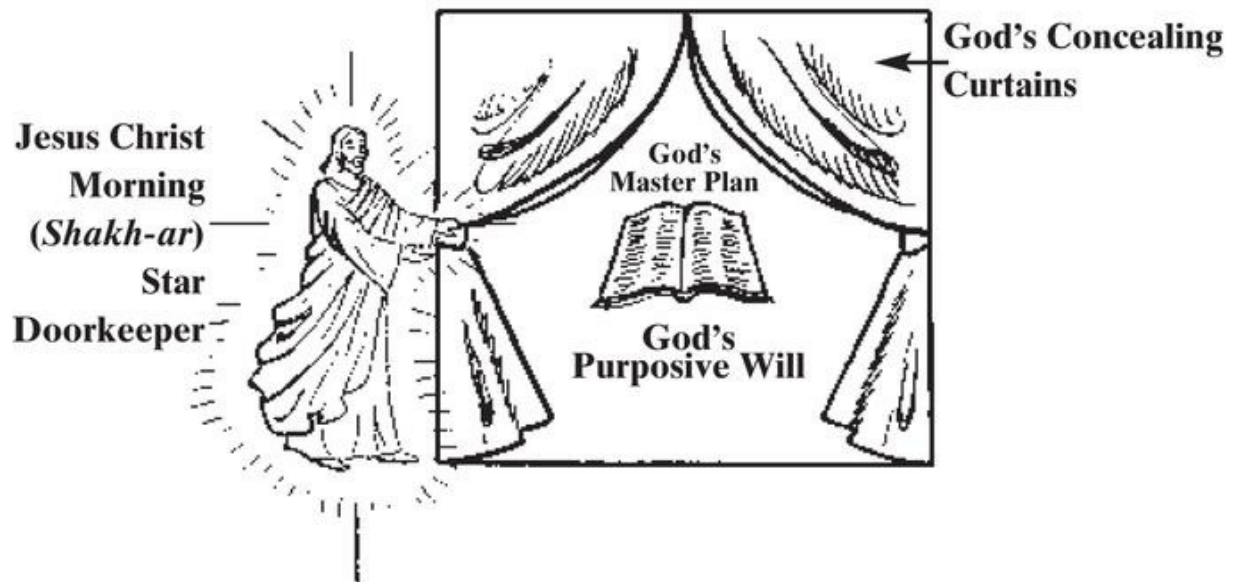
The Father brought His Divine, *No-gah* Brightness with Him when He came to lift His Son up and out of Death and Hell (Psalm 18:12).

Now the Son of God possesses the *No-gah* Brightness of the Father's Unbegotten, Resurrection Glory. Christ Jesus is a Bright "*No-gah*" Star.

He also is the Morning Star. The Hebrew word for *morning*, here, is *shakh-ar*, meaning the first rays of morning light which is a doorkeeper for the day. The *shakh-ar* morning light draws back the curtains of darkness, making way for the unveiling of the Sun in the sky.

Lucifer was the Son of the Morning (*Shakh-ar*), and his responsibility was to draw back the Heavenly Curtains to make way for the unveiling of the Sun of Righteousness. But Lucifer failed in his ministry because of his pride; consequently, he lost his glorious privilege of being the Son of the Morning.

However, Jesus Christ, as a faithful Son, is a Morning (*Shakh-ar*) Star, a Doorkeeper, drawing back God's concealing curtains and making way for unveiling of God's Master Plan and Purposive Will.



Jesus Christ provides Governing, Guiding Light by unveiling God's Master Plan and Purposive Will, and in so doing, He has ratified and will ratify the Book of Revelation.

6. The LORD Jesus Christ Has Ratified and Will Ratify the Book of Revelation by a Special Invitation from the Spirit and the Bride and by a General Invitation from "Those Who Hear"

Christ has ratified the Book of Revelation by a special call from the Spirit and the Bride.

And the Spirit and the bride say, Come, And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will let him take the water of life freely (Revelation 22:17).



God's Spirit, by His sweet influencing Power, invites souls to become part of the Book of Revelation by creating

a spiritual thirst in their hearts to know theoretically and to understand the Divine Truths of Wisdom and Knowledge contained in the Book.

From her Union with Christ's Empirical Knowledge of Wisdom and Understanding of the Book, Christ's Bride invites others to the streams of refreshing Truth found in the Book of Revelation.

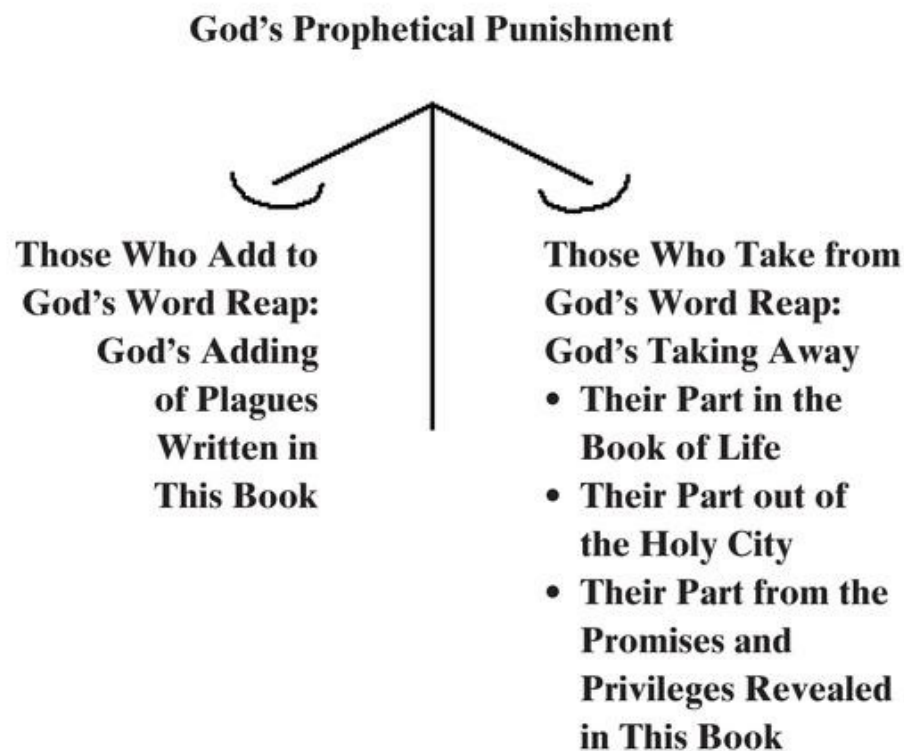
Thus, God's Gracious Spirit and Christ's Grateful Bride join in ratifying the excellency of the streams of Truth in the Book.

7. The LORD Jesus Christ Ratified the Book of Revelation by Revealing God's Condemnation and Curses on Those Who Would Alter God's Word in the Book

The Book of Revelation is ratified by the most solemn warnings, condemnations, and curses upon those who would dare to alter God's Word by adding to its Truth or by taking away from its Truth.

For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book (Revelation 22:18,19).

God prophetically pronounced His punishments for adding to God's Word or for taking away from God's Word.



Those who sow evil seeds by *adding* falsehoods to God's Word of Truth in the Book will reap God's "addition" of plagues that are written in this Book.

Those who sow evil seeds by taking away or by cutting off any of God's Truth in this Book will reap God's taking away or cutting off his part from the Book of Life, his part out of the Holy City, and his part from the promises and privileges of this Book.

Thus, we have seen the fourfold ratification of the Book of Revelation: It has been ratified; it is ratified, and it will be ratified by the LORD God's Holy Nature; by Christ's Messengers — the Prophets, Angels, and Servants; by the Book's Effect on mankind; and by the Book's Revelation of the LORD Jesus Christ.

II. Christ's Conclusion of the Book of Revelation

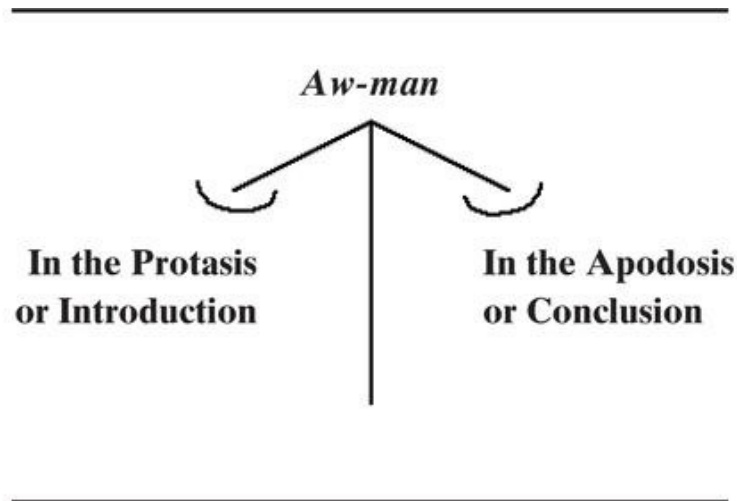
Christ's conclusion of the Book of Revelation consists of three things:

- Christ's Farewell Promise to His People to Come Quickly
- The Joyful Response of the Apostle John
- The Apostolic Benediction of the Beloved John

He which *testifieth* these things saith, *Surely I come quickly*. Amen. *Even so, come*, Lord Jesus. *The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all*. Amen (Revelation 22:20,21).

After Christ's great revelation to the Apostle John, He bid farewell. As He took His leave, He gave a Great, Divine Promise: "*Surely, I come quickly. Amen.*" This sentence begins with the same Hebrew root word that is sometimes translated "faithful," which appears in chapter one, verse five. The word is *aw-man*, meaning firmness, trustworthiness, faithfulness, reliable, durable, abiding, lasting, and to credit as true.

In Christ's protasis or introduction and apodosis or conclusion of the entire Book of Revelation, which is about His Coming, He used the Hebrew root word *aw-man*, meaning that His Promise of Coming quickly is prefaced and concluded with His dependable, trustworthy Truth.



The Apostle John's heart was so eager for the LORD's Coming that He responded with these words: "Even so, come, Lord Jesus." John used the Hebrew word *aw-done* for *Lord*, meaning Master, Owner, Sovereign Ruler and Controller. John owned the Humble, Sacrificial Jesus as his Master and Owner, the One Who had the Sovereign Right to rule and to control his life and to come quickly.

Likewise, our heart should beat with longing for our Lord's quick return.

Thus, we have seen how the LORD Jesus Christ ratified and will ratify this marvelous Book of Revelation, the greatest Book of Prophecy ever written about the LORD Jesus Christ and God's Master Plan and Purposive Will for mankind in the end times.

As this dispensation closes, let us prepare for the next event on God's Calendar — the return of the Bridegroom for His Bride.

The beloved Apostle closed the Book he had written under the inspiration of Christ's Holy Spirit, with this gracious benediction: "The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen."

The Hebrew word for *grace* is *kheh-sed*, meaning God's Merciful Lovingkindness. *Kheh-sed* expresses God's Great, Merciful Lovingkindness in giving aid to the efforts of those who are struggling in the right direction, trying to fulfill God's Moral High Calling for them and in advancing the strength of those who are desiring to reach their Divinely Appointed Goal of the Measure of the Fullness of Christ's Stature. *Kheh-sed* reveals God's Great

Lovingkindness in ministering His Infinite Joy, Eternal Happiness, and Everlasting Satisfaction to His people.

God's *Kheh-sed* Grace or Lovingkindness is so infinitely inexhaustible in variety that He is able to give each heart its own special, particular kind of Love, Joy, and Happiness.

The Spirit's benediction through John desired that the *Kheh-sed* Grace of the LORD Jesus Christ be with all God's people.

The Spirit concluded the Book of Revelation with another *aw-man*, meaning that the Spirit's pronouncement of Faithfulness, Trustworthiness, and Reliability can be placed upon Christ's *Kheh-sed* Grace, which will go with all His people.

And we conclude our study of the Book of Revelation with these words, "May the LORD Jesus Christ, the KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS, bless and keep you until His soon return. Amen!"



Outline

Chapter One

THE KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS

as the Heavenly Bridegroom Who Reveals His Bride and Her Wedding Dress

I. The Marriage of the Bridegroom and the Bride Is a Time of Joy and of Giving Honour

- A. Let Us Be Glad and Rejoice
- B. Let Us Give Honour (Glory) to Him
 - 1. The Seven Ways God's Natural Bride, Israel, Found the LORD's Kabode Glory to Give Back to Him
 - a. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found in a Bleak, Barren Desert
 - b. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found on Mount Sinai
 - c. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found on the Garments of the High Priest
 - d. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found with the Continual Burnt Offering
 - e. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found in His Ineffable, Awesome Name
 - f. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Filled the Mosaic Tabernacle
 - g. The LORD's *Kabode* Glory Found in His Merciful Judgment and His Just Judgment
 - 2. How Christ's Spiritual Bride Receives and Gives Glory to the LORD Jesus Christ, Her Bridegroom

II. The Bride's Obedience

III. The Bride's Dress of Righteousness

- A. The Righteousness that Comes by Grace-Faith
- B. The Righteousness that Comes by Grace-Works

IV. The Revelation of the Bride's Dress

- A. Clean (*Taw-hare*) Linen
- B. Fine, White (*Tsakh*) Linen

Chapter Two

The Marriage Supper of the Lamb

I. The Bridegroom and the Bride's Heavenly Works Before the Marriage Supper Will Begin

- A. The Heavenly Jerusalem Will Be Sanctified
- B. The Earthly Jerusalem Will Be Destroyed

II. God's "Called" Ones

- A. Israel "Called"
- B. Gentiles "Called"

III. Old Testament Overcomers "Called" to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

IV. New Testament Overcomers "Called" to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

- A. Those Who Are Alive and Remain
- B. Those Who Are Dead *in Christ*

V. The New Drink at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

VI. Identity of the Messenger Who Will Announce the Marriage Supper of the Lamb

Chapter Three

The Description of the Bridegroom at His Second Coming to Earth

I. The LORD Jesus Christ's Defensive Armour of His Names

- A. His Name Is "Faithful"
- B. His Name Is "True"
- C. His Secret Name
- D. His Name Is the "Word of God"

- E. His Name Is “KING OF KINGS”
- F. His Name Is “LORD OF LORDS”

II. The LORD Jesus Christ’s Aggressive Weapons

- A. The LORD’s White Horse of Faith
- B. The LORD’s Righteousness
- C. The LORD’s Sharp Sword

III. The LORD Jesus Christ’s Apparel

IV. The LORD Jesus Christ’s Authority

- A. His Flaming, Fiery Eyes
- B. His Many Crowns
 - 1. Crowns of Sovereign Dominion
 - 2. Crowns of Subjugation
 - 3. Crowns of Gracious Gratitude
- C. His Ruling Rod of Iron
- D. His Treading Feet

Chapter Four

The Bride at the Second Coming of the LORD Jesus Christ to the Earth

I. Christ’s Bride Will Be Divided into Separate, Unified Armies

- A. The Seal of Truth that Describes the Soldiers in the Bridal Armies
 - 1. The Beauty (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier
 - 2. The Swiftiness (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier
 - 3. The Deliverance (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier
 - 4. The Glory (*Tseb-ee*) of a True Soldier
 - 5. The Goodly (*Tseb-ee*) Heritage of a True Soldier
 - 6. The Pleasant (*Tseb-ee*) Land of a True Soldier
- B. The LORD’s Coming to Earth with His Bridal Armies
 - 1. The LORD’s Call to His Bridal Armies
 - 2. The LORD’s Day
 - a. Darkness
 - b. Gloominess
 - c. Clouds
 - d. Thick Darkness
 - 3. The LORD’s Fires of Jealousy
 - 4. The Warfare of the LORD and His Armies
 - a. The LORD’s Armies
 - (1) Run
 - (2) Climb
 - (3) March
 - (4) Walk
 - (5) Enter
 - b. The LORD, the General

II. Christ’s Bride Will Be Humbly Obedient to Go Forth (*Yawt-saw*) with Her Bridegroom-General

- A. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means to Go Out, to Go Forth
- B. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means to Go Forth, to Issue Forth
- C. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means to Follow Forth in Order to Escape Danger by Setting Free
- D. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means to Rise Up with Fiery Light to Consume
- E. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means to Spring Up or to Shoot Forth
- F. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means for a Decree to Go Forth, Follow Forth, to Be Published
- G. (*Yaw-tsaw*) Means to Go Out, to Follow Out to the End, as the End of a Period of Time

III. Christ’s Bridal Armies Will Come to Earth Riding Upon Their White Horses

- A. The Horse of Faith Is Prepared for Battle in Four Ways
 - 1. He Has Overcoming Strength

2. His Neck Is Clothed with Thunder
3. He Has Fearless Courage
4. He Has the Glory of His Nostrils
- B. The Horse of Faith Shows His Joy in Doing God's Purposive Will
 1. His Hoofs Paw in the Valley
 2. His Joy Is in His Strength
 3. He Goes Forth to Meet the Armed Men
 4. He Mocks at Fear
- C. With Courage, the Horse of Faith Meets the Defensive and Aggressive Warfare of God's Enemies
 1. He Is Not Affrighted
 2. He Does Not Turn Back from the Sword
 3. He Does Not Turn Back at the Rattle of the Arrows in the Enemies' Quivers
 4. He Does Not Turn Back from the Enemies' Spear and Shield
- D. The Horse of Faith Discerns, from Afar Off, the Works of the Enemy
 1. He Swallows the Ground Between Him and the Battle
 2. For Joy, He Hardly Believes the Sound of the Trumpet
 3. He Prophetically Expresses Triumph by Saying, "Ha, Ha"
 4. He Smells the Battle Afar Off

IV. Christ's Bride Will Be Clothed in Fine Linen, White and Clean

Chapter Five **The Battle of Armageddon**

I. The Angel Standing in the Sun

II. The Angel's Invitation to All the Fowls in Heaven to Come to the Battle

III. The Supper of the Great God

- A. The Food and Those Invited to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb
- B. The Food and Those Invited to the Supper of the Great God

IV. The Battle of Armageddon

- A. Previous Battles Israel, God's Natural Bride, Fought and Won Under the LORD's Headship at Megiddo
 1. Deborah and Barak Led the Army against Jabin at Megiddo and Won the Battle
 2. Jehoshaphat Met the Enemy at Megiddo, and the LORD Gave the Victory
 3. Gideon Fought the Midianites at Megiddo and Won the Battle
- B. Previous Battles Israel Fought and Lost at Megiddo Because They Were Not Under the LORD's Headship
 1. King Josiah Fought at Megiddo and Lost His Life
 2. King Saul Fought at Megiddo and Lost His Life
- C. God's Spiritual Bride Will Fight at Armageddon and Win Under the LORD's Headship

Chapter Six

The Divine Right and the Spirit of Truth Through Which the LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge All His Creatures, Including the Beast (the Antichrist), the False Prophet, and Those Remaining in the Antichrist's Army

I. The Right of the LORD Jesus Christ to Judge

II. The Means by Which the LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge

- A. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of the LORD, the Self-existent One
- B. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Wisdom
- C. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Understanding
- D. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Counsel
- E. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Might
- F. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Knowledge
- G. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Judge by Means of the Spirit of Fear

III. The Father and the Son Ultimately Will Subdue All Their Enemies and Judge Them with Righteousness and Truth

IV. The Final Judgment of the Antichrist and His Armies and the False Prophet

- A. The Tree of Life from Which Blessing and Punishment Come
 - 1. The Blessing-Side of the Tree of Life
 - 2. The Punishment-Side of the Tree of Life
- B. The Lake of Fire — the Place of Punishment for the Antichrist and His Armies, the False Prophet, and All Resurrected, Wicked Dead

Chapter Seven

The Premillennial Judgment of Fallen Lucifer

I. Lucifer's Original Sin — Pride

II. God's Judgment on Lucifer for His Pride

- A. The Angel Will Possess the Key and a Chain
- B. The Angel Will Lay Hold of Lucifer
- C. The Angel Will Bind Lucifer
- D. The Angel Will Execute the LORD's Judgment upon Fallen Lucifer
 - 1. The Angel Will Cast Lucifer Down into the Bottomless Pit
 - a. God's Wrath and Fire in the *Teh-home*
 - b. God's Icy Hatred in the *Teh-home*
 - 2. The Angel Will Shut Up Lucifer in the Bottomless Pit
 - 3. The Angel Will Seal Lucifer in the Bottomless Pit
 - 4. The Angel Will Execute Restraining Judgment upon Lucifer

Chapter Eight

The First Resurrection

I. The Two Kinds of Resurrection Power or Glory

- A. The Son's Begotten Resurrection Power or Glory
- B. The Father's Unbegotten Resurrection Power or Glory
 - 1. Prophesied by David
 - 2. Preached by Peter and Paul

II. The First Resurrection

- A. Phase One of the First Resurrection — the Resurrection of Jesus Christ and the Old Testament Overcomers
- B. Phase Two of the First Resurrection — the Rapture of the New Testament Overcomers, both the Dead and the Living
- C. Phase Three of the First Resurrection — the Resurrection of the Overcomers from the Tribulation Period
 - 1. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Enthroned His Bride on His Earthly Throne at His Second Coming
 - 2. The Revelation of the Suffering of the Souls Who Will Have Overcome the Antichrist in the Tribulation Period by Giving Their Lives for the Truth
 - a. They Will Overcome by Not Worshipping the Beast
 - b. They Will Overcome by Not Taking the Mark of the Beast
 - 3. After the Return of Christ and His Bride, He Will Resurrect the Overcoming Souls Who Have Died During the Tribulation
 - 4. The Reward of the Resurrected Souls from the Tribulation Is the Privilege of Reigning with Christ and His Bride for One Thousand Years

Chapter Nine

The Final Loosing and Judgment of Lucifer and His Luciferic Army

I. Lucifer Will Be Loosed from the Bottomless Pit for a Season

- A. Lucifer's Nature Before He Sinned
 - 1. Lucifer's Tenfold Covering of Precious Stones and of Gold
 - 2. Lucifer's Perfection in Beauty
 - 3. Lucifer's Fullness of Wisdom

4. Lucifer's Seal of Brightness
- B. Lucifer's Nature After He Sinned
 1. His Corrupted Tenfold Covering Became His Satan Nature
 2. His Corrupted Beauty Became His Devil Nature
 3. His Corrupted Wisdom Became His Serpent Nature
 4. His Corrupted Seal of Brightness and the Maturity of His Tenfold Covering, Which He Turned into Horns of Power, Became His Dragon Nature
- C. Lucifer's Dragon and Serpent Natures Will Be Left in the *Teh-home* Pit When He Is Loosed for a Season
- II. Lucifer, as Satan and the Devil, Will Minister Deceit When He Is Loosed from the Pit (*Teh-home*)
 - A. Even with the Lower, Lesser Part of His Stature — His Satan Nature — He Will Be Able to Deceive People
 - B. He Will Enchant and Deceive with His Devil Nature — His Beauty
 1. The Beauty of Christ's Spiritual Bride — Her Separation
 - a. The Bride Will Hearken
 - b. The Bride Will Consider
 - c. The Bride Will Incline Her Ear
 - d. The Bride Will Forget
 2. The Beauty of Mount Zion
 3. The Beauty of the LORD Jesus Christ, the King
 4. The Beauty of Israel, God's Natural Bride, and Jerusalem
 - C. As Satan and the Devil, Lucifer Will Gather Gog and Magog to Fight Against the LORD Jesus Christ and His Bridal Armies
 1. Lucifer's Age-old Battle Against the Truth: His Protective Name, Gog, Versus the LORD's Name; and the Power of His Name, Magog, Versus the Power of the LORD's Name
 - a. Abel and Cain, First Example
 - b. Jacob and Esau, Second Example
 - c. Hebrew Children and Pharaoh, Third Example
 - d. The Baby Jesus and King Herod, One Example
 - e. Believers in the Dispensation of Grace and Lucifer, Another Example
 - f. Millennial-born People and Lucifer's Satan and Devil Natures, the Last Example
- III. Lucifer's Armies Will be Judged
- IV. Lucifer Will be Judged a Final Time

Chapter Ten

The Great White Throne Judgment

- I. The Divine Throne
- II. God on the Throne
- III. The Judgment, from God's Throne, of the Resurrected "All Dead"
- IV. The Sentencing, from God's Throne, of Lost, Resurrected Souls, Consigning Them to the Lake of Fire

Chapter Eleven

The Renewing of the Heaven, the Earth, the New Jerusalem, and All Things, and the Establishment of the LORD Jesus Christ's Everlasting Kingdom

- I. How Heaven, Earth, the New Jerusalem, and All Things Will Be Made New (*Khaw-dash*)
- II. King David Will Take the Earthly Throne in Jerusalem While the LORD Jesus Christ Returns to His Heavenly Throne to Begin His Work of Renewing All
- III. The Everlasting Kingdom, in Which All Will Be Made New, Will Be Given to the LORD Jesus Christ
 - A. The Heaven Will Be Made New
 - B. The Earth Will Be Made New
 - C. The Holy City, New Jerusalem, Will Be Made New
 - D. All Things Will Be Made New
- IV. The Son Will Put His Everlasting Kingdom Under His Father's Feet
- V. The Truth and Faithfulness of God's Word Will Be Established When All Creation Is Subdued Under the

[Father's Control](#)

[VI. Having Been Given the Prophetic Truth, Mankind Is Presented with a Choice for Present Time so that He Can Prepare for the Future the Apostle John Has Just Foretold](#)

[Chapter Twelve](#)

[The Beginning of the Apostle John's Vision of the Holy City, the New Jerusalem: The Place from Which John Saw the City — Its Greatness and Holiness and Its Glory and Light](#)

[I. The Place from Which John Saw the Holy City](#)

- A. The Mountain Was Great (*Gaw-dole*)
 - 1. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Fire
 - 2. The LORD's Mighty (*Gaw-dole*) Power
 - 3. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Voice
 - 4. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Person
 - 5. The LORD's Great (*Gaw-dole*) Anger and Indignation
- B. The Mountain Was High (*Gaw-bah*)
 - 1. The LORD's Throne Is on High (*Gaw-bah*)
 - 2. The LORD's Possesses Excellency (*Gaw-bah*) or Highness
- C. The Mountain Was the Heavenly Mount Zion

[II. The Greatness and Holiness of the New City](#)

[III. The *Kabode* Glory of the New City](#)

- A. The Glory of God's Bountiful Goodness
- B. The Glory of God's *Torah*-Truth
- C. The Glory of God's Son, the LORD Jesus Christ
- D. The Glory of Fresh, New Consecration and Devotion to God
- E. The Glory of God's Headship and Moral Government
- F. The Glory of God's Unbegotten *Kabode* Glory Seal of Approval in the Mosaic Tabernacle and in the Tabernacle of His Son

[IV. The *Ore* Light of the New City](#)

- A. Jesus Is the *Ore* Light of the World
- B. The Word Is an *Ore* Light
- C. The *Ore* Light Comes from the LORD's Countenance
- D. The LORD's Covering Is *Ore* Light
- E. Christ Was the *Ore* Light in the Beginning of Creation
- F. The *Ore* Light Has the Brightness of the Sun and the Moon
 - 1. The Sun-Brightness of the *Ore* Light
 - 2. The Moon-Brightness of the *Ore* Light
- G. The *Ore* Light Lifts to a New Position
- H. The *Ore* Light Is Like a Jasper Stone and Crystal
 - 1. The Jasper-Like *Ore* Light
 - 2. The Crystal-Like *Ore* Light

[Chapter Thirteen](#)

[The Continuation of John's Vision of the New City: Its Great, High Wall](#)

[I. The New City's Great, High Wall Is for Protection](#)

[II. The New City's Wall Is Eternal](#)

[Chapter Fourteen](#)

[The Twelve Gates of the New City and the Names of the Twelve Tribes of Israel that Are Written on Them](#)

[I. The Number of Gates in the New City Is Twelve — Three Are on Each of Its Four Sides](#)

[II. Twelve Angels Guard the Twelve Gates of the New City — One at Each Gate](#)

[III. Each Gate Has the Name of One of the Twelve Tribes of Israel Written on It](#)

IV. Each Gate of the New City Is Made of Pearl, Which Is Produced by Christ's Reigning Humility Power

- A. The First Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over God's Word to Protect It from Proud Enemies (Judah)
- B. The Second Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over the Evil of Pride (Issachar)
- C. The Third Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Shame (Zebulun)
- D. The Fourth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Rebellion (Reuben)
- E. The Fifth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Possessions (Simeon)
- F. The Sixth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Unmercifulness (Gad)
- G. The Seventh Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Murmuring (Dan)
- H. The Eighth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Rejection (Asher)
- I. The Ninth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prideful Unfaithfulness (Naphtali)
- J. The Tenth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Anxiety (Benjamin)
- K. The Eleventh Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Unjust Judgment (Ephraim)
- L. The Twelfth Gate — Christ's Humility Power to Reign Over Prayerlessness (Manasseh)

Chapter Fifteen

The Twelve Foundations of the Wall of the New City, the Twelve Names of the Apostles of the Lamb Inscribed in the Foundations, and the Twelve Precious Stones that Embellish the Foundations

- I. The Foundation of Christ as a Judge Bears the Name of the Apostle Peter and Is Embellished with the Jasper Stone
- II. The Foundation of Christ's Wisdom Bears the Name of the Apostle Andrew and Is Embellished with the Sapphire Stone
- III. The Foundation of Truth's Provision of Repentance Bears the Name of the Apostle James, Son of Zebedee, and Is Embellished with the Chalcedony Stone
- IV. The Foundation of Blood Bears the Name of the Apostle John and Is Embellished with the Emerald Stone
- V. The Foundation of the Power of God's Word Bears the Name of the Apostle Philip and Is Embellished with the Sardonyx Stone
- VI. The Foundation of Good Works Bears the Name of the Apostle Bartholomew and Is Embellished with the Sardius Stone
- VII. The Foundation of Counsel Bears the Name of the Apostle Thomas and Is Embellished with the Chrysolyte Stone
- VIII. The Foundation of Reparation Bears the Name of the Apostle Matthew and Is Embellished with the Beryl Stone
- IX. The Foundation of Correction Bears the Name of the Apostle James, Son of Alphaeus, and Is Embellished with the Topaz Stone
- X. The Foundation of Sureness Bears the Name of the Apostle Jude (Lebbaeus Thaddaeus) and Is Embellished with the Chrysoprasus Stone
- XI. The Foundation of Salt and Sweet Waters of Truth Bears the Name of the Apostle Simon Zelotes and Is Embellished with the Jacinth Stone
- XII. The Foundation of Instruction Bears the Name of the Apostle Paul and Is Embellished with the Amethyst Stone

Chapter Sixteen

The Measurement of the New City and Its Wall and the Jasper Substance from Which the Wall Is Made

- I. The Measurement of the New City and Its Wall
- II. The Jasper Material from Which the Wall of the New City Is Made

Chapter Seventeen

The Gold of the City and the Gold of the Street and the River of the Street

I. The Gold of Christ's Wisdom

- A. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in the Mosaic Tabernacle
- B. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in the New Testament

- C. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in the Person of Jesus Christ and Revealed, Prophetically, by the Bride in the Song of Solomon
- D. Christ's Golden Wisdom Revealed in His Chariot
- E. Christ's Golden Wisdom Is for the Tested and Tried Ones
- F. The Bride is Clothed with Christ's Golden Wisdom
- G. The Bride's Ears Are Adorned with Christ's Golden Wisdom
- H. Christ's Golden Wisdom Is More Desirable than Earthly Gold

II. The New City Is Made of Gold, Clear (*Paw-zaz*) as Glass

- A. The Strength (*Paw-zaz*) of Christ's Golden Wisdom Clothed Joseph's Arms and the Bride's in All Phases of Their Lives
- B. The Strength (*Paw-zaz*) of Christ's Golden Wisdom Clothed King David's Feet and the Bride's Feet
- C. The Strength (*Paw-zaz*) of Christ's Golden Wisdom Clothed King Solomon's Throne of Ivory

III. The New City Will Be the Eternal Dwelling Place of Christ and His Bride

IV. The New City's Street of Gold

- A. The Street of the New City Will Have the Power to Enlarge (*Rekh-obe*) the Soul of the Bride
- B. The Street of the New City Will Be a Pathway of Liberty (*Rekh-obe*) for the Bride
- C. The Street of the New City Will Be a Broad (*Rekh-obe*) Place
- D. The Street of the New City Describes the Breadth (*Rekh-obe*) of Christ's Love
- E. The Street of the New City Expresses the Fruitfulness God Allowed Natural Israel

V. The Street's River of Life

- A. The Pure River of the Waters of Life Contains the LORD's Testimonies of Truth
 - 1. Testimonies Sure
 - 2. Testimonies Joyful
 - 3. Testimonies Wonderful
 - 4. Testimonies Righteous
- B. The Pure River of the Waters of Life Contains the Seal of Righteousness
 - 1. Righteousness — Great and High
 - 2. Righteousness Quickens
 - 3. The LORD's Righteousness Is Everlasting
 - 4. Righteousness Delivers
 - 5. God's Righteousness Is Life
 - 6. Righteousness Keeps the Upright
- C. The Works and Effects of the Seal of Righteousness in the Bride's Heart
 - 1. The Works — Peace
 - 2. The Effects — Quietness and Assurance
- D. The River of Life Fills All the Desires and Needs of the Bride
 - 1. The Bride's Nuts of Sharing
 - 2. The Bride's Vine of Surrender
 - 3. The Bride's Pomegranates of Love

Chapter Eighteen

The Tree of Life in the Midst of the Street and on Either Side of the River

I. The Eternal (*Keh-dem*) Life of Christ — The Source of All Existence

- A. The Prophet Habakkuk Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence
- B. The Psalmist Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence
- C. John the Baptist Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence
- D. The Apostle Paul Bore Witness to Christ's Eternal Existence

II. The Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life of Christ — His Victorious Life that Swallows Up All Death

- A. The Prophet Samuel Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life
- B. David Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Nawtsakh*) Life
- C. Paul Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Nawtsakh*) Life
- D. The Apostle John Bore Witness of Christ's Resurrection (*Naw-tsakh*) Life

E. The Seven Early Churches Portray the Resurrection Life that Will Be Attained by the Bride

III. The Everlasting (O-lawm) Life of Christ — The Everlasting Cycles of the LORD's Holy Name

A. Two Ways to Gain the Everlasting (O-lawm) Life of the LORD's Holy Name

1. The Everlasting Life of the LORD Jesus Christ's Holy Name Is Attained by Gift
2. The Everlasting Life of the LORD Jesus Christ's Holy Name Is Attain by Growth and Works

IV. The Tree of Life Produces Twelve Governmental Fruits, Which Are the Twelve Fruits of the Spirit

V. The Twelve Fruits of the Spirit Come Out of the Three Portions of God's Will

A. God's Will of Redemption Produces Love, Joy, Peace, and Mercy or Sharing

1. Love
2. Joy
3. Peace
4. Mercy or Sharing

B. God's Will of Revelation Produces Sincerity, Surrender and Obedience, Gentleness, and Faith

1. Sincerity
2. Surrender and Obedience
3. Gentleness
4. Faith

C. God's Will of Satisfaction Produces Long-suffering, Goodness, Humility or Meekness, and Temperance

1. Long-suffering
2. Goodness
3. Humility or Meekness
4. Temperance

Chapter Nineteen

God, the Lamb, and the Bride Will Rule and Reign Eternally in Perfect Unity and Happiness in the New City

I. The Freedom from Evil in the New City

II. The Eternal Happiness of God and the Lamb and His Bride in the New City

A. The Union of God and the Lamb in the New City

B. The Seal of the Bride Which Unifies Her with the Son, the Bridegroom, and the Father

1. The Bride-Servant Will Serve God and the Lamb
2. The Bride Will See the LORD's Face
3. The Bride Will Have the LORD's Name in Her Forehead
4. No Night for the Bride
5. Eternal Light for the Bride
6. The Bride Will Reign Forever and Ever with God and the Lamb

Chapter Twenty

The Ratification of the Book of Revelation and Its Conclusion

I. The Four Ways God Ratifies the Truth of the Book of Revelation

A. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by the LORD God's Holy Nature

1. The LORD God's Nature Is Faithful (*Aw-man*)
2. The LORD God Is True (*Eh-meth*)

B. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by Christ's Messengers: the Prophets, Angels, and His Servants

C. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by Its Effects upon Mankind

D. The Book of Revelation Has Been and Will Be Ratified by Its Revelation of the LORD Jesus Christ and the Things He Will Do

1. The LORD Jesus Christ, the Rewarder
2. The LORD Jesus Christ, the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Beginning and the End, the First and the Last
3. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Ratify the Book of Revelation When He Receives Guests from the New Earth
4. The LORD Jesus Christ Will Ratify the Book of Revelation When He Excludes the Wicked from the New

City by Confining Them in the Lake of Fire

5. The LORD Jesus Christ Has Ratified and Will Ratify the Book of Revelation by His Spirit of Prophecy

6. The LORD Jesus Christ Has Ratified and Will Ratify the Book of Revelation by a Special Invitation from the Spirit and the Bride and by a General Invitation from “Those Who Hear”

7. The LORD Jesus Christ Ratified the Book of Revelation by Revealing God’s Condemnation and Curses on Those Who Would Alter God’s Word in the Book

[II. Christ’s Conclusion of the Book of Revelation](#)